

Contents

[You Can Do the Following](#)

[Useful Software](#)

[Scanning](#)

[Scanning from a Computer](#)

[Scanning with IJ Scan Utility](#)

[What Is IJ Scan Utility \(Scanner Software\)?](#)

[Starting IJ Scan Utility](#)

[Easy Scanning with Auto Scan](#)

[Scanning Photos](#)

[Scanning Documents](#)

[Scanning Film](#)

[Scanning with Favorite Settings](#)

[Scanning Items Larger than the Platen \(Image Stitch\)](#)

[Scanning Multiple Items at One Time](#)

[Saving after Checking Scan Results](#)

[Sending Scanned Images via E-mail](#)

[Extracting Text from Scanned Images \(OCR\)](#)

[IJ Scan Utility Screens](#)

[IJ Scan Utility Main Screen](#)

[Settings Dialog](#)

[Settings \(Auto Scan\) Dialog](#)

[Settings \(Photo Scan\) Dialog](#)

[Settings \(Document Scan\) Dialog](#)

[Settings \(Custom Scan\) Dialog](#)

[Settings \(Scan and Stitch\) Dialog](#)

[Settings \(ScanGear\) Dialog](#)

[Settings \(AUTO SCAN Button\) Dialog](#)

[Settings \(PDF \(COLOR\) Button\) Dialog](#)

[Settings \(PDF \(BLACK & WHITE\) Button\) Dialog](#)

[Settings \(PDF \(CUSTOM\) Button\) Dialog](#)

[Settings \(COPY Button\) Dialog](#)

[Settings \(E-MAIL Button\) Dialog](#)

[Settings \(General Settings\) Dialog](#)

[Data Format Settings Dialog](#)

[Save Settings Dialog](#)

[Image Stitch Window](#)

[Scanning with Application Software that You are Using \(ScanGear\)](#)

[What Is ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)?](#)

[Scanning with Advanced Settings Using ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#)

[Starting ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#)

[Scanning in Basic Mode](#)

[Scanning in Advanced Mode](#)

[Scanning Film in Advanced Mode](#)

[Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time with ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#)

[Correcting Images and Adjusting Colors with ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#)

[Correcting Images \(Unsharp Mask, Reduce Dust and Scratches, Fading Correction, etc.\)](#)

[Adjusting Colors Using a Color Pattern](#)

[Adjusting Saturation and Color Balance](#)

[Adjusting Brightness and Contrast](#)

[Adjusting Histogram](#)

[Adjusting Tone Curve](#)

[Setting Threshold](#)

[ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\) Screens](#)

[Basic Mode Tab](#)

[Advanced Mode Tab](#)

[Input Settings](#)

[Output Settings](#)

[Image Settings](#)

[Color Adjustment Buttons](#)

[Preferences Dialog](#)

[Scanner Tab](#)

[Preview Tab](#)

[Scan Tab](#)

[Color Settings Tab](#)

[General Notes \(Scanner Driver\)](#)

[Useful Information on Scanning](#)

[Adjusting Cropping Frames](#)

[Resolution](#)

[Data Formats](#)

[Color Matching](#)

[Placing Items \(When Scanning from a Computer\)](#)

[Placing Film \(When Scanning from a Computer\)](#)

[Useful Software](#)

[My Image Garden Guide](#)

[What Is My Image Garden?](#)

[What You Can Do with My Image Garden](#)

[File Formats](#)

[Selecting Images, PDF Files and Videos](#)

[Starting My Image Garden](#)

[Utilizing the Item Recommendation Function](#)

[Enjoying Items Recommended by My Image Garden](#)

[Registering Various Information to Photos](#)

[Registering People](#)

[Registering People's Profiles](#)

[Registering Events](#)

[Registering Favorite Levels](#)

[Printing](#)

[Printing Photos and Documents](#)

[Printing Recommended Items and Images Displayed in Slide Shows](#)

[Creating and Printing Items](#)

[Printing Photos in a Variety of Layouts](#)

[Printing Collages](#)

[Printing Cards](#)

[Printing Calendars](#)

[Printing Stickers](#)

[Printing Disc Labels](#)

[Printing in a Cinematic Layout](#)

[Printing Paper Crafts](#)

[Downloading and Printing PREMIUM Contents](#)

[Capturing and Printing Still Images from Videos](#)

[Creating Images of Merged Video Frames](#)

[Correcting Still Images Captured from Videos](#)

[Using Various Functions](#)

[Scanning Photos and Documents](#)

[Easy Scanning with Auto Scan](#)

[Scanning Photos](#)

[Scanning Documents](#)

[Scanning with Favorite Settings](#)

[Cropping Scanned Images](#)

[Editing Items](#)

[Setting the Theme and Main People](#)

[Changing Background](#)

[Changing Layout](#)

[Arranging Photos Automatically](#)

[Adding, Deleting or Rearranging Pages](#)

[Inserting/Adjusting Images](#)

[Adding Text to Photos](#)

[Correcting/Enhancing Photos](#)

[Using Auto Photo Fix](#)

[Using Red-Eye Correction](#)

[Using Face Brightener](#)

[Using Face Sharpener](#)

[Using Digital Face Smoothing](#)

[Using Blemish Remover](#)

[Adjusting Images](#)

[Cropping Photos](#)

[Enhancing Photos Using Special Filters](#)

[Enhancing with Fish-eye Effect](#)

[Enhancing with Miniature Effect](#)

[Enhancing with Toy Camera Effect](#)

[Enhancing with Soft Focus](#)

[Blurring the Background](#)

[Creating/Editing PDF Files](#)

[Extracting Text from Images \(OCR Function\)](#)

[Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites](#)

[My Image Garden Screens](#)

[Main Screen](#)

[My Art View](#)

[Select Theme and Main People Dialog](#)

[Select Background Dialog](#)

[Select Layout Dialog](#)

[Advanced Settings Dialog \(Stickers\)](#)

[Advanced Settings Dialog \(Photo Layout\)](#)

[Advanced Settings Dialog \(Calendar\)](#)

[Advanced Settings Dialog \(Calendar Holiday Settings\)](#)

[Advanced Settings Dialog \(Disc Label\)](#)

[Calendar View](#)

[Register Event Dialog](#)

[Event View](#)

[People View](#)

[Register Profile Dialog](#)

[Expanded Display](#)

[Unregistered People View](#)

[Folder View](#)

[Scan View](#)

[Crop View \(Scan View\)](#)

[Save Dialog \(Scan View\)](#)

[PDF Settings Dialog](#)

[Photo Sharing Sites View](#)

[Save Dialog \(Photo Sharing Sites View\)](#)

[Video Frame Capture View](#)

[Correct View](#)

[Merge Frames View](#)

[Save Dialog \(Video Frame Capture View\)](#)

[Download PREMIUM Contents View](#)

[Downloaded PREMIUM Contents View](#)

[Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)

[Crop Window](#)

[Save Dialog \(Correct/Enhance Images or Special Image Filters Window\)](#)

[Special Image Filters Window](#)

[Create/Edit PDF File View](#)

[Save Dialog \(Create/Edit PDF File View\)](#)

[File Settings Dialog](#)

[Print Settings Dialog](#)

[Paper Size List](#)

[Preferences Dialog](#)

[Troubleshooting](#)

[Cannot Use PREMIUM Contents](#)

[General Notes \(My Image Garden\)](#)

[Scanning Using the Scanner Buttons](#)

[What Are Scanner Buttons?](#)

[Scanning and Saving Items as PDF Files \(PDF Buttons\)](#)

[Scanning Items and Saving the Scanned Images \(AUTO SCAN Button\)](#)

[Scanning and Printing/Copying Items \(COPY Button\)](#)

[Scanning and Attaching Items to E-mail \(E-MAIL Button\)](#)

[Scanner Button Settings via IJ Scan Utility](#)

[Troubleshooting](#)

[Problems with Scanning](#)

[Error Message "Release the lock switch..." Is Displayed](#)

[Scanner Does Not Work](#)

[ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\) Does Not Start](#)

[Error Message Appears and the ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\) Screen Does Not Appear](#)

[Scanner Buttons Do Not Work](#)

[When a Scanner Button Is Pressed, an Unexpected Application Starts](#)

[Cannot Scan Multiple Items at One Time](#)

[Cannot Scan Properly with Auto Scan](#)

[Slow Scanning Speed](#)

["There is not enough memory." Message Is Displayed](#)

[Computer Stops Operating during Scanning](#)

[Scanned Image Does Not Open](#)

[Position or Size of the Image Cannot be Detected Correctly When Scanning Using the Scanner Buttons](#)

[Scan Results Not Satisfactory](#)

[Scan Quality \(Image Displayed on the Monitor\) Is Poor](#)

[Scanned Image Is Surrounded by Extra White Areas](#)

[Cannot Scan at the Correct Size](#)

[Item Is Placed Correctly, but the Scanned Image Is Slanted](#)

[Scanned Image Is Enlarged \(Reduced\) on the Computer Monitor](#)

[Software Problems](#)

[Scanned Image Is Printed Enlarged \(Reduced\)](#)

[The E-mail Client You Want to Use Does Not Appear in the Screen for Selecting an E-mail Client](#)

[Problems with Scanning Film](#)

[Cannot Scan Film](#)

[Scan Quality Is Poor or Colors Are Scanned Incorrectly](#)

[Image Becomes Too Dark or Too Bright When a Cropping Frame Is Moved, Enlarged or Reduced](#)

[Frames Are Not Detected Correctly](#)

[Scanner Stops Operating during Scanning, or "There is not enough memory." Message Is Displayed](#)

[Installation Problems](#)

[The Setup CD-ROM Does Not Start](#)

[Installation Is Unsuccessful \(Insufficient Free Hard Disk Space\)](#)

[Installation Is Unsuccessful \(Insufficient Memory\)](#)

[About Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program](#)

[Specifications](#)

[How to Use the On-Screen Manuals, Printing Procedures](#)

[Operating the On-Screen Manuals](#)

[Printing the On-Screen Manuals](#)

[Using Keywords to Find a Document](#)

[Registering Documents to My Manual](#)

[Symbols Used in This Document](#)

[Trademarks and Licenses](#)

[Uninstalling the On-Screen Manuals](#)

[Before Using Your Product](#)

[Obtaining the Latest ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#)

[Before Installing the ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#)

[Installing the ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#)

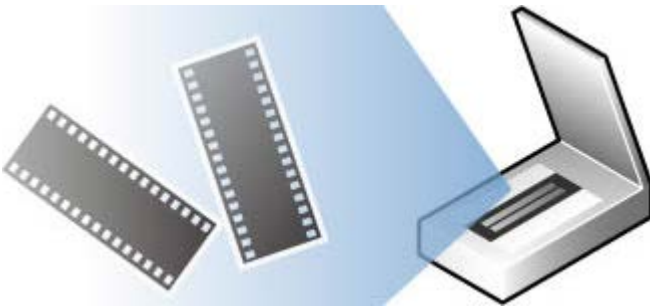
[Deleting the Unnecessary ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#)

You Can Do the Following



Scan by Automatically Detecting the Item Type

The scanner scans with recommended settings automatically according to the item to be scanned.



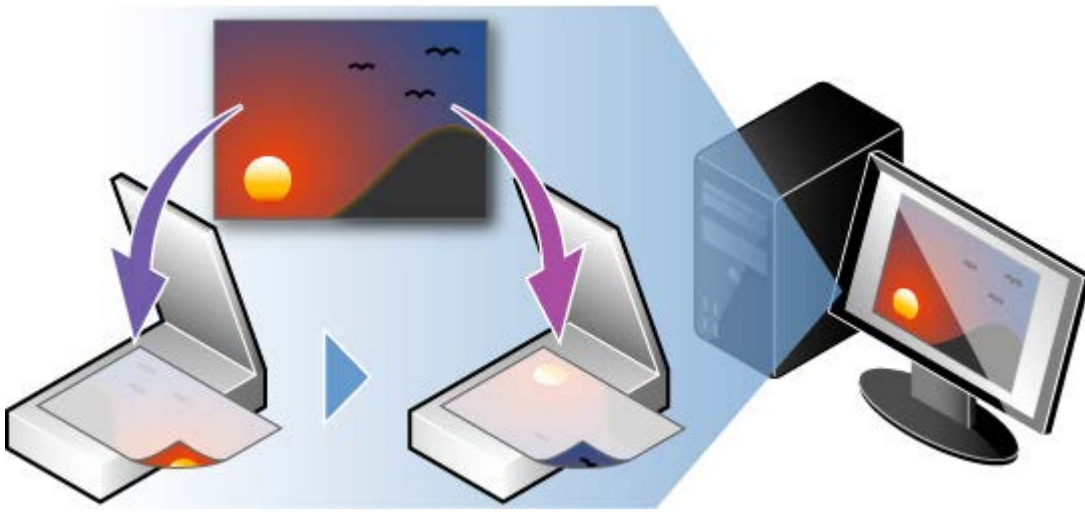
Scan Film

You can scan photos from your film.



Scan Multiple Items at One Time

You can scan multiple items at one time.



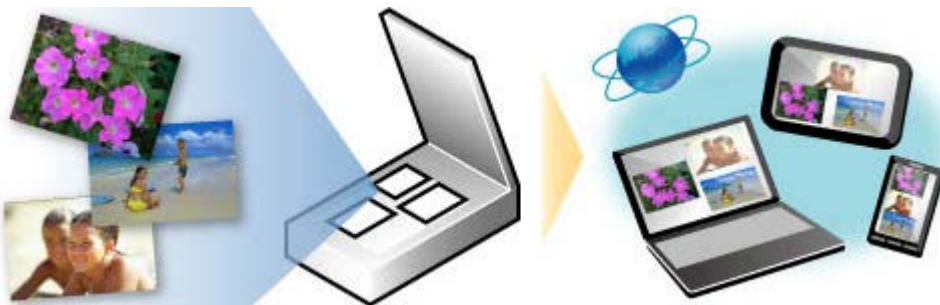
Scan Items Larger than the Platen

You can scan items larger than the platen.



Useful Software

You can use convenient functions easily with the supplied software.



Online Storage Integration Function

You can easily upload scanned images to the web.

A001

Useful Software

The following useful software can be used with the machine.

- [My Image Garden](#)
- [Quick Menu](#)

My Image Garden

My Image Garden is an application that allows you to utilize photos taken with digital cameras and other images saved on your computer, in many ways for various purposes. You can organize a vast number of images easily, or create collages, cards and other items from your favorite photos and print them. Moreover, you can perform various scans with one click.



➤ [My Image Garden Guide](#)



Important

- A Canon printer that supports My Image Garden is required to print the images and items.

Quick Menu

Quick Menu is software that allows you to easily start the applications and manuals supplied with the machine, or quickly access online product information. In addition, with simultaneously installed Image Display, you can enjoy patterns of collages and other items created automatically by the item recommendation function of My Image Garden as well as slide shows of images saved on a computer.



Note

- By default, Quick Menu starts automatically when you start up the computer.
- From the **Go** menu of **Finder**, select **Applications**, then double-click the **Canon Utilities** folder, **Quick Menu** folder, then **Canon Quick Menu** icon to start Quick Menu.
- If Image Display does not appear even when Quick Menu is started, click the  (Start Image Display) icon. If My Image Garden is not installed, the application will be downloaded and installed. Internet connection is required to download the software. Internet connection fees apply.
- The computer must be connected to the Internet to access the website for useful information, etc. Internet connection fees apply.
- See Help of Quick Menu for details on Quick Menu.
To display Help, control-click Quick Menu and select **Help** from the displayed menu.
- To use the item recommendation function of My Image Garden, you need to register information beforehand. See the My Image Garden manual for details.

Scanning

- [Scanning from a Computer](#)
 - [Scanning with IJ Scan Utility](#)
 - [Scanning with Application Software that You are Using \(ScanGear\)](#)
 - [Useful Information on Scanning](#)
 - [Placing Items \(When Scanning from a Computer\)](#)
 - [Placing Film \(When Scanning from a Computer\)](#)
 - [Useful Software](#)
- [Scanning Using the Scanner Buttons](#)
 - [What Are Scanner Buttons?](#)
 - [Scanning and Saving Items as PDF Files \(PDF Buttons\)](#)
 - [Scanning Items and Saving the Scanned Images \(AUTO SCAN Button\)](#)
 - [Scanning and Printing/Copying Items \(COPY Button\)](#)
 - [Scanning and Attaching Items to E-mail \(E-MAIL Button\)](#)
 - [Scanner Button Settings via IJ Scan Utility](#)

[Page top](#) ▲

Scanning from a Computer

- [Scanning with IJ Scan Utility](#)
- [Scanning with Application Software that You are Using \(ScanGear\)](#)
- [Useful Information on Scanning](#)
- [Placing Items \(When Scanning from a Computer\)](#)
- [Placing Film \(When Scanning from a Computer\)](#)
- [Useful Software](#)

[Page top](#) ▲

Scanning with IJ Scan Utility

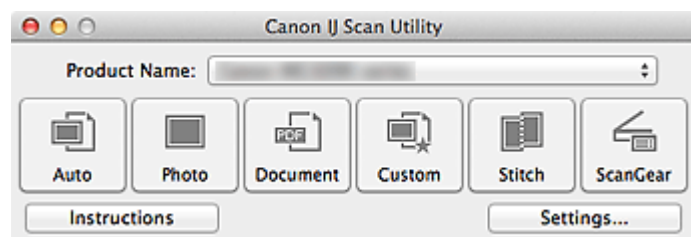
- What Is IJ Scan Utility (Scanner Software)?
- Starting IJ Scan Utility
- Easy Scanning with Auto Scan
- Scanning Photos
- Scanning Documents
- Scanning Film
- Scanning with Favorite Settings
- Scanning Items Larger than the Platen (Image Stitch)
- Scanning Multiple Items at One Time
- Saving after Checking Scan Results
- Sending Scanned Images via E-mail
- Extracting Text from Scanned Images (OCR)
- IJ Scan Utility Screens

S102

What Is IJ Scan Utility (Scanner Software)?

IJ Scan Utility is an application that allows you to easily scan photos, documents, etc.

You can complete from scanning to saving at one time by simply clicking the corresponding icon in the IJ Scan Utility main screen.



What You Can Do with IJ Scan Utility

Scan Easily according to Purposes

You can scan by simply clicking an icon such as **Auto** to scan easily, **Photo** to scan with settings suitable for photos, or **Document** to sharpen text in a document or magazine for better readability, according to the item type or your purpose.



Note

- See "[IJ Scan Utility Main Screen](#)" for details on the IJ Scan Utility main screen.

Save Scanned Images Automatically

Scanned images are automatically saved in a preset folder. You can change the folder as required.

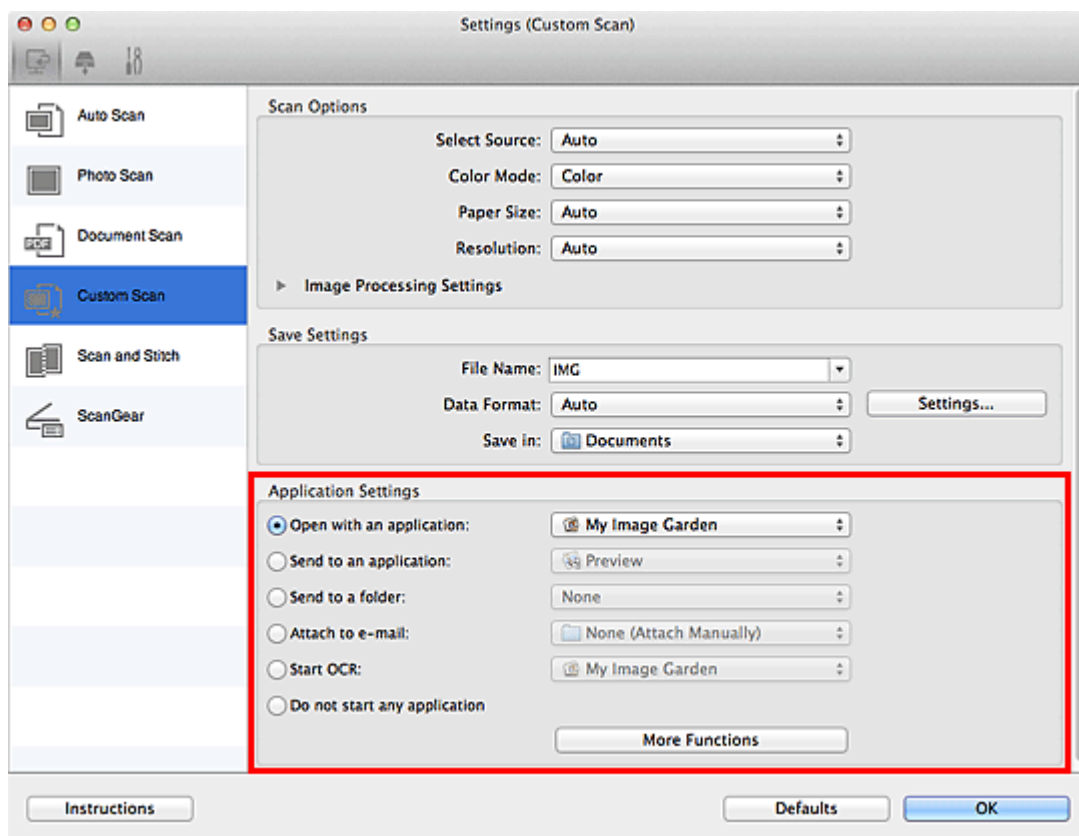


Note

- The default save folder is the **Documents** folder.
- See "[Settings Dialog](#)" for how to specify a folder.

Integrate with Applications

You can utilize scanned images through integration with other applications; display scanned images in your favorite application, attach them to e-mails, extract text from images, and more.



Important

- Some functions are available only when My Image Garden is installed.

Note

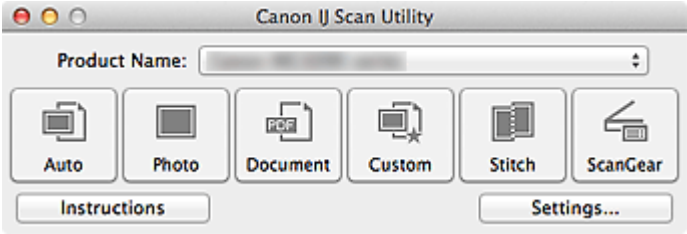
- See "[Settings Dialog](#)" for how to set the applications to integrate with.

S001

IJ Scan Utility

Starting IJ Scan Utility

From the **Go** menu of Finder, select **Applications**, then double-click the **Canon Utilities** folder, **IJ Scan Utility** folder, then **Canon IJ Scan Utility** icon to start IJ Scan Utility.



Easy Scanning with Auto Scan

You can scan easily by automatically detecting the item type.

Important

- The following types of items may not be scanned correctly. In that case, adjust the cropping frames (scan areas) in whole image view of ScanGear (scanner driver) and scan again.
 - Photos that have a whitish background
 - Items printed on white paper, hand-written documents, business cards, etc.
 - Thin items
 - Thick items

➡ [Adjusting Cropping Frames](#)

1. Make sure that your scanner is turned on.

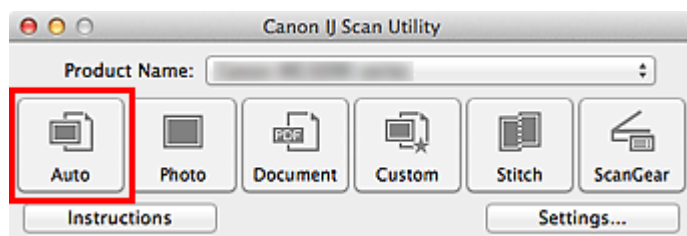
2. Place items on the platen of your scanner .

➡ [Placing Items \(When Scanning from a Computer\)](#)

3. Start IJ Scan Utility.

➡ [Starting IJ Scan Utility](#)

4. Click **Auto**.



Scanning starts.

Note

- Click **Cancel** to cancel the scan.
- To apply suitable corrections based on the item type, click **Settings...**, then select the **Apply recommended image correction** checkbox in the **Settings (Auto Scan)** dialog.
- Scanned images are saved in the folder set for **Save in** in the **Settings (Auto Scan)** dialog displayed by clicking **Settings...**. In the **Settings (Auto Scan)** dialog, you can also make advanced scan settings.

➡ [Settings \(Auto Scan\) Dialog](#)

- Refer to the following pages to scan by specifying the item type.

➡ [Scanning Photos](#)

➡ [Scanning Documents](#)

➡ [Scanning with Favorite Settings](#)

Scanning Photos

You can scan photos placed on the platen with settings suitable for photos.

1. Place the photo on the platen.

➡ Placing Items (When Scanning from a Computer)

2. Start IJ Scan Utility.

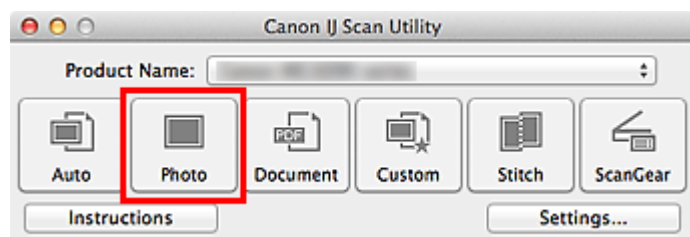
➡ Starting IJ Scan Utility

3. Click **Settings...**, select the **Settings (Photo Scan)** dialog, then set the item size, resolution, etc. as required.

➡ Settings (Photo Scan) Dialog

When setting is completed, click **OK**.

4. Click **Photo**.



Scanning starts.

Note

- Click **Cancel** to cancel the scan.
- Scanned images are saved in the folder set for **Save in** in the **Settings (Photo Scan)** dialog displayed by clicking **Settings....** In the **Settings (Photo Scan)** dialog, you can also make advanced scan settings.

➡ Settings (Photo Scan) Dialog

Scanning Documents

You can scan items placed on the platen with settings suitable for documents.

1. Place the item on the platen.

➡ Placing Items (When Scanning from a Computer)

2. Start IJ Scan Utility.

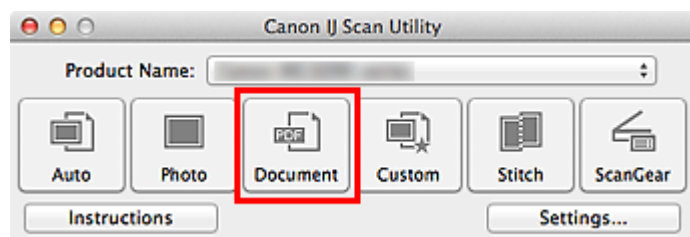
➡ Starting IJ Scan Utility

3. Click **Settings...**, select the **Settings (Document Scan)** dialog, then set the item size, resolution, etc. as required.

➡ Settings (Document Scan) Dialog

When setting is completed, click **OK**.

4. Click **Document**.



Scanning starts.



Note

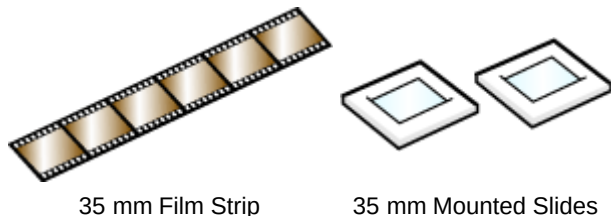
- Click **Cancel** to cancel the scan.
- Scanned images are saved in the folder set for **Save in** in the **Settings (Document Scan)** dialog displayed by clicking **Settings...**. In the **Settings (Document Scan)** dialog, you can also make advanced scan settings.

➡ Settings (Document Scan) Dialog

Scanning Film

Your scanner supports 35 mm negative and positive film strips (standard state of developed film, with six frames in each strip) as well as 35 mm mounted positive slides (one frame per mounted slide).

Up to twelve film strip frames or four mounted slide frames can be scanned continuously.



35 mm Film Strip

35 mm Mounted Slides

Note

- To scan film after checking it in preview or to scan in high quality by specifying the settings in detail, scan with ScanGear (scanner driver).
- To scan black and white film or 120 format film, scan from the **Advanced Mode** tab of ScanGear.
- To scan at a resolution higher than 4800 dpi, scan from the **Advanced Mode** tab of ScanGear.
➡ [Scanning Film in Advanced Mode](#)
- The screens for scanning with favorite settings are used as examples in the following descriptions.

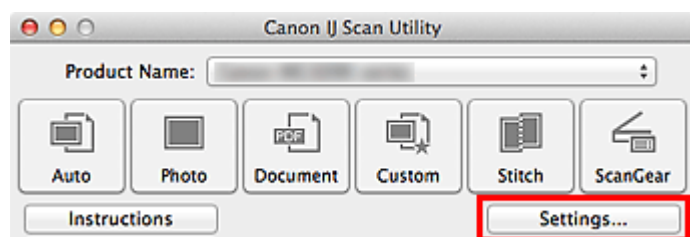
1. Place the film on the platen.

➡ [Placing Film \(When Scanning from a Computer\)](#)

2. Start IJ Scan Utility.

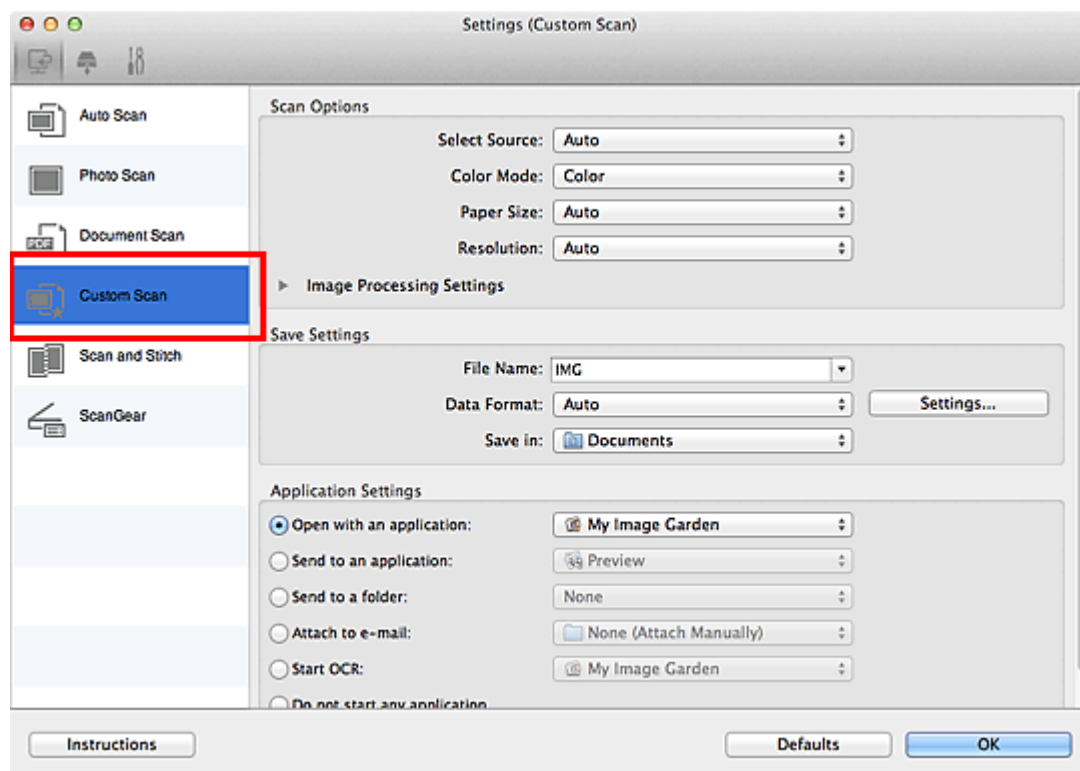
➡ [Starting IJ Scan Utility](#)

3. Click **Settings...**

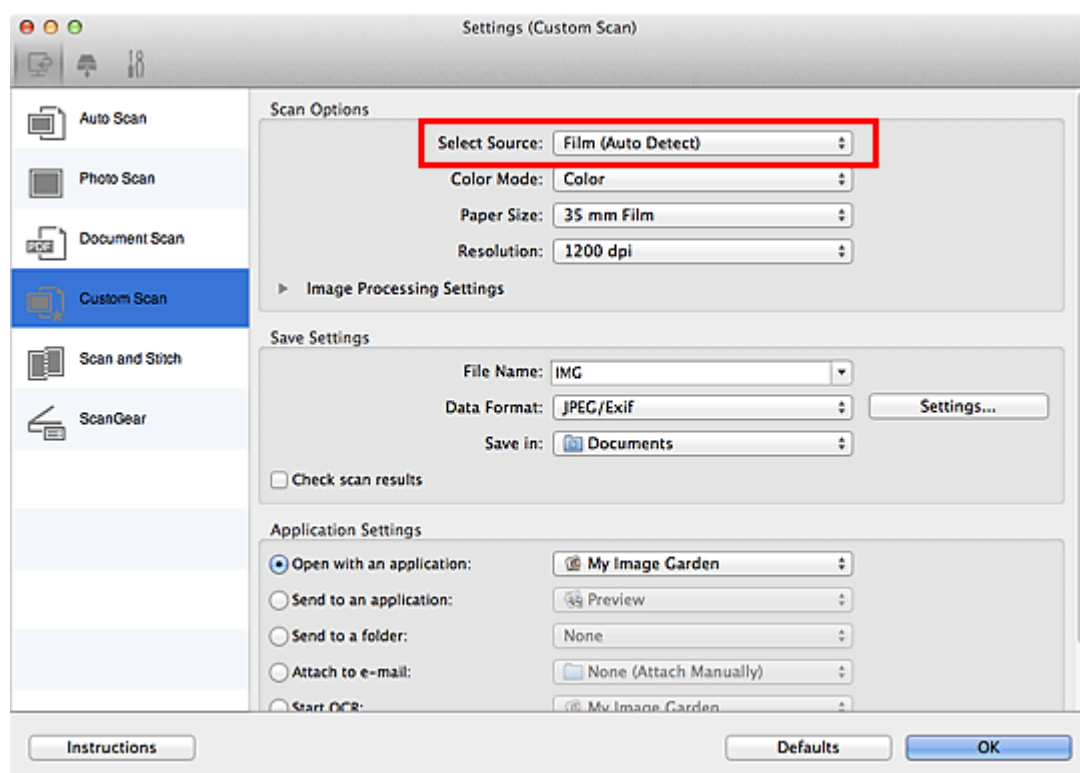


The Settings dialog appears.

4. Click **Custom Scan**.



5. Select film for **Select Source**.

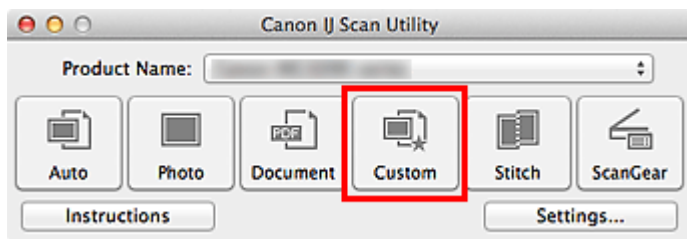


6. Set the color mode, resolution, etc. as required.

➡ Settings (Custom Scan) Dialog

When setting is completed, click **OK**.

7. Click **Custom**.



Scanning starts.

Important

- If film cannot be scanned correctly, scan with ScanGear.

Note

- Click **Cancel** to cancel the scan.
- Scanned images are saved in the folder set for **Save in** in the **Settings (Custom Scan)** dialog displayed by clicking **Settings...**. In the **Settings (Custom Scan)** dialog, you can also make advanced scan settings.
 - ➡ [Settings \(Custom Scan\) Dialog](#)

Page top ▲

Scanning with Favorite Settings

You can scan items placed on the platen with your favorite settings saved beforehand.

This is convenient for saving frequently used settings or when specifying scan settings in detail.

1. Start IJ Scan Utility.

➡ Starting IJ Scan Utility

2. Click **Settings...**, select the **Settings (Custom Scan)** dialog, then set the item type, resolution, etc.

➡ Settings (Custom Scan) Dialog

When setting is completed, click **OK**.



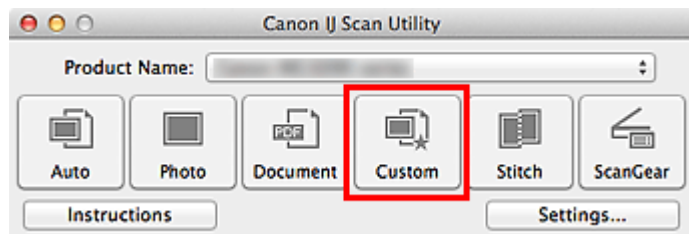
Note

- Once the settings are made, you can scan with the same settings from the next time.

3. Place the item on the platen.

➡ Placing Items (When Scanning from a Computer)

4. Click **Custom**.



Scanning starts.



Note

- Click **Cancel** to cancel the scan.
- Scanned images are saved in the folder set for **Save in** in the **Settings (Custom Scan)** dialog displayed by clicking **Settings...**. In the **Settings (Custom Scan)** dialog, you can also make advanced scan settings.

➡ Settings (Custom Scan) Dialog

Scanning Items Larger than the Platen (Image Stitch)

You can scan the left and right halves of an item larger than the platen and combine them back into one image. Items up to approximately twice as large as the platen are supported.

Note

- The following explains how to scan from the item to be placed on the left side.

1. Start IJ Scan Utility.

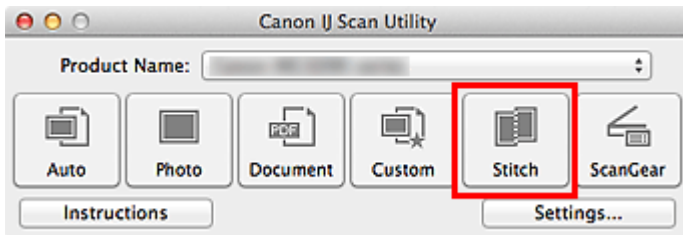
➡ Starting IJ Scan Utility

2. Click **Settings...**, select the **Settings (Scan and Stitch)** dialog, then set the item type, resolution, etc. as required.

➡ Settings (Scan and Stitch) Dialog

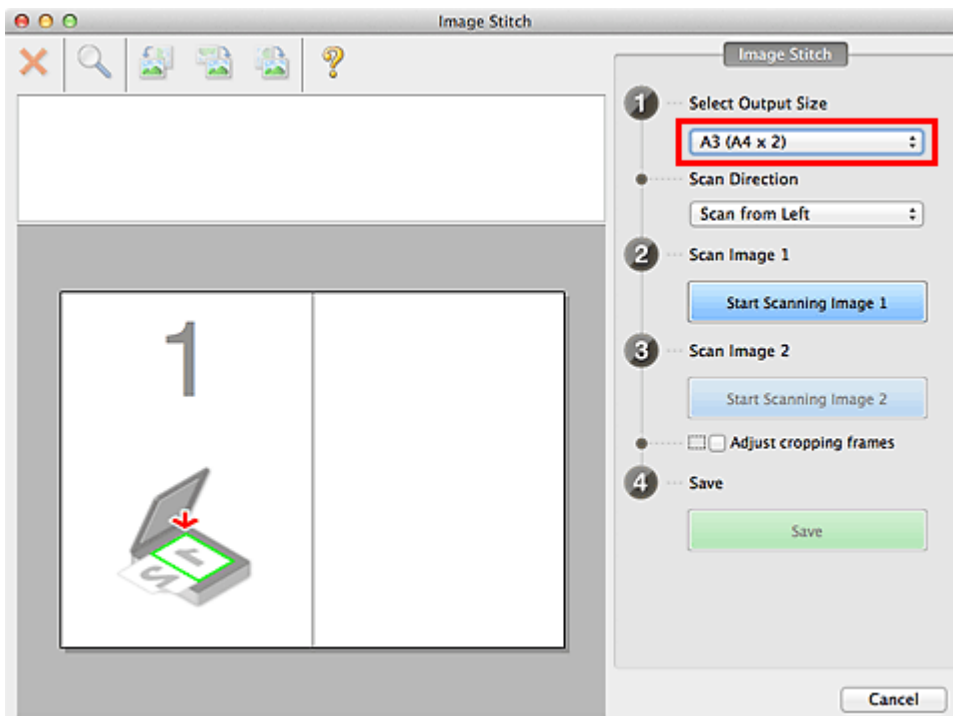
When setting is completed, click **OK**.

3. Click **Stitch**.

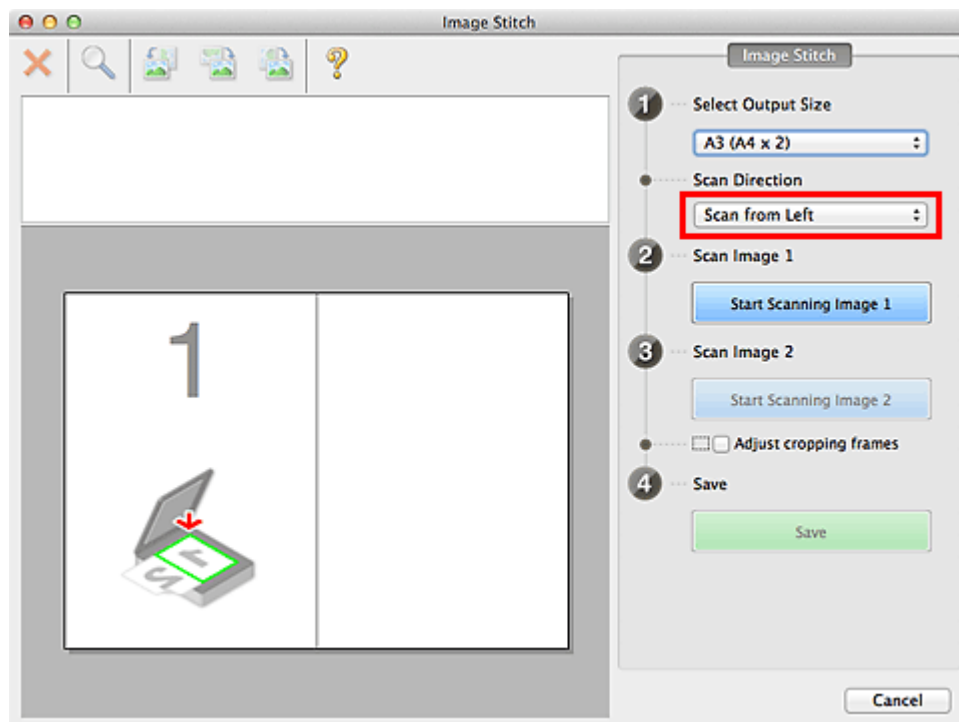


The **Image Stitch** window appears.

4. In **Select Output Size**, select an output size according to the item size.

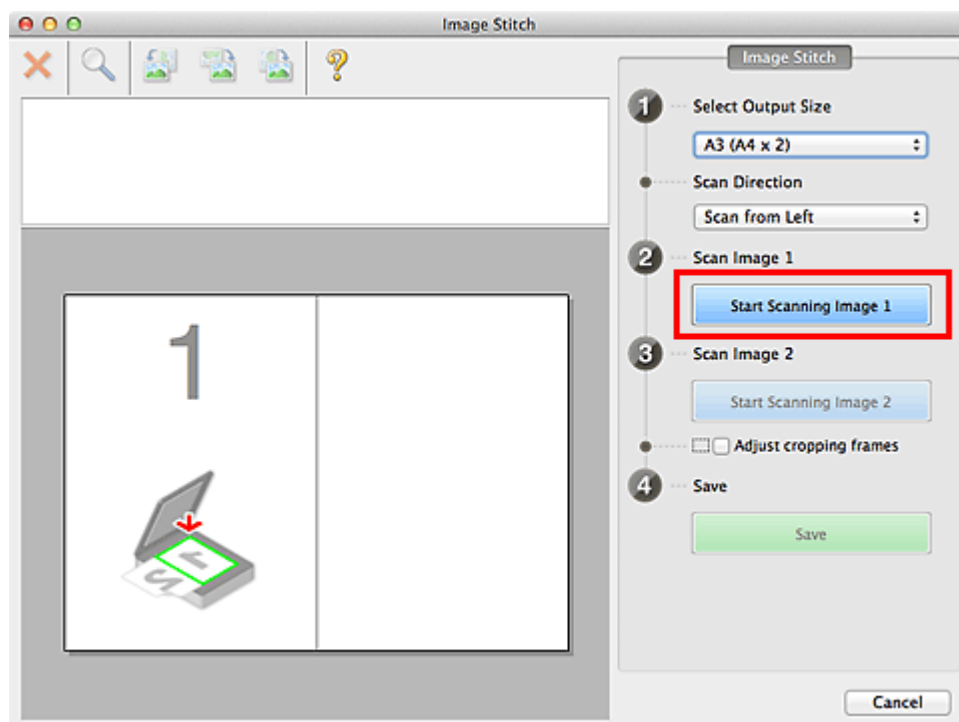


5. Make sure that **Scan from Left** is selected in **Scan Direction**.



6. Place the item that is to be displayed on the left side of the screen face-down on the platen.

7. Click **Start Scanning Image 1**.



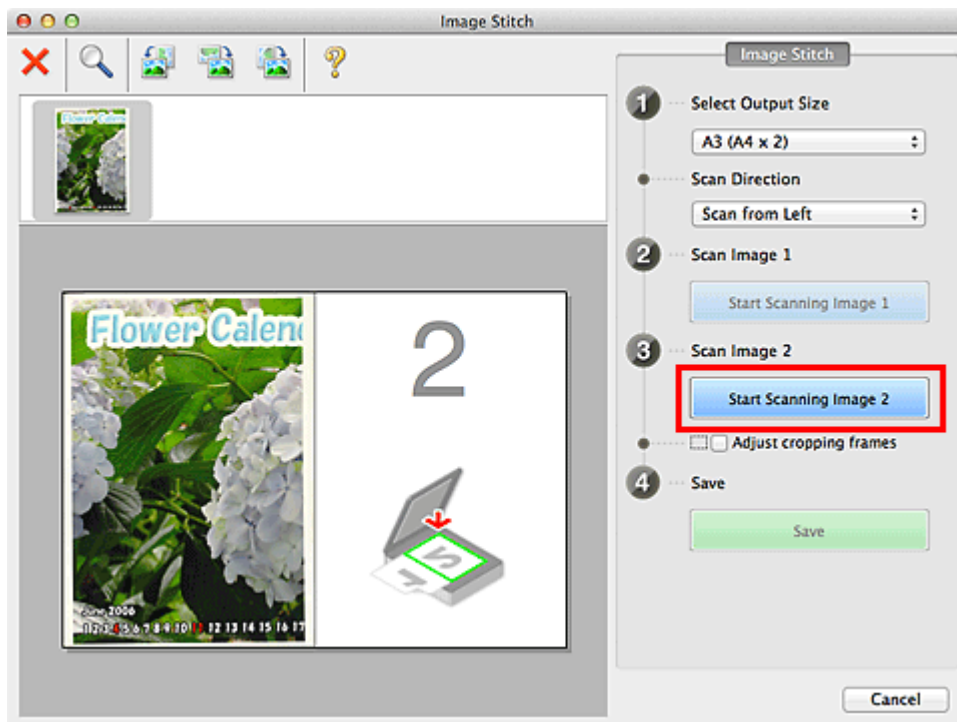
The first item is scanned and appears in 1.

Note

- Click **Cancel** to cancel the scan.

8. Place the item that is to be displayed on the right side of the screen face-down on the platen.

9. Click **Start Scanning Image 2**.



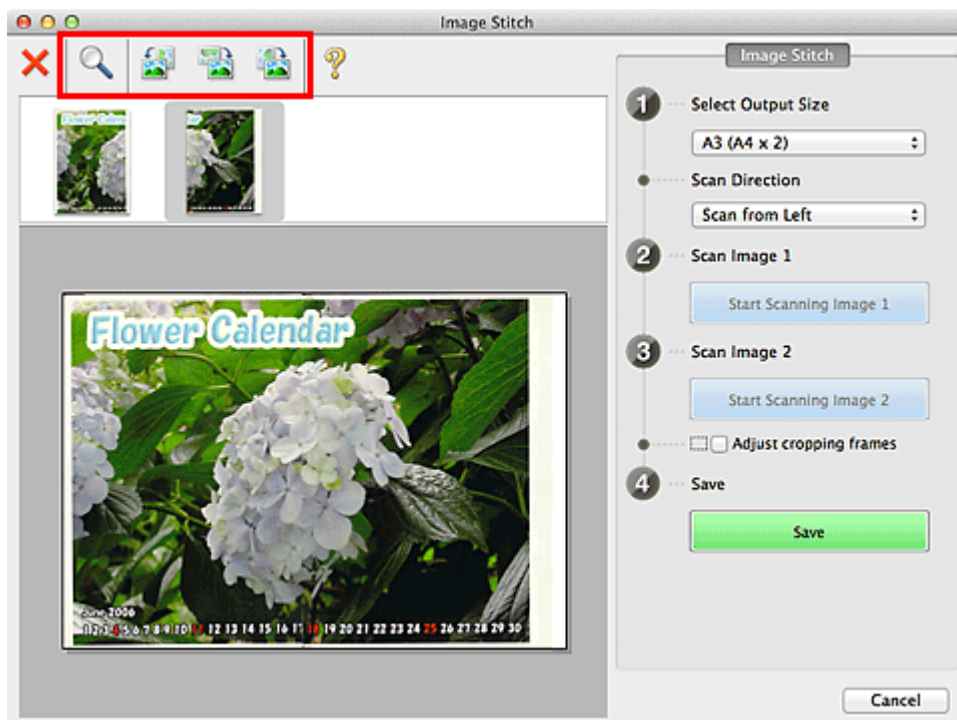
The second item is scanned and appears in 2.

 Note

- Click **Cancel** to cancel the scan.

10. Adjust the scanned images as required.

Use the Toolbar to rotate or zoom in/out, or drag the images to adjust their positions.

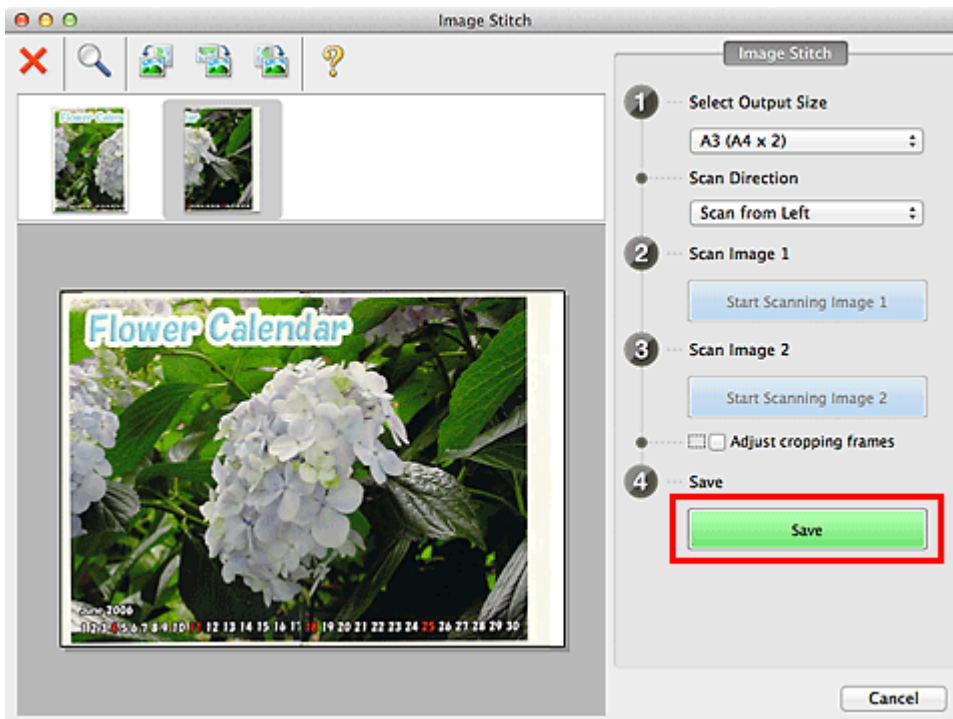


 Note

- Select the **Adjust cropping frames** checkbox to specify the area to be saved.
➡ **Adjusting Cropping Frames**
- To scan an item again, select the image in the Preview area or the thumbnail at the top of the screen, then click  (Delete). The selected image is deleted, allowing you to scan the item

again.

11. Click **Save**.



The combined image is saved.

Note

- See "Image Stitch Window" for details on the **Image Stitch** window.
- You can make advanced scan settings in the **Settings (Scan and Stitch)** dialog displayed by clicking **Settings...**
➡ [Settings \(Scan and Stitch\) Dialog](#)

S008

IJ Scan Utility

Scanning Multiple Items at One Time

You can scan two or more photos (small items) placed on the platen at one time and save each image individually.

Important

- The following types of items may not be cropped correctly. In that case, adjust the cropping frames (scan areas) in whole image view of ScanGear (scanner driver) and scan again.
 - Photos that have a whitish background
 - Items printed on white paper, hand-written documents, business cards, etc.
 - Thin items
 - Thick items
- ➡ Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time with ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

Using Auto Scan

Whether there are multiple items or not is detected automatically. Click **Auto** and scan.

➡ Easy Scanning with Auto Scan

Not Using Auto Scan

In the Settings dialog, set **Paper Size** to **Auto scan** and scan.

Note

- The screens for scanning photos are used as examples in the following descriptions.

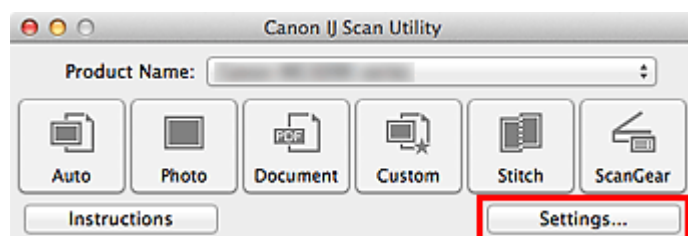
1. Place the item on the platen.

➡ Placing Items (When Scanning from a Computer)

2. Start IJ Scan Utility.

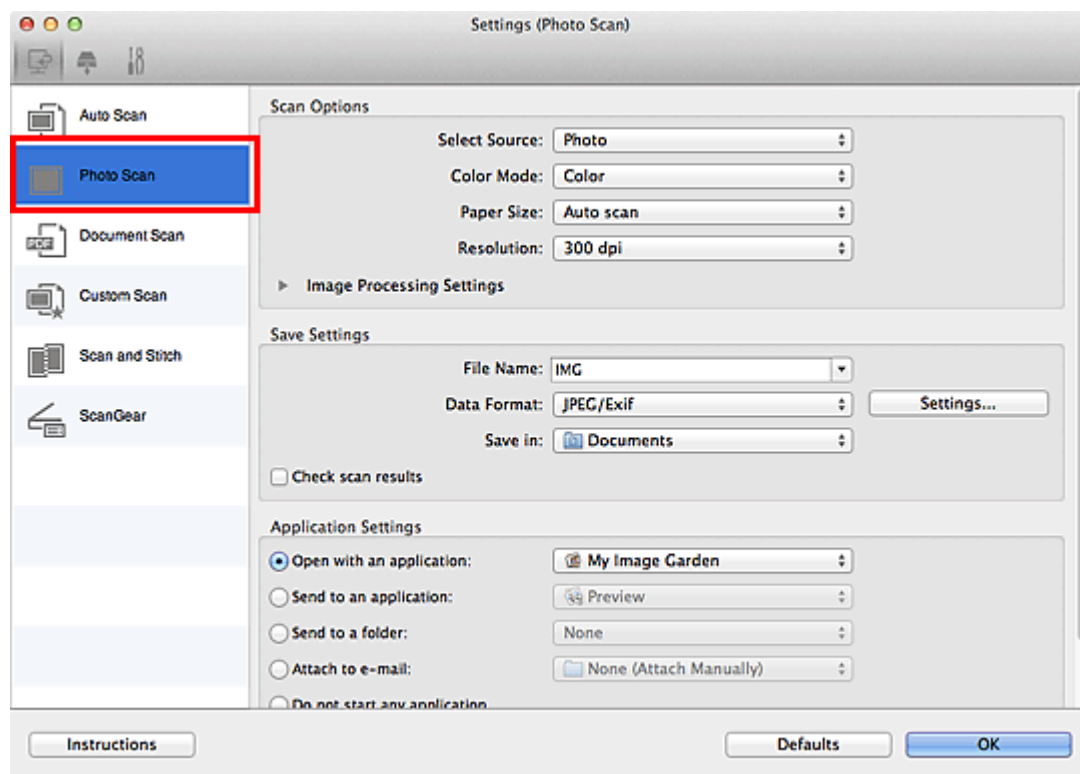
➡ Starting IJ Scan Utility

3. Click **Settings...**

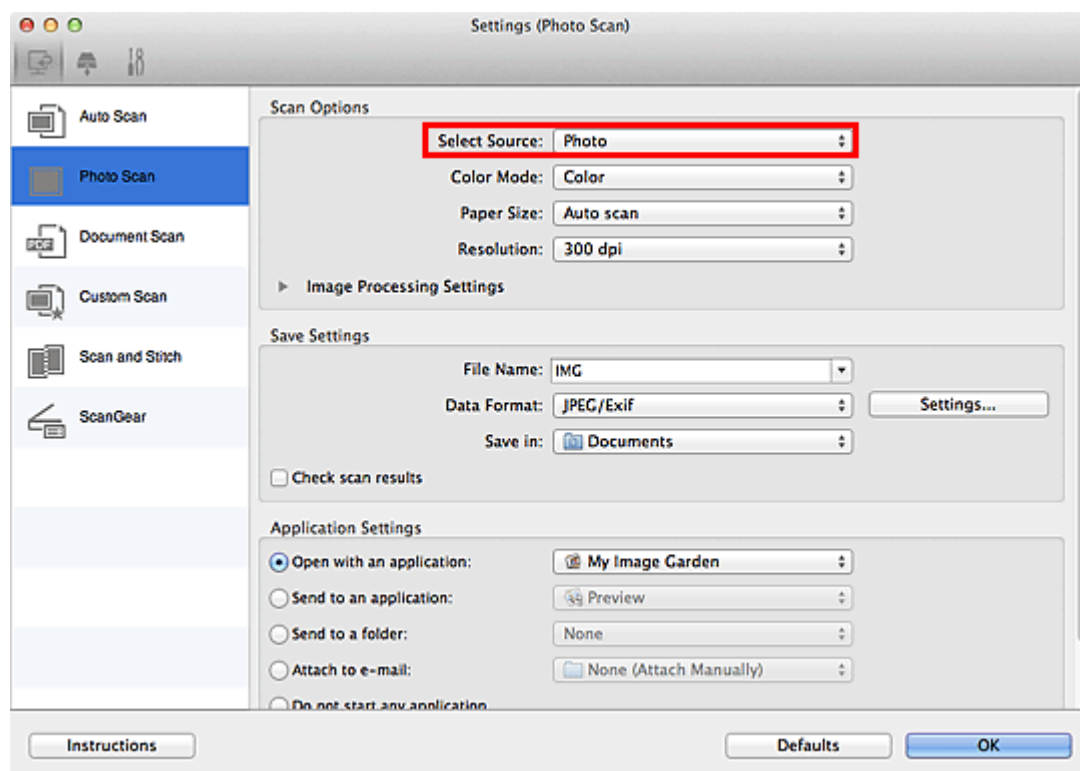


The Settings dialog appears.

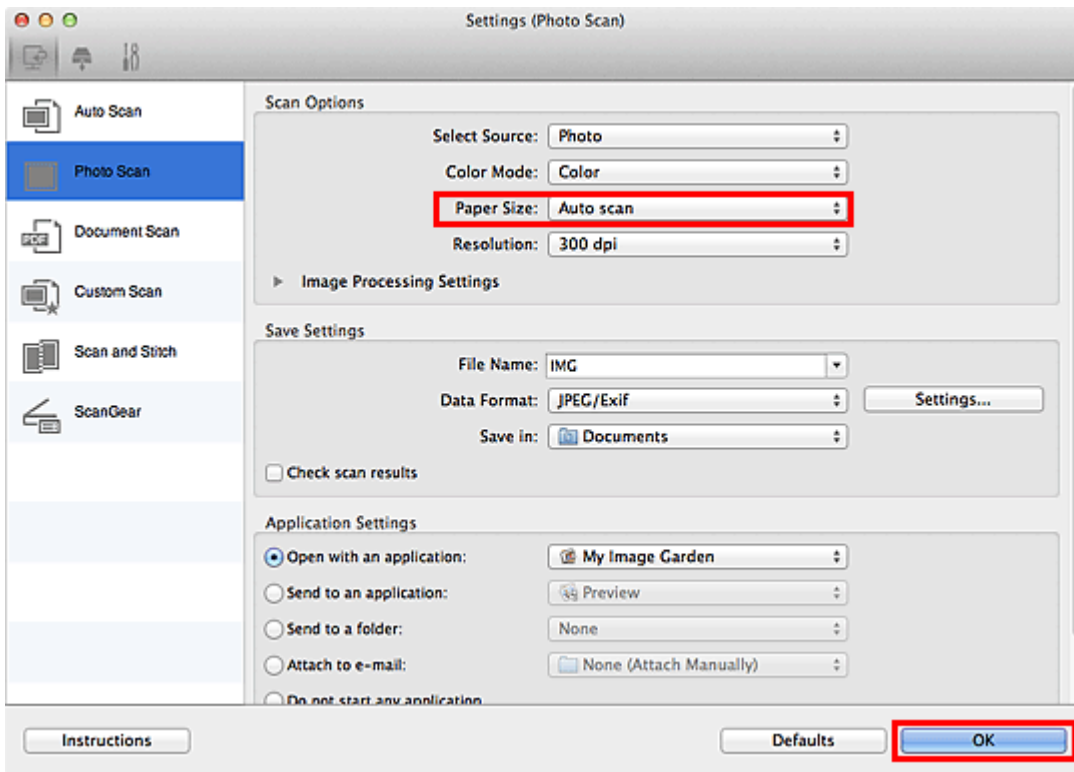
4. Click **Photo Scan**.



5. Select **Select Source** according to the item to be scanned.



6. Select **Auto scan** for **Paper Size**, then click **OK**.

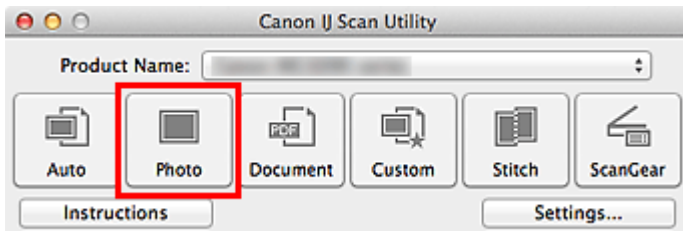


The IJ Scan Utility main screen appears.

Note

- See the following pages for details on the setting items in the Settings dialog.
 - ➔ Settings (Photo Scan) Dialog
 - ➔ Settings (Document Scan) Dialog
 - ➔ Settings (Custom Scan) Dialog

7. Click **Photo**.



Multiple items are scanned at one time.

Note

- Click **Cancel** to cancel the scan.
- Scanned images are saved in the folder set for **Save in** in the corresponding Settings dialog displayed by clicking **Settings...**. In each Settings dialog, you can also make advanced scan settings.

Saving after Checking Scan Results

You can check the scan results, then save the images to a computer.

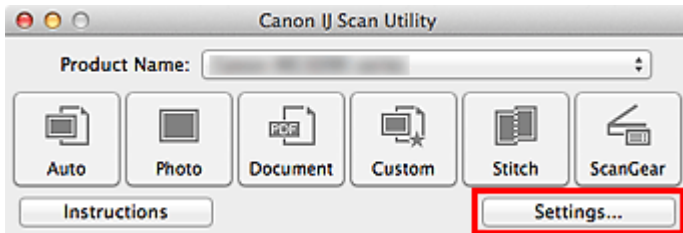
Note

- You cannot check the scan results before saving when scanned using **Auto** scan or the scanner buttons.
- The screens for scanning photos are used as examples in the following descriptions.

1. Start IJ Scan Utility.

➡ Starting IJ Scan Utility

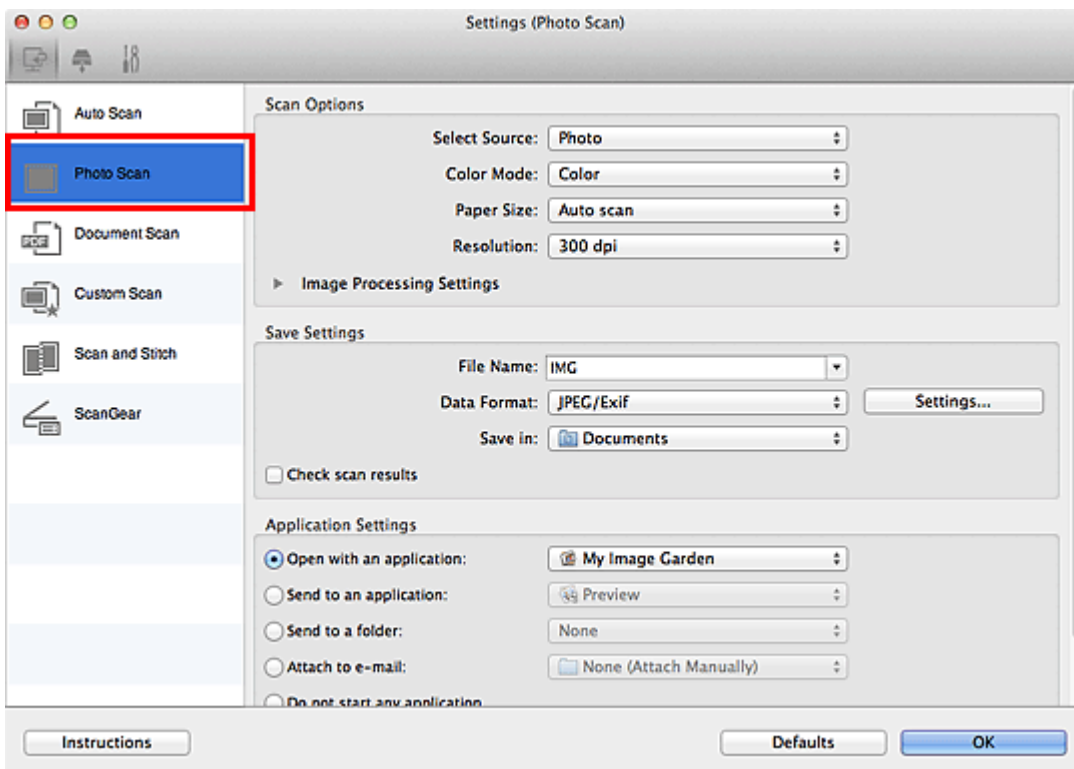
2. Click **Settings...**



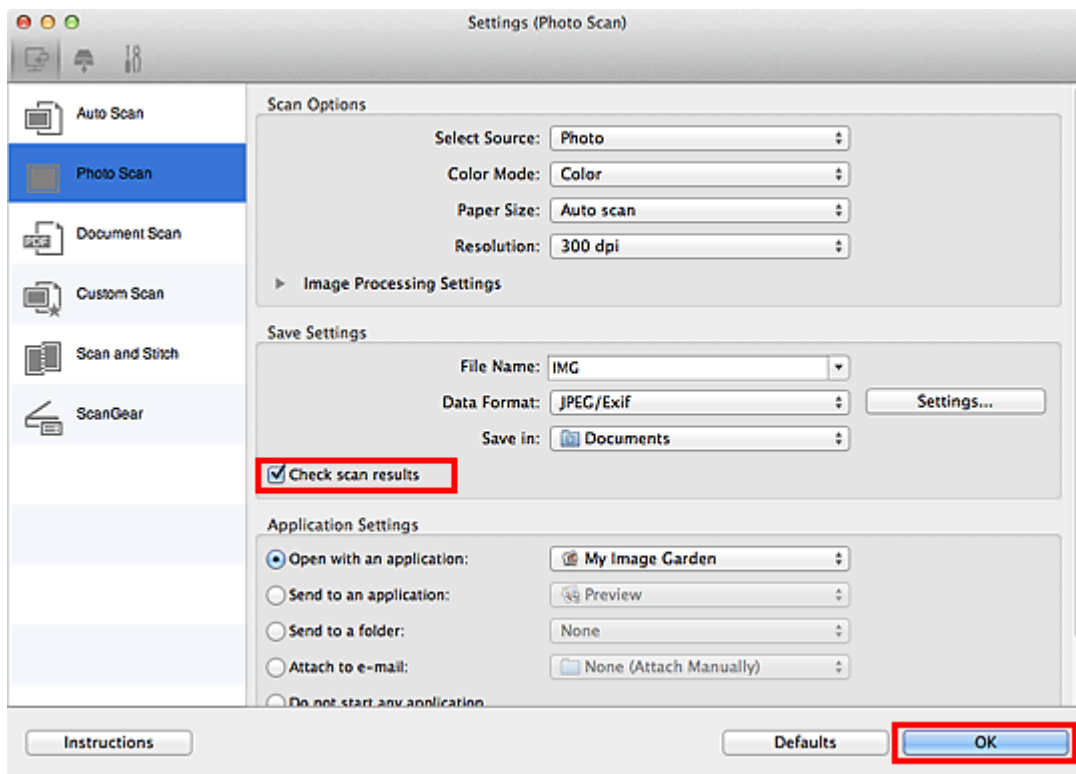
The Settings dialog appears.

➡ Settings Dialog

3. Click **Photo Scan**.



4. Select the **Check scan results** checkbox, then click **OK**.

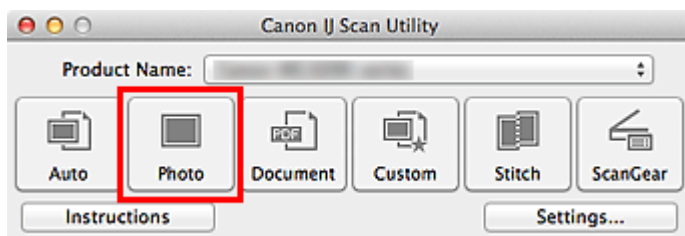


The IJ Scan Utility main screen appears.

Note

- See the following pages for details on the setting items in the Settings dialog.
 - ➡ Settings (Photo Scan) Dialog
 - ➡ Settings (Document Scan) Dialog
 - ➡ Settings (Custom Scan) Dialog
 - ➡ Settings (Scan and Stitch) Dialog
 - ➡ Settings (ScanGear) Dialog

5. Click **Photo**.



Scanning starts.

When scanning is completed, the **Save Settings** dialog appears.

Note

- Click **Cancel** to cancel the scan.

6. Change the image order or file save options as required.

You can change the image order or file save options in the **Save Settings** dialog.

➡ Save Settings Dialog

Note

- You can also adjust the orientation of the selected image by clicking  (Rotate Left 90°) or  (Rotate Right 90°).
- The default save folder is the **Documents** folder.

7. Click **OK**.

Scanned images are saved according to the settings.

[Page top ▲](#)

Sending Scanned Images via E-mail

You can send scanned images via e-mail.

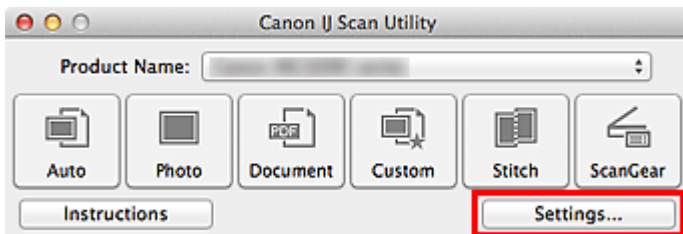
Note

- If an e-mail client is not selected, manually attach scanned and saved images to e-mail.
- The screens for scanning photos are used as examples in the following descriptions.

1. Start IJ Scan Utility.

➡ Starting IJ Scan Utility

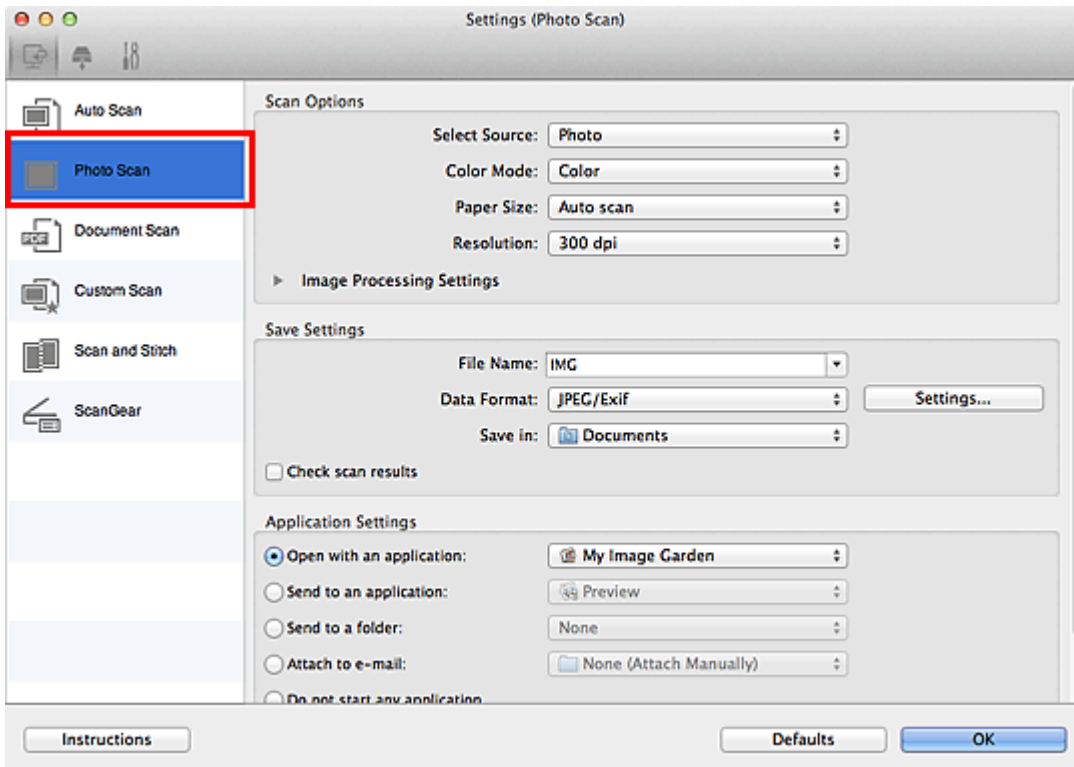
2. Click **Settings...**



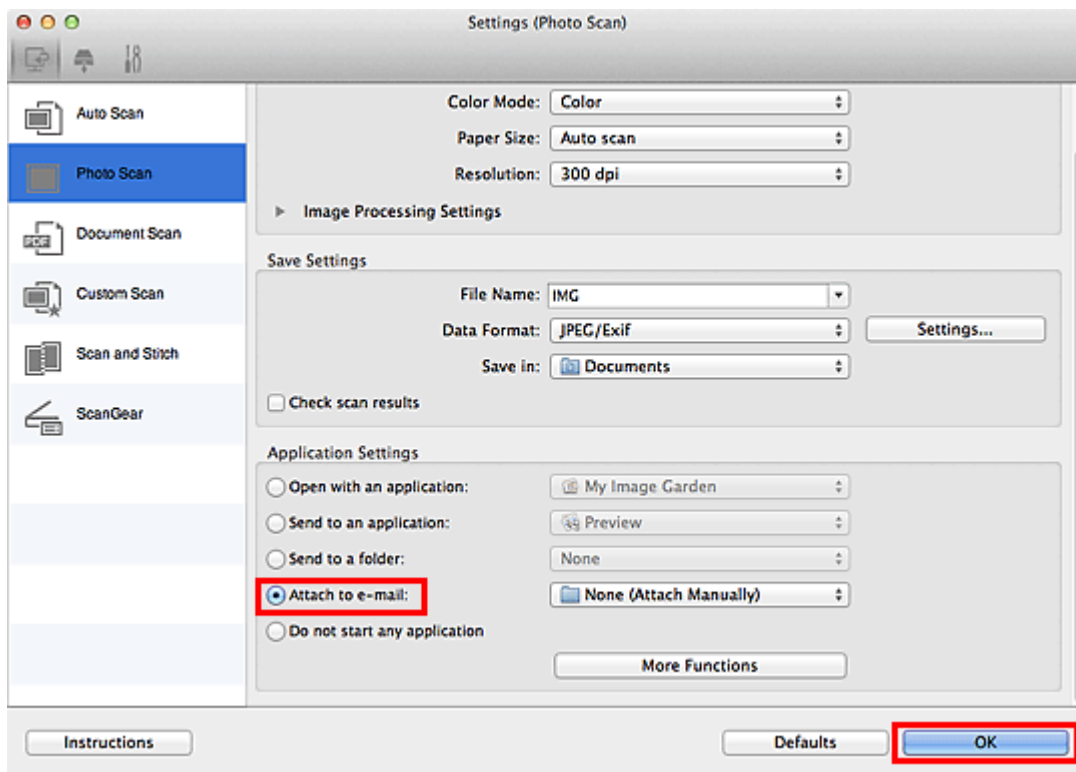
The Settings dialog appears.

➡ Settings Dialog

3. Click **Photo Scan**.



4. Select **Attach to e-mail** for **Application Settings**, then click **OK**.

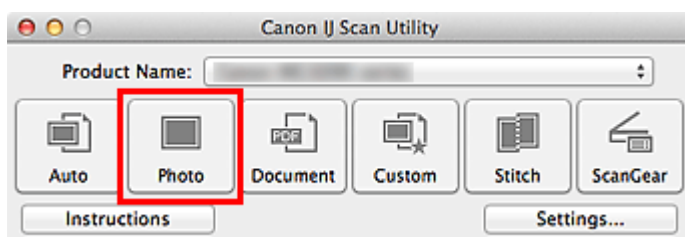


The IJ Scan Utility main screen appears.

Note

- You can add e-mail clients to use for attachments from the **Attach to e-mail** pop-up menu.
- See the following pages for details on the setting items in the Settings dialog.
 - ➡ Settings (Auto Scan) Dialog
 - ➡ Settings (Photo Scan) Dialog
 - ➡ Settings (Document Scan) Dialog
 - ➡ Settings (Custom Scan) Dialog
 - ➡ Settings (ScanGear) Dialog

5. Click **Photo**.



Scanning starts.

When scanning is completed, the specified e-mail client starts and the images will be attached to a new message.

Note

- Click **Cancel** to cancel the scan.
- The scanned images are saved according to the settings made in the Settings dialog.
- When the **Check scan results** checkbox is selected in the Settings dialog, the **Save Settings** dialog appears. After you set the save options and click **OK**, the scanned images are saved and automatically attached to a new message of the specified e-mail client.
 - ➡ Save Settings Dialog

6. Specify the recipient, enter the subject and message, then send e-mail.

For details, see the manual of your e-mail client.

Extracting Text from Scanned Images (OCR)

Scan text in scanned magazines and newspapers and display it in TextEdit (included with Mac OS).

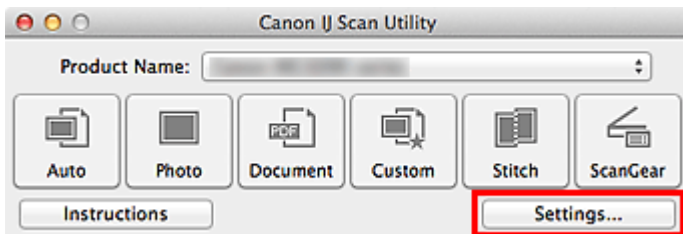
Note

- You can extract text when scanning via **Document**, **Custom** or **ScanGear**.
- The screens for scanning documents are used as examples in the following descriptions.

1. Start IJ Scan Utility.

➡ Starting IJ Scan Utility

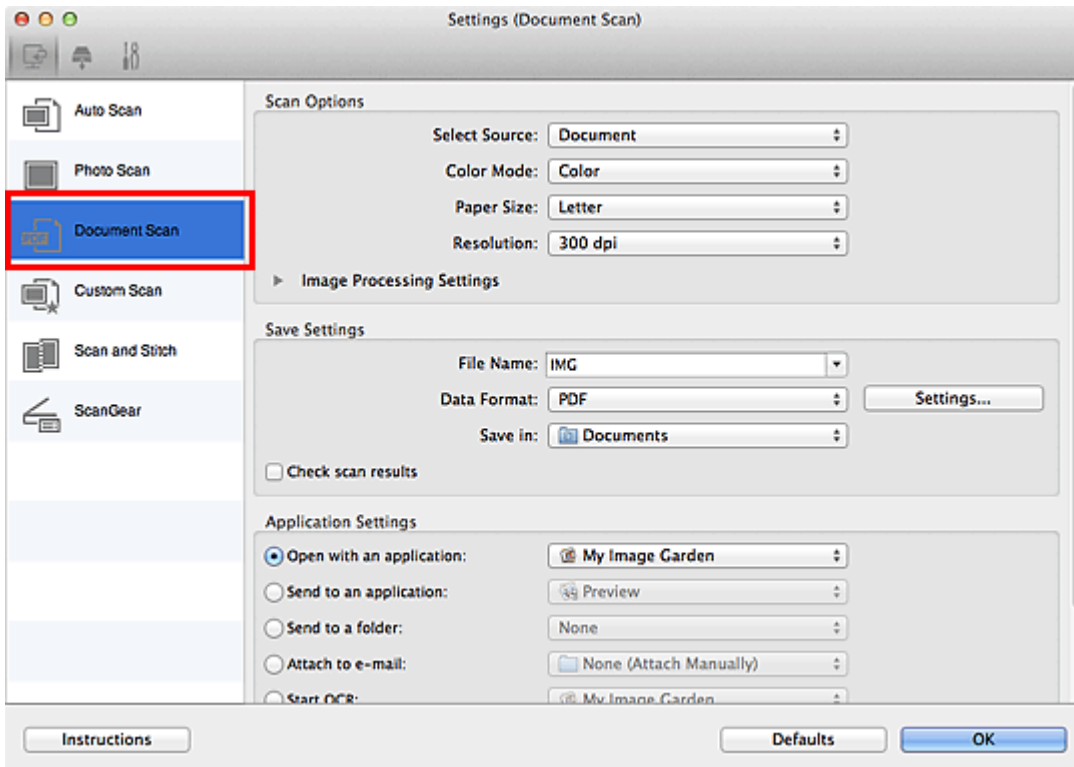
2. Click **Settings...**



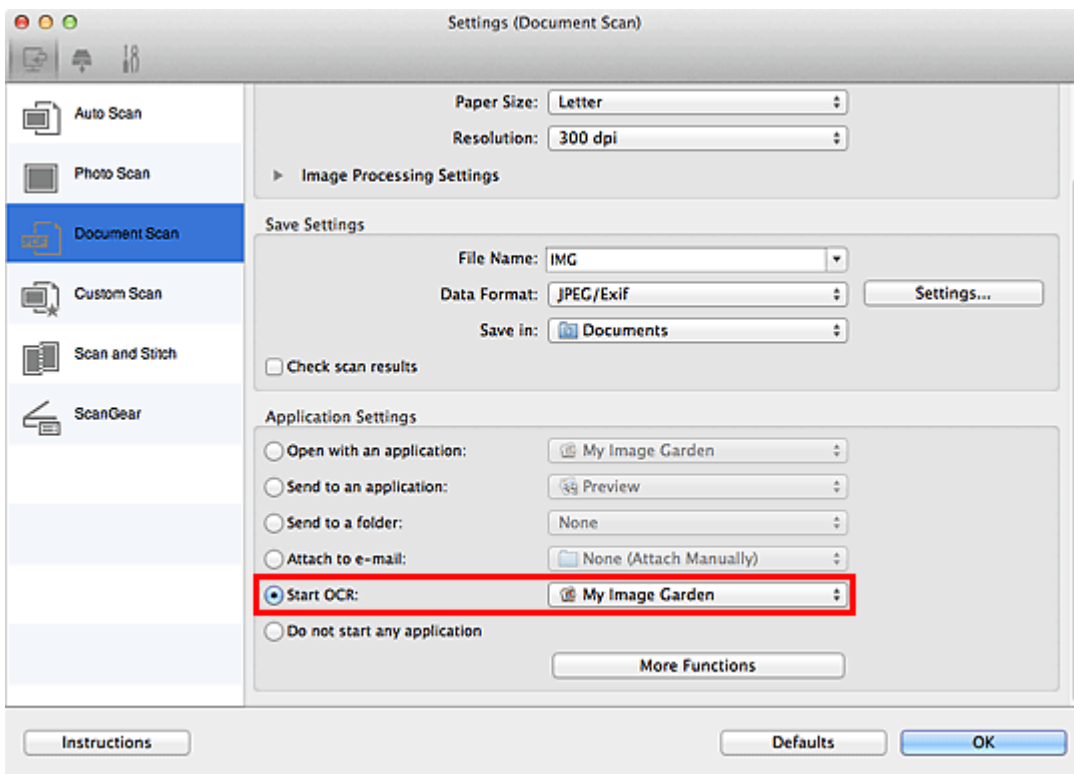
The Settings dialog appears.

➡ Settings Dialog

3. Click **Document Scan**.



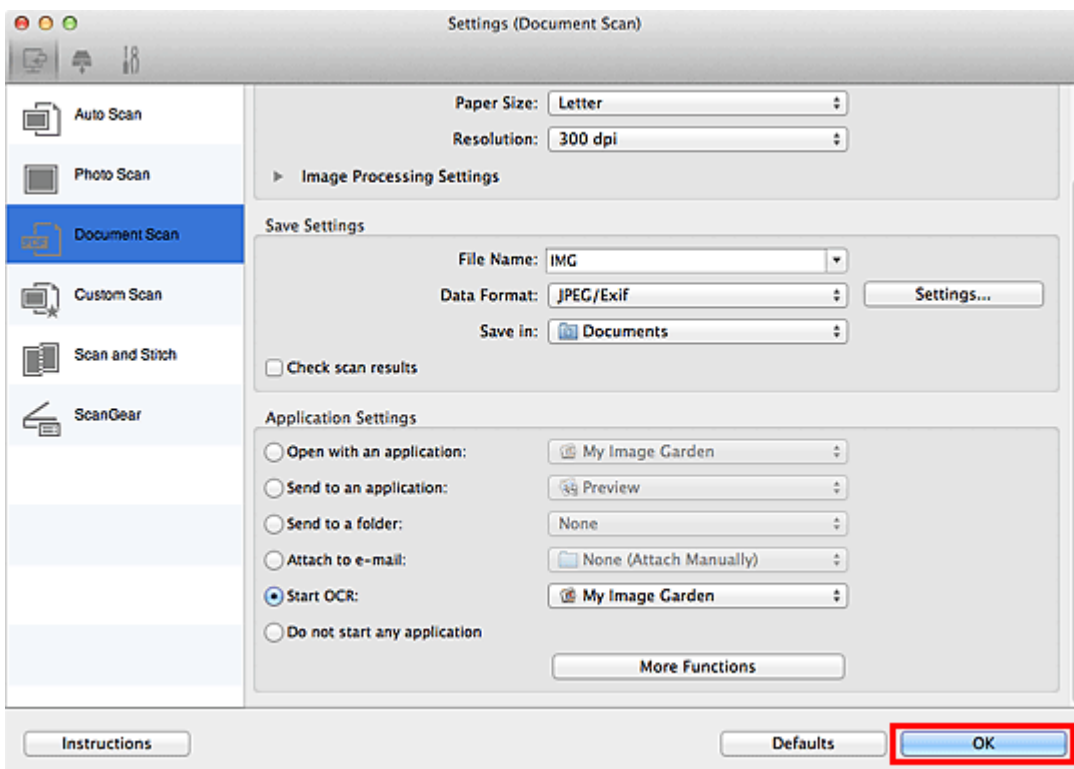
4. Select **Start OCR** for **Application Settings**, then select the application in which you want to display the result.



Note

- When My Image Garden is specified, after the image is scanned, the text in the image is extracted and appears in TextEdit (included with Mac OS).

5. Click OK.

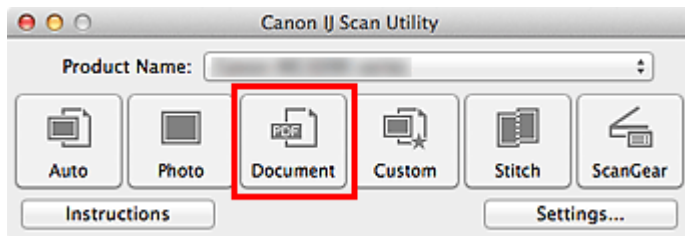


The IJ Scan Utility main screen appears.

Note

- See the following pages for details on the setting items in the Settings dialog.
 - ➔ Settings (Document Scan) Dialog
 - ➔ Settings (Custom Scan) Dialog
 - ➔ Settings (ScanGear) Dialog

6. Click **Document**.



Scanning starts.

When scanning is completed, the scanned images are saved according to the settings, and the extracted text appears in the specified application.

Note

- Click **Cancel** to cancel the scan.
- Text displayed in TextEdit (included with Mac OS) is for guidance only. Text in the image of the following types of documents may not be detected correctly.
 - Documents containing text with font size outside the range of 8 points to 40 points (at 300 dpi)
 - Slanted documents
 - Documents placed upside down or documents with text in the wrong orientation (rotated characters)
 - Documents containing special fonts, effects, italics, or hand-written text
 - Documents with narrow line spacing
 - Documents with colors in the background of text
 - Documents containing multiple languages

IJ Scan Utility Screens

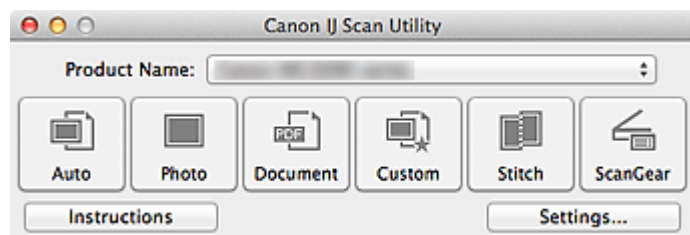
- IJ Scan Utility Main Screen
- Settings Dialog
 - Settings (Auto Scan) Dialog
 - Settings (Photo Scan) Dialog
 - Settings (Document Scan) Dialog
 - Settings (Custom Scan) Dialog
 - Settings (Scan and Stitch) Dialog
 - Settings (ScanGear) Dialog
 - Settings (AUTO SCAN Button) Dialog
 - Settings (PDF (COLOR) Button) Dialog
 - Settings (PDF (BLACK & WHITE) Button) Dialog
 - Settings (PDF (CUSTOM) Button) Dialog
 - Settings (COPY Button) Dialog
 - Settings (E-MAIL Button) Dialog
 - Settings (General Settings) Dialog
- Data Format Settings Dialog
- Save Settings Dialog
- Image Stitch Window

Page top ▲

IJ Scan Utility Main Screen

From the **Go** menu of Finder, select **Applications**, then double-click the **Canon Utilities** folder, **IJ Scan Utility** folder, then **Canon IJ Scan Utility** icon to start IJ Scan Utility.

You can complete from scanning to saving at one time by simply clicking the corresponding icon.



- **Product Name**

Displays the name of the product that IJ Scan Utility is currently set to use.

If the displayed product is not the one you want to use, select the desired product from the list.

- **Auto**

Detects the type of items automatically and saves them to a computer. The data format for saving will also be set automatically.

Save settings and the response after scanning can be specified in the **Settings (Auto Scan)** dialog.

➡ [Settings \(Auto Scan\) Dialog](#)

- **Photo**

Scans items as photos and saves them to a computer.

Scan/save settings and the response after scanning can be specified in the **Settings (Photo Scan)** dialog.

➡ [Settings \(Photo Scan\) Dialog](#)

- **Document**

Scans items as documents and saves them to a computer.

Scan/save settings and the response after scanning can be specified in the **Settings (Document Scan)** dialog.

➡ [Settings \(Document Scan\) Dialog](#)

- **Custom**

Scans items with your favorite settings and saves the images to a computer. The item type can be automatically detected.

Scan/save settings and the response after scanning can be specified in the **Settings (Custom Scan)** dialog.

➡ [Settings \(Custom Scan\) Dialog](#)

- **Stitch**

Displays the **Image Stitch** window in which you can scan the left and right halves of an item larger than the platen and combine the scanned images back into one image.

Scan/save settings and the response after scanning can be specified in the **Settings (Scan and Stitch)** dialog.

➡ [Settings \(Scan and Stitch\) Dialog](#)

- **ScanGear**

Starts ScanGear (scanner driver) in which you can make image corrections and color adjustments when scanning.

Scan/save settings and applications can be specified in the **Settings (ScanGear)** dialog.

➡ [Settings \(ScanGear\) Dialog](#)

- **Instructions**

Opens this guide.

- **Settings...**

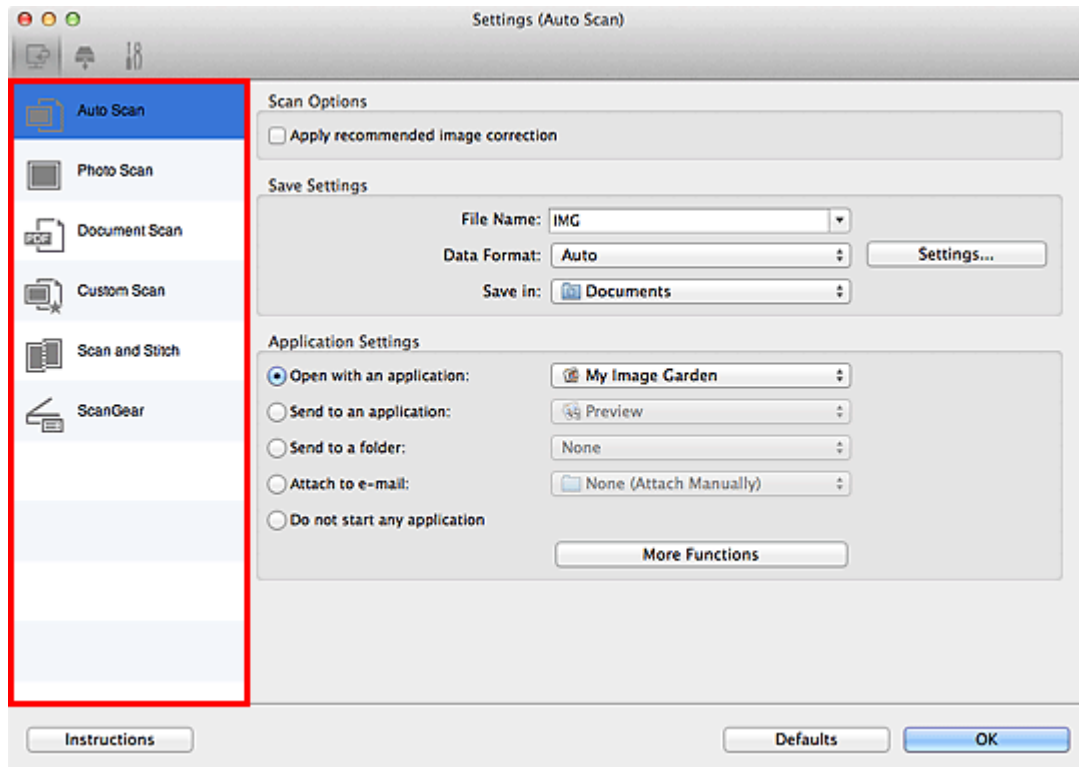
Displays the Settings dialog in which you can specify the scan/save settings and the response after scanning.

➡ [Settings Dialog](#)

[Page top ▲](#)

Settings Dialog

There are three tabs in the Settings dialog:  (Scanning from a Computer),  (Scanning Using the Scanner Buttons) and  (General Settings). When you click a tab, the view in the red frame switches and you can make advanced settings to functions on each tab.



(Scanning from a Computer) Tab

You can specify how to respond when scanning from IJ Scan Utility or My Image Garden.

- ➡ Settings (Auto Scan) Dialog
- ➡ Settings (Photo Scan) Dialog
- ➡ Settings (Document Scan) Dialog
- ➡ Settings (Custom Scan) Dialog
- ➡ Settings (Scan and Stitch) Dialog
- ➡ Settings (ScanGear) Dialog



(Scanning Using the Scanner Buttons) Tab

You can specify how to respond when scanning using the scanner buttons.

- ➡ Settings (AUTO SCAN Button) Dialog
- ➡ Settings (PDF (COLOR) Button) Dialog
- ➡ Settings (PDF (BLACK & WHITE) Button) Dialog
- ➡ Settings (PDF (CUSTOM) Button) Dialog
- ➡ Settings (COPY Button) Dialog
- ➡ Settings (E-MAIL Button) Dialog

Important

- When the Settings dialog is displayed from My Image Garden, the  (Scanning Using Scanner Buttons) tab does not appear.



(General Settings) Tab

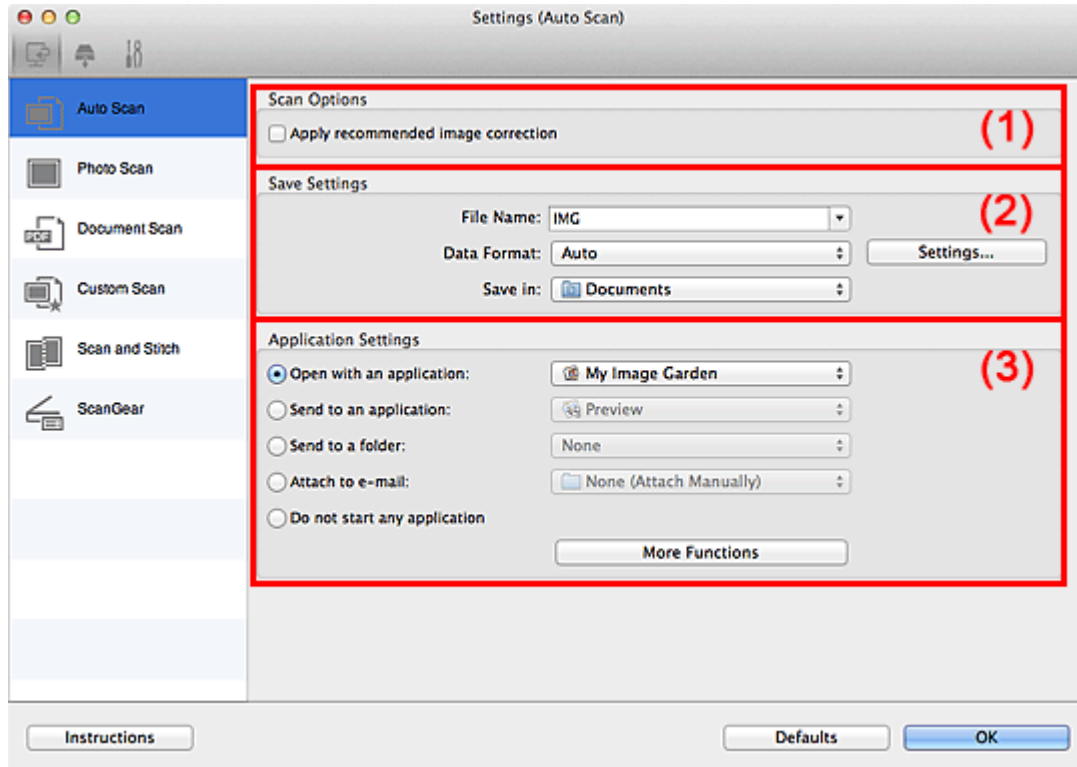
You can set the product to use, file size restriction on e-mail attachment, folder in which to save images temporarily and language to detect text in images.

[➡ Settings \(General Settings\) Dialog](#)

[Page top ▲](#)

Settings (Auto Scan) Dialog

Click **Auto Scan** on the  (Scanning from a Computer) tab to display the **Settings (Auto Scan)** dialog. In the **Settings (Auto Scan)** dialog, you can make advanced scan settings to scan by automatically detecting the item type.



(1) Scan Options Area

(2) Save Settings Area

(3) Application Settings Area



Important

- When the Settings dialog is displayed from My Image Garden, the setting items for **Application Settings** do not appear.

Supported Items

Photos, postcards, business cards, magazines, newspapers, documents, BD/DVD/CD, and film.



Important

- To scan the following types of items, specify the item type and size in the **Settings (Photo Scan)** dialog or **Settings (Document Scan)** dialog, then click **Photo** or **Document** in the IJ Scan Utility main screen. You cannot scan correctly with **Auto**.
 - A4 size photos
 - Text documents smaller than 2L (5 inches x 7 inches) (127 mm x 178 mm), such as paperback pages with the spine cut off
 - Items printed on thin white paper
 - Long narrow items such as panoramic photos
- Film may not be scanned correctly. In that case, scan with ScanGear (scanner driver).
- To scan black and white film or 120 format film, scan from the **Advanced Mode** tab of ScanGear.

➡ Scanning Film in Advanced Mode

- Reflective disc labels may not be scanned as expected.
- Place items to be scanned on the platen correctly. Otherwise, items may not be scanned as expected depending on the item type.
See "[Placing Items \(When Scanning from a Computer\)](#)" for details on how to place items.

Note

- To reduce moire, set **Select Source** to **Magazine** in the **Settings (Document Scan)** dialog, then click **Document** in the IJ Scan Utility main screen.

(1) Scan Options Area

• Apply recommended image correction

Applies suitable corrections automatically based on the item type.

Important

- The color tone may differ from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable this function.

(2) Save Settings Area

• File Name

Enter the file name of the image to be saved. When you save a file, the date and 4 digits are appended to the set file name in the "_20XX0101_0001" format.

• Data Format

Auto is selected. The following data formats are automatically applied according to the item type when saving.

- Photos, postcards, BD/DVD/CD, business cards, and film: JPEG
- Magazines, newspapers, and documents: PDF

Important

- The save format may differ depending on how you place the item.
See "[Placing Items \(When Scanning from a Computer\)](#)" for details on how to place items.

Note

- You can change the data format from **Settings...**

• Settings...

Click to display the **Data Format Settings** dialog in which you can set the quality of the images to be saved, keyword search of PDF files and their compression type, and the data format in which to save images scanned with Auto Scan.

➡ [Data Format Settings Dialog](#)

• Save in

Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, specify the destination folder in the dialog displayed by selecting **Add...** from the pop-up menu.

The default save folder is the **Documents** folder.

Important

- When the Settings dialog is displayed from My Image Garden, this option does not appear.

(3) Application Settings Area

• Open with an application

Select this when you want to enhance or correct the scanned images.
You can specify the application from the pop-up menu.

- **Send to an application**

Select this when you want to use the scanned images as they are in an application that allows you to browse or organize images.
You can specify the application from the pop-up menu.

- **Send to a folder**

Select this when you also want to save the scanned images to a folder other than the one specified in **Save in**.
You can specify the folder from the pop-up menu.

- **Attach to e-mail**

Select this when you want to send e-mails with the scanned images attached.
You can specify the e-mail client you want to start from the pop-up menu.

- **Do not start any application**

Saves to the folder specified in **Save in**.



Note

- Specify the application or folder in the dialog displayed by selecting **Add...** from the pop-up menu.
-

- **Instructions**

Opens this guide.

- **Defaults**

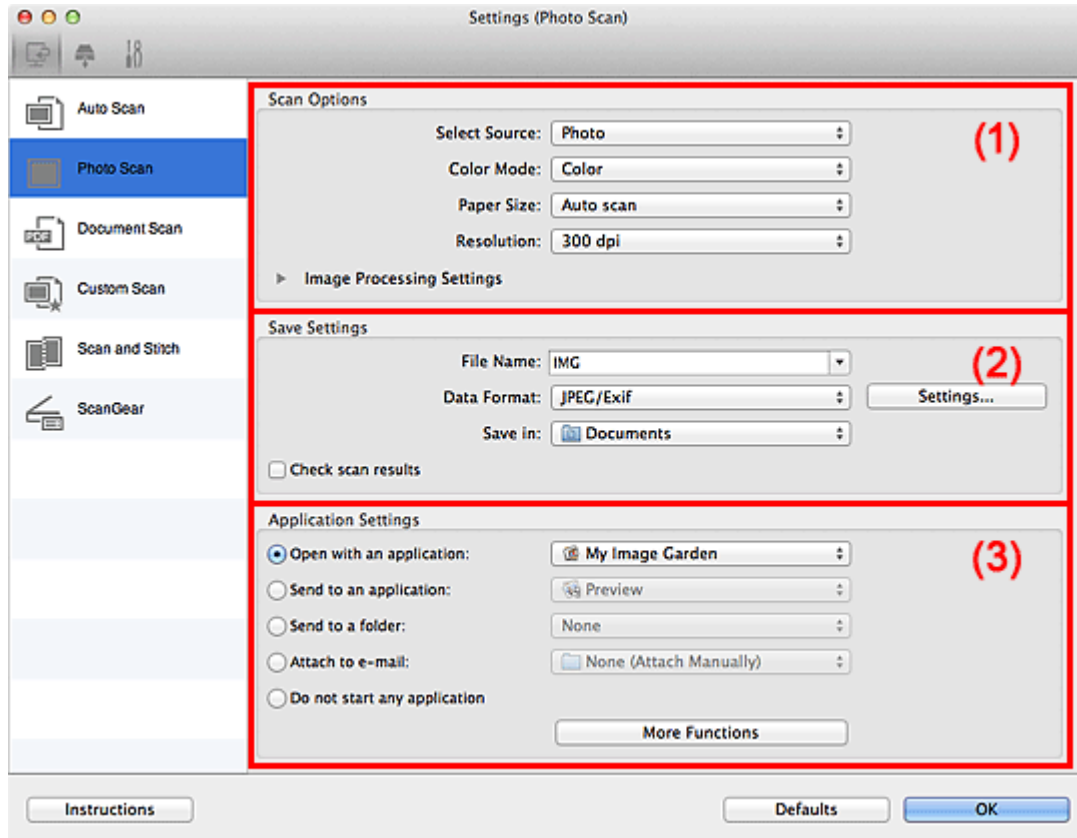
You can restore the settings in the displayed screen to the default settings.

Page top ▲

Settings (Photo Scan) Dialog

Click **Photo Scan** on the  (Scanning from a Computer) tab to display the **Settings (Photo Scan)** dialog.

In the **Settings (Photo Scan)** dialog, you can make advanced scan settings to scan items as photos.



(1) Scan Options Area

(2) Save Settings Area

(3) Application Settings Area



Important

- When the Settings dialog is displayed from My Image Garden, the setting items for **Application Settings** do not appear.

(1) Scan Options Area

- **Select Source**

Photo is selected.

- **Color Mode**

Select the color mode in which to scan the item.

- **Paper Size**

Select the size of the item to be scanned.

When you select **Custom**, a screen in which you can specify the item size appears. Select a **Unit**, then enter the **Width** and **Height**, and then click **OK**.

Width: inches (1.00 – 8.50)

Height: inches (1.00 – 11.69)

Unit:

Note

- Click **Defaults** to restore the specified settings to the default settings.

Resolution

Select the resolution of the item to be scanned.
The higher the resolution (value), the more detail in your image.

➡ [Resolution](#)

Image Processing Settings

Click  (Right Arrow) to set the following.

Note

- When **Color Mode** is **Black and White**, **Image Processing Settings** is not available.

Sharpen outline

Emphasizes the outline of the subjects to sharpen the image.

(2) Save Settings Area

File Name

Enter the file name of the image to be saved. When you save a file, the date and 4 digits are appended to the set file name in the "_20XX0101_0001" format.

Data Format

Select the data format in which to save the scanned images.
You can select **JPEG/Exif**, **TIFF** or **PNG**.

Settings...

Click to display the **Data Format Settings** dialog in which you can set the quality of the images to be saved, keyword search of PDF files and their compression type, and the data format in which to save images scanned with Auto Scan.

➡ [Data Format Settings Dialog](#)

Save in

Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, specify the destination folder in the dialog displayed by selecting **Add...** from the pop-up menu.
The default save folder is the **Documents** folder.

Important

- When the Settings dialog is displayed from My Image Garden, this option does not appear.

Check scan results

Displays the **Save Settings** dialog after scanning.

➡ [Save Settings Dialog](#)

Important

- After scanning from My Image Garden, the **Save Settings** dialog does not appear.

(3) Application Settings Area

Open with an application

Select this when you want to enhance or correct the scanned images.

You can specify the application from the pop-up menu.

- **Send to an application**

Select this when you want to use the scanned images as they are in an application that allows you to browse or organize images.

You can specify the application from the pop-up menu.

- **Send to a folder**

Select this when you also want to save the scanned images to a folder other than the one specified in **Save in**.

You can specify the folder from the pop-up menu.

- **Attach to e-mail**

Select this when you want to send e-mails with the scanned images attached.

You can specify the e-mail client you want to start from the pop-up menu.

- **Do not start any application**

Saves to the folder specified in **Save in**.



Note

- Specify the application or folder in the dialog displayed by selecting **Add...** from the pop-up menu.
-

- **Instructions**

Opens this guide.

- **Defaults**

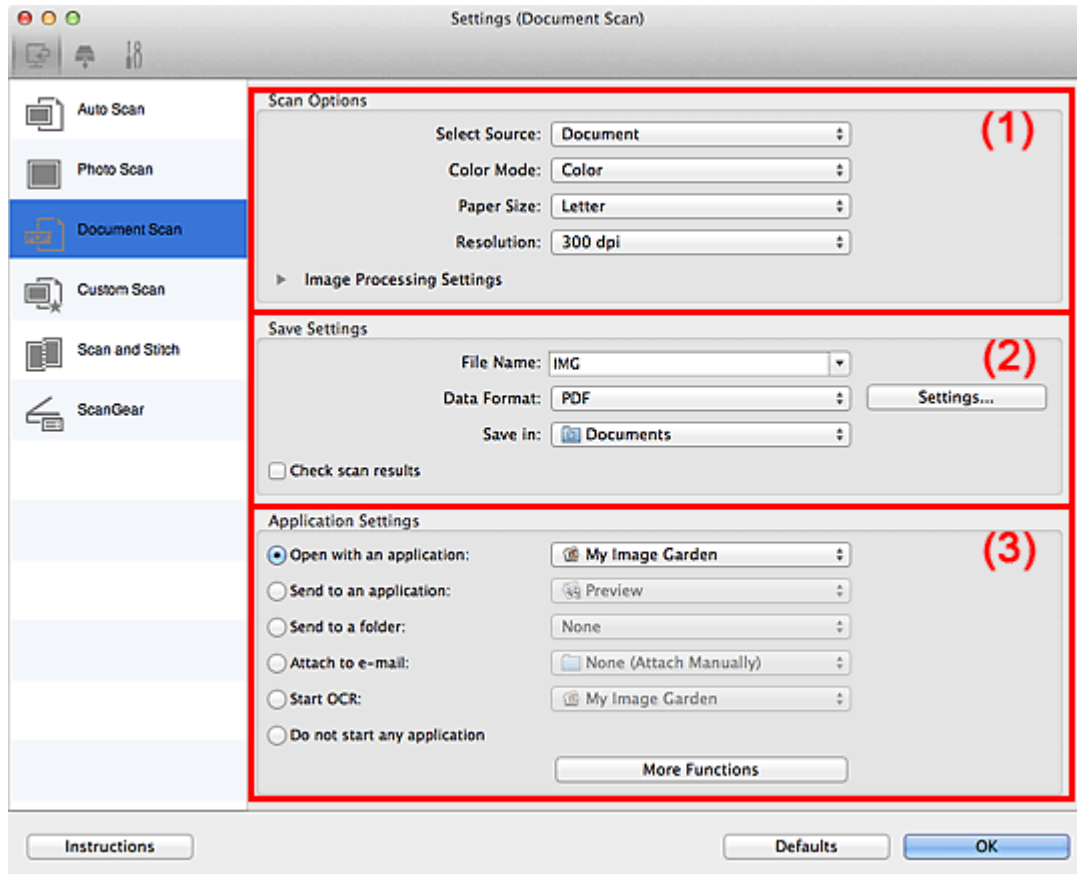
You can restore the settings in the displayed screen to the default settings.

Page top ▲

Settings (Document Scan) Dialog

Click **Document Scan** on the  (Scanning from a Computer) tab to display the **Settings (Document Scan)** dialog.

In the **Settings (Document Scan)** dialog, you can make advanced scan settings to scan items as documents.



(1) Scan Options Area

(2) Save Settings Area

(3) Application Settings Area



Important

- When the Settings dialog is displayed from the Scan screen of My Image Garden, the setting items for **Application Settings** do not appear.

(1) Scan Options Area

- Select Source**

Select the type of item to be scanned.

Scanning documents: **Document**

Scanning magazines: **Magazine**

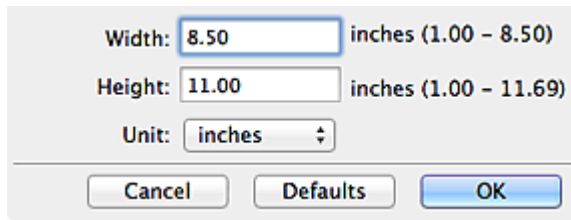
- Color Mode**

Select the color mode in which to scan the item.

- **Paper Size**

Select the size of the item to be scanned.

When you select **Custom**, a screen in which you can specify the item size appears. Select a **Unit**, then enter the **Width** and **Height**, and then click **OK**.



Width: 8.50 inches (1.00 – 8.50)
Height: 11.00 inches (1.00 – 11.69)
Unit: inches
Buttons: Cancel, Defaults, OK

Note

- Click **Defaults** to restore the specified settings to the default settings.

- **Resolution**

Select the resolution of the item to be scanned.

The higher the resolution (value), the more detail in your image.

➡ Resolution

- **Image Processing Settings**

Click  (Right Arrow) to set the following.

Note

- When **Color Mode** is **Black and White**, only **Reduce gutter shadow**, **Correct slanted text document** and **Detect the orientation of text document and rotate image** appear.

- **Apply Auto Document Fix**

Select this checkbox to sharpen text in a document or magazine for better readability.



Important

- The color tone may differ from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.



Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable this function.

- **Sharpen outline**

Emphasizes the outline of the subjects to sharpen the image.

- **Reduce show-through**

Sharpens text in an item or reduces show-through in newspapers, etc.

- **Reduce moire**

Reduces moire patterns.

Printed materials are displayed as a collection of fine dots. "Moire" is a phenomenon where uneven gradation or a stripe pattern appears when such photos or pictures printed with fine dots are scanned.



Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable **Reduce moire**.

- **Reduce gutter shadow**

Reduces gutter shadows that appear between pages when scanning open booklets.



Note

- Use ScanGear (scanner driver)'s **Advanced Mode** tab to correct gutter shadows when scanning non-standard size items or specified areas.
See "**Gutter Shadow Correction**" for details.

- **Correct slanted text document**

Detects the scanned text and corrects the angle (within -0.1 to -10 degrees or +0.1 to +10 degrees) of the document.

Important

- The following types of documents may not be corrected properly since the text cannot be detected correctly.
 - Documents in which the text lines are inclined more than 10 degrees or the angles vary by line
 - Documents containing both vertical and horizontal text
 - Documents with extremely large or small fonts
 - Documents with small amount of text
 - Documents containing figures/images
 - Hand-written text
 - Documents containing both vertical and horizontal lines (tables)

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable **Correct slanted text document**.

• Detect the orientation of text document and rotate image

Automatically rotates the image to the correct orientation by detecting the orientation of text in the scanned document.

Important

- Only text documents written in languages that can be selected from **Document Language** in the **Settings (General Settings)** dialog are supported.
[➡ Settings \(General Settings\) Dialog](#)
- The orientation may not be detected for the following types of settings or documents since the text cannot be detected correctly.
 - Resolution is outside the range of 300 dpi to 600 dpi
 - Font size is outside the range of 8 points to 48 points
 - Documents containing special fonts, effects, italics, or hand-written text
 - Documents with patterned backgroundsIn that case, select the **Check scan results** checkbox and rotate the image in the **Save Settings** dialog.
[➡ Save Settings Dialog](#)

(2) Save Settings Area

• File Name

Enter the file name of the image to be saved. When you save a file, the date and 4 digits are appended to the set file name in the "_20XX0101_0001" format.

• Data Format

Select the data format in which to save the scanned images.

You can select **JPEG/Exif**, **TIFF**, **PNG**, **PDF**, or **PDF (Multiple Pages)**.

Important

- When **Start OCR** is selected in **Application Settings**, you cannot select **PDF** or **PDF (Multiple Pages)**.

• Settings...

Click to display the **Data Format Settings** dialog in which you can set the quality of the images to be saved, keyword search of PDF files and their compression type, and the data format in which to save images scanned with Auto Scan.

[➡ Data Format Settings Dialog](#)

• Save in

Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, specify the destination folder in the dialog displayed by selecting **Add...** from the pop-up menu.

The default save folder is the **Documents** folder.

Important

- When the Settings dialog is displayed from My Image Garden, this option does not appear.

- **Check scan results**

Displays the **Save Settings** dialog after scanning.

➡ [Save Settings Dialog](#)

Important

- After scanning from My Image Garden, the **Save Settings** dialog does not appear.

(3) Application Settings Area

- **Open with an application**

Select this when you want to enhance or correct the scanned images.

You can specify the application from the pop-up menu.

- **Send to an application**

Select this when you want to use the scanned images as they are in an application that allows you to browse or organize images.

You can specify the application from the pop-up menu.

- **Send to a folder**

Select this when you also want to save the scanned images to a folder other than the one specified in **Save in**.

You can specify the folder from the pop-up menu.

- **Attach to e-mail**

Select this when you want to send e-mails with the scanned images attached.

You can specify the e-mail client you want to start from the pop-up menu.

- **Start OCR**

Select this when you want to convert text in the image into text data using specified OCR software.

You can specify the application from the pop-up menu.

- **Do not start any application**

Saves to the folder specified in **Save in**.

Note

- Specify the application or folder in the dialog displayed by selecting **Add...** from the pop-up menu.

- **Instructions**

Opens this guide.

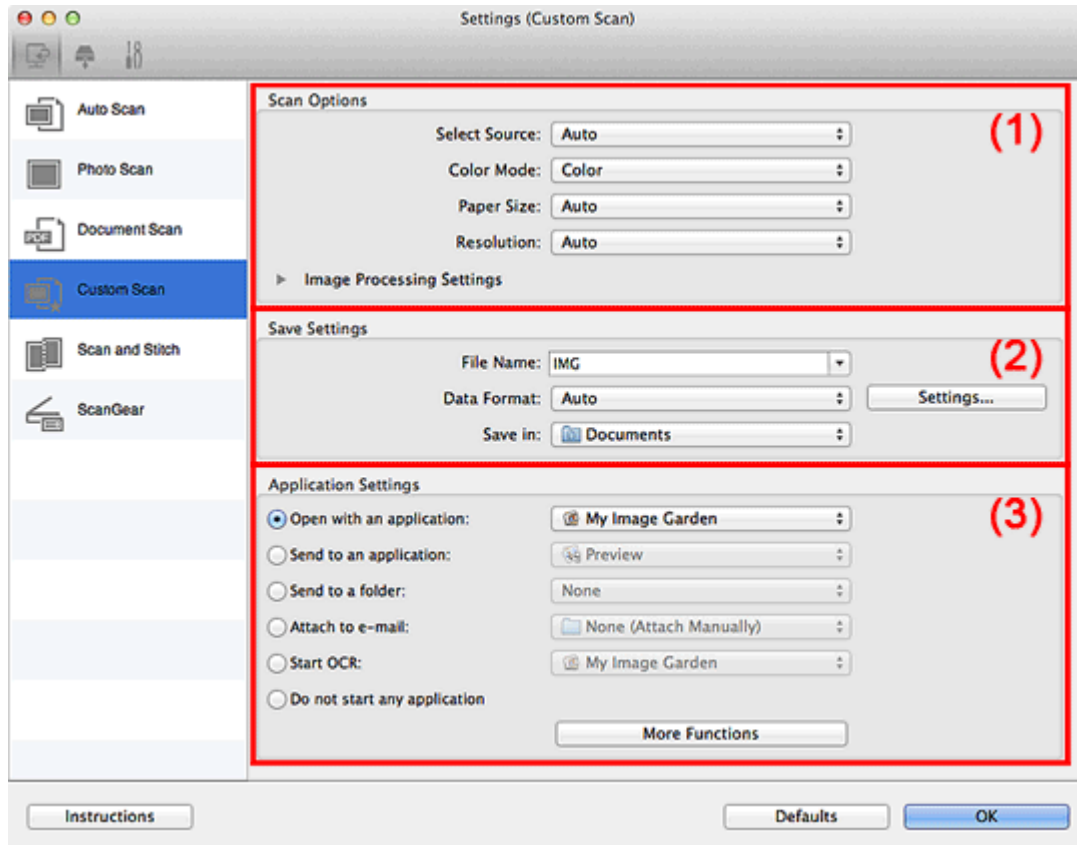
- **Defaults**

You can restore the settings in the displayed screen to the default settings.

Settings (Custom Scan) Dialog

Click **Custom Scan** on the  (Scanning from a Computer) tab to display the **Settings (Custom Scan)** dialog.

In the **Settings (Custom Scan)** dialog, you can make advanced scan settings to scan according to your preference.



(1) Scan Options Area

(2) Save Settings Area

(3) Application Settings Area

Important

- When the Settings dialog is displayed from the Scan screen of My Image Garden, the setting items for **Application Settings** do not appear.

(1) Scan Options Area

• Select Source

Select the type of item to be scanned. When **Auto** is selected, the item type is automatically detected.

Color Mode, **Paper Size** and **Resolution** are automatically set as well.

Select **Film (Auto Detect)** to detect the film type (negative or positive) automatically.

Important

- Item types supported by **Auto** are photos, postcards, business cards, magazines, newspapers, documents, BD/DVD/CD, and Film.

- To scan the following types of items, specify the item type or size. You cannot scan correctly with **Auto**.
 - A4 size photos
 - Text documents smaller than 2L (5 inches x 7 inches) (127 mm x 178 mm), such as paperback pages with the spine cut off
 - Items printed on thin white paper
 - Long narrow items such as panoramic photos
- Film may not be scanned correctly. In that case, scan with ScanGear (scanner driver).
- To scan black and white film or 120 format film, scan from the **Advanced Mode** tab of ScanGear.
 - ➔ [Scanning Film in Advanced Mode](#)
- Reflective disc labels may not be scanned as expected.
- Place items correctly according to the type of item to be scanned. Otherwise, items may not be scanned correctly.
 - See "[Placing Items \(When Scanning from a Computer\)](#)" for details on how to place items.
- To convert text in the image into text data after scanning, specify **Select Source** instead of selecting **Auto**.

Note

- To reduce moire, set **Select Source** to **Magazine**.

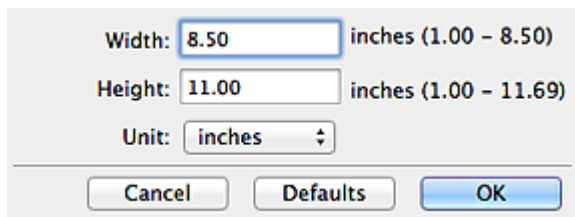
• Color Mode

Select the color mode in which to scan the item.

• Paper Size

Select the size of the item to be scanned.

When you select **Custom**, a screen in which you can specify the item size appears. Select a **Unit**, then enter the **Width** and **Height**, and then click **OK**.



Width: inches (1.00 – 8.50)

Height: inches (1.00 – 11.69)

Unit:

Note

- Only **Auto** is available when **Select Source** is **Auto**.
- Only **35 mm Film** is available when **Select Source** is film.
- Click **Defaults** in the screen in which you can specify the item size to restore the specified settings to the default settings.

• Resolution

Select the resolution of the item to be scanned. The following scanning resolutions can be specified:
When **Select Source** is other than film: 75 dpi / 100 dpi / 150 dpi / 200 dpi / 300 dpi / 400 dpi / 600 dpi

When **Select Source** is film: 300 dpi / 400 dpi / 600 dpi / 1200 dpi / 2400 dpi / 4800 dpi

The higher the resolution (value), the more detail in your image.

➔ [Resolution](#)

Note

- Only **Auto** is available when **Select Source** is **Auto**.

• Image Processing Settings

Click  (Right Arrow) to set the following. Available setting items vary by **Select Source**.

When Select Source is Photo or Film

Note

- When **Color Mode** is **Black and White**, **Image Processing Settings** is not available.

• Sharpen outline

Emphasizes the outline of the subjects to sharpen the image.

When Select Source is Magazine or Document

Note

- When **Color Mode** is **Black and White**, only **Reduce gutter shadow**, **Correct slanted text document** and **Detect the orientation of text document and rotate image** appear.

• Apply Auto Document Fix

Select this checkbox to sharpen text in a document or magazine for better readability.



Important

- The color tone may differ from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.



Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable this function.

• Sharpen outline

Emphasizes the outline of the subjects to sharpen the image.

• Reduce show-through

Sharpens text in an item or reduces show-through in newspapers, etc.

• Reduce moire

Reduces moire patterns.

Printed materials are displayed as a collection of fine dots. "Moire" is a phenomenon where uneven gradation or a stripe pattern appears when such photos or pictures printed with fine dots are scanned.



Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable **Reduce moire**.

• Reduce gutter shadow

Reduces gutter shadows that appear between pages when scanning open booklets.



Note

- Use ScanGear 's **Advanced Mode** tab to correct gutter shadows when scanning non-standard size items or specified areas.
See "**Gutter Shadow Correction**" for details.

• Correct slanted text document

Detects the scanned text and corrects the angle (within -0.1 to -10 degrees or +0.1 to +10 degrees) of the document.



Important

- The following types of documents may not be corrected properly since the text cannot be detected correctly.
 - Documents in which the text lines are inclined more than 10 degrees or the angles vary by line
 - Documents containing both vertical and horizontal text
 - Documents with extremely large or small fonts
 - Documents with small amount of text
 - Documents containing figures/images
 - Hand-written text
 - Documents containing both vertical and horizontal lines (tables)



Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable **Correct slanted text document**.

• Detect the orientation of text document and rotate image

Automatically rotates the image to the correct orientation by detecting the orientation of text in the scanned document.

Important

- Only text documents written in languages that can be selected from **Document Language** in the **Settings (General Settings)** dialog are supported.
➡ [Settings \(General Settings\) Dialog](#)
- The orientation may not be detected for the following types of settings or documents since the text cannot be detected correctly.
 - Resolution is outside the range of 300 dpi to 600 dpi
 - Font size is outside the range of 8 points to 48 points
 - Documents containing special fonts, effects, italics, or hand-written text
 - Documents with patterned backgroundsIn that case, select the **Check scan results** checkbox and rotate the image in the **Save Settings** dialog.
➡ [Save Settings Dialog](#)

When Select Source is Auto

- **Apply recommended image correction**

Applies suitable corrections automatically based on the item type.

Important

- The color tone may differ from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable this function.

(2) Save Settings Area

- **File Name**

Enter the file name of the image to be saved. When you save a file, the date and 4 digits are appended to the set file name in the "_20XX0101_0001" format.

- **Data Format**

Select the data format in which to save the scanned images.

You can select **JPEG/Exif**, **TIFF**, **PNG**, **PDF**, **PDF (Multiple Pages)**, or **Auto**.

Important

- When **Auto** is selected, the save format may differ depending on how you place the item. See "[Placing Items \(When Scanning from a Computer\)](#)" for details on how to place items.
- When **Start OCR** is selected in **Application Settings**, you cannot select **PDF**, **PDF (Multiple Pages)**, or **Auto**.

Note

- **Auto** appears only when **Auto** is selected for **Select Source** in **Scan Options**.

- **Settings...**

Click to display the **Data Format Settings** dialog in which you can set the quality of the images to be saved, keyword search of PDF files and their compression type, and the data format in which to save images scanned with Auto Scan.

➡ [Data Format Settings Dialog](#)

- **Save in**

Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, specify the destination folder in the dialog displayed by selecting **Add...** from the pop-up menu.

The default save folder is the **Documents** folder.

Important

- When the Settings dialog is displayed from My Image Garden, this option does not appear.

- **Check scan results**

Displays the **Save Settings** dialog after scanning.

➡ **Save Settings Dialog**



Important

- This does not appear when **Select Source** is **Auto**.
- After scanning from My Image Garden, the **Save Settings** dialog does not appear.

(3) Application Settings Area

- **Open with an application**

Select this when you want to enhance or correct the scanned images.

You can specify the application from the pop-up menu.

- **Send to an application**

Select this when you want to use the scanned images as they are in an application that allows you to browse or organize images.

You can specify the application from the pop-up menu.

- **Send to a folder**

Select this when you also want to save the scanned images to a folder other than the one specified in **Save in**.

You can specify the folder from the pop-up menu.

- **Attach to e-mail**

Select this when you want to send e-mails with the scanned images attached.

You can specify the e-mail client you want to start from the pop-up menu.

- **Start OCR**

Select this when you want to convert text in the image into text data using specified OCR software.

You can specify the application from the pop-up menu.

- **Do not start any application**

Saves to the folder specified in **Save in**.



Note

- Specify the application or folder in the dialog displayed by selecting **Add...** from the pop-up menu.

- **Instructions**

Opens this guide.

- **Defaults**

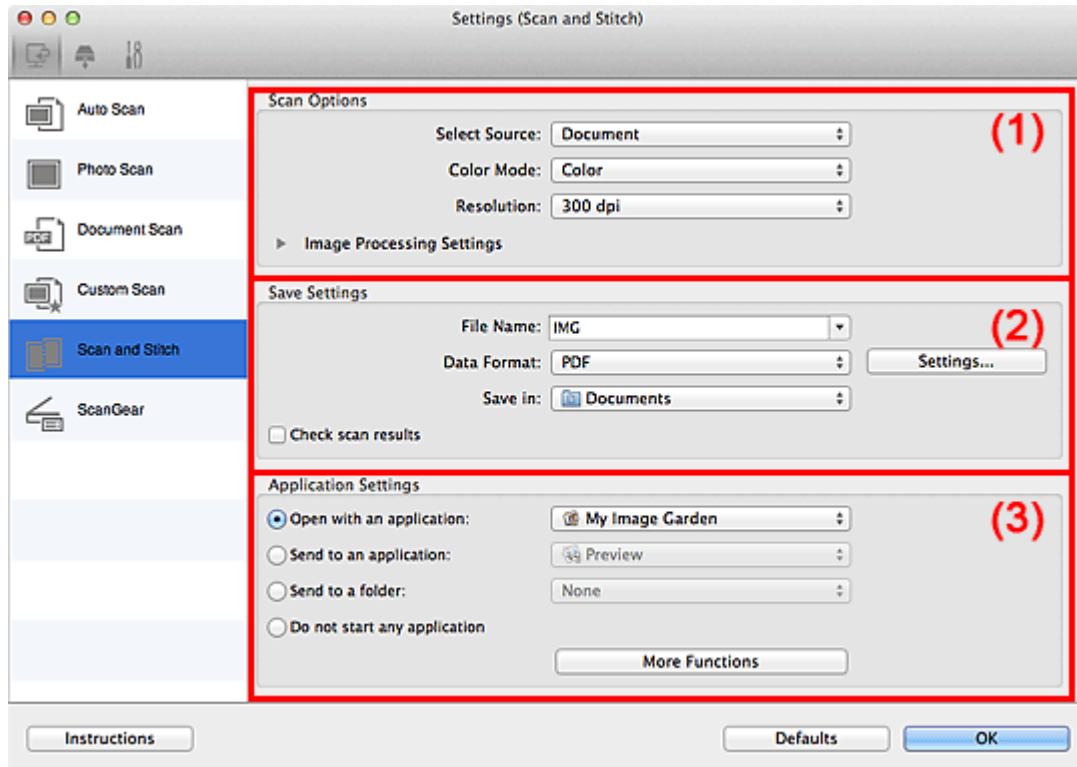
You can restore the settings in the displayed screen to the default settings.

Page top ▲

Settings (Scan and Stitch) Dialog

Click **Scan and Stitch** on the  (Scanning from a Computer) tab to display the **Settings (Scan and Stitch)** dialog.

In the **Settings (Scan and Stitch)** dialog, you can make advanced scan settings for scanning items larger than the platen.



(1) Scan Options Area

(2) Save Settings Area

(3) Application Settings Area



Important

- When the Settings dialog is displayed from the Scan screen of My Image Garden, the setting items for **Application Settings** do not appear.

(1) Scan Options Area

• Select Source

Select the type of item to be scanned.

Scanning photos: **Photo**

Scanning documents: **Document**

Scanning magazines: **Magazine**



Note

- To reduce moire, set **Select Source** to **Magazine**.

• Color Mode

Select the color mode in which to scan the item.

- **Resolution**

Select the resolution of the item to be scanned.

The higher the resolution (value), the more detail in your image.

➡ [Resolution](#)

- **Image Processing Settings**

Click  (Right Arrow) to set the following. Available setting items vary by **Select Source**.

Note

- When **Color Mode** is **Black and White**, **Image Processing Settings** is not available.

When Select Source is Photo

- **Sharpen outline**

Emphasizes the outline of the subjects to sharpen the image.

When Select Source is Magazine or Document

- **Sharpen outline**

Emphasizes the outline of the subjects to sharpen the image.

- **Reduce show-through**

Sharpens text in an item or reduces show-through in newspapers, etc.

- **Reduce moire**

Reduces moire patterns.

Printed materials are displayed as a collection of fine dots. "Moire" is a phenomenon where uneven gradation or a stripe pattern appears when such photos or pictures printed with fine dots are scanned.

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable **Reduce moire**.

(2) Save Settings Area

- **File Name**

Enter the file name of the image to be saved. When you save a file, the date and 4 digits are appended to the set file name in the "_20XX0101_0001" format.

- **Data Format**

Select the data format in which to save the scanned images.

You can select **JPEG/Exif**, **TIFF**, **PNG**, **PDF**, or **PDF (Multiple Pages)**.

- **Settings...**

Click to display the **Data Format Settings** dialog in which you can set the quality of the images to be saved, keyword search of PDF files and their compression type, and the data format in which to save images scanned with Auto Scan.

➡ [Data Format Settings Dialog](#)

- **Save in**

Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, specify the destination folder in the dialog displayed by selecting **Add...** from the pop-up menu.

The default save folder is the **Documents** folder.

Important

- When the Settings dialog is displayed from My Image Garden, this option does not appear.

- **Check scan results**

Displays the **Save Settings** dialog after scanning.

➡ [Save Settings Dialog](#)

Important

- After scanning from My Image Garden, the **Save Settings** dialog does not appear.

(3) Application Settings Area

- **Open with an application**

Select this when you want to enhance or correct the scanned images.

You can specify the application from the pop-up menu.

- **Send to an application**

Select this when you want to use the scanned images as they are in an application that allows you to browse or organize images.

You can specify the application from the pop-up menu.

- **Send to a folder**

Select this when you also want to save the scanned images to a folder other than the one specified in **Save in**.

You can specify the folder from the pop-up menu.

- **Do not start any application**

Saves to the folder specified in **Save in**.



Note

- Specify the application or folder in the dialog displayed by selecting **Add...** from the pop-up menu.
-

- **Instructions**

Opens this guide.

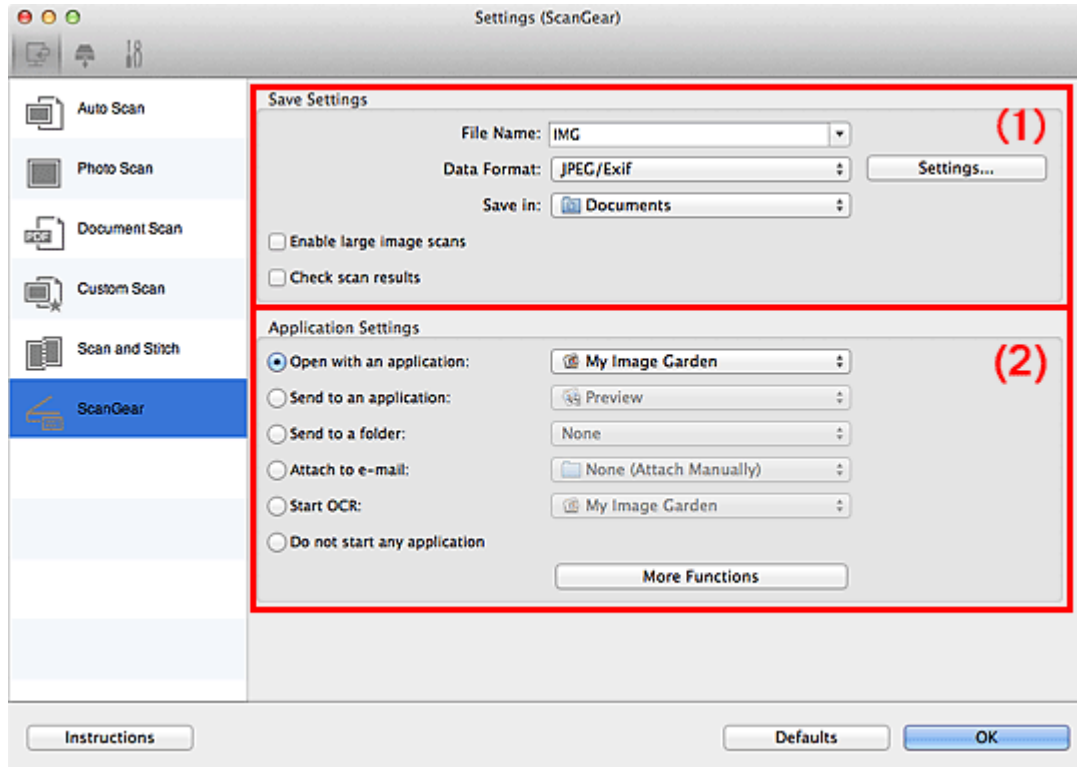
- **Defaults**

You can restore the settings in the displayed screen to the default settings.

Page top ▲

Settings (ScanGear) Dialog

Click **ScanGear** on the  (Scanning from a Computer) tab to display the **Settings (ScanGear)** dialog. In the **Settings (ScanGear)** dialog, you can specify how to save images when scanning items using ScanGear (scanner driver) and how to respond after saving them.



(1) Save Settings Area

(2) Application Settings Area



Important

- When the Settings dialog is displayed from My Image Garden, the setting items for **Application Settings** do not appear.

(1) Save Settings Area

• File Name

Enter the file name of the image to be saved. When you save a file, the date and 4 digits are appended to the set file name in the "_20XX0101_0001" format.

• Data Format

Select the data format in which to save the scanned images.

You can select **JPEG/Exif**, **TIFF**, **PNG**, **PDF**, or **PDF (Multiple Pages)**.



Note

- When **PDF** or **PDF (Multiple Pages)** is selected, images up to 9600 pixels x 9600 pixels can be scanned.
- When the **Enable large image scans** checkbox is selected in **Save Settings**, or when **Start OCR** is selected in **Application Settings**, you can select **JPEG/Exif**, **TIFF** or **PNG**.

- **Settings...**

Click to display the **Data Format Settings** dialog in which you can set the quality of the images to be saved, keyword search of PDF files and their compression type, and the data format in which to save images scanned with Auto Scan.

➡ [Data Format Settings Dialog](#)

- **Save in**

Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, specify the destination folder in the dialog displayed by selecting **Add...** from the pop-up menu.

The default save folder is the **Documents** folder.

Important

- When the Settings dialog is displayed from My Image Garden, this option does not appear.

- **Enable large image scans**

Select this checkbox to scan images up to 50000 pixels x 50000 pixels and 4.0 GB.

Important

- When this checkbox is selected, you cannot select **Send to an application**, **Send to a folder**, **Attach to e-mail** or **Start OCR**.
- When the Settings dialog is displayed from My Image Garden, this option does not appear.

Note

- When this checkbox is not selected, images up to 10208 pixels x 14032 pixels can be scanned.

- **Check scan results**

Displays the **Save Settings** dialog after scanning.

➡ [Save Settings Dialog](#)

Important

- When the Settings dialog is displayed from My Image Garden, this option does not appear.

(2) Application Settings Area

- **Open with an application**

Select this when you want to enhance or correct the scanned images.

You can specify the application from the pop-up menu.

- **Send to an application**

Select this when you want to use the scanned images as they are in an application that allows you to browse or organize images.

You can specify the application from the pop-up menu.

- **Send to a folder**

Select this when you also want to save the scanned images to a folder other than the one specified in **Save in**.

You can specify the folder from the pop-up menu.

- **Attach to e-mail**

Select this when you want to send e-mails with the scanned images attached.

You can specify the e-mail client you want to start from the pop-up menu.

- **Start OCR**

Select this when you want to convert text in the image into text data using specified OCR software.

You can specify the application from the pop-up menu.

- **Do not start any application**

Saves to the folder specified in **Save in**.

Note

- Specify the application or folder in the dialog displayed by selecting **Add...** from the pop-up menu.
-

- **Instructions**

Opens this guide.

- **Defaults**

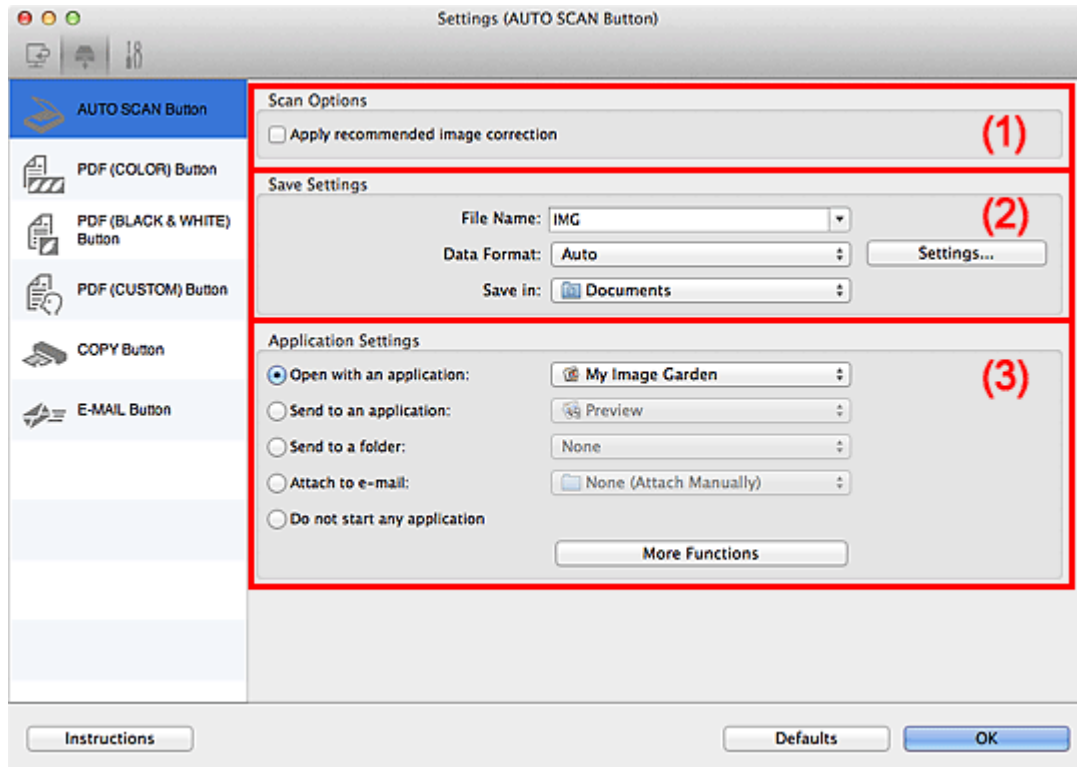
You can restore the settings in the displayed screen to the default settings.

[Page top ▲](#)

Settings (AUTO SCAN Button) Dialog

Click **AUTO SCAN Button** on the  (Scanning Using the Scanner Buttons) tab to display the **Settings (AUTO SCAN Button)** dialog.

In the **Settings (AUTO SCAN Button)** dialog, you can specify how to respond when saving images to a computer after scanning them using the scanner button by automatically detecting the item.



(1) Scan Options Area

(2) Save Settings Area

(3) Application Settings Area

Supported Items

Photos, postcards, business cards, magazines, newspapers, documents, BD/DVD/CD, and film.

Important

- To scan the following types of items, specify the item type and size in the **Settings (Photo Scan)** dialog or **Settings (Document Scan)** dialog, then click **Photo** or **Document** in the IJ Scan Utility main screen. You cannot scan correctly with **Auto**.
 - A4 size photos
 - Text documents smaller than 2L (5 inches x 7 inches) (127 mm x 178 mm), such as paperback pages with the spine cut off
 - Items printed on thin white paper
 - Long narrow items such as panoramic photos
- Film may not be scanned correctly. In that case, scan with ScanGear (scanner driver).
- To scan black and white film or 120 format film, scan from the **Advanced Mode** tab of ScanGear.
➡ [Scanning Film in Advanced Mode](#)
- Reflective disc labels may not be scanned as expected.
- Place items to be scanned on the platen correctly. Otherwise, items may not be scanned as expected depending on the item type.

See "[Placing Items \(When Scanning from a Computer\)](#)" for details on how to place items.

Note

- To reduce moire, set **Select Source** to **Magazine** in the **Settings (Document Scan)** dialog, then click **Document** in the IJ Scan Utility main screen.

(1) Scan Options Area

- **Apply recommended image correction**

Applies suitable corrections automatically based on the item type.

Important

- The color tone may differ from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable this function.

(2) Save Settings Area

- **File Name**

Enter the file name of the image to be saved. When you save a file, the date and 4 digits are appended to the set file name in the "_20XX0101_0001" format.

- **Data Format**

Auto is selected. The following data formats are automatically applied according to the item type when saving.

- Photos, postcards, BD/DVD/CD, business cards, and film: JPEG
- Magazines, newspapers, and documents: PDF

Important

- The save format may differ depending on how you place the item.
See "[Placing Items \(When Scanning from a Computer\)](#)" for details on how to place items.

Note

- You can change the data format from **Settings...**

- **Settings...**

Click to display the **Data Format Settings** dialog in which you can set the quality of the images to be saved, keyword search of PDF files and their compression type, and the data format in which to save images scanned with Auto Scan.

➡ [Data Format Settings Dialog](#)

- **Save in**

Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, specify the destination folder in the dialog displayed by selecting **Add...** from the pop-up menu.

The default save folder is the **Documents** folder.

(3) Application Settings Area

- **Open with an application**

Select this when you want to enhance or correct the scanned images.
You can specify the application from the pop-up menu.

- **Send to an application**

Select this when you want to use the scanned images as they are in an application that allows you to browse or organize images.
You can specify the application from the pop-up menu.

- **Send to a folder**

Select this when you also want to save the scanned images to a folder other than the one specified in **Save in**.

You can specify the folder from the pop-up menu.

- **Attach to e-mail**

Select this when you want to send e-mails with the scanned images attached.

You can specify the e-mail client you want to start from the pop-up menu.

- **Do not start any application**

Saves to the folder specified in **Save in**.



Note

- Specify the application or folder in the dialog displayed by selecting **Add...** from the pop-up menu.
-

- **Instructions**

Opens this guide.

- **Defaults**

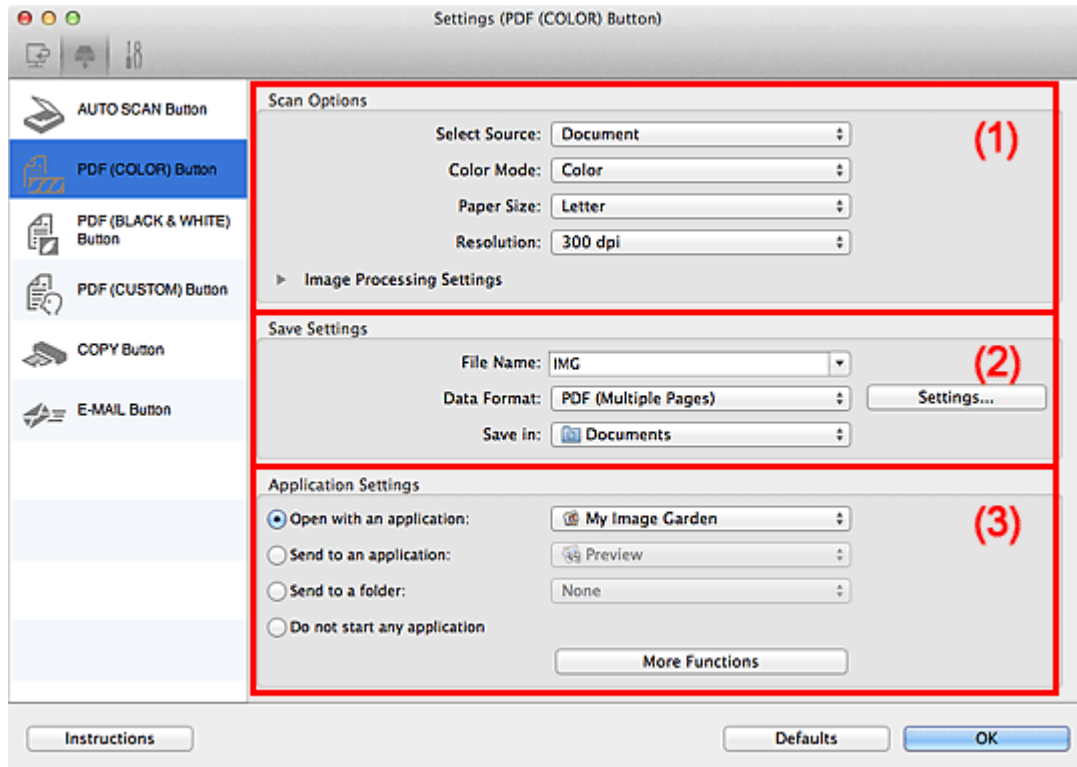
You can restore the settings in the displayed screen to the default settings.

Page top ▲

Settings (PDF (COLOR) Button) Dialog

Click **PDF (COLOR) Button** on the  (Scanning Using the Scanner Buttons) tab to display the **Settings (PDF (COLOR) Button)** dialog.

In the **Settings (PDF (COLOR) Button)** dialog, you can specify how to respond when saving images to a computer as color PDF files after scanning them using the scanner button.



(1) Scan Options Area

(2) Save Settings Area

(3) Application Settings Area

(1) Scan Options Area

- **Select Source**

Select the type of item to be scanned.

Scanning photos: **Photo**

Scanning documents: **Document**

Scanning magazines: **Magazine**

- **Color Mode**

Color is selected.

- **Paper Size**

Select the size of the item to be scanned.

When you select **Custom**, a screen in which you can specify the item size appears. Select a **Unit**, then enter the **Width** and **Height**, and then click **OK**.

Width: inches (1.00 – 8.50)

Height: inches (1.00 – 11.69)

Unit:

Note

- Click **Defaults** to restore the specified settings to the default settings.

• Resolution

Select the resolution of the item to be scanned.

The higher the resolution (value), the more detail in your image.

➡ Resolution

• Image Processing Settings

Click  (Right Arrow) to set the following.

When Select Source is Photo

• Sharpen outline

Emphasizes the outline of the subjects to sharpen the image.

When Select Source is Magazine or Document

• Apply Auto Document Fix

Select this checkbox to sharpen text in a document or magazine for better readability.

Important

- The color tone may differ from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable this function.

• Sharpen outline

Emphasizes the outline of the subjects to sharpen the image.

• Reduce show-through

Sharpens text in an item or reduces show-through in newspapers, etc.

• Reduce moire

Reduces moire patterns.

Printed materials are displayed as a collection of fine dots. "Moire" is a phenomenon where uneven gradation or a stripe pattern appears when such photos or pictures printed with fine dots are scanned.

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable **Reduce moire**.

• Reduce gutter shadow

Reduces gutter shadows that appear between pages when scanning open booklets.

Note

- Use ScanGear (scanner driver)'s **Advanced Mode** tab to correct gutter shadows when scanning non-standard size items or specified areas.
See "**Gutter Shadow Correction**" for details.

• Correct slanted text document

Detects the scanned text and corrects the angle (within -0.1 to -10 degrees or +0.1 to +10 degrees) of the document.

Important

- The following types of documents may not be corrected properly since the text cannot be detected correctly.
 - Documents in which the text lines are inclined more than 10 degrees or the angles vary by line
 - Documents containing both vertical and horizontal text
 - Documents with extremely large or small fonts
 - Documents with small amount of text
 - Documents containing figures/images
 - Hand-written text
 - Documents containing both vertical and horizontal lines (tables)

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable **Correct slanted text document**.

- **Detect the orientation of text document and rotate image**

Automatically rotates the image to the correct orientation by detecting the orientation of text in the scanned document.

Important

- Only text documents written in languages that can be selected from **Document Language** in the **Settings (General Settings)** dialog are supported.
 - ➡ [Settings \(General Settings\) Dialog](#)
- The orientation may not be detected for the following types of settings or documents since the text cannot be detected correctly.
 - Resolution is outside the range of 300 dpi to 600 dpi
 - Font size is outside the range of 8 points to 48 points
 - Documents containing special fonts, effects, italics, or hand-written text
 - Documents with patterned backgrounds

(2) Save Settings Area

- **File Name**

Enter the file name of the image to be saved. When you save a file, the date and 4 digits are appended to the set file name in the "_20XX0101_0001" format.

- **Data Format**

You can select **PDF** or **PDF (Multiple Pages)**.

- **Settings...**

Click to display the **Data Format Settings** dialog in which you can set the quality of the images to be saved, keyword search of PDF files and their compression type, and the data format in which to save images scanned with Auto Scan.

➡ [Data Format Settings Dialog](#)

- **Save in**

Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, specify the destination folder in the dialog displayed by selecting **Add...** from the pop-up menu.

The default save folder is the **Documents** folder.

(3) Application Settings Area

- **Open with an application**

Select this when you want to enhance or correct the scanned images.

You can specify the application from the pop-up menu.

- **Send to an application**

Select this when you want to use the scanned images as they are in an application that allows you to browse or organize images.

You can specify the application from the pop-up menu.

- **Send to a folder**

Select this when you also want to save the scanned images to a folder other than the one specified in **Save in**.

You can specify the folder from the pop-up menu.

- **Do not start any application**

Saves to the folder specified in **Save in**.



Note

- Specify the application or folder in the dialog displayed by selecting **Add...** from the pop-up menu.
-

- **Instructions**

Opens this guide.

- **Defaults**

You can restore the settings in the displayed screen to the default settings.

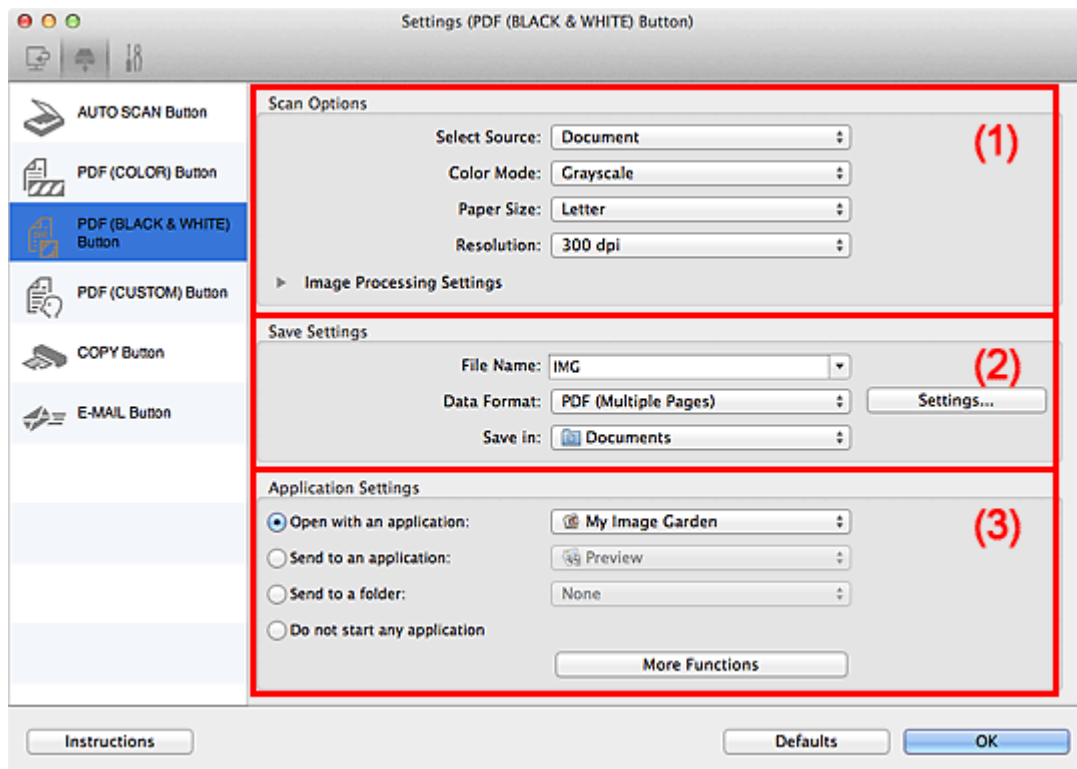
Page top ▲

Settings (PDF (BLACK & WHITE) Button) Dialog



Click **PDF (BLACK & WHITE) Button** on the (Scanning Using the Scanner Buttons) tab to display the **Settings (PDF (BLACK & WHITE) Button)** dialog.

In the **Settings (PDF (BLACK & WHITE) Button)** dialog, you can specify how to respond when saving images to a computer as grayscale or black and white PDF files after scanning them using the scanner button.



(1) Scan Options Area

(2) Save Settings Area

(3) Application Settings Area

(1) Scan Options Area

- **Select Source**

Select the type of item to be scanned.

Scanning photos: **Photo**

Scanning documents: **Document**

Scanning magazines: **Magazine**

- **Color Mode**

Select the color mode in which to scan the item.

- **Paper Size**

Select the size of the item to be scanned.

When you select **Custom**, a screen in which you can specify the item size appears. Select a **Unit**, then enter the **Width** and **Height**, and then click **OK**.

Width: inches (1.00 – 8.50)

Height: inches (1.00 – 11.69)

Unit:

Note

- Click **Defaults** to restore the specified settings to the default settings.

• Resolution

Select the resolution of the item to be scanned.

The higher the resolution (value), the more detail in your image.

➡ Resolution

• Image Processing Settings

Click  (Right Arrow) to set the following.

When Select Source is Photo

Note

- When **Color Mode** is **Black and White**, **Image Processing Settings** is not available.

• Sharpen outline

Emphasizes the outline of the subjects to sharpen the image.

When Select Source is Magazine or Document

Note

- When **Color Mode** is **Black and White**, only **Reduce gutter shadow**, **Correct slanted text document** and **Detect the orientation of text document and rotate image** appear.

• Apply Auto Document Fix

Select this checkbox to sharpen text in a document or magazine for better readability.

Important

- The color tone may differ from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable this function.

• Sharpen outline

Emphasizes the outline of the subjects to sharpen the image.

• Reduce show-through

Sharpens text in an item or reduces show-through in newspapers, etc.

• Reduce moire

Reduces moire patterns.

Printed materials are displayed as a collection of fine dots. "Moire" is a phenomenon where uneven gradation or a stripe pattern appears when such photos or pictures printed with fine dots are scanned.

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable **Reduce moire**.

• Reduce gutter shadow

Reduces gutter shadows that appear between pages when scanning open booklets.

Note

- Use ScanGear (scanner driver)'s **Advanced Mode** tab to correct gutter shadows when

scanning non-standard size items or specified areas.
See "**Gutter Shadow Correction**" for details.

- **Correct slanted text document**

Detects the scanned text and corrects the angle (within -0.1 to -10 degrees or +0.1 to +10 degrees) of the document.

 Important

- The following types of documents may not be corrected properly since the text cannot be detected correctly.
 - Documents in which the text lines are inclined more than 10 degrees or the angles vary by line
 - Documents containing both vertical and horizontal text
 - Documents with extremely large or small fonts
 - Documents with small amount of text
 - Documents containing figures/images
 - Hand-written text
 - Documents containing both vertical and horizontal lines (tables)

 Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable **Correct slanted text document**.

- **Detect the orientation of text document and rotate image**

Automatically rotates the image to the correct orientation by detecting the orientation of text in the scanned document.

 Important

- Only text documents written in languages that can be selected from **Document Language** in the **Settings (General Settings)** dialog are supported.
 [Settings \(General Settings\) Dialog](#)
- The orientation may not be detected for the following types of settings or documents since the text cannot be detected correctly.
 - Resolution is outside the range of 300 dpi to 600 dpi
 - Font size is outside the range of 8 points to 48 points
 - Documents containing special fonts, effects, italics, or hand-written text
 - Documents with patterned backgrounds

(2) Save Settings Area

- **File Name**

Enter the file name of the image to be saved. When you save a file, the date and 4 digits are appended to the set file name in the "_20XX0101_0001" format.

- **Data Format**

You can select **PDF** or **PDF (Multiple Pages)**.

- **Settings...**

Click to display the **Data Format Settings** dialog in which you can set the quality of the images to be saved, keyword search of PDF files and their compression type, and the data format in which to save images scanned with Auto Scan.

 [Data Format Settings Dialog](#)

- **Save in**

Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, specify the destination folder in the dialog displayed by selecting **Add...** from the pop-up menu.

The default save folder is the **Documents** folder.

(3) Application Settings Area

- **Open with an application**

Select this when you want to enhance or correct the scanned images.

You can specify the application from the pop-up menu.

- **Send to an application**

Select this when you want to use the scanned images as they are in an application that allows you to browse or organize images.

You can specify the application from the pop-up menu.

- **Send to a folder**

Select this when you also want to save the scanned images to a folder other than the one specified in **Save in**.

You can specify the folder from the pop-up menu.

- **Do not start any application**

Saves to the folder specified in **Save in**.



Note

- Specify the application or folder in the dialog displayed by selecting **Add...** from the pop-up menu.
-

- **Instructions**

Opens this guide.

- **Defaults**

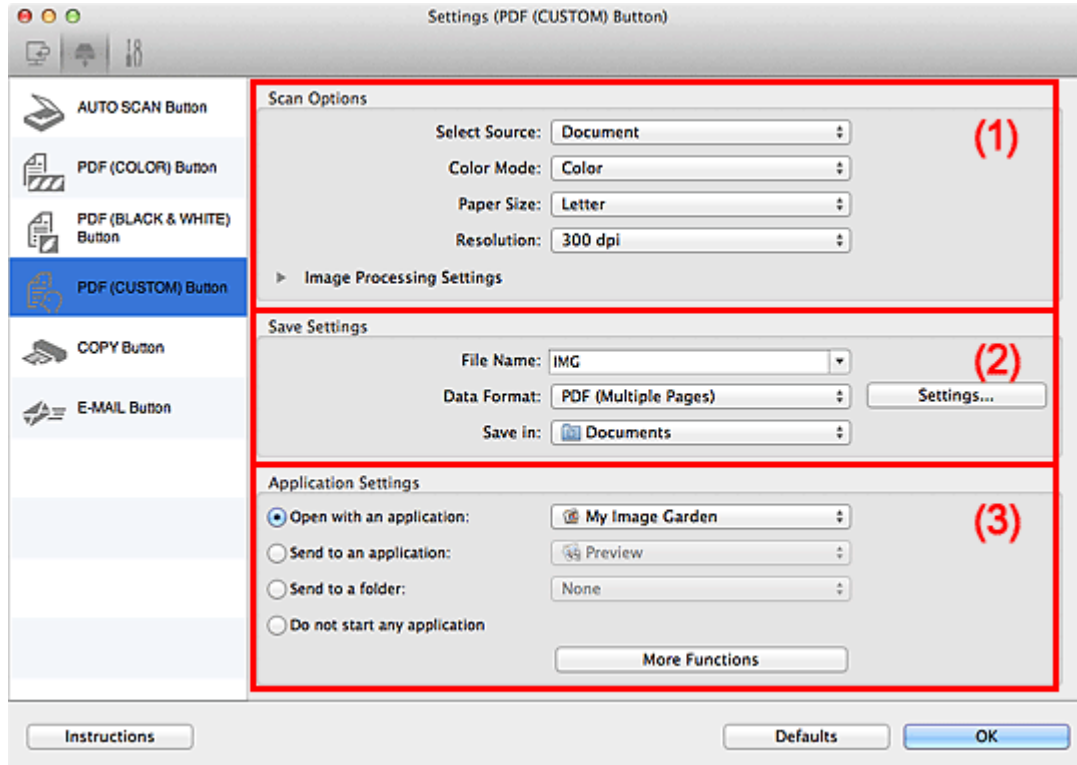
You can restore the settings in the displayed screen to the default settings.

Page top ▲

Settings (PDF (CUSTOM) Button) Dialog

Click **PDF (CUSTOM) Button** on the  (Scanning Using the Scanner Buttons) tab to display the **Settings (PDF (CUSTOM) Button)** dialog.

In the **Settings (PDF (CUSTOM) Button)** dialog, you can specify how to respond when saving images to a computer as PDF files according to your preference after scanning them using the scanner button.



- (1) Scan Options Area
- (2) Save Settings Area
- (3) Application Settings Area

(1) Scan Options Area

- **Select Source**

Select the type of item to be scanned.

Scanning photos: **Photo**

Scanning documents: **Document**

Scanning magazines: **Magazine**

- **Color Mode**

Select the color mode in which to scan the item.

- **Paper Size**

Select the size of the item to be scanned.

When you select **Custom**, a screen in which you can specify the item size appears. Select a **Unit**, then enter the **Width** and **Height**, and then click **OK**.

Width: inches (1.00 – 8.50)

Height: inches (1.00 – 11.69)

Unit:

Note

- Click **Defaults** to restore the specified settings to the default settings.

• Resolution

Select the resolution of the item to be scanned.

The higher the resolution (value), the more detail in your image.

➡ Resolution

• Image Processing Settings

Click  (Right Arrow) to set the following.

When Select Source is Photo

Note

- When **Color Mode** is **Black and White**, **Image Processing Settings** is not available.

• Sharpen outline

Emphasizes the outline of the subjects to sharpen the image.

When Select Source is Magazine or Document

Note

- When **Color Mode** is **Black and White**, only **Reduce gutter shadow**, **Correct slanted text document** and **Detect the orientation of text document and rotate image** appear.

• Apply Auto Document Fix

Select this checkbox to sharpen text in a document or magazine for better readability.

Important

- The color tone may differ from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable this function.

• Sharpen outline

Emphasizes the outline of the subjects to sharpen the image.

• Reduce show-through

Sharpens text in an item or reduces show-through in newspapers, etc.

• Reduce moire

Reduces moire patterns.

Printed materials are displayed as a collection of fine dots. "Moire" is a phenomenon where uneven gradation or a stripe pattern appears when such photos or pictures printed with fine dots are scanned.

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable **Reduce moire**.

• Reduce gutter shadow

Reduces gutter shadows that appear between pages when scanning open booklets.

Note

- Use ScanGear (scanner driver)'s **Advanced Mode** tab to correct gutter shadows when

scanning non-standard size items or specified areas.
See "**Gutter Shadow Correction**" for details.

- **Correct slanted text document**

Detects the scanned text and corrects the angle (within -0.1 to -10 degrees or +0.1 to +10 degrees) of the document.



Important

- The following types of documents may not be corrected properly since the text cannot be detected correctly.
 - Documents in which the text lines are inclined more than 10 degrees or the angles vary by line
 - Documents containing both vertical and horizontal text
 - Documents with extremely large or small fonts
 - Documents with small amount of text
 - Documents containing figures/images
 - Hand-written text
 - Documents containing both vertical and horizontal lines (tables)



Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable **Correct slanted text document**.

- **Detect the orientation of text document and rotate image**

Automatically rotates the image to the correct orientation by detecting the orientation of text in the scanned document.



Important

- Only text documents written in languages that can be selected from **Document Language** in the **Settings (General Settings)** dialog are supported.
➡ [Settings \(General Settings\) Dialog](#)
- The orientation may not be detected for the following types of settings or documents since the text cannot be detected correctly.
 - Resolution is outside the range of 300 dpi to 600 dpi
 - Font size is outside the range of 8 points to 48 points
 - Documents containing special fonts, effects, italics, or hand-written text
 - Documents with patterned backgrounds

(2) Save Settings Area

- **File Name**

Enter the file name of the image to be saved. When you save a file, the date and 4 digits are appended to the set file name in the "_20XX0101_0001" format.

- **Data Format**

You can select **PDF** or **PDF (Multiple Pages)**.

- **Settings...**

Click to display the **Data Format Settings** dialog in which you can set the quality of the images to be saved, keyword search of PDF files and their compression type, and the data format in which to save images scanned with Auto Scan.

➡ [Data Format Settings Dialog](#)

- **Save in**

Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, specify the destination folder in the dialog displayed by selecting **Add...** from the pop-up menu.

The default save folder is the **Documents** folder.

(3) Application Settings Area

- **Open with an application**

Select this when you want to enhance or correct the scanned images.

You can specify the application from the pop-up menu.

- **Send to an application**

Select this when you want to use the scanned images as they are in an application that allows you to browse or organize images.

You can specify the application from the pop-up menu.

- **Send to a folder**

Select this when you also want to save the scanned images to a folder other than the one specified in **Save in**.

You can specify the folder from the pop-up menu.

- **Do not start any application**

Saves to the folder specified in **Save in**.



Note

- Specify the application or folder in the dialog displayed by selecting **Add...** from the pop-up menu.
-

- **Instructions**

Opens this guide.

- **Defaults**

You can restore the settings in the displayed screen to the default settings.

Page top ▲

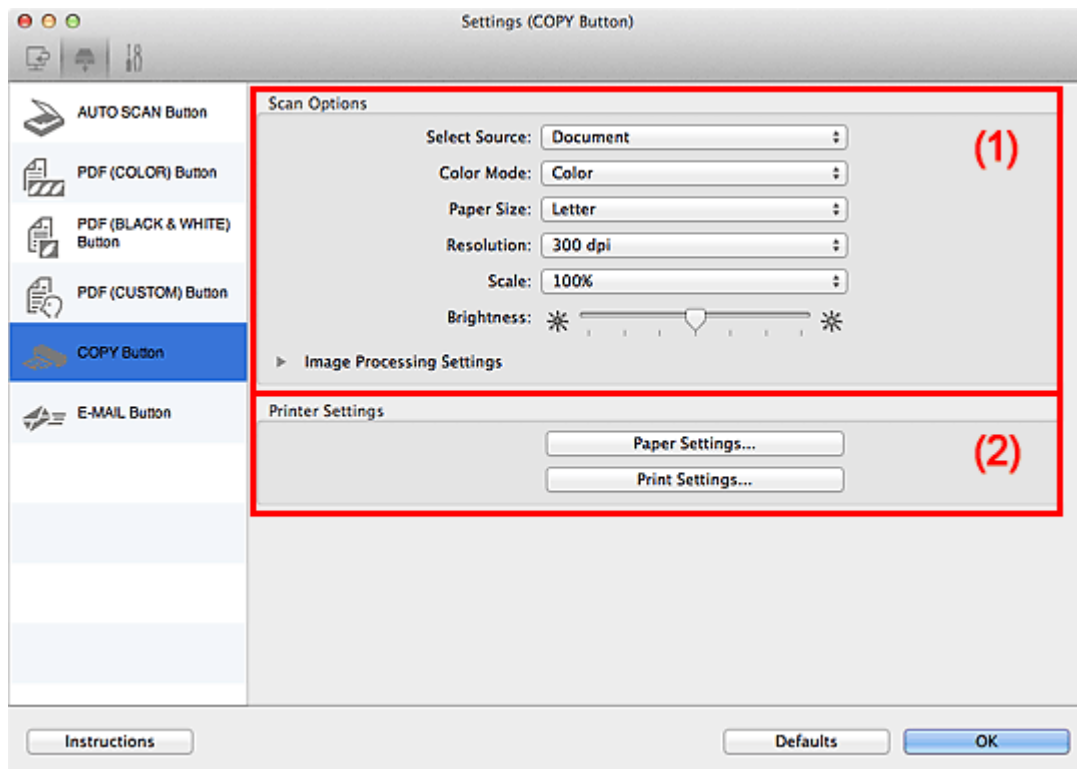
Settings (COPY Button) Dialog

Click **COPY Button** on the  (Scanning Using the Scanner Buttons) tab to display the **Settings (COPY Button)** dialog.

In the **Settings (COPY Button)** dialog, you can specify how to respond when printing images on a printer after scanning them using the scanner button.

Note

- Selectable paper sizes and types vary by printer.
- When multiple items are placed on the platen and **Auto** is selected for **Select Source**, each item is scanned individually and printed on a separate sheet of paper. To print multiple items on one sheet of paper, select an option other than **Auto** and select a standard size (A4, Letter, etc.) for **Paper Size**.



(1) Scan Options Area

(2) Printer Settings Area

(1) Scan Options Area

• Select Source

Select the type of item to be scanned. Select **Auto** to detect the item type automatically and to set **Color Mode**, **Paper Size** and **Resolution** automatically as well.

Select **Film (Auto Detect)** to detect the film type (negative or positive) automatically.

Important

- Item types supported by **Auto** are photos, postcards, business cards, magazines, newspapers, documents, BD/DVD/CD, and Film.
- To scan the following types of items, specify the item type or size. You cannot scan correctly

with **Auto**.

- A4 size photos
- Text documents smaller than 2L (5 inches x 7 inches) (127 mm x 178 mm), such as paperback pages with the spine cut off
- Items printed on thin white paper
- Long narrow items such as panoramic photos
- Film may not be scanned correctly. In that case, scan with ScanGear (scanner driver).
- To scan black and white film or 120 format film, scan from the **Advanced Mode** tab of ScanGear.
➡ [Scanning Film in Advanced Mode](#)
- Reflective disc labels may not be scanned as expected.
- Place items correctly according to the type of item to be scanned. Otherwise, items may not be scanned correctly.
See "[Placing Items \(When Scanning from a Computer\)](#)" for details on how to place items.

Note

- To reduce moire, set **Select Source** to **Magazine**.

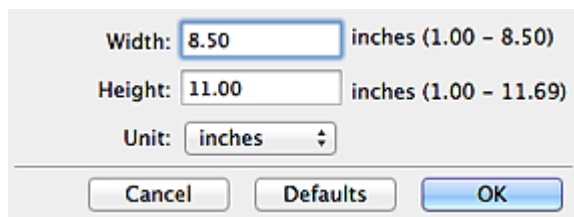
• Color Mode

Select the color mode in which to scan the item.

• Paper Size

Select the size of the item to be scanned.

When you select **Custom**, a screen in which you can specify the item size appears. Select a **Unit**, then enter the **Width** and **Height**, and then click **OK**.



Width: inches (1.00 – 8.50)

Height: inches (1.00 – 11.69)

Unit:

Note

- Only **Auto** is available when **Select Source** is **Auto**.
- Only **35 mm Film** is available when **Select Source** is film.
- Click **Defaults** in the screen in which you can specify the item size to restore the specified settings to the default settings.

• Resolution

Select the resolution of the item to be scanned. The following scanning resolutions can be specified:

When **Select Source** is other than film: 150 dpi / 300 dpi / 600 dpi

When **Select Source** is film: 300 dpi / 400 dpi / 600 dpi / 1200 dpi / 2400 dpi / 4800 dpi

The higher the resolution (value), the more detail in your image.

➡ [Resolution](#)

Note

- Only **Auto** is available when **Select Source** is **Auto**.

• Scale

Select a scale according to the paper to print on and purpose of use.

Select **Fit to Paper** to resize the scanned image automatically to fit the paper to print on. Since the image's aspect ratio is maintained, margins may appear at the top and bottom or on the left and right depending on the size of the item and paper.

Select **Custom** to enter a value in **Scale Setting**. Enter a percentage (25 % to 400 %) and click **OK**.

Note

- Scanned images are printed on paper of the size specified on your printer.
See the manual of your printer for details.

• Brightness

Adjust the image brightness.

Move the slider to the left to darken and right to brighten the image.

Important

- This function is available only when **Magazine** or **Document** is selected for **Select Source**.
- This function is not available when **Auto scan** is selected for **Paper Size**.

• Image Processing Settings

Click  (Right Arrow) to set the following. Available setting items vary by **Select Source**.

When Select Source is Photo or Film

Note

- When **Color Mode** is **Black and White**, **Image Processing Settings** is not available.

• Sharpen outline

Emphasizes the outline of the subjects to sharpen the image.

When Select Source is Magazine or Document

Note

- When **Color Mode** is **Black and White**, only **Reduce gutter shadow** appear.

• Apply Auto Document Fix

Select this checkbox to sharpen text in a document or magazine for better readability.

Important

- The color tone may differ from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable this function.

• Sharpen outline

Emphasizes the outline of the subjects to sharpen the image.

• Reduce show-through

Sharpens text in an item or reduces show-through in newspapers, etc.

• Reduce moire

Reduces moire patterns.

Printed materials are displayed as a collection of fine dots. "Moire" is a phenomenon where uneven gradation or a stripe pattern appears when such photos or pictures printed with fine dots are scanned.

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable **Reduce moire**.

• Reduce gutter shadow

Reduces gutter shadows that appear between pages when scanning open booklets.

Note

- Use ScanGear's **Advanced Mode** tab to correct gutter shadows when scanning non-standard size items or specified areas.
See "**Gutter Shadow Correction**" for details.

When Select Source is Auto

• Apply recommended image correction

Applies suitable corrections automatically based on the item type.

Important

- The color tone may differ from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable this function.
-

(2) Printer Settings Area

- **Paper Settings...**

You can specify the printer to use, paper size, etc.

Note

- Selectable paper sizes depend on the selected printer.
-

- **Print Settings...**

You can specify the printer to use, printing method, number of copies to print, etc.

- **Instructions**

Opens this guide.

- **Defaults**

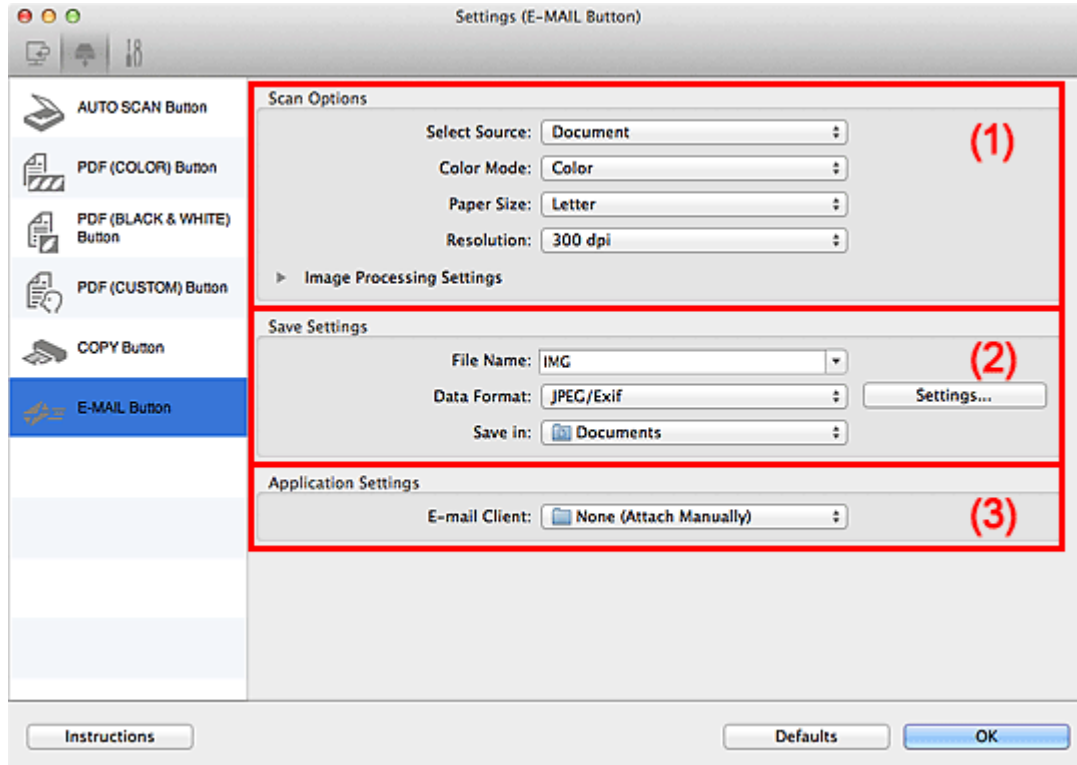
You can restore the settings in the displayed screen to the default settings.

Page top ▲

Settings (E-MAIL Button) Dialog

Click **E-MAIL Button** on the  (Scanning Using the Scanner Buttons) tab to display the **Settings (E-MAIL Button)** dialog.

In the **Settings (E-MAIL Button)** dialog, you can specify how to respond when attaching images to an e-mail after scanning them using the scanner button.



(1) Scan Options Area

(2) Save Settings Area

(3) Application Settings Area

(1) Scan Options Area

- **Select Source**

Select the type of item to be scanned. Select **Auto** to detect the item type automatically and to set **Color Mode**, **Paper Size** and **Resolution** automatically as well.

Select **Film (Auto Detect)** to detect the film type (negative or positive) automatically.

Important

- Item types supported by **Auto** are photos, postcards, business cards, magazines, newspapers, documents, BD/DVD/CD, and Film.
- To scan the following types of items, specify the item type or size. You cannot scan correctly with **Auto**.
 - A4 size photos
 - Text documents smaller than 2L (5 inches x 7 inches) (127 mm x 178 mm), such as paperback pages with the spine cut off
 - Items printed on thin white paper
 - Long narrow items such as panoramic photos

- Film may not be scanned correctly. In that case, scan with ScanGear (scanner driver).
- To scan black and white film or 120 format film, scan from the **Advanced Mode** tab of ScanGear.
➡ [Scanning Film in Advanced Mode](#)
- Reflective disc labels may not be scanned as expected.
- Place items correctly according to the type of item to be scanned. Otherwise, items may not be scanned correctly.
See "[Placing Items \(When Scanning from a Computer\)](#)" for details on how to place items.

Note

- To reduce moire, set **Select Source** to **Magazine**.

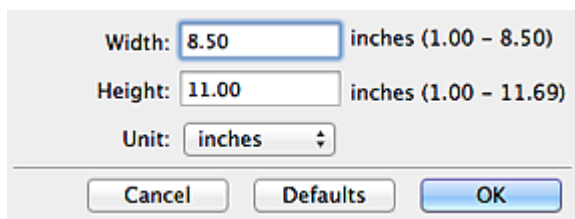
• Color Mode

Select the color mode in which to scan the item.

• Paper Size

Select the size of the item to be scanned.

When you select **Custom**, a screen in which you can specify the item size appears. Select a **Unit**, then enter the **Width** and **Height**, and then click **OK**.



Note

- Only **Auto** is available when **Select Source** is **Auto**.
- Only **35 mm Film** is available when **Select Source** is film.
- Click **Defaults** in the screen in which you can specify the item size to restore the specified settings to the default settings.

• Resolution

Select the resolution of the item to be scanned. The following scanning resolutions can be specified:
When **Select Source** is other than film: 75 dpi / 100 dpi / 150 dpi / 200 dpi / 300 dpi / 400 dpi / 600 dpi

When **Select Source** is film: 300 dpi / 400 dpi / 600 dpi / 1200 dpi / 2400 dpi / 4800 dpi

The higher the resolution (value), the more detail in your image.

➡ [Resolution](#)

Note

- Only **Auto** is available when **Select Source** is **Auto**.

• Image Processing Settings

Click  (Right Arrow) to set the following. Available setting items vary by **Select Source**.

When Select Source is Photo or Film

Note

- When **Color Mode** is **Black and White**, **Image Processing Settings** is not available.

• Sharpen outline

Emphasizes the outline of the subjects to sharpen the image.

When Select Source is Magazine or Document

Note

- When **Color Mode** is **Black and White**, only **Reduce gutter shadow**, **Correct slanted text document** and **Detect the orientation of text document and rotate image** appear.

• Apply Auto Document Fix

Select this checkbox to sharpen text in a document or magazine for better readability.

Important

- The color tone may differ from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable this function.

• Sharpen outline

Emphasizes the outline of the subjects to sharpen the image.

• Reduce show-through

Sharpens text in an item or reduces show-through in newspapers, etc.

• Reduce moire

Reduces moire patterns.

Printed materials are displayed as a collection of fine dots. "Moire" is a phenomenon where uneven gradation or a stripe pattern appears when such photos or pictures printed with fine dots are scanned.

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable **Reduce moire**.

• Reduce gutter shadow

Reduces gutter shadows that appear between pages when scanning open booklets.

Note

- Use ScanGear's **Advanced Mode** tab to correct gutter shadows when scanning non-standard size items or specified areas.
See "**Gutter Shadow Correction**" for details.

• Correct slanted text document

Detects the scanned text and corrects the angle (within -0.1 to -10 degrees or +0.1 to +10 degrees) of the document.

Important

- The following types of documents may not be corrected properly since the text cannot be detected correctly.
 - Documents in which the text lines are inclined more than 10 degrees or the angles vary by line
 - Documents containing both vertical and horizontal text
 - Documents with extremely large or small fonts
 - Documents with small amount of text
 - Documents containing figures/images
 - Hand-written text
 - Documents containing both vertical and horizontal lines (tables)

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable **Correct slanted text document**.

• Detect the orientation of text document and rotate image

Automatically rotates the image to the correct orientation by detecting the orientation of text in the scanned document.

Important

- Only text documents written in languages that can be selected from **Document Language** in the **Settings (General Settings)** dialog are supported.
 **Settings (General Settings) Dialog**
- The orientation may not be detected for the following types of settings or documents since the text cannot be detected correctly.

- Resolution is outside the range of 300 dpi to 600 dpi
- Font size is outside the range of 8 points to 48 points
- Documents containing special fonts, effects, italics, or hand-written text
- Documents with patterned backgrounds

When Select Source is Auto

- **Apply recommended image correction**

Applies suitable corrections automatically based on the item type.



Important

- The color tone may differ from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.



Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable this function.

(2) Save Settings Area

- **File Name**

Enter the file name of the image to be saved. When you save a file, the date and 4 digits are appended to the set file name in the "_20XX0101_0001" format.

- **Data Format**

You can select **JPEG/Exif**, **TIFF**, **PNG**, **PDF**, or **PDF (Multiple Pages)**.

- **Settings...**

Click to display the **Data Format Settings** dialog in which you can set the quality of the images to be saved, keyword search of PDF files and their compression type, and the data format in which to save images scanned with Auto Scan.

➡ [Data Format Settings Dialog](#)

- **Save in**

Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, specify the destination folder in the dialog displayed by selecting **Add...** from the pop-up menu.

The default save folder is the **Documents** folder.

(3) Application Settings Area

- **E-mail Client**

Specify the e-mail client to use for attaching scanned images.

You can specify the e-mail client you want to start from the pop-up menu.



Note

- Specify the e-mail client in the dialog displayed by selecting **Add...** from the pop-up menu.

- **Instructions**

Opens this guide.

- **Defaults**

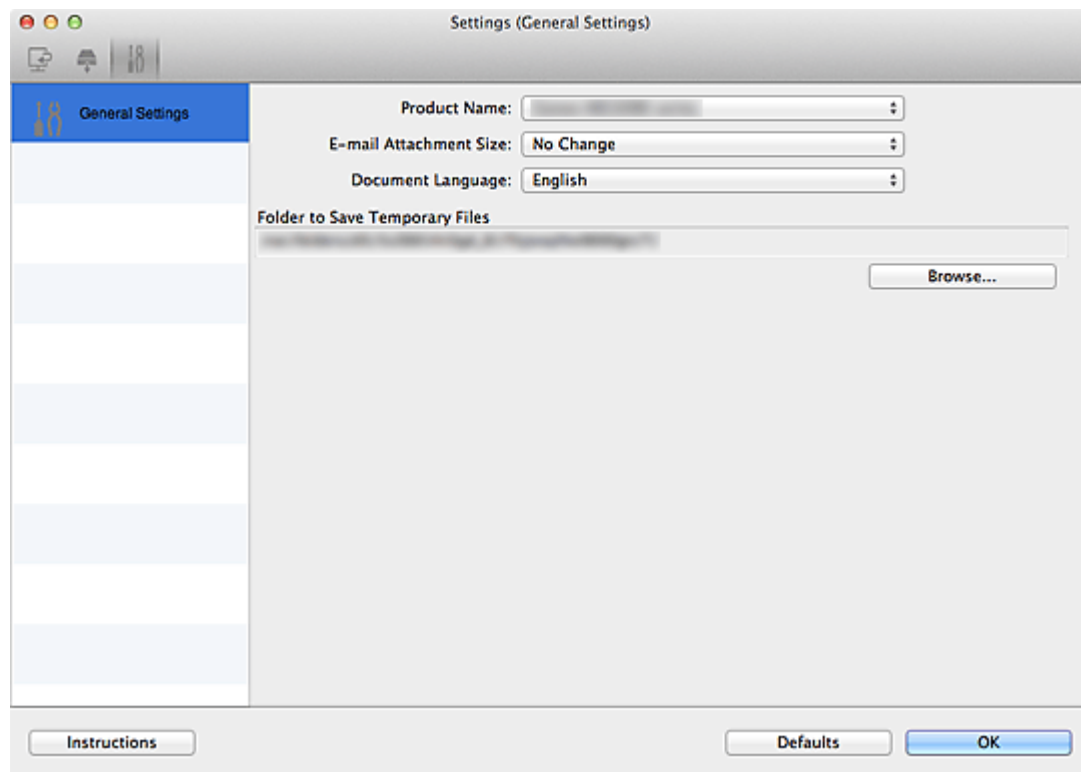
You can restore the settings in the displayed screen to the default settings.

Settings (General Settings) Dialog



Click  (General Settings) tab to display the **Settings (General Settings)** dialog.

In the **Settings (General Settings)** dialog, you can set the product to use, file size restriction on e-mail attachment and folder in which to save images temporarily.



- **Product Name**

Displays the name of the product that IJ Scan Utility is currently set to use.

If the displayed product is not the one you want to use, select the desired product from the list.

- **E-mail Attachment Size**

You can restrict the size of scanned images to be attached to an e-mail.

You can select **Small (Suitable for 640 x 480 Windows)**, **Medium (Suitable for 800 x 600 Windows)**, **Large (Suitable for 1024 x 768 Windows)** or **No Change**.



Important

- When the Settings dialog is displayed from My Image Garden, this option does not appear.

- **Document Language**

Select the language for detecting text in images.

- **Folder to Save Temporary Files**

Displays the folder in which to save images temporarily. Click **Browse...** to specify the destination folder.

- **Instructions**

Opens this guide.

- **Defaults**

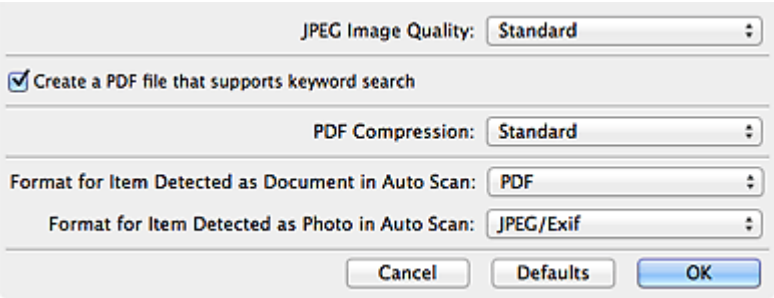
You can restore the settings in the displayed screen to the default settings.

Data Format Settings Dialog

Display the **Data Format Settings** dialog by one of the following operations.

- Click **Settings...** of **Save Settings** on each tab of the Settings dialog
- Click **Settings...** of **Save Settings** in the **Save Settings** dialog that appears after scanning with the **Check scan results** checkbox selected in the Settings dialog

In the **Data Format Settings** dialog, you can set the quality of the images to be saved, keyword search of PDF files and their compression type, and the data format in which to save images scanned with Auto Scan.



- **JPEG Image Quality**

You can specify the image quality of JPEG files.

- **Create a PDF file that supports keyword search**

Select this checkbox to convert text in images into text data and create PDF files that support keyword search.

- **PDF Compression**

Select the compression type for saving PDF files.

- **Standard**

It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

- **High**

Compresses the file size when saving, allowing you to reduce the load on your network/server.

Note

- When **Black and White** is set for **Color Mode** on the  (Scanning from a Computer) tab of the Settings dialog, PDF files will be saved in **Standard** even if **High** is set.

- **Format for Item Detected as Document in Auto Scan**

You can specify the data format for automatically saving items detected as documents in Auto Scan.

- **Format for Item Detected as Photo in Auto Scan**

You can specify the data format for automatically saving items detected as photos in Auto Scan.

- **Defaults**

You can restore the settings in the displayed screen to the default settings.

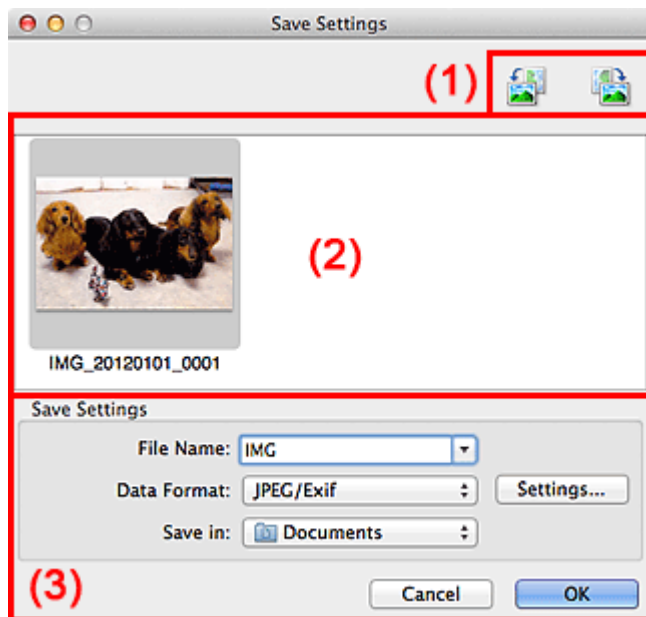
Save Settings Dialog

Select the **Check scan results** checkbox in **Save Settings** of the Settings dialog to display the **Save Settings** dialog after scanning.

You can specify the data format and destination while viewing the thumbnails of scan results.

Important

- After scanning from My Image Garden or scanning using the scanner buttons, the **Save Settings** dialog does not appear.



(1) Toolbar

(2) Scan Results Area

(3) Save Settings Area

(1) Toolbar

-  /  (Rotate Left 90°)/(Rotate Right 90°)

Rotates scanned images 90 degrees counter-clockwise or clockwise.

Select the image you want to rotate, then click  (Rotate Left 90°) or  (Rotate Right 90°).

Important

- The Toolbar does not appear when the **Enable large image scans** checkbox is selected in the **Settings (ScanGear)** dialog.

(2) Scan Results Area

Displays the thumbnails of the scanned images. You can change the save order of images via drag-and-drop. The file names for saving appear below the thumbnails.

(3) Save Settings Area

- **File Name**

Enter the file name of the image to be saved. When you save a file, the date and 4 digits are appended to the set file name in the "_20XX0101_0001" format.

- **Data Format**

Select the data format in which to save the scanned images.

You can select **JPEG/Exif**, **TIFF**, **PNG**, **PDF**, or **PDF (Multiple Pages)**.



Important

- You cannot select **PDF** or **PDF (Multiple Pages)** in the following cases.
 - The **Enable large image scans** checkbox is selected in **Save Settings** of the **Settings (ScanGear)** dialog
 - **Start OCR** is selected in **Application Settings** of the **Settings (Document Scan)**, **Settings (Custom Scan)** or **Settings (ScanGear)** dialog
 - Film is selected for **Select Source** in the **Settings (Custom Scan)** dialog
- You cannot select **JPEG/Exif** when **Color Mode** is **Black and White**.

- **Settings...**

Click to display the **Data Format Settings** dialog in which you can set the quality of the images to be saved, keyword search of PDF files and their compression type, and the data format in which to save images scanned with Auto Scan.

➡ [Data Format Settings Dialog](#)

- **Save in**

Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, specify the destination folder in the dialog displayed by selecting **Add...** from the pop-up menu.

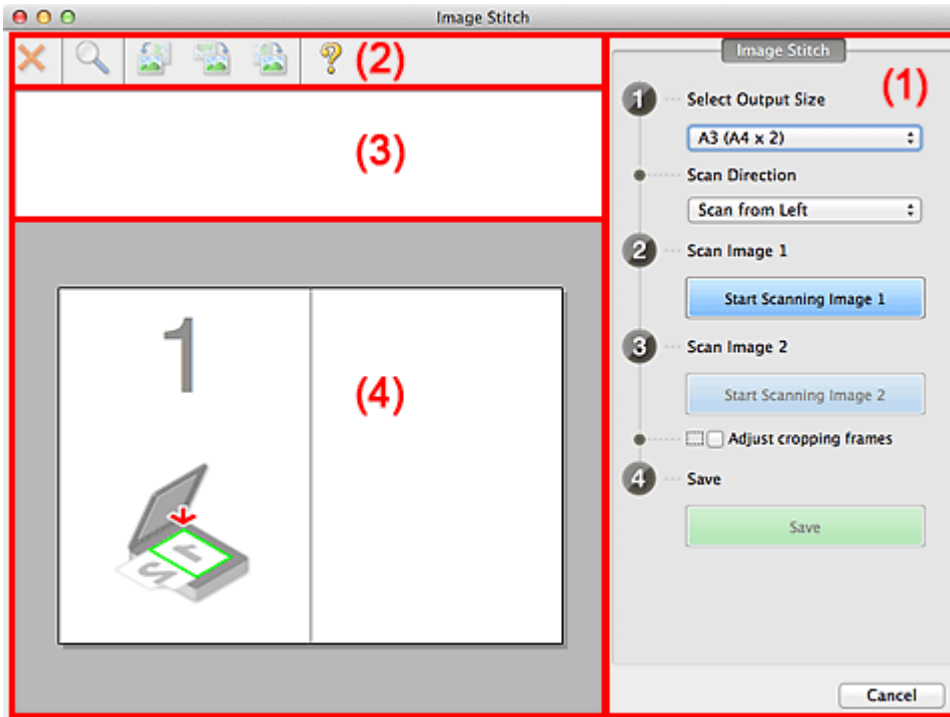
The default save folder is the **Documents** folder.

[Page top](#) ▲

Image Stitch Window

Click **Stitch** in the IJ Scan Utility main screen to display the **Image Stitch** window.

You can scan the left and right halves of an item larger than the platen and combine the images back into one image. You can scan items up to approximately twice as large as the platen.



(1) Settings and Operation Buttons

(2) Toolbar

(3) Thumbnail View Area

(4) Preview Area

Note

- The displayed items vary depending on the item type and view.

(1) Settings and Operation Buttons

- **Select Output Size**
 - **B4 (B5 x 2)**
Scans the left and right halves of a B4 size item separately.
 - **A3 (A4 x 2)**
Scans the left and right halves of an A3 size item separately.
 - **11 x 17 (Letter x 2)**
Scans the left and right halves of an item twice as large as Letter size separately.
 - **Full Platen x 2**
Scans the left and right halves of an item twice as large as the platen separately.
- **Scan Direction**

- **Scan from Left**

Displays the first scanned image on the left side.

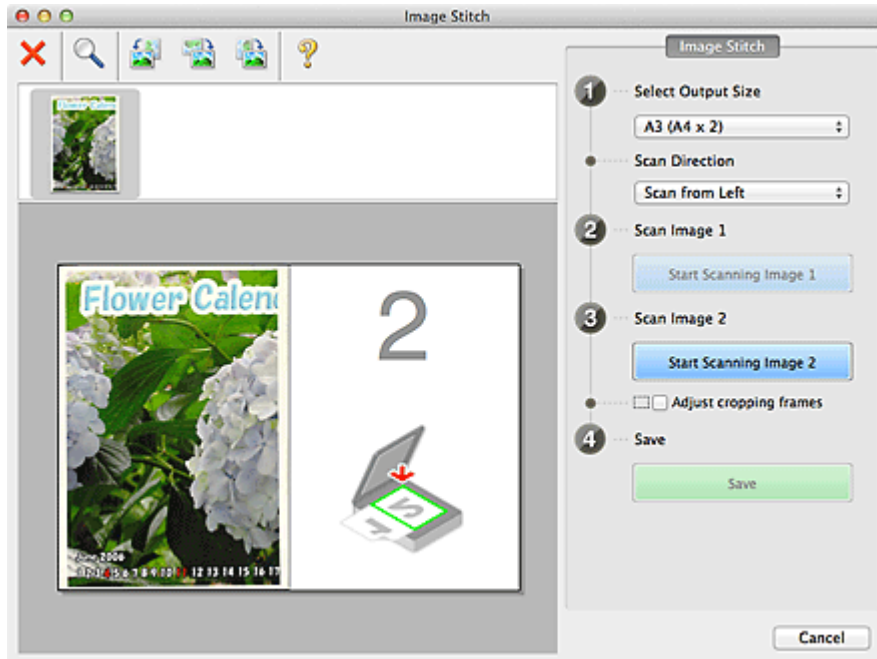
- **Scan from Right**

Displays the first scanned image on the right side.

- **Scan Image 1**

- **Start Scanning Image 1**

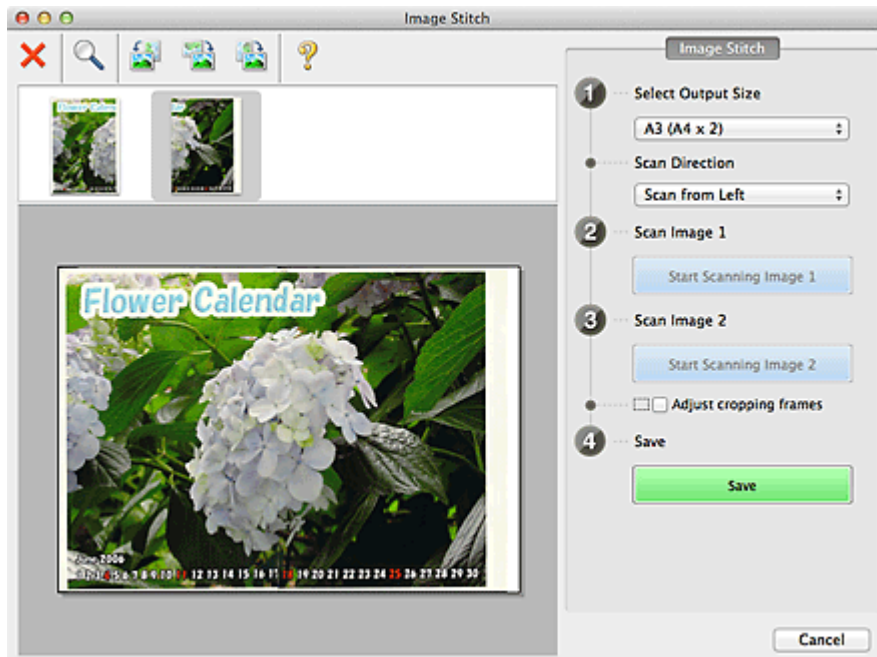
Scans the first item.



- **Scan Image 2**

- **Start Scanning Image 2**

Scans the second item.



- **Adjust cropping frames**

You can adjust the scan area in preview.

If no area is specified, the image of the size selected in **Select Output Size** will be saved. If an area is specified, only the image in the cropping frame will be scanned and saved.

➡ **Adjusting Cropping Frames**

- **Save**

- **Save**

Saves the two scanned images as one image.

- **Cancel**

Cancels **Stitch** scan.

(2) Toolbar

- **Toolbar**

You can delete the scanned images or adjust the previewed images.

- **(Delete)**

Deletes the scanned image.

- **(Enlarge/Reduce)**

Allows you to enlarge or reduce the preview image.

Left-clicking the Preview area enlarges the displayed image.

Control-clicking the Preview area reduces the displayed image.

- **(Rotate Left)**

Rotates the preview image 90 degrees counter-clockwise.

- **(Invert Vertically)**

Rotates the preview image 180 degrees.

- **(Rotate Right)**

Rotates the preview image 90 degrees clockwise.

- **(Open Guide)**

Opens this page.

(3) Thumbnail View Area

- **Thumbnail View Area**

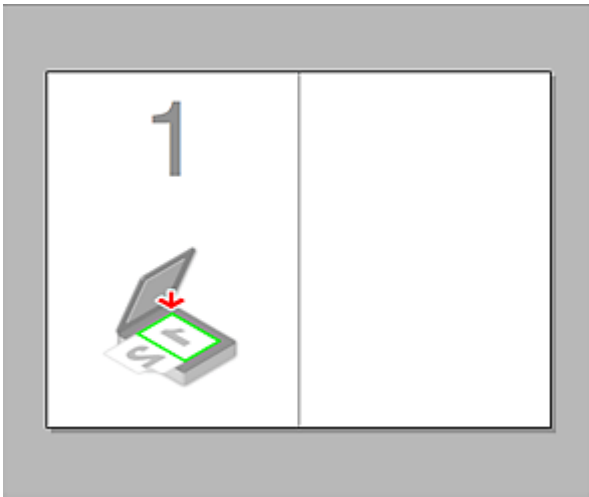
Displays the thumbnails of the scanned images. Appears blank if none has been scanned.

(4) Preview Area

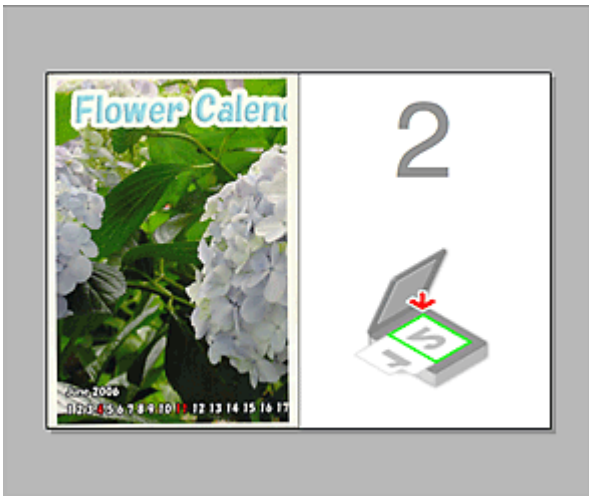
- **Preview Area**

Displays the scanned images. You can adjust the layout by dragging the scanned image or check the results of the settings made in "[Settings and Operation Buttons](#)."

- **When no image has been scanned**



- After scanning the first item by clicking **Start Scanning Image 1**



The image is scanned in the direction specified in **Scan Direction**, and **2** appears next to it.

- After scanning the second item by clicking **Start Scanning Image 2**



The two scanned images appear.

Related Topic

- [Scanning Items Larger than the Platen \(Image Stitch\)](#)

Scanning with Application Software that You are Using (ScanGear)

- [What Is ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)?](#)
- [Scanning with Advanced Settings Using ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#)
- [Correcting Images and Adjusting Colors with ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#)
- [ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\) Screens](#)
- [General Notes \(Scanner Driver\)](#)

[Page top ▲](#)

S900

ScanGear

What Is ScanGear (Scanner Driver)?

ScanGear (scanner driver) is software required for scanning documents and film. It enables you to specify the output size and make image corrections when scanning.

ScanGear can be started from IJ Scan Utility or My Image Garden. It can be also started from other applications that are compatible with a standard interface called TWAIN. (ScanGear is a TWAIN-compatible driver.)

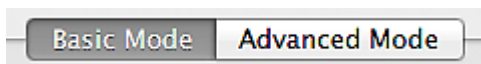
What You Can Do with This Software

This software enables you to preview scan results or set document type and output size, etc. when scanning documents and film. It is useful when you want to scan in a specific color tone, as it allows you to make various corrections and adjust brightness, contrast, etc.

Screens

There are two modes: Basic Mode and Advanced Mode.

Switch modes by clicking a tab on the upper right of the screen.

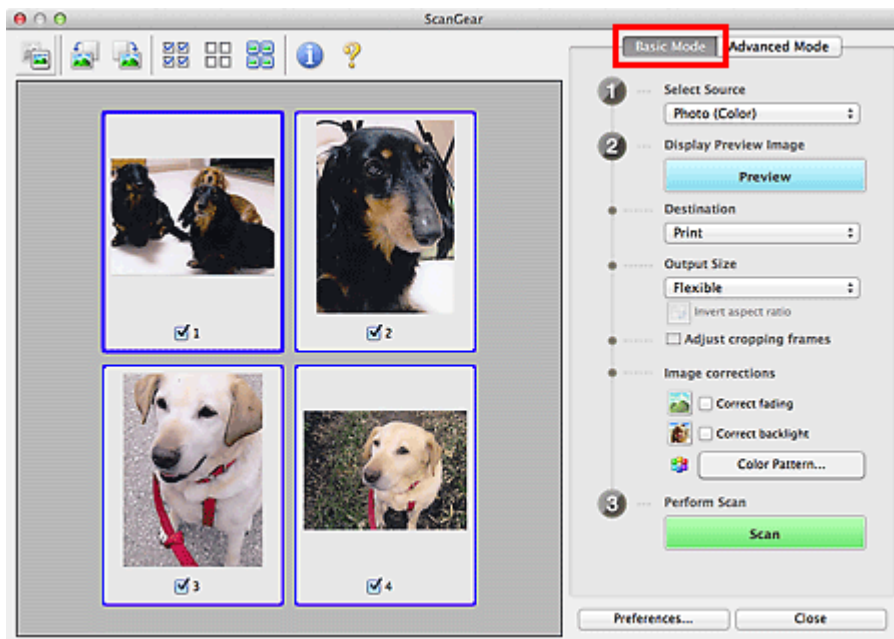


Note

- ScanGear starts in the last used mode.
- Settings are not retained when you switch modes.

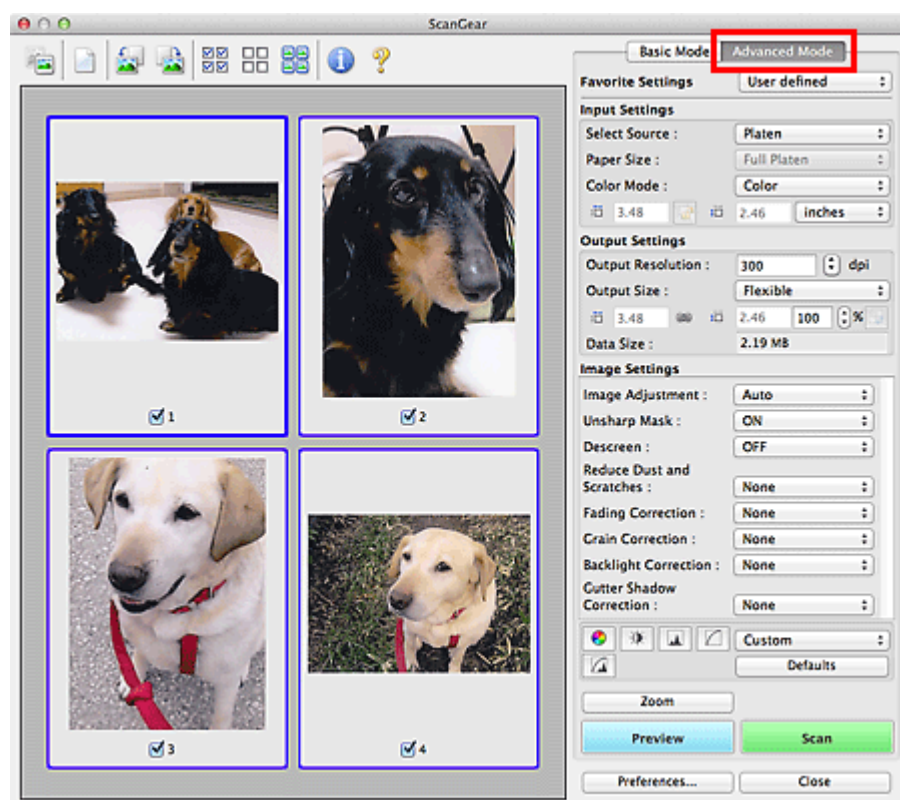
Basic Mode

Use the **Basic Mode** tab to scan easily by following three simple on-screen steps (1, 2, and 3).



Advanced Mode

Use the **Advanced Mode** tab to specify color mode, output resolution, image brightness, color tone, etc. when scanning.



Page top ▲

Scanning with Advanced Settings Using ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

- **Starting ScanGear (scanner driver)**
 - ➡ Starting ScanGear (Scanner Driver)
- **Scanning documents after making simple image corrections**
 - ➡ Scanning in Basic Mode
- **Scanning documents after making advanced image corrections and brightness/color adjustments**
 - ➡ Scanning in Advanced Mode
 - ➡ Scanning Film in Advanced Mode
- **Scanning multiple documents at one time after making image corrections and color adjustments**
 - ➡ Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time with ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

Starting ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

Use ScanGear (scanner driver) to make image corrections and color adjustments when scanning. ScanGear can be started from IJ Scan Utility or an application.

Starting from IJ Scan Utility

Follow these steps to start ScanGear from IJ Scan Utility.

1. Start IJ Scan Utility.

➡ Starting IJ Scan Utility

2. Click the ScanGear icon in the IJ Scan Utility main screen.

The ScanGear screen appears.

Starting from an Application

Follow these steps (example) to start ScanGear from an application.

The procedure varies depending on the application. For details, refer to the application's manual.

1. Start the application.

2. On the menu of the application, select the machine.

3. Select the command to scan a document.

The ScanGear screen appears.

Scanning in Basic Mode

Use the **Basic Mode** tab to scan easily by following the on-screen steps.

This section explains how to scan a single document and how to scan color film.

See "Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time with ScanGear (Scanner Driver)" to scan multiple documents at one time.

See "Scanning Film in Advanced Mode" to scan black and white film or 120 Format Film.



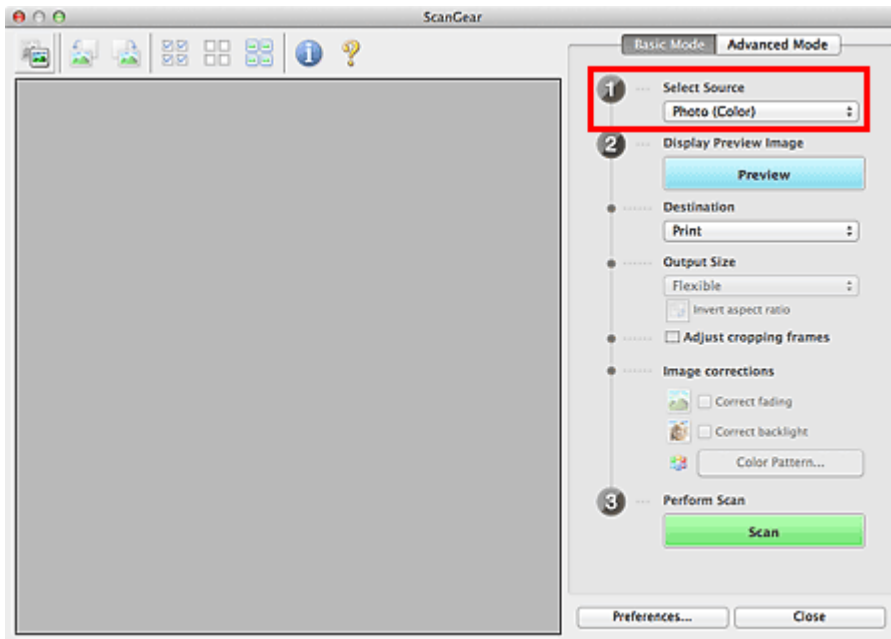
Important

- The following types of documents may not be scanned correctly. In that case, click  (Thumbnail) on the Toolbar to switch to whole image view and scan.
 - Photos that have a whitish background
 - Documents printed on white paper, hand-written text, business cards, etc.
 - Thin documents
 - Thick documents
- The following types of documents may not be scanned correctly.
 - Documents smaller than 1.2 inches (3 cm) square
 - Photos that have been cut to various shapes

1. Place the document or film on the Platen, then start ScanGear (scanner driver).

- ➡ Placing Items (When Scanning from a Computer)
- ➡ Placing Film (When Scanning from a Computer)
- ➡ Starting ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

2. Set **Select Source** according to the document or film placed on the Platen.



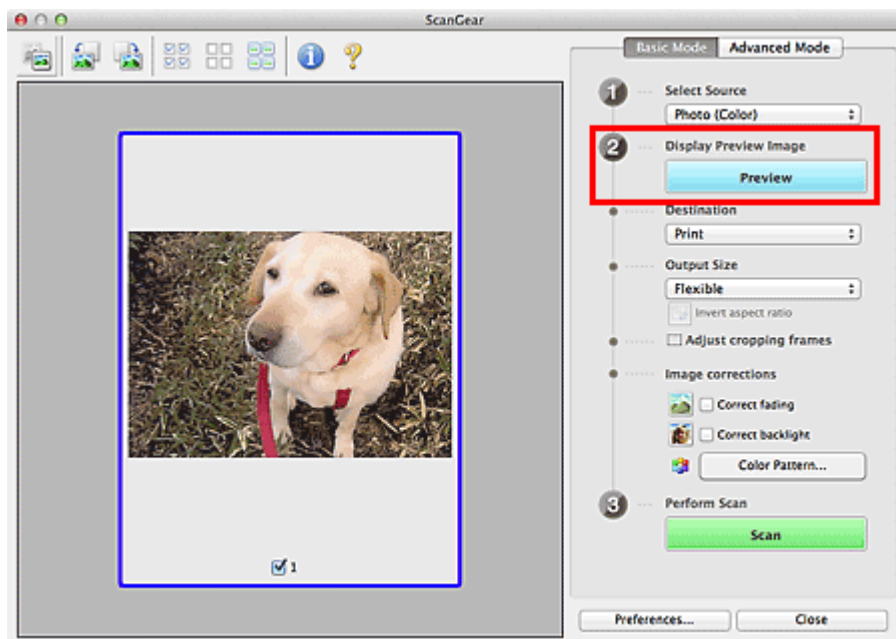
Note

- To scan magazines containing many color photos, select **Magazine (Color)**.

3. Click **Preview**.

When Photo or Document is Previewed

Preview image appears in the Preview area.



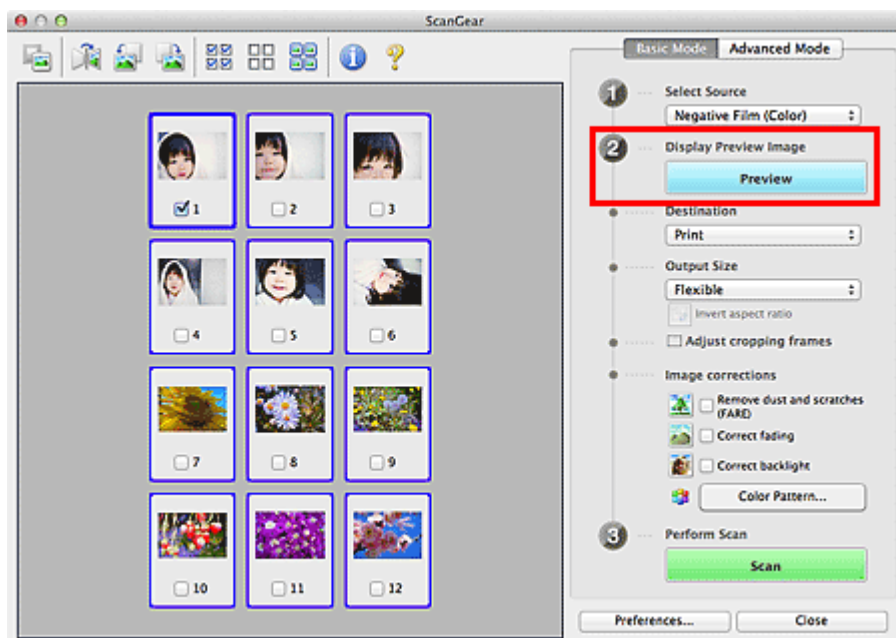
Note

- Colors are adjusted based on the document type selected in **Select Source**.

When Film is Previewed

Preview images appear in the Preview area. Cropping frames (scan area) are specified automatically according to the film size.

Select the frames to scan.



Important

- Film cannot be scanned without previewing.

4. Set **Destination**.

5. Set **Output Size** according to purpose.

Output size options vary by the item selected in **Destination**.

6. Adjust the cropping frames as required.

Adjust the size and position of the cropping frames on the preview image.

➡ [Adjusting Cropping Frames](#)

7. Set **Image corrections** as required.

8. Click **Scan**.

Scanning starts.

Note



- Click  (Information) to open a dialog in which you can check the current scan settings (document type, etc.).
- A response of ScanGear after scanning can be specified in **Status of ScanGear dialog after scanning** on the **Scan** tab of the **Preferences** dialog.

➡ [Scan Tab](#)

Related Topic

 [Basic Mode Tab](#)

Page top ▲

Scanning in Advanced Mode

Use the **Advanced Mode** tab to specify the color mode, output resolution, image brightness, color tone, etc. when scanning.

See "Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time with ScanGear (Scanner Driver)" to scan multiple documents at one time.

See "Scanning Film in Advanced Mode" to scan film.



Important

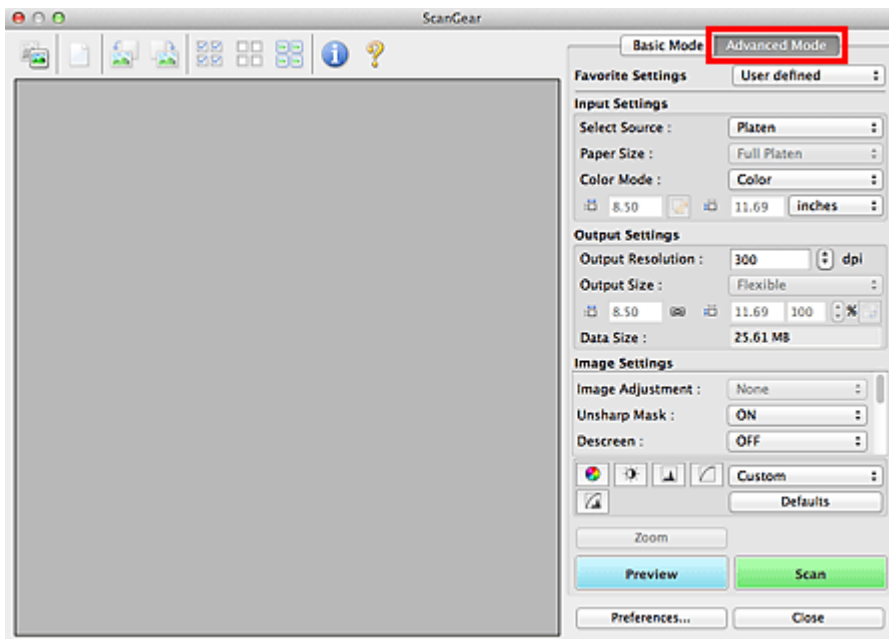
- The following types of documents may not be scanned correctly. In that case, click  (Thumbnail) on the Toolbar to switch to whole image view and scan.
 - Photos that have a whitish background
 - Documents printed on white paper, hand-written text, business cards, etc.
 - Thin documents
 - Thick documents
- The following types of documents may not be scanned correctly.
 - Documents smaller than 1.2 inches (3 cm) square
 - Photos that have been cut to various shapes

1. Place the document on the Platen, then start ScanGear (scanner driver).

- ➡ Placing Items (When Scanning from a Computer)
- ➡ Starting ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

2. Click the **Advanced Mode** tab.

The tab switches to **Advanced Mode**.



Note

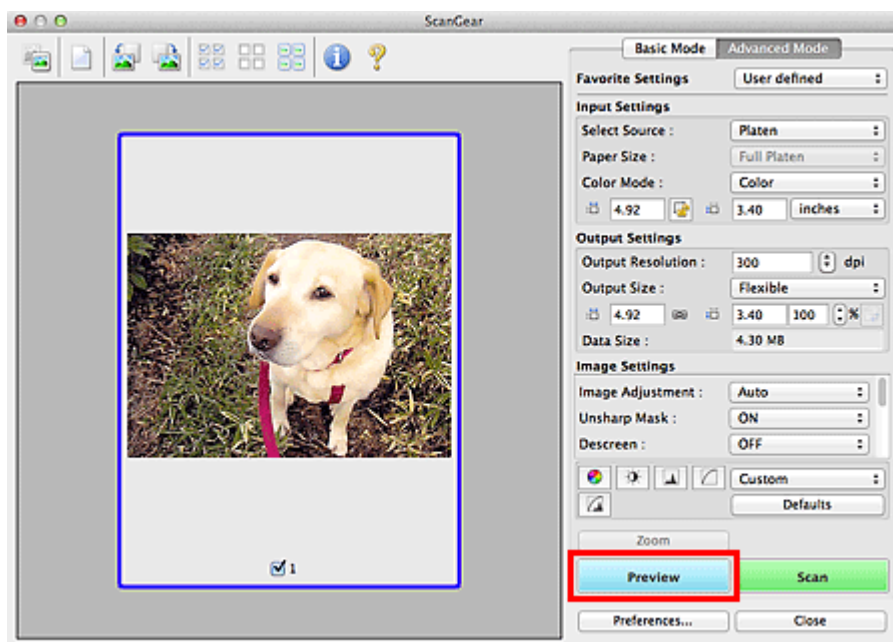
- Settings are not retained when you switch modes.

3. Set **Input Settings** according to the document or purpose.

➡ [Input Settings](#)

4. Click **Preview**.

Preview image appears in the Preview area.



5. Set **Output Settings**.

➡ [Output Settings](#)

6. Adjust the cropping frame (scan area), correct image and adjust colors as required.

➡ [Adjusting Cropping Frames](#)

➡ [Image Settings](#)

➡ [Color Adjustment Buttons](#)

7. Click **Scan**.

Scanning starts.

Note

- Click  (Information) to open a dialog in which you can check the current scan settings (document type, etc.).
- A response of ScanGear after scanning can be specified in **Status of ScanGear dialog after scanning** on the **Scan** tab of the **Preferences** dialog.

➡ [Scan Tab](#)

Related Topic

➡ [Advanced Mode Tab](#)

Scanning Film in Advanced Mode

Use the **Advanced Mode** tab to specify the color mode, output resolution, image brightness, color tone, etc. when scanning.

See "[Scanning in Advanced Mode](#)" to scan a document.

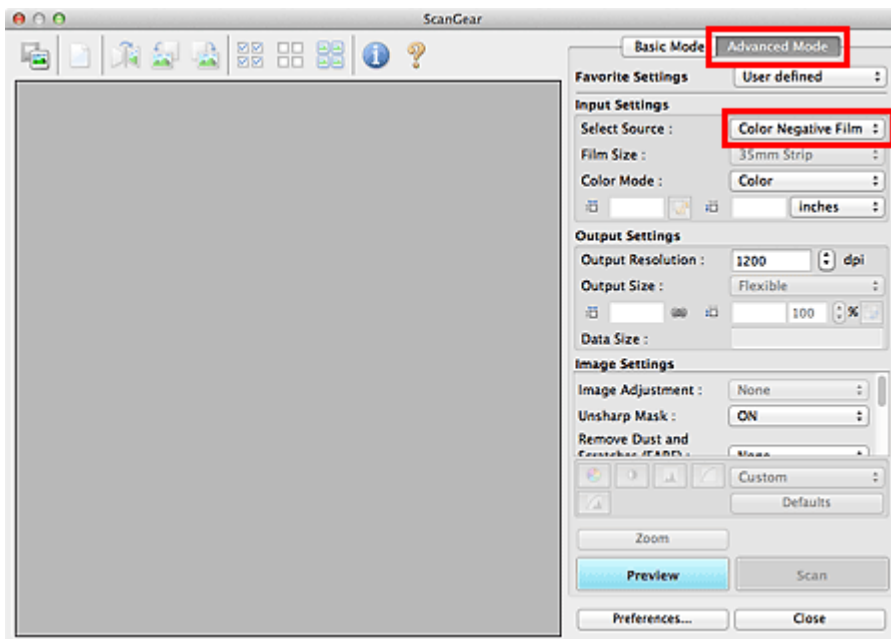
1. Place the film on the Platen, then start ScanGear (scanner driver).

- ➡ Placing Film (When Scanning from a Computer)
- ➡ Starting ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

Important

- Some applications cannot receive images scanned in **Color(48bit)** or **Grayscale(16bit)**, or may close when such images are received.

2. Click the **Advanced Mode** tab and select film for **Select Source**.



Note

- Settings are not retained when you switch modes.

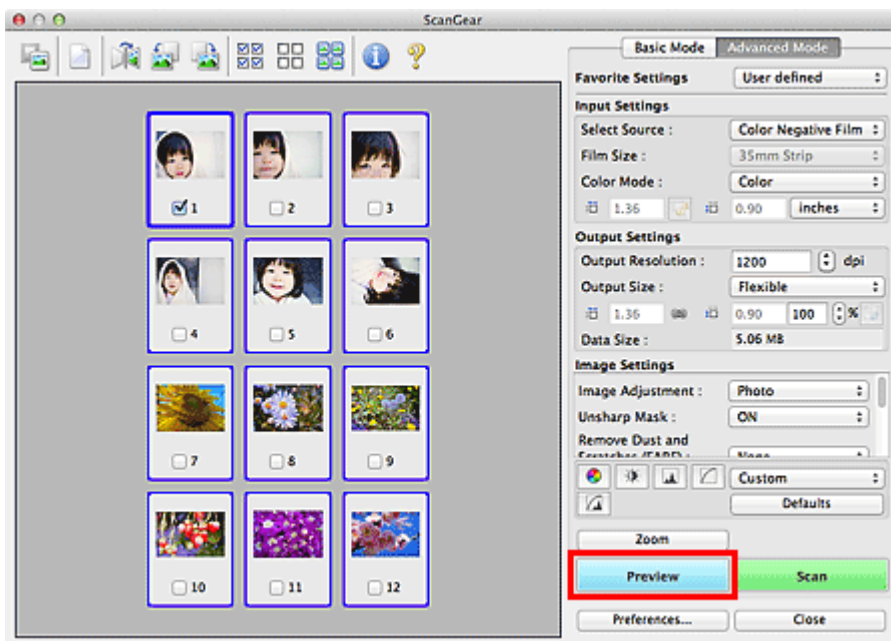
3. Set **Input Settings** according to the film or purpose.

- ➡ Input Settings

4. Click **Preview**.

Preview images appear in the Preview area. Cropping frames (scan area) are specified automatically according to the film size.

Select the frames to scan.



5. Set Output Settings.

➡ Output Settings

Note

- When the data size exceeds 1.8 GB, select the **Enable large image scans** checkbox in the **Settings (ScanGear)** dialog of IJ Scan Utility. This will enable you to scan images up to 4.0 GB.

➡ Settings (ScanGear) Dialog

6. Adjust the cropping frame, correct image and adjust colors as required.

➡ Adjusting Cropping Frames

➡ Image Settings

➡ Color Adjustment Buttons

Note

- You can correct each image separately. Select the frame you want to correct.

7. Click **Scan**.

Scanning starts.

Note

- Click  (Information) to open a dialog in which you can check the current scan settings (document type, etc.).
- A response of ScanGear after scanning can be specified in **Status of ScanGear dialog after scanning** on the **Scan** tab of the **Preferences** dialog.

➡ Scan Tab

Related Topic

➡ Advanced Mode Tab

Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time with ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

You can scan two or more photos (small documents) on the Platen at one time on the **Basic Mode** tab and **Advanced Mode** tab.

This section explains how to scan multiple documents from the **Basic Mode** tab.

Important

- To scan multiple documents as a single image, scan in whole image view.
- The following types of documents may not be cropped correctly. In that case, adjust the cropping frames (scan areas) in whole image view and scan.
 - Photos that have a whitish background
 - Documents printed on white paper, hand-written text, business cards, etc.
 - Thin documents
 - Thick documents
- ➡ Scanning Multiple Documents in Whole Image View
- The following types of documents cannot be cropped correctly.
 - Documents smaller than 1.2 inches (3 cm) square
 - Photos that have been cut to various shapes

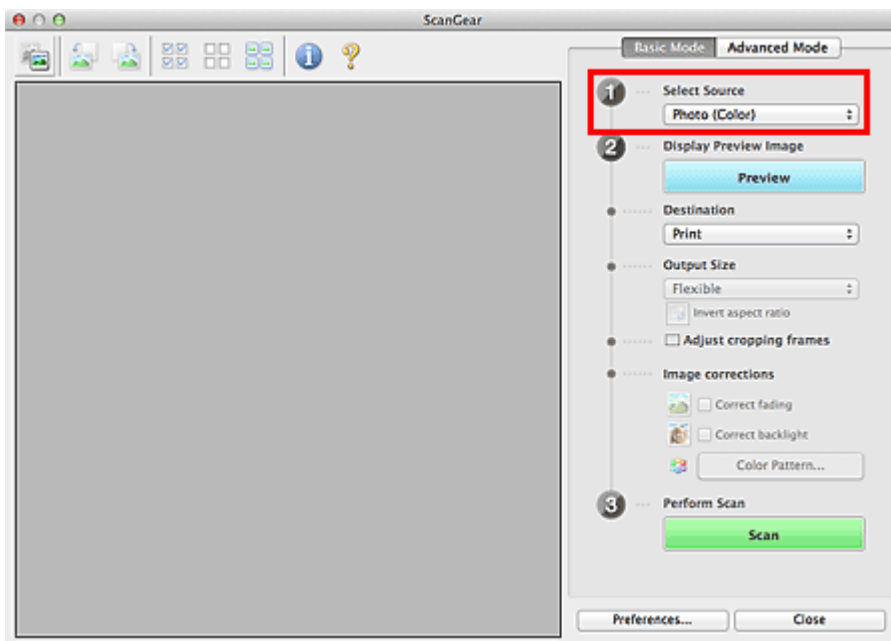
Note

- You can also scan multiple documents at one time from the **Advanced Mode** tab. Use the **Advanced Mode** tab to make advanced scan settings such as the color mode, output resolution, image brightness and color tone.
- See the corresponding sections below for details on the **Basic Mode** tab and **Advanced Mode** tab.
 - ➡ Basic Mode Tab
 - ➡ Advanced Mode Tab

1. Place the document on the Platen, then start ScanGear (scanner driver).

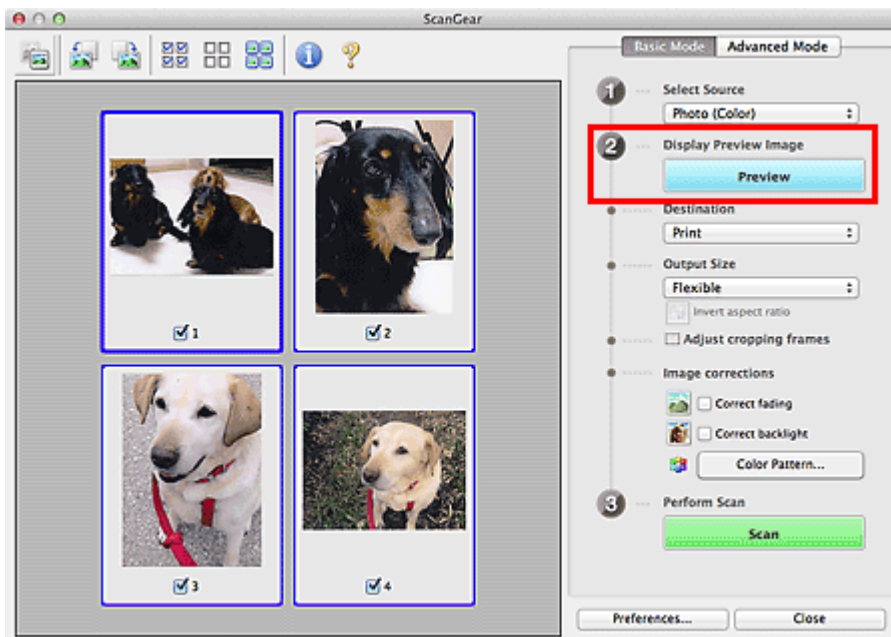
- ➡ Placing Items (When Scanning from a Computer)
- ➡ Starting ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

2. Set **Select Source** according to the document placed on the Platen.



3. Click **Preview**.

Thumbnails of the preview images appear in the Preview area. Cropping frames are specified automatically according to the document size.



4. Set **Destination**.

5. Set **Output Size** according to purpose.

6. Adjust the cropping frames and set **Image corrections** as required.

Note

- You can correct each image separately. Select the frame you want to correct.
 - In thumbnail view, you can only create one cropping frame per image. To create multiple cropping frames in an image, scan in whole image view.
- ➡ [Scanning Multiple Documents in Whole Image View](#)

7. Select the images you want to scan.

Select the checkboxes of the images you want to scan.

8. Click **Scan**.

Scanning Multiple Documents in Whole Image View

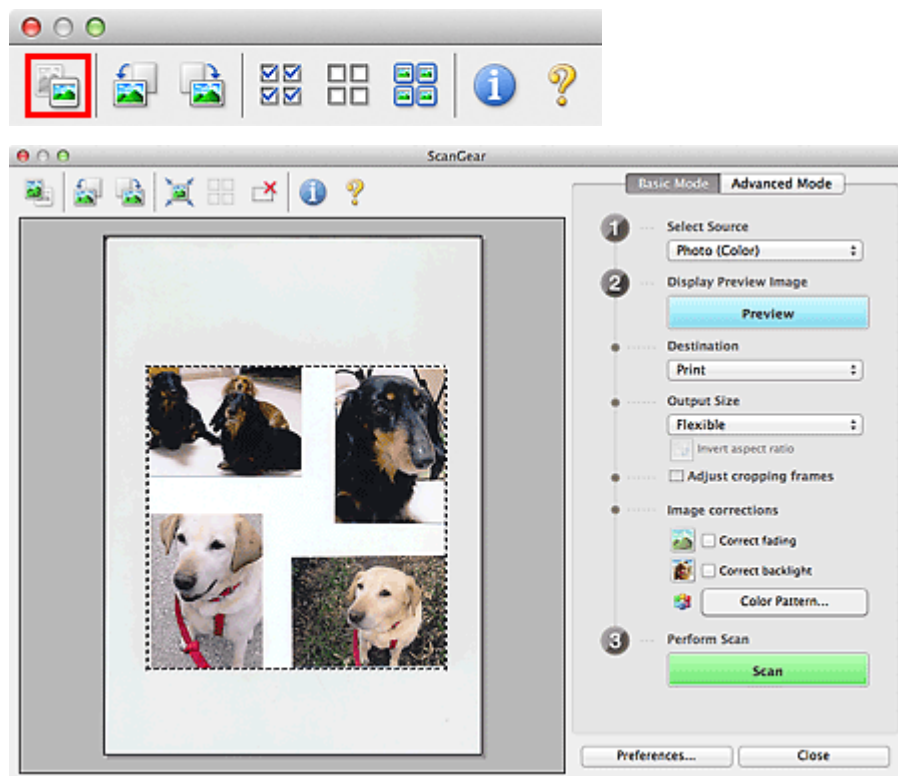
Follow these steps if thumbnails are not displayed correctly when previewed or if you want to scan multiple documents as a single image.

Note

- Positions of slanted documents are not corrected in whole image view.

1. After previewing images, click (Thumbnail) on the Toolbar.

Switch to whole image view.



Note

- When the whole image is displayed, the icon changes to  (Whole Image).

2. Set **Destination**.

3. Set **Output Size** according to purpose.

Invert aspect ratio will be enabled when **Output Size** is set to anything but **Flexible**. Click this button to rotate the cropping frame. Click again to return it to the original orientation.

4. Adjust the cropping frames.

Adjust the size and position of the cropping frames on the preview image. You can also create two or more cropping frames.

If an area is not specified, the document will be scanned at the document size (Auto Crop). If an area is specified, only the portion in the specified area will be scanned.

➡ **Adjusting Cropping Frames**

5. Set **Image corrections** as required.

6. Click **Scan**.

Areas framed by broken lines are scanned.



Note

- A response of ScanGear after scanning can be specified in **Status of ScanGear dialog after scanning** on the **Scan** tab of the **Preferences** dialog.

➡ [Scan Tab](#)

[Page top ▲](#)

Correcting Images and Adjusting Colors with ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

- **Sharpening out-of-focus photos, reducing dust and scratches, and correcting faded colors**

➡ Correcting Images (Unsharp Mask, Reduce Dust and Scratches, Fading Correction, etc.)

- **Previewing and changing the color tone of the entire image to scan**

➡ Adjusting Colors Using a Color Pattern

- **Brightening colors that have faded with time or due to colorcast**

➡ Adjusting Saturation and Color Balance

- **Adjusting images that are too dark or bright, or too flat due to lack of contrast**

➡ Adjusting Brightness and Contrast

- **Adjusting the color tone using histogram (a graph showing brightness distribution)**

➡ Adjusting Histogram

- **Adjusting the image brightness using tone curve (a graph of brightness balance)**

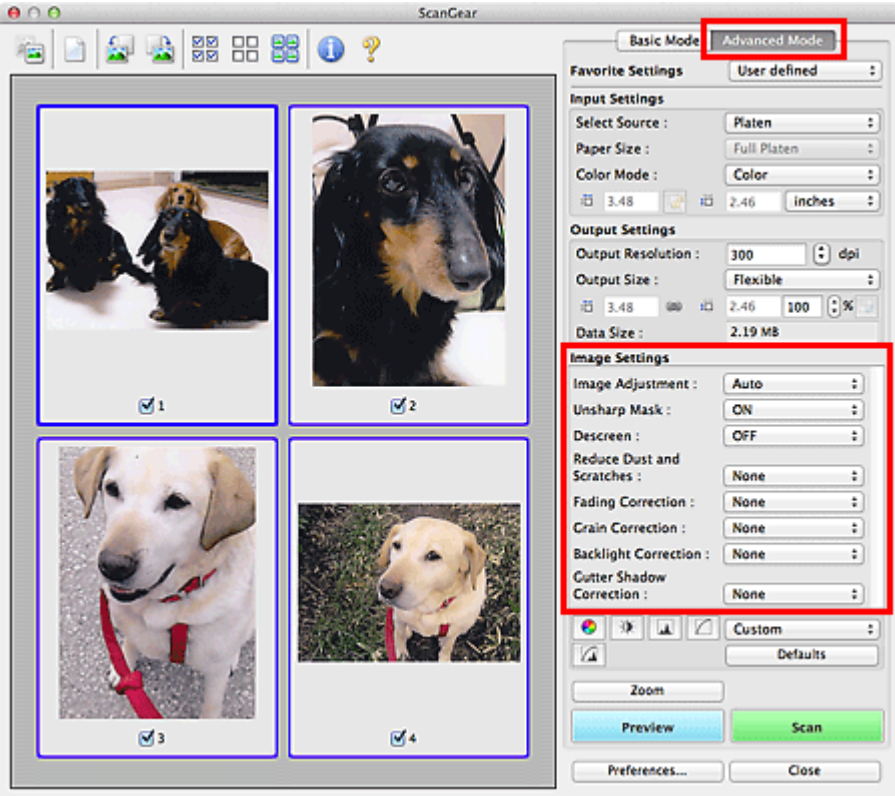
➡ Adjusting Tone Curve

- **Sharpening characters in text documents or reducing show-through effects**

➡ Setting Threshold

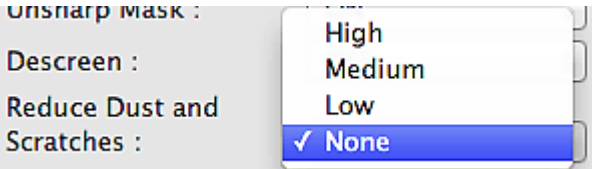
Correcting Images (Unsharp Mask, Reduce Dust and Scratches, Fading Correction, etc.)

The **Image Settings** functions on the **Advanced Mode** tab of ScanGear (scanner driver) allow you to enhance the outline of the subjects, reduce dust/scratches and correct faded colors when scanning images.



Setting Items

Click  (Arrow) of a function and select an item from the pop-up menu.



Important

- Do not apply these functions to images without moire, dust/scratches or faded colors. The color tone may be adversely affected.
- See "Image Settings" for details and precautions on each function.

Note

- See "Scanning in Advanced Mode" to start the **Advanced Mode** tab of ScanGear and scan.
- The setting items vary depending on whether **Select Source** is **Platen** or film.

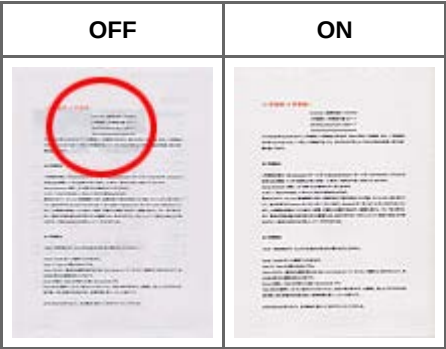
Adjusting the image brightness and color tone

Set **Image Adjustment** to **Auto**, **Photo**, **Magazine**, or **Document** according to the document type.



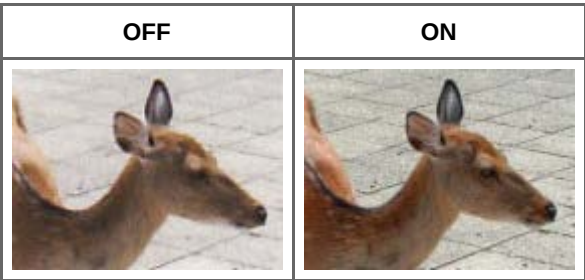
Reducing show-through in text documents or lightening the base color in recycled paper, newspapers, etc. when scanning documents

Set **Reduce Show-through** to **ON**.



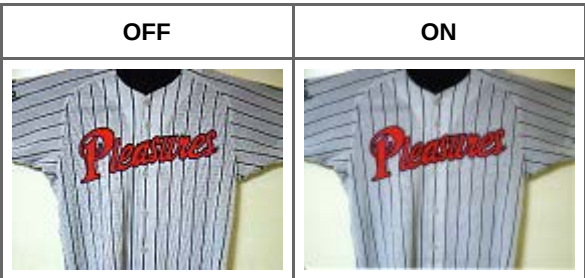
Sharpening slightly out-of-focus images

Set **Unsharp Mask** to **ON**.



Reducing gradations and stripe patterns

Set **Descreen** to **ON**.

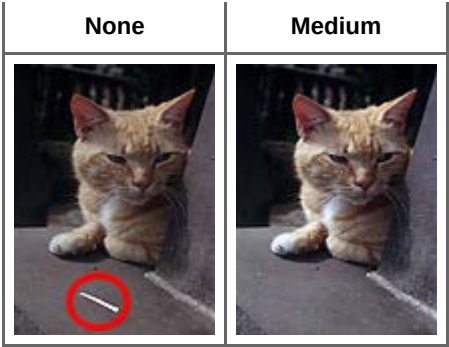


 Note

- Printed photos and pictures are displayed as a collection of fine dots. "Moire" is a phenomenon where uneven gradation or a stripe pattern appears when such photos or pictures printed with fine dots are scanned. **Descreen** is the function for reducing this moire effect.

Removing dust and scratches when scanning film

Set **Remove Dust and Scratches (FARE)** to **Low**, **Medium**, or **High** according to the degree of dust and scratches. Dust and scratches on film will be removed automatically when scanning.

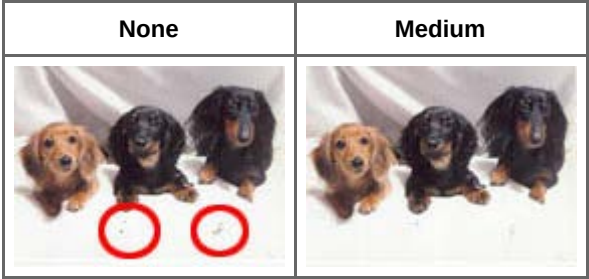


 Note

- When the resolution is set to 4801 dpi or higher and **Remove Dust and Scratches (FARE)** is set to on, scanning takes longer than usual. Also, make sure that there is sufficient free hard disk space before scanning.

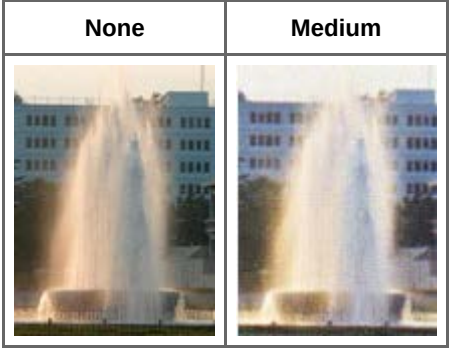
Reducing dust and scratches

Set **Reduce Dust and Scratches** to **Low**, **Medium**, or **High** according to the degree of dust and scratches.



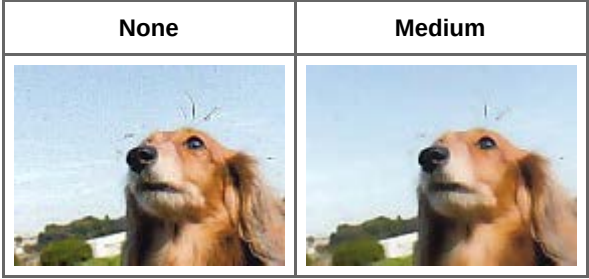
Correcting photos that have faded with time or due to colorcast

Set **Fading Correction** to **Low**, **Medium**, or **High** according to the degree of fading or colorcast.



Reducing graininess

Set **Grain Correction** to **Low**, **Medium**, or **High** according to the degree of graininess.



Correcting backlit images

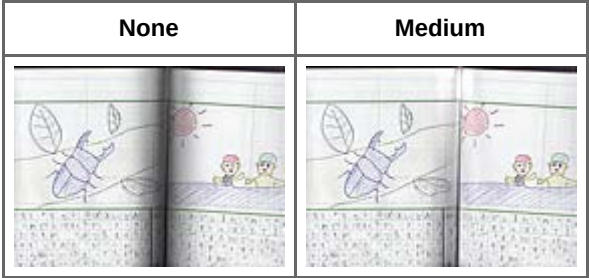
Set **Backlight Correction** to **Low**, **Medium**, or **High** according to the degree of backlight.





Correcting shadows that appear between pages when scanning open booklets

Set **Gutter Shadow Correction** to **Low**, **Medium**, or **High** according to the degree of shadows.



Adjusting the film exposure manually

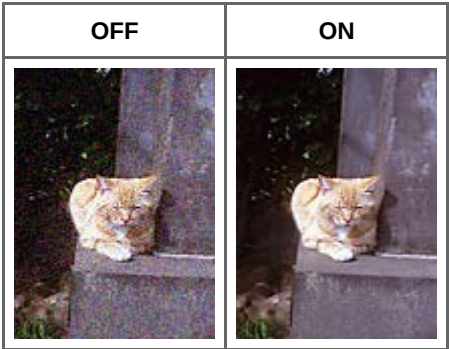
Click  (Down arrow) of **Exposure/Tone Settings**.

Select the **Manual Exposure** checkbox and adjust the exposure within the range of 50 % to 200 %.



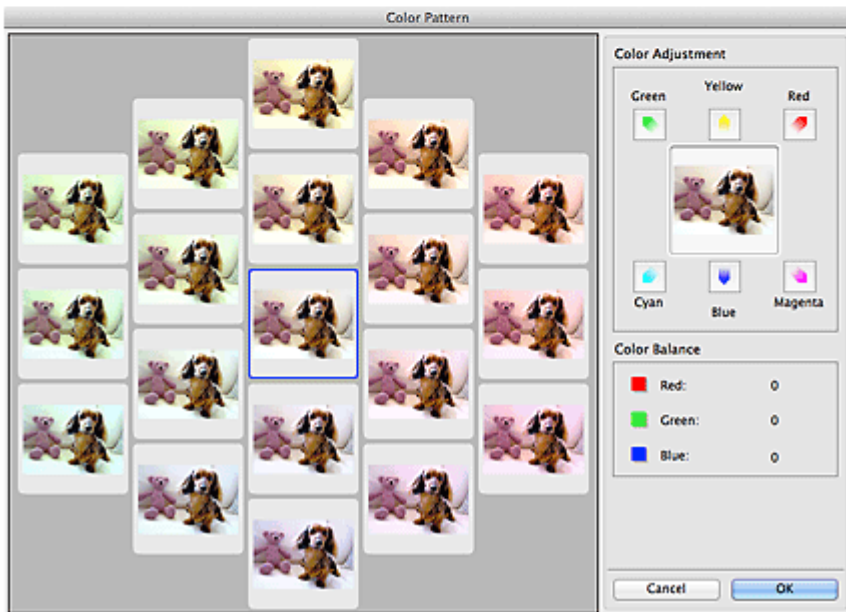
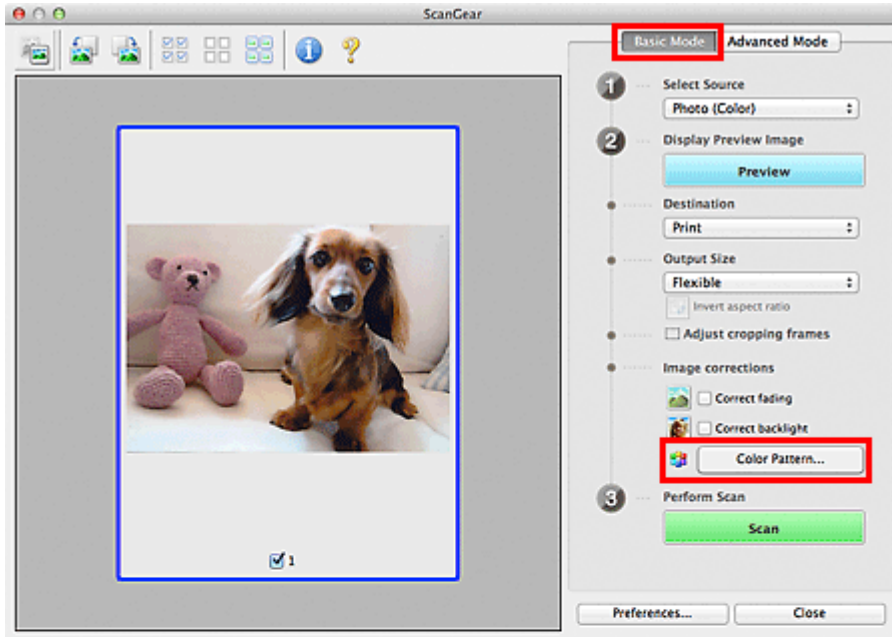
Scanning film at high quality

Click  (Down arrow) of **Exposure/Tone Settings** and set **High Quality** to **ON**.



Adjusting Colors Using a Color Pattern

You can preview color changes and reproduce natural colors by using the color pattern function in ScanGear (scanner driver)'s **Basic Mode** tab.



Color Adjustment

Correct colors that have faded with time or due to colorcast. "Colorcast" is a phenomenon where a specific color affects the entire picture due to the weather or ambient strong colors.

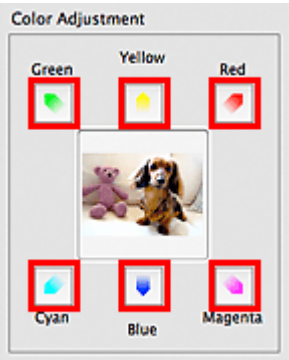
Click an arrow in **Color Adjustment** to emphasize the corresponding color.

Cyan & red, magenta & green and yellow & blue are complementary color pairs (each pair produces a

shade of gray when mixed). You can reproduce the natural colors of the scene by reducing the cast color and increasing the complementary color.

It is recommended that you find a portion in the image where it should be white, and adjust the colors so that the portion turns white.

Preview image appears in the center. Preview image colors change as you adjust them.



Below is an example of correcting a bluish image.

Since **Blue** and **Green** are too strong, click the **Yellow** and **Magenta** arrows to correct.

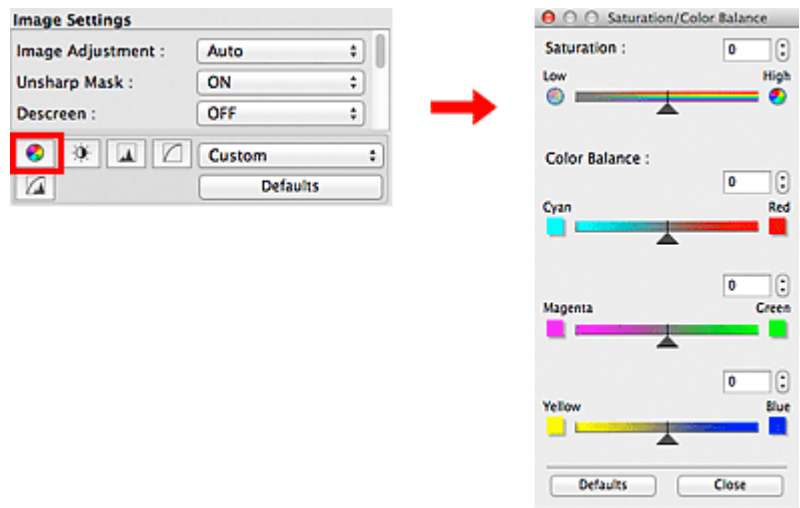
Before	After
	

 Note

- Color adjustments are applied only to the cropping frames (scan areas) or the frame selected in thumbnail view.
You can select multiple frames or cropping frames by clicking them while pressing the command key.
- You can also select a color tone from the color pattern displayed on the left of the **Color Pattern** screen.
- You can also use this function to add a specific tint to an image. Increase the magenta to add a warm tint, and increase the blue to add a cool tint.

Adjusting Saturation and Color Balance

In ScanGear (scanner driver)'s **Advanced Mode** tab, click  (Saturation/Color Balance).



Note

- Click **Defaults** to reset all adjustments in the current window.

Saturation

Adjust the image's saturation (vividness). You can brighten colors that have faded with time, etc.
Move  (Slider) under **Saturation** to the left to decrease the saturation (darken the image), and to the right to increase the saturation (brighten the image). You can also enter a value (-127 to 127).



Saturation decreased	Original image	Saturation increased
		

Note

- The natural color tone of the original image may be lost if you increase saturation too much.

Color Balance

Adjust images that have a colorcast. "Colorcast" is a phenomenon where a specific color affects the entire picture due to the weather or ambient strong colors.

Move  (Slider) under **Color Balance** to the left or right to emphasize the corresponding color.

Cyan & Red

Magenta & Green

Yellow & Blue

These are complementary color pairs (each pair produces a shade of gray when mixed). You can reproduce the natural colors of the scene by reducing the cast color and increasing the complementary color.

It is usually difficult to correct the image completely by adjusting only one color pair. It is recommended that you find a portion in the image where it should be white, and adjust all three color pairs so that the portion turns white.

You can also enter a value (-127 to 127).

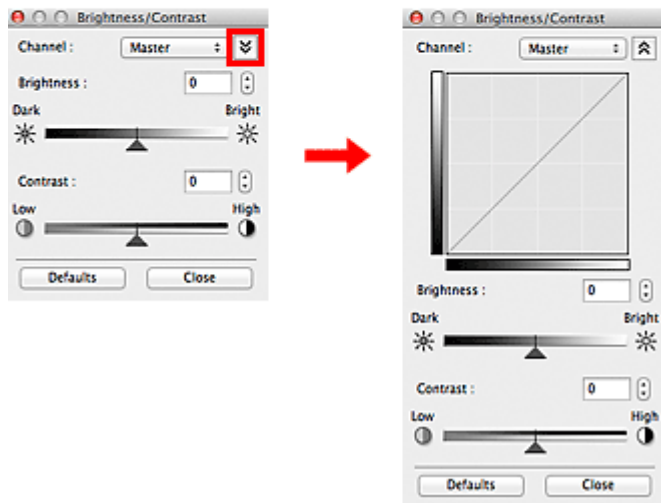
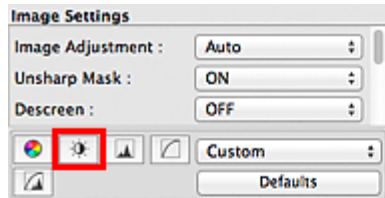
Below is an example of an image in which the "Cyan & Red" pair has been adjusted.



Cyan is increased	Red is increased
	

Adjusting Brightness and Contrast

In ScanGear (scanner driver)'s **Advanced Mode** tab, click  (Brightness/Contrast).



Note

- Click  (Down arrow) to switch to detailed view. Click  (Up arrow) to return to the previous view.
- Click **Defaults** to reset all adjustments in the current window.

Channel

Each dot of an image is a mixture of Red, Green, and Blue in various proportions (gradation). These colors can be adjusted individually as a "channel."

- **Master**
Adjust the Red, Green, and Blue combined.
- **Red**
Adjust the Red channel.
- **Green**
Adjust the Green channel.
- **Blue**
Adjust the Blue channel.



Note

- Only **Grayscale** will be displayed in **Channel** when **Color Mode** is **Grayscale** or **Grayscale(16bit)**.

Brightness

Adjust the image brightness. Move ▲ (Slider) under **Brightness** to the left to darken and right to brighten the image. You can also enter a value (-127 to 127).



Darkened	Original image	Brightened
		

Note

- Highlights may be lost if you brighten the image too much, and shadows may be lost if you darken the image too much.

Contrast

"Contrast" is the degree of difference between the brighter and darker parts of an image. Increasing contrast will increase the difference, thus sharpening the image. Decreasing contrast will decrease the difference, thus softening the image.

Move ▲ (Slider) under **Contrast** to the left to decrease and right to increase the contrast of the image. You can also enter a value (-127 to 127).



Decreased contrast	Original image	Increased contrast
		

Note

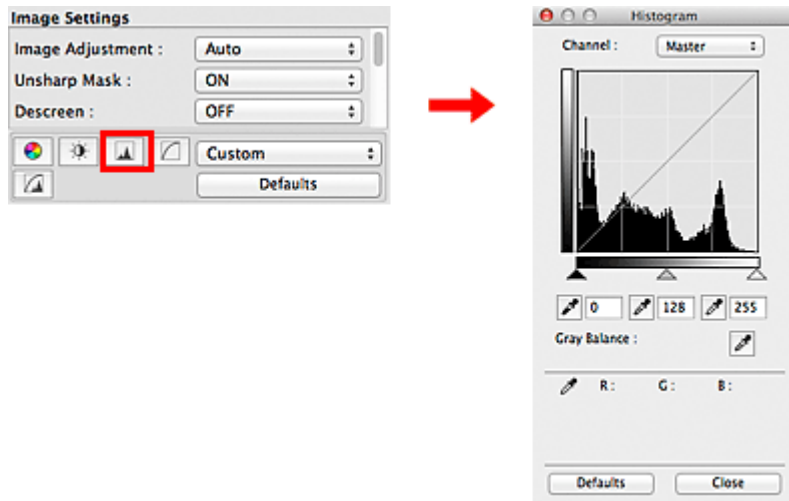
- Increasing the contrast is effective in adding a three-dimensional feel to soft images. However, shadows and highlights may be lost if you increase the contrast too much.

S913

ScanGear

Adjusting Histogram

In ScanGear (scanner driver)'s **Advanced Mode** tab, click  (Histogram).



Note

- Click **Defaults** to reset all adjustments in the current window.

Channel

Each dot of an image is a mixture of Red, Green, and Blue in various proportions (gradation). These colors can be adjusted individually as a "channel."

- **Master**
Adjust the Red, Green, and Blue combined.
- **Red**
Adjust the Red channel.
- **Green**
Adjust the Green channel.
- **Blue**
Adjust the Blue channel.



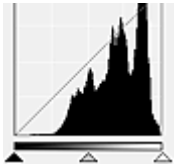
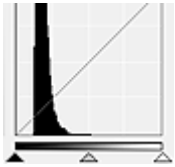
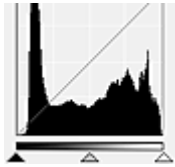
Note

- Only **Grayscale** will be displayed in **Channel** when **Color Mode** is **Grayscale** or **Grayscale(16bit)**.

Reading Histograms

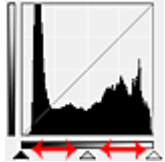
You can see the histogram of a specified area for each **Channel**. The higher the histogram peak, the more data is distributed to that level.



(1) Bright area	(2) Dark area	(3) Whole image
		
More data is distributed to the highlight side.	More data is distributed to the shadow side.	Data is widely distributed between the highlight and shadow.

Adjusting Histograms (Using the Slider)

Select a **Channel**, then move  (Black-point Slider) or  (White-point Slider) to specify the level to be set as the shadow or highlight.



- All parts to the left of  (Black-point Slider) will be black (level 0).
- The parts at  (Mid-point Slider) will turn to the color exactly between the black-point and white-point.
- All parts to the right of  (White-point Slider) will turn white (level 255).

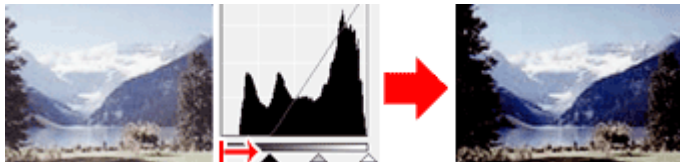
When **Image Adjustment** is set to anything but **None**, the adjustments shown below are performed automatically.

Moving the Black-point and White-point Sliders

Move the Black-point Slider or White-point Slider to adjust brightness.

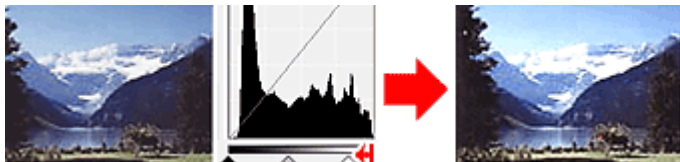
Images with more data distributed to the highlight side

Move the Black-point Slider toward the highlight side.



Images with more data distributed to the shadow side

Move the White-point Slider toward the shadow side.



Images with widely distributed data

Move the Black-point Slider toward the highlight side, and White-point Slider toward the shadow side.

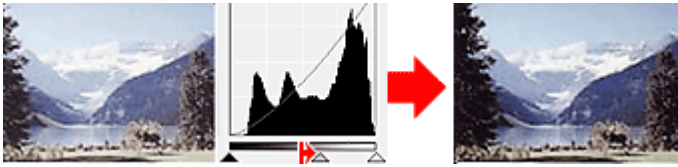


Moving the Mid-point Slider

Move the Mid-point Slider to specify the level to be set as the middle of the tonal range.

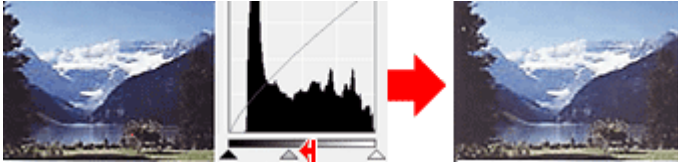
Images with more data distributed to the highlight side

Move the Mid-point Slider toward the highlight side.



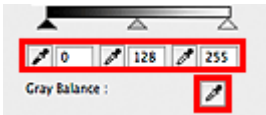
Images with more data distributed to the shadow side

Move the Mid-point Slider toward the shadow side.



Adjusting Histograms (Using the Droppers)

When you select a **Channel** and click the Black-point, Mid-point or White-point Dropper, the mouse pointer on the preview image changes to a dropper. Click a Dropper displayed below the histogram to change the setting.

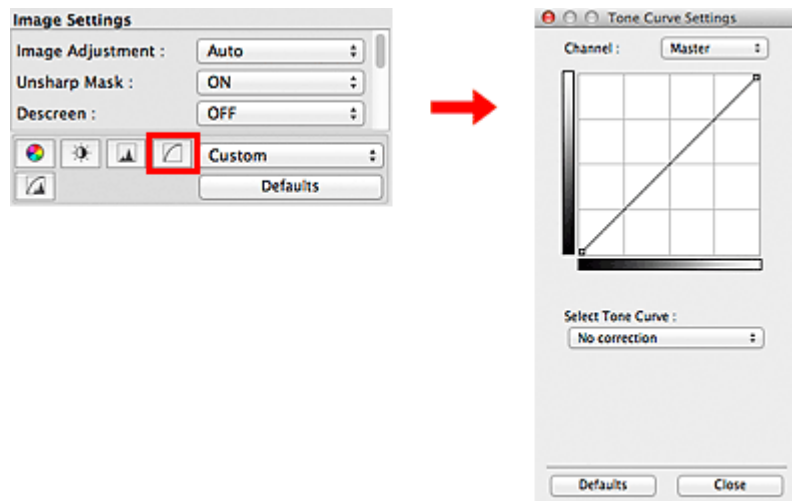


- The point clicked with  (Black-point Dropper) will be the darkest point. You can also enter a value (0 to 245).
- The point clicked with  (Mid-point Dropper) will be the middle of the tonal range. You can also enter a value (5 to 250).
- The point clicked with  (White-point Dropper) will be the brightest point. You can also enter a value (10 to 255).
- Click  (Dropper) for **Gray Balance** and click the area you want to adjust the color in the preview image.

The clicked point will be set as the achromatic color reference, and the rest of the image is adjusted accordingly. For instance, if snow in a photo appears bluish, click the bluish part to adjust the whole image and reproduce natural colors.

Adjusting Tone Curve

In ScanGear (scanner driver)'s **Advanced Mode** tab, click  (Tone Curve Settings).



Note

- Click **Defaults** to reset all adjustments in the current window.

Channel

Each dot of an image is a mixture of Red, Green, and Blue in various proportions (gradation). These colors can be adjusted individually as a "channel."

- **Master**
Adjust the Red, Green, and Blue combined.
- **Red**
Adjust the Red channel.
- **Green**
Adjust the Green channel.
- **Blue**
Adjust the Blue channel.

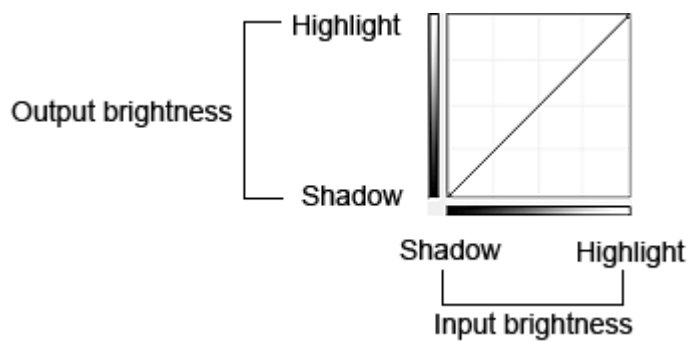


Note

- Only **Grayscale** will be displayed in **Channel** when **Color Mode** is **Grayscale** or **Grayscale(16bit)**.

Reading Tone Curves

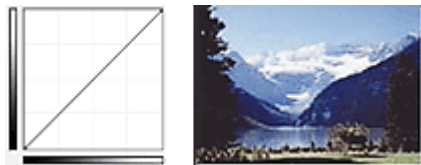
With ScanGear, scanning images via a scanner is the input, and displaying to a monitor is the output. "Tone Curve" shows the balance of tone input and output for each **Channel**.



Adjusting Tone Curve

In **Select Tone Curve**, select a tone curve from **No correction**, **Overexposure**, **Underexposure**, **High contrast**, **Reverse the negative/positive image** and **Edit custom curve**.

No correction (No adjustment)



Overexposure (Convex curve)

The midtone data of the input side is stretched toward the highlight of the output side, resulting in a bright-toned image when viewed on a monitor.



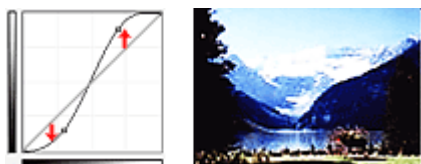
Underexposure (Concave curve)

The midtone data of the input side is stretched toward the shadow of the output side, resulting in a dark-toned image when viewed on a monitor.



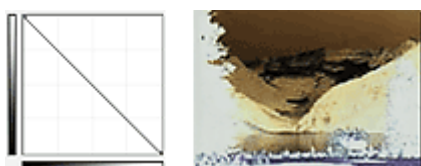
High contrast (S curve)

The highlight and shadow of the input side are enhanced, resulting in a high-contrast image.



Reverse the negative/positive image (Downward-sloping line)

The input and output sides are reversed, resulting in a negative-positive inverted image.



Edit custom curve

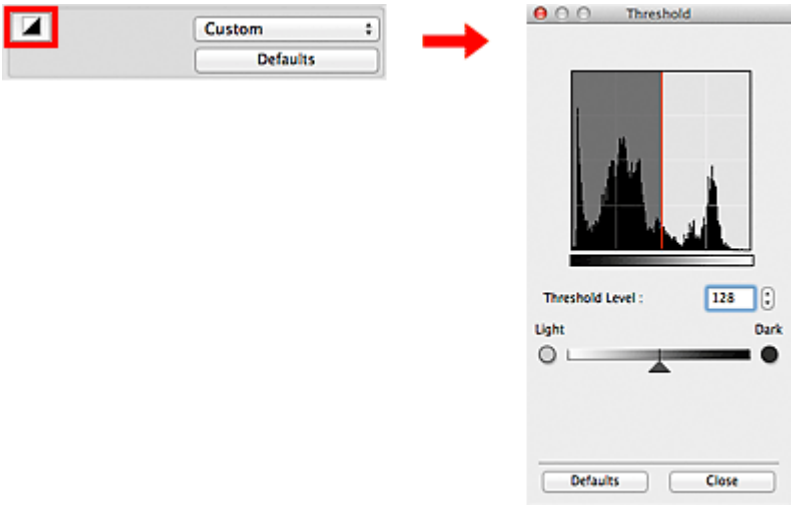
You can drag specific points on the Tone Curve to freely adjust the brightness of the corresponding areas.

Setting Threshold

The brightness of color and grayscale images is expressed in a value between 0 and 255. However, in creating black and white images, all colors are mapped to either black (0) or white (255). "Threshold" is the borderline value that determines a color as black or white. By adjusting the threshold level, you can sharpen text in a document or reduce show-through in newspapers.

This function is available when **Color Mode** is **Black and White**.

In ScanGear (scanner driver)'s **Advanced Mode** tab, click  (Threshold).



Note

- Click **Defaults** to reset all adjustments in the current window.

Adjusting Threshold

Move  (Slider) to the right to increase the threshold value and thus increase the black areas. Move the slider to the left to decrease the value and thus increase the white areas. You can also enter a value (0 to 255).



S923



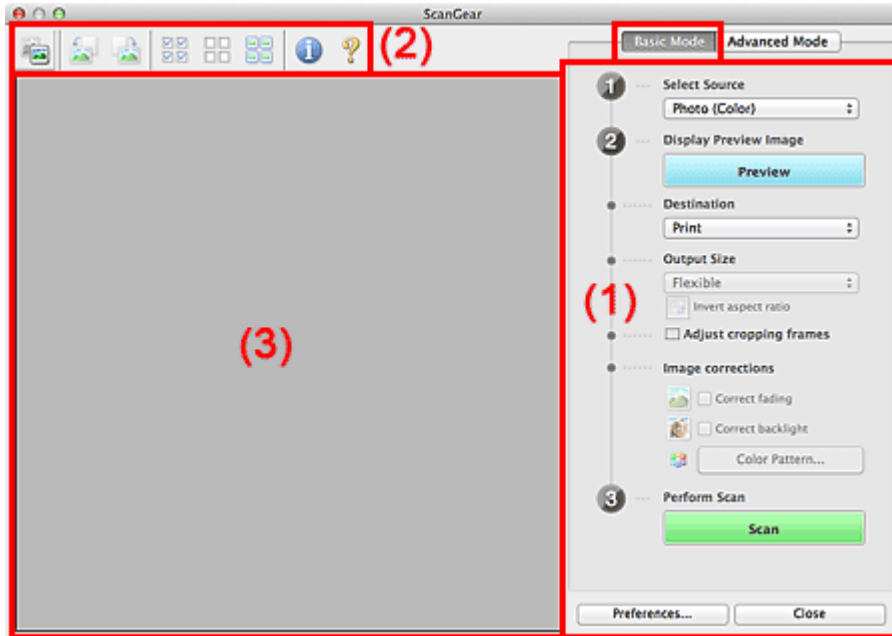
ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screens

- ➡ Basic Mode Tab
- ➡ Advanced Mode Tab
 - Input Settings
 - Output Settings
 - Image Settings
 - Color Adjustment Buttons
- ➡ Preferences Dialog
 - Scanner Tab
 - Preview Tab
 - Scan Tab
 - Color Settings Tab

Basic Mode Tab

This mode allows you to scan easily by following the on-screen steps.

This section describes the settings and functions available on the **Basic Mode** tab.



(1) Settings and Operation Buttons

(2) Toolbar

(3) Preview Area



Note

- The displayed items vary by document type and view.

(1) Settings and Operation Buttons

- **Select Source**
 - **Photo (Color)**
Scan color photos.
 - **Magazine (Color)**
Scan color magazines.
 - **Document (Color)**
Scan documents in color.
 - **Document (Grayscale)**
Scan documents in black and white.
 - **Negative Film (Color)**
Scan 35 mm color negative film in color.
 - **Positive Film (Color)**
Scan 35 mm color positive film in color.



Note

- To scan black and white film or 120 Format Film, scan from the **Advanced Mode** tab.

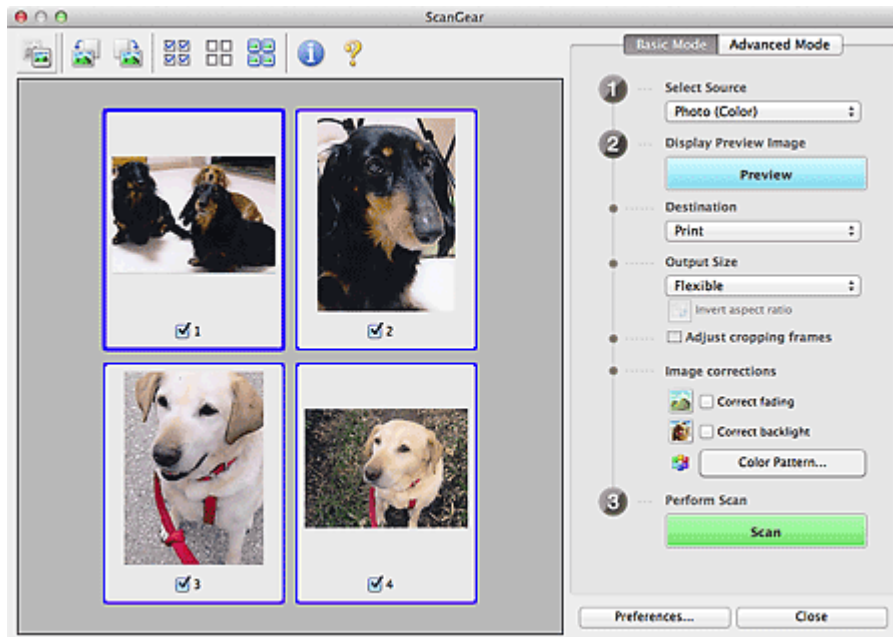
➡ Scanning Film in Advanced Mode

- When you select a document type, the unsharp mask function will be active. The image adjustment function which adjusts images based on the document type will also be active.
- If you select **Magazine (Color)**, the descreen function will be active.

• Display Preview Image

• Preview

Performs a trial scan.



Note

- When using the machine for the first time, scanner calibration starts automatically. Wait a while until the preview image appears.

• Destination

Select what you want to do with the scanned image.

• Print

Select this to print the scanned image on a printer.

• Image display

Select this to view the scanned image on a monitor.

• OCR

Select this to use the scanned image with OCR software.

"OCR software" is software that converts text scanned as an image into text data that can be edited in word processors and other programs.



Important

- This option is not displayed when film is selected for **Select Source**.

• Output Size

Select an output size.

Output size options vary by the item selected in **Destination**.

• Flexible

Allows you to freely adjust the cropping frames (scan areas).

In thumbnail view

Drag the mouse over a thumbnail to display a cropping frame. When a cropping frame is displayed, the portion within the cropping frame will be scanned. When no cropping frame is displayed, each frame is scanned individually.

In whole image view

When no cropping frame is displayed, the entire Preview area will be scanned. When a cropping frame is displayed, the portion within the cropping frame will be scanned.

- **Paper Size (L, A4, etc.)**

Select an output paper size. The portion within the cropping frame will be scanned at the size of the selected paper size. You can drag the cropping frame to enlarge/reduce it while maintaining the aspect ratio.

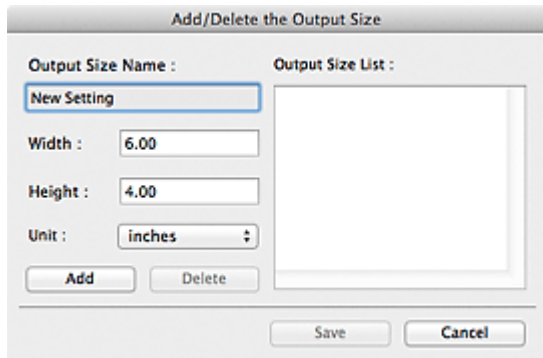
- **Monitor Size (1024 x 768 pixels, etc.)**

Select an output size in pixels.

A cropping frame of the selected monitor size will be displayed and the portion within the cropping frame will be scanned. You can drag the cropping frame to enlarge/reduce it while maintaining the aspect ratio.

- **Add/Delete...**

Opens the **Add/Delete the Output Size** dialog, in which you can specify custom output sizes. You can select this option when **Destination** is **Print** or **Image display**.



In the **Add/Delete the Output Size** dialog, you can specify multiple output sizes and save them at one time. Saved items will be registered to the **Output Size** list and can be selected, along with the predefined items.

Add

To add a size, enter **Output Size Name**, **Width**, and **Height**, then click **Add**. For **Unit**, you can select **inches** or **mm** when **Destination** is **Print** but you can only select **pixels** when **Destination** is **Image display**. The name of the added size appears in **Output Size List**. Click **Save** to save the items listed in **Output Size List**.

Delete

To delete an item, select it in **Output Size List** and click **Delete**. Click **Save** to save the items listed in **Output Size List**.



Important

- You cannot delete predefined output sizes such as **A4** and **1024 x 768 pixels**.



Note

- Save up to 10 items.
- An error message appears when you enter a value outside the setting range. Enter a value within the setting range.



Note

- For details on whether or how the cropping frame is initially displayed on a preview image, see **Cropping Frame on Previewed Images** in "**Preview Tab**" (**Preferences** dialog).



- **Invert aspect ratio**

Available when **Output Size** is set to anything but **Flexible**.

Click this button to rotate the cropping frame. Click again to return it to the original orientation.

- **Adjust cropping frames**

You can adjust the scan area within the Preview area.

If an area is not specified, the document will be scanned at the document size (Auto Crop) or film size.

If an area is specified, only the portion in the cropping frame will be scanned.

➡ Adjusting Cropping Frames

- **Image corrections**

Allows you to apply corrections to images.

Important

- **Apply Auto Document Fix**, **Correct fading** and **Correct backlight** are available when **Recommended** is selected on the **Color Settings** tab of the **Preferences** dialog.

Note

- To change exposure, select the "**Manual Exposure**" checkbox in **Advanced Mode** tab, then adjust the value and scan.
- Available functions vary by the document type selected in **Select Source**.

- **Remove dust and scratches (FARE)**

Removes dust and scratches automatically when scanning film.

Important

- This function is available only when film is scanned.

- **Apply Auto Document Fix**

Sharpens text in a document or magazine for better readability.

Important

- Scanning may take longer than usual when this checkbox is selected.
- The color tone may change from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.
- **Apply Auto Document Fix** may not be effective if the scan area is too small.

- **Correct fading**

Corrects and scans photos and film that have faded with time or have a colorcast.

- **Correct backlight**

Corrects photos and film that have been shot against light.

- **Reduce gutter shadow**

Corrects shadows that appear between pages when scanning open booklets.

Important

- For precautions on using this function, see "**Gutter Shadow Correction**."
- This function is not available when film is scanned.

- **Color Pattern...**

Allows you to adjust the image's overall color. You can correct colors that have faded due to colorcast, etc. and reproduce natural colors while previewing color changes.

➡ [Adjusting Colors Using a Color Pattern](#)

Important

- This setting is not available when you select **Color Matching** on the **Color Settings** tab of the **Preferences** dialog.

- **Perform Scan**

- **Scan**

Scanning starts.

Note

- When scanning starts, the progress will be displayed. Click **Cancel** to cancel the scan.

- **Preferences...**

The **Preferences** dialog opens and you can make scan/preview settings.

➡ **Preferences Dialog**

- **Close**

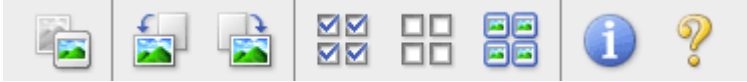
Closes ScanGear (scanner driver).

(2) Toolbar

- **Toolbar**

You can adjust or rotate preview images. The buttons displayed on the Toolbar vary by view.

When Select Source is other than film and in thumbnail view



When Select Source is other than film and in whole image view



When Select Source is film and in thumbnail view



When Select Source is film and in whole image view



-  **(Thumbnail)** /  **(Whole Image)**

Switches the view in the Preview area when document type is other than film.

➡ **Preview Area**

-  **(Film Thumbnail)** /  **(Whole Film Image)**

Switches the view in the Preview area when document type is film.

➡ **Preview Area**

-  **(Mirror)**

Inverts the preview image horizontally.

- The result will be reflected in the scanned image.

- The image returns to its original state when you preview again.

-  **(Rotate Left)**

Rotates the preview image 90 degrees counter-clockwise.

- The result will be reflected in the scanned image.

- The image returns to its original state when you preview again.

-  **(Rotate Right)**

Rotates the preview image 90 degrees clockwise.

- The result will be reflected in the scanned image.

- The image returns to its original state when you preview again.

-  **(Auto Crop)**

Displays and adjusts the cropping frame automatically to the size of the document displayed in the Preview area. The scan area is reduced every time you click this button if there are croppable areas within the cropping frame.



- **(Check All Frames)**

Available when two or more frames are displayed.
Selects the checkboxes of the image in thumbnail view.



- **(Uncheck All Frames)**

Available when two or more frames are displayed.
Deselects the checkboxes of the image in thumbnail view.



- **(Select All Frames)**

Available when two or more frames are displayed.
Selects the images in thumbnail view and outlines them in blue.



- **(Select All Cropping Frames)**

Available when two or more cropping frames are specified.
Turns the cropping frames into thick broken lines and applies the settings to all of them.



- **(Remove Cropping Frame)**

Removes the selected cropping frame.



- **(Information)**

Displays the version of ScanGear and the current scan settings (document type, etc.).



- **(Open Guide)**

Opens this page.

(3) Preview Area

- **Preview Area**

This is where a trial image is displayed after you click **Preview**. You can also check the results of the settings (image corrections, color adjustments, etc.) made in "[Settings and Operation Buttons](#)."



When **(Thumbnail)** or  **(Film Thumbnail)** is displayed on the Toolbar

Cropping frames are specified according to the document size, and thumbnails of scanned images are displayed. Only the images with the checkbox selected will be scanned.



Note

- When multiple images are previewed, different outlines indicate different selection status.
 - Focus Frame (thick blue outline): The displayed settings will be applied.

- Selected Frame (thin blue outline): The settings will be applied to the Focus Frame and Selected Frames simultaneously. You can select multiple images by clicking them while pressing the command key.

- Unselected (no outline): The settings will not be applied.

- Double-click a frame to zoom in on the image. Click   (Frame Advance) at the bottom of the screen to display the previous or next frame. Double-click the frame again to return the display to its non-magnified state.

When (Whole Image) or (Whole Film Image) is displayed on the Toolbar

When document type is other than film, items on the Platen are scanned and displayed as a single image. When document type is film, the whole film image is displayed. All portions in the cropping frames will be scanned.



Whole image view (Full Platen)



Whole film image view

 Note

- If frames are not detected (for example, only eight frames out of twelve frames are displayed) due to the image color of the film, display the whole image and scan.

 Note

- You can specify the cropping frame on the displayed image. In thumbnail view, you can only create one cropping frame per image. In whole image view, you can create multiple cropping frames.

➡ [Adjusting Cropping Frames](#)

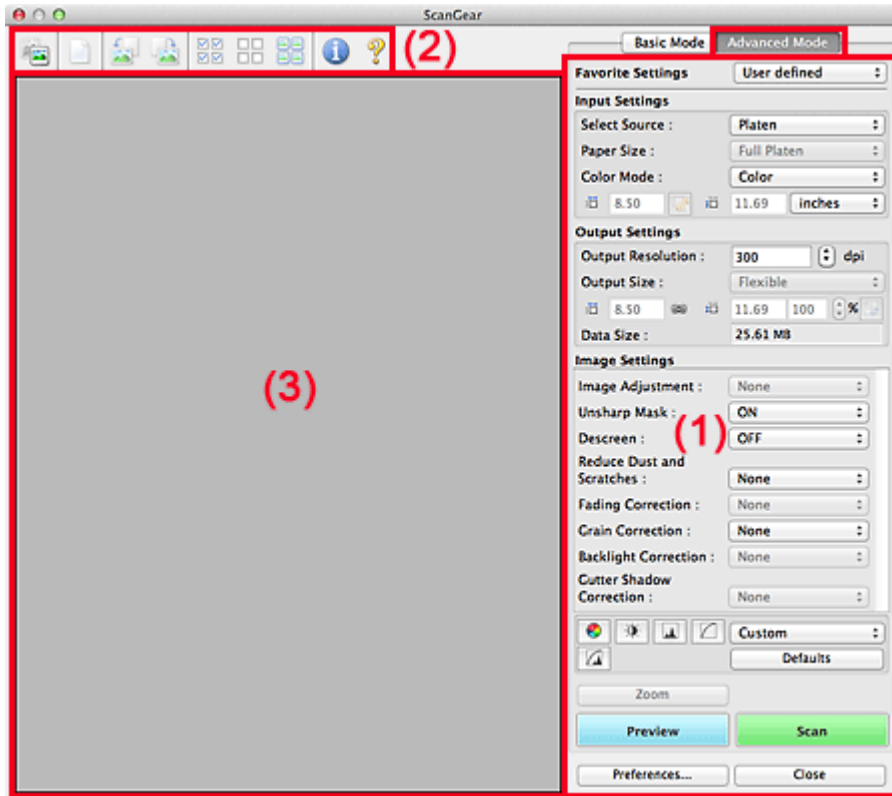
Related Topic

📌 [Scanning in Basic Mode](#)

Advanced Mode Tab

This mode allows you to make advanced scan settings such as the color mode, output resolution, image brightness and color tone.

This section describes the settings and functions available on the **Advanced Mode** tab.



- (1) Settings and Operation Buttons
- (2) Toolbar
- (3) Preview Area



Note

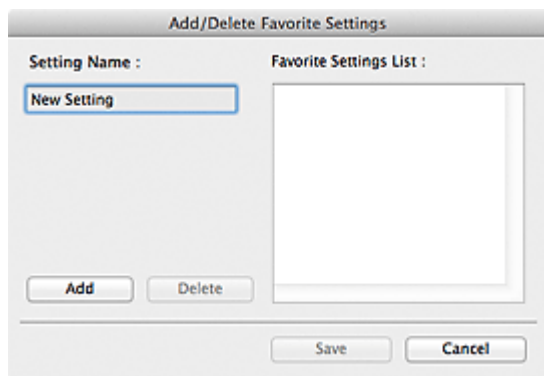
- The displayed items vary by document type and view.

(1) Settings and Operation Buttons

• Favorite Settings

You can name and save a group of settings (Input Settings, Output Settings, Image Settings and Color Adjustment Buttons) on the **Advanced Mode** tab, and load it as required. It is convenient to save a group of settings if you will be using it repeatedly. You can also use this to reload the default settings.

Select **Add/Delete...** from the pop-up menu to open the **Add/Delete Favorite Settings** dialog.



Enter **Setting Name** and click **Add**; the name appears in **Favorite Settings List**.

When you click **Save**, the item appears in the **Favorite Settings** list and can be selected, along with the predefined items.

To delete an item, select it in **Favorite Settings List** and click **Delete**. Click **Save** to save the settings displayed in **Favorite Settings List**.

Note

- You can set **Add/Delete...** in **Favorite Settings** after preview.
- Save up to 10 items.

• Input Settings

Specify the input settings such as the document type and size.

➡ [Input Settings](#)

• Output Settings

Specify the output settings such as the output resolution and size.

➡ [Output Settings](#)

• Image Settings

Enable/disable various image correction functions.

➡ [Image Settings](#)

• Color Adjustment Buttons

Fine corrections to the image brightness and color tones can be made including adjustments to the image's overall brightness or contrast and adjustments to its highlight and shadow values (histogram) or balance (tone curve).

➡ [Color Adjustment Buttons](#)

• Zoom

Zooms in on a frame, or zooms in on the image in the area specified with a cropping frame (scan area). When zoomed in, **Zoom** changes to **Undo**. Click **Undo** to return the display to its non-magnified state.

In thumbnail view

When multiple images are displayed in thumbnail view, clicking this button zooms in on the selected frame. Click  (Frame Advance) at the bottom of the screen to display the previous or next frame.

Note

- You can also zoom in on an image by double-clicking the frame. Double-click the frame again to return the display to its non-magnified state.

In whole image view

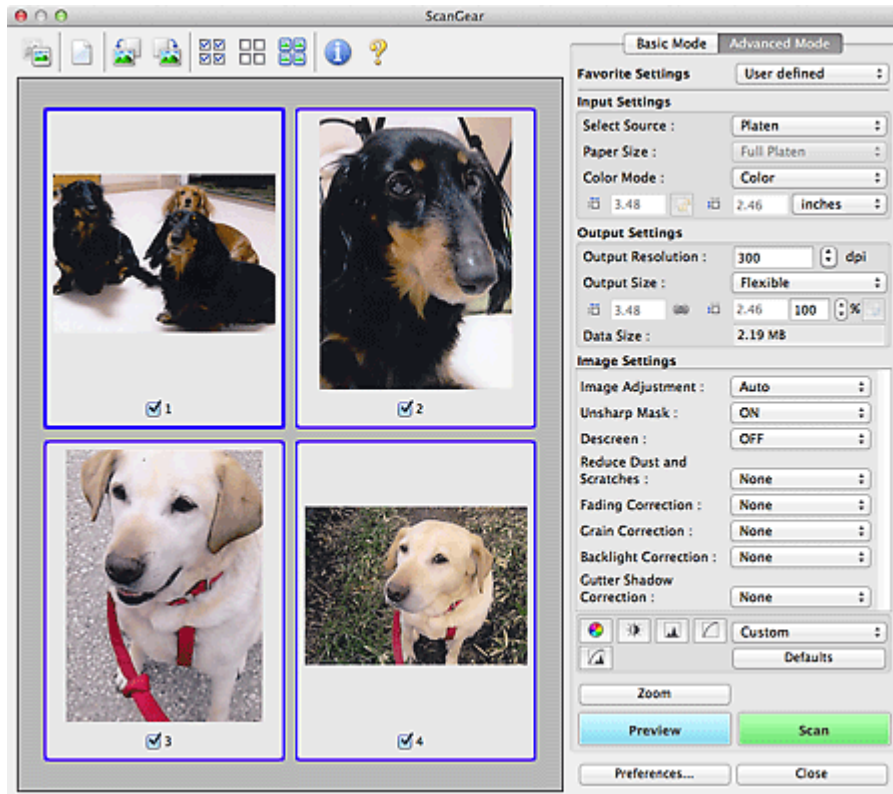
Rescans the image in the area specified with a cropping frame at higher magnification.

Note

- **Zoom** rescans the image and displays high-resolution image in Preview.
-  (Enlarge/Reduce) on the Toolbar zooms in on the preview image quickly. However, the resolution of the displayed image will be low.

- **Preview**

Performs a trial scan.



- **Scan**

Starts scanning.

Note

- When scanning starts, the progress will be displayed. Click **Cancel** to cancel the scan.
- When scanning is completed, a dialog prompting you to select the next action may open. Follow the prompt to complete. For details, see **Status of ScanGear dialog after scanning** in "Scan Tab" (**Preferences** dialog).
- It will take time to process the images if the total size of the scanned images exceeds a certain size. In that case, a warning message appears; it is recommended that you reduce the total size. To continue, scan in whole image view.

- **Preferences...**

Opens the **Preferences** dialog in which you can make scan/preview settings.

➡ **Preferences Dialog**

- **Close**

Closes ScanGear (scanner driver).

(2) Toolbar

- **Toolbar**

You can adjust or rotate preview images. The buttons displayed on the Toolbar vary by view.

When Select Source is Platen and in thumbnail view



When Select Source is Platen and in whole image view



When Select Source is film and in thumbnail view



When Select Source is film and in whole image view



-  **(Thumbnail)** /  **(Whole Image)**
Switches the view in the Preview area when document type is **Platen**.
➡ **Preview Area**
-  **(Film Thumbnail)** /  **(Whole Film Image)**
Switches the view in the Preview area when document type is film.
➡ **Preview Area**
-  **(Clear)**
Deletes the preview image from the Preview area.
It also resets the Toolbar and color adjustment settings.
-  **(Crop)**
Allows you to specify the scan area by dragging the mouse.
-  **(Move Image)**
Allows you to drag the image until the part you want to see is displayed when an image enlarged in the Preview area does not fit in the screen. You can also move the image using the scroll bars.
-  **(Enlarge/Reduce)**
Allows you to zoom in on the Preview area by clicking the image. Option-click the image to zoom out.
-  **(Mirror)**
Inverts the preview image horizontally.
 - The result will be reflected in the scanned image.
 - The image returns to its original state when you preview again.
-  **(Rotate Left)**
Rotates the preview image 90 degrees counter-clockwise.
 - The result will be reflected in the scanned image.
 - The image returns to its original state when you preview again.
-  **(Rotate Right)**
Rotates the preview image 90 degrees clockwise.
 - The result will be reflected in the scanned image.
 - The image returns to its original state when you preview again.
-  **(Auto Crop)**
Displays and adjusts the cropping frame automatically to the size of the document displayed in the Preview area. The scan area is reduced every time you click this button if there are cropable areas within the cropping frame.
-  **(Check All Frames)**
Available when two or more frames are displayed.
Selects the checkboxes of the image in thumbnail view.



- **(Uncheck All Frames)**

Available when two or more frames are displayed.
Deselects the checkboxes of the image in thumbnail view.



- **(Select All Frames)**

Available when two or more frames are displayed.
Selects the images in thumbnail view and outlines them in blue.



- **(Display Film Cropping Frame)**

Displays the cropping frame according to the film size selected in **Scan Area**.



- **(Select All Cropping Frames)**

Available when two or more cropping frames are specified.
Turns the cropping frames into thick broken lines and applies the settings to all of them.



- **(Remove Cropping Frame)**

Removes the selected cropping frame.



- **(Information)**

Displays the version of ScanGear and the current scan settings (document type, etc.).



- **(Open Guide)**

Opens this page.

(3) Preview Area

- **Preview Area**

This is where a trial image is displayed after you click **Preview**. You can also check the results of the settings (image corrections, color adjustments, etc.) made in "[Settings and Operation Buttons](#)."



When **(Thumbnail)** or  **(Film Thumbnail)** is displayed on the Toolbar

Cropping frames are specified according to the document size, and thumbnails of scanned images are displayed. Only the images with the checkbox selected will be scanned.



Note

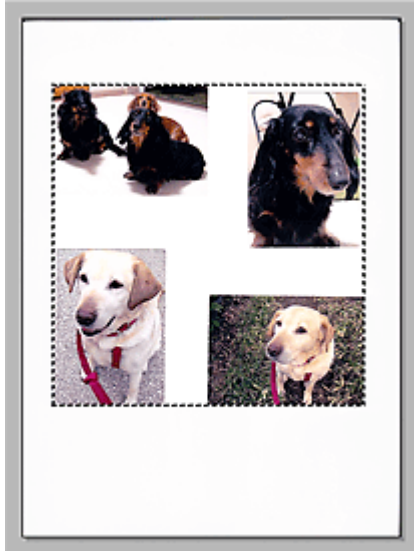
- When multiple images are previewed, different outlines indicate different selection status.
 - Focus Frame (thick blue outline): The displayed settings will be applied.
 - Selected Frame (thin blue outline): The settings will be applied to the Focus Frame and

Selected Frames simultaneously. You can select multiple images by clicking them while pressing the command key.

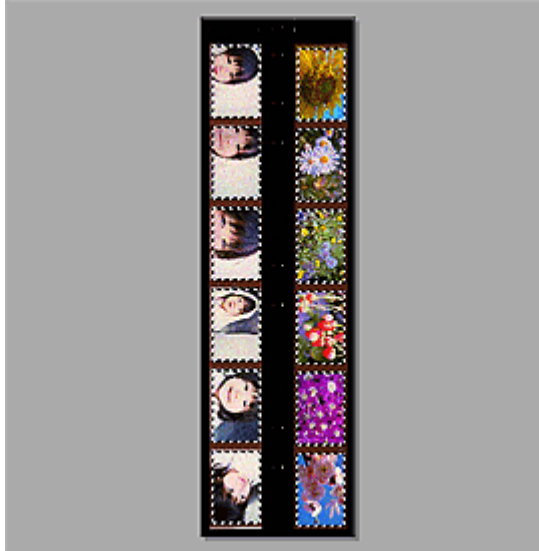
- Unselected (no outline): The settings will not be applied.

When  (Whole Image) or  (Whole Film Image) is displayed on the Toolbar

When document type is **Platen**, items on the Platen are scanned and displayed as a single image. When document type is film, the whole film image is displayed. All portions in the cropping frames will be scanned.



Whole image view (Full Platen)



Whole film image view

Note

- If frames are not detected (for example, only eight frames out of twelve frames are displayed) due to the image color of the film, display the whole image and scan.

Note

- You can specify the cropping frame on the displayed image. In thumbnail view, you can only create one cropping frame per image. In whole image view, you can create multiple cropping frames.

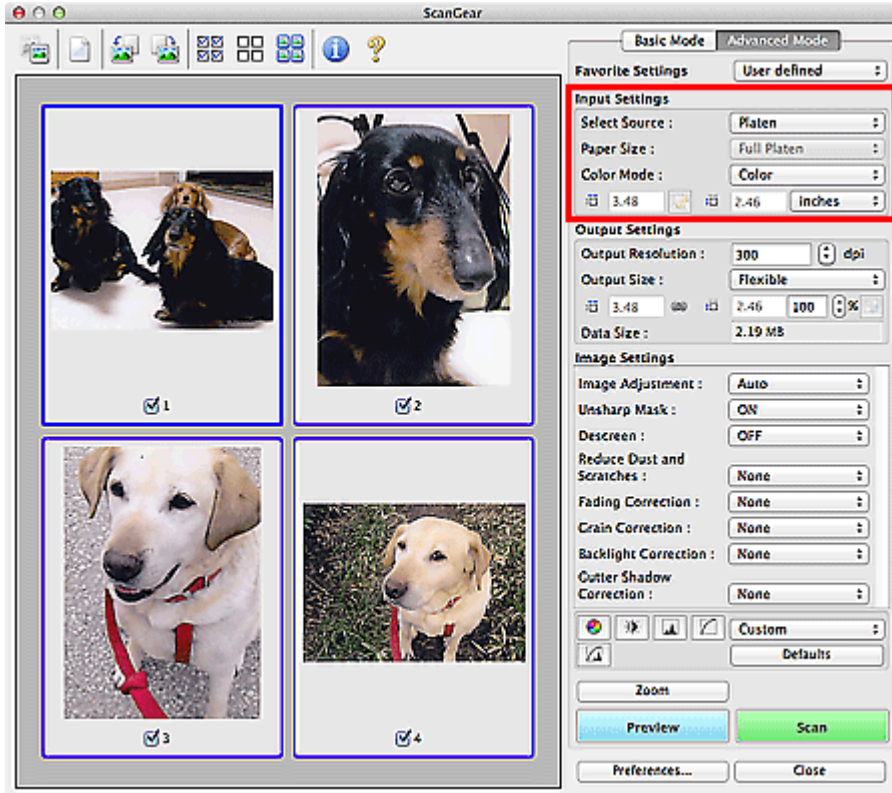
➡ [Adjusting Cropping Frames](#)

Related Topic

- [Scanning in Advanced Mode](#)
- [Scanning Film in Advanced Mode](#)

Page top ▲

Input Settings



Input Settings allows you to set the following items:

- **Select Source**

The type of document to be scanned is displayed.

- **Paper Size**

Select the size of the document to be scanned. This setting is available in whole image view only. When you select a size, the Preview area size changes accordingly.

 Important

- Some applications have a limit to the amount of scan data they can receive. Available scan range is as follows. The range varies depending on the **Enable large image scans** setting in the **Settings (ScanGear)** dialog of IJ Scan Utility.
 - When the **Enable large image scans** checkbox is not selected: 10208 pixels x 14032 pixels or less
 - When the **Enable large image scans** checkbox is selected: 50000 pixels x 50000 pixels or less (and 4.0 GB or less in data size)

➡ **Settings (ScanGear) Dialog**
- If you change **Paper Size** after previewing, the preview image will be deleted.

 Note

- If you are not sure which size you should select for **Paper Size**, set **Paper Size** to **Full Platen**, then measure the size of the document and enter the values into  (Width) and  (Height).

- **Film Size / Scan Area**

Select the size of the film to be scanned.

- **Film Size**

This is displayed in thumbnail view. The film size is automatically detected.

- **Scan Area**

This is displayed in whole image view. Detect the film size automatically or select the size of the film to be scanned.

Note

- Click  (Film Thumbnail) or  (Whole Film Image) on the Toolbar to switch views.

- **Color Mode**

Select how to scan the document.

- **Color**

Select this mode to scan color documents or film, or to create color images. This mode renders the image in 256 levels (8 bit) of R(ed), G(reen), and B(lue).

- **Color(48bit)**

Select this mode to scan color photos or film. This mode renders the image in 65536 levels (16 bit) of R(ed), G(reen), and B(lue).

- **Grayscale**

Select this mode to scan black and white photos or film, or to create black and white images. This mode renders the image in 256 levels (8 bit) of black and white.

- **Grayscale(16bit)**

Select this mode to scan film in black and white. This mode renders the image in 65536 levels (16 bit) of black and white.

- **Black and White**

Select this mode to scan photos and documents in black and white. This mode renders the image in black and white. The contrast in the image is divided at certain levels (threshold level) into black and white and is rendered in two colors. The threshold level can be set with  (Threshold).

Important

- Some applications cannot display images scanned in **Color(48bit)** or **Grayscale(16bit)**.
- **Color(48bit)** and **Grayscale(16bit)** are displayed only when the **Enable 48/16 bit Output** checkbox is selected on the **Scan** tab of the **Preferences** dialog.
[➡ Scan Tab](#)

- **Input Size**

In thumbnail view, the cropped document size or film size is displayed after preview.

In whole image view, the **Paper Size** is displayed before preview, and the cropping frame (scan area) size or film size is displayed after preview.

You can adjust the cropping frame size by entering the values into  (Width) and  (Height).

Click  (Change Aspect Ratio) and change it to  (Keep Aspect Ratio) to maintain the aspect ratio when you specify the cropping frame size.

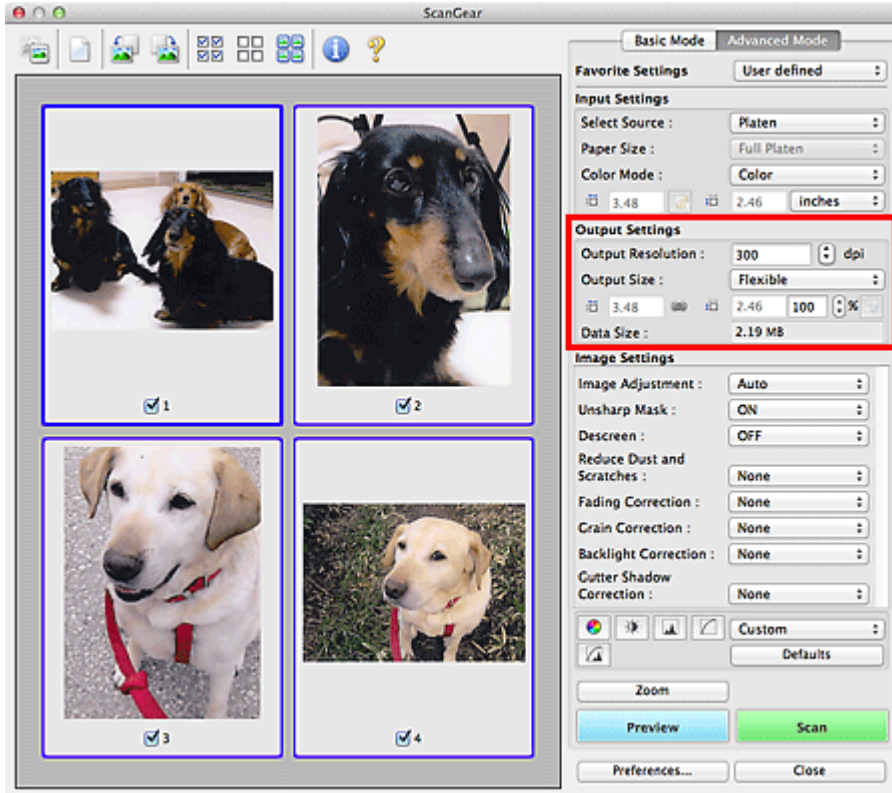
Important

- Input size settings are available only when **Output Size** in **Output Settings** is **Flexible**. If you select a size other than **Flexible**, a cropping frame calculated from **Output Size** and **Output Resolution** is displayed, and its aspect ratio is fixed.

Note

- The values you can enter will be within the range of the selected document size. The minimum size is 96 pixels x 96 pixels when **Output Resolution** is 600 dpi, scaled at 100%.
- When Auto Crop is performed in whole image view, the aspect ratio will not be maintained since the size will be prioritized.
- See "[Adjusting Cropping Frames](#)" for details on cropping frames.

Output Settings



Output Settings allows you to set the following items:

- **Output Resolution**

Select the resolution to scan at.

The higher the resolution (value), the more detail in your image.

Select a resolution from the options displayed by clicking the button, or enter a value within the range of 25 dpi to 19200 dpi (in 1 dpi increments).

➡ Resolution

- **Output Size**

Select an output size.

Select **Flexible** to set custom sizes or select a size for printing or displaying. Select **Add/Delete...** to set custom size and save it as a new output size option.

- **Flexible**

You can specify the output resolution and scale, and adjust the cropping frames (scan areas).

In thumbnail view

Drag the mouse over a thumbnail to display a cropping frame. When a cropping frame is displayed, the portion within the cropping frame will be scanned. When no cropping frame is displayed, each frame is scanned individually.

In whole image view

When no cropping frame is displayed, the entire Preview area will be scanned. When a cropping frame is displayed, the portion within the cropping frame will be scanned.



Note

- To enlarge/reduce the scanned image, enter values into  (Width) and  (Height) in

Output Settings or specify a value (by 1%) for %. Although the maximum value available for % depends on the **Output Resolution**, it can be specified for up to 19200 dpi (the maximum available output resolution).

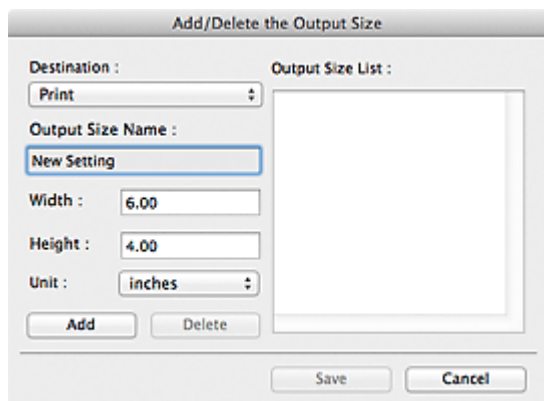
- **Paper Size (L, A4, etc.) & Monitor Size (1024 x 768 pixels, etc.)**



(Width), (Height) and scale cannot be specified. The preview image will be cropped according to the selected output size and resolution. The portion within the cropping frame will be scanned at the size of the selected paper/monitor size. You can drag the cropping frame to enlarge, reduce, or move it while maintaining the aspect ratio.

- **Add/Delete...**

Opens the **Add/Delete the Output Size** dialog, in which you can specify custom output sizes.



In the **Add/Delete the Output Size** dialog, you can specify multiple output sizes and save them at one time. Saved items will be registered to the **Output Size** list and can be selected, along with the predefined items.

Add

To add a size, select **Print** or **Image display** for **Destination**, then enter **Output Size Name**, **Width**, and **Height** then click **Add**. For **Unit**, you can select **inches** or **mm** when **Destination** is **Print** but you can only select **pixels** when **Destination** is **Image display**. The name of the added size appears in **Output Size List**.

Click **Save** to save the items listed in **Output Size List**.

Delete

To delete an item, select it in **Output Size List** and click **Delete**. Click **Save** to save the items listed in **Output Size List**.



Important

- You cannot delete predefined output sizes such as **A4** and **1024 x 768 pixels**.



Note

- Save up to 10 items for each destination.
- An error message appears when you enter a value outside the setting range. Enter a value within the range displayed in the message.



Note

- See "[Adjusting Cropping Frames](#)" for details on cropping frames.
- For details on whether or how the cropping frame is initially displayed on a preview image, see **Cropping Frame on Previewed Images** in "[Preview Tab](#)" (**Preferences** dialog).



- **(Switch Aspect Ratio)**

Available when **Output Size** is set to anything but **Flexible**.

Click this button to rotate the cropping frame. Click again to return it to the original orientation.

- **Data Size**

The file size of the preview image when saved in uncompressed TIFF format is displayed.

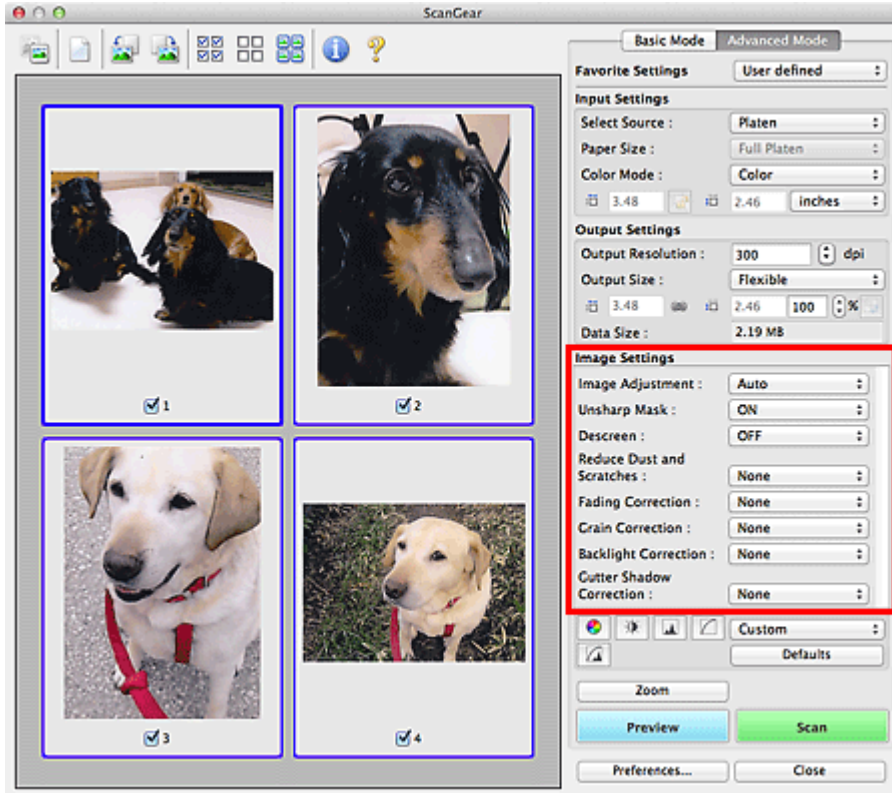


Note

- When the file size exceeds a certain size, the value appears in red. In that case, a warning message appears when you click **Scan**. It is recommended that you adjust the settings to reduce **Data Size**. To continue, scan in whole image view.
-

[Page top ▲](#)

Image Settings



Important

- Do not apply these functions to images without moire, dust/scratches or faded colors. The color tone may be adversely affected.
- Image correction results may not be reflected in the preview image.

Note

- Selectable settings depend on **Color Mode** settings.
- Scanning may take longer than usual when you use **Image Settings**.

Image Settings allows you to set the following items:

Note

- The setting items vary depending on whether **Select Source** is **Platen** or film.

• Image Adjustment

When Image Adjustment is set, the brightness of the specified portion of the image is optimized. Images can be adjusted according to the automatically detected document type or the specified document type. The result of the adjustment will be reflected in the entire image.

- **None**

Image Adjustment will not be applied.

- **Auto**

Applies Image Adjustment by automatically detecting the document type. It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

- **Photo**

Applies Image Adjustment suitable for photos and film.

- **Magazine**

Applies Image Adjustment suitable for magazines.

- **Document**

Applies Image Adjustment suitable for text documents.

Important

- You can set **Image Adjustment** after preview.
- You can set this setting when **Recommended** is selected on the **Color Settings** tab of the **Preferences** dialog.

Note

- Only **Photo** and **None** are available when **Select Source** is film.
- If the image is not adjusted properly with **Auto**, specify the document type.
- The color tone may change from the source image due to the Image Adjustment. In that case, set **Image Adjustment** to **None**.

- **Reduce Show-through**

Use this function to reduce show-through in duplex documents or lighten the base color in recycled paper and other colored paper when scanning.

- **OFF**

Show-through will not be reduced.

- **ON**

Select this to reduce show-through in duplex documents or lighten the base color. It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

Important

- **Reduce Show-through** can be set when **Recommended** is selected on the **Color Settings** tab of the **Preferences** dialog and **Document** or **Magazine** is selected for **Image Adjustment**.

- **Unsharp Mask**

When this is set to **ON**, the outline of the subjects is emphasized to sharpen the image.

- **Descreen**

Printed photos and pictures are displayed as a collection of fine dots. "Moire" is a phenomenon where uneven gradation or a stripe pattern appears when such photos or pictures printed with fine dots are scanned. **Descreen** is the function for reducing this moire effect.

Note

- Even if **Descreen** is set to **ON**, some moire effects may remain if **Unsharp Mask** is set to **ON**. In that case, set **Unsharp Mask** to **OFF**.
- Selecting **Magazine (Color)** in **Select Source** in **Basic Mode** tab has the same effect as setting **Descreen** to **ON** in **Advanced Mode** tab.

- **Reduce Dust and Scratches**

Scanned photos may contain white dots caused by dust or scratches. Use this function to reduce such noise.

- **None**

Dust and scratches will not be reduced.

- **Low**

Select this to reduce small dust particles and scratches. Large ones may remain.

- **Medium**

It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

- **High**

Select this to reduce large dust particles and scratches; however, evidence of the reduction process may remain or delicate parts of the image may be removed.

Important

- This function may not be effective for some types of photos.

Note

- It is recommended that you select **None** when scanning printed materials.

• **Remove Dust and Scratches (FARE) (Film only)**

Removes dust and scratches automatically when scanning film.

- **None**
Dust and scratches will not be removed.
- **Low**
Select this to remove major dust and scratches. Large ones may remain.
- **Medium**
It is recommended that you normally select this setting.
- **High**
Select this to remove minor dust and scratches as well. Evidence of the removal process may remain when large dust and scratches are removed.

Important

- This setting is not available when scanning black and white film.
- Dust and scratches may not be removed if the scan area is too small or if they are in the top/bottom edges of the image.

Note

- When the resolution is set to 4801 dpi or higher and the **Remove Dust and Scratches (FARE)** checkbox is selected, scanning takes longer than usual. Also, make sure that there is sufficient free hard disk space before scanning.

• **Fading Correction**

Use this function to correct photos and film that have faded with time or have a colorcast. "Colorcast" is a phenomenon where a specific color affects the entire picture due to the weather or ambient strong colors.

- **None**
Fading correction will not be applied.
- **Low**
Select this to correct a small amount of fading and colorcast.
- **Medium**
It is recommended that you normally select this setting.
- **High**
Select this to correct a large amount of fading and colorcast. This can affect the tone of the image.

Important

- You can set **Fading Correction** after preview.
- You can set this setting when **Recommended** is selected on the **Color Settings** tab of the **Preferences** dialog.
- **Fading Correction** may not be effective if the scan area is too small.

• **Grain Correction**

Use this function to reduce graininess (roughness) in photos taken with high-speed or sensitized film.

None

Graininess will not be reduced.

- **Low**

Select this when the photo is slightly grainy.

- **Medium**

It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

- **High**

Select this when the photo is very grainy. This can affect the gradation and sharpness of the image.

Important

- **Grain Correction** may not be effective if the scan area is too small.

- **Backlight Correction**

Use this function to correct photos and film that have been shot against light.

When you change the **Backlight Correction** setting, the result will be reflected in the preview image.

- **None**

Backlight correction will not be applied.

- **Low**

Select this to correct slightly backlit photos. This will not affect the image contrast.

- **Medium**

It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

- **High**

Select this to correct strongly backlit photos. This can affect the image contrast.

Important

- You can set **Backlight Correction** after preview.
- You can set this setting when **Recommended** is selected on the **Color Settings** tab of the **Preferences** dialog.
- This setting is not available when the **Enable large image scans** checkbox is selected in the **Settings (ScanGear)** dialog of IJ Scan Utility.
- **Backlight Correction** may not be effective if the scan area is too small.

Note

- Noise patterns may appear when **Backlight Correction** is applied. Applying **Grain Correction** and setting **Unsharp Mask** to **OFF** may reduce the noise patterns.

- **Gutter Shadow Correction**

Use this function to correct shadows that appear between pages when scanning open booklets.

When you set the **Gutter Shadow Correction** setting in the preview image, the result will be reflected. Preview the effects before scanning, as results vary depending on the type of document and how it is pressed.

Unclear or blurred text/lines caused by curved pages are not corrected.

- **None**

Gutter shadow will not be corrected.

- **Low**

Select this when the effect level is too strong with the medium setting.

- **Medium**

It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

- **High**

Select this when the effect level is too weak with the medium setting.

Important

- Do not place items that weigh 4.4 lbs (2.0 kg) or more on the Platen. Also, do not press on the document with a force exceeding 4.4 lbs (2.0 kg). If you press heavily, the scanner may not work correctly or you might break the glass.
- Align the document with the edge of the Platen. If not, the shadow will not be corrected properly.



- Shadows may not be corrected properly depending on the document. If the page background is not white, shadows may not be detected correctly or may not be detected at all.
- While scanning, press down on the spine with the same amount of pressure you used to preview the scan. If the binding part is not even, the shadow will not be corrected properly.



- How to place the document depends on your model and the document to be scanned.

Note

- Cover the document with black cloth if white spots, streaks, or colored patterns appear in scan results due to ambient light entering between the document and the Platen.
- If the shadow is not corrected properly, adjust the cropping frame (scan area) on the preview image.

➡ [Adjusting Cropping Frames](#)

• Exposure/Tone Settings (Film only)

• Manual Exposure

This function enables you to adjust the exposure data according to the film.

When this checkbox is not selected, the optimal exposure data (the exposure level for each RGB channel and compensation levels) is automatically set according to the color density of the portion within the cropping area of the film.

Select this checkbox if you intend to adjust the image using an application after it is scanned or to scan with an under-exposed or over-exposed effect.

After you select this checkbox, you can adjust the exposure in 1 % increments within the range of 50 % to 200 %.

Important

- This setting is not available when **Apply the tone value to all frames / Apply the tone value to all crops** is applied.

Note

- **Manual Exposure** is not available in Basic Mode. To change exposure, select the **Manual Exposure** checkbox in **Advanced Mode** tab, then adjust the value and scan.
- When this checkbox is not selected, the time required for scanning varies by film since the exposure is automatically optimized according to the film.

- **Apply the tone value to all frames / Apply the tone value to all crops**

"All frames" is displayed in thumbnail view, and "All crops" is displayed in whole image view.

Click **Apply** to reflect the color adjustment data of the selected film frame or the portion within the selected cropping frame into other frames. This color adjustment data will be used in subsequent scans. It will remain in effect until you click **Reset**.

This is useful when you want to scan film of photos taken on the same day in the same place, in a consistent color tone.

- **High Quality**

Set to **ON** to improve the image quality and reduce noise when scanning film.



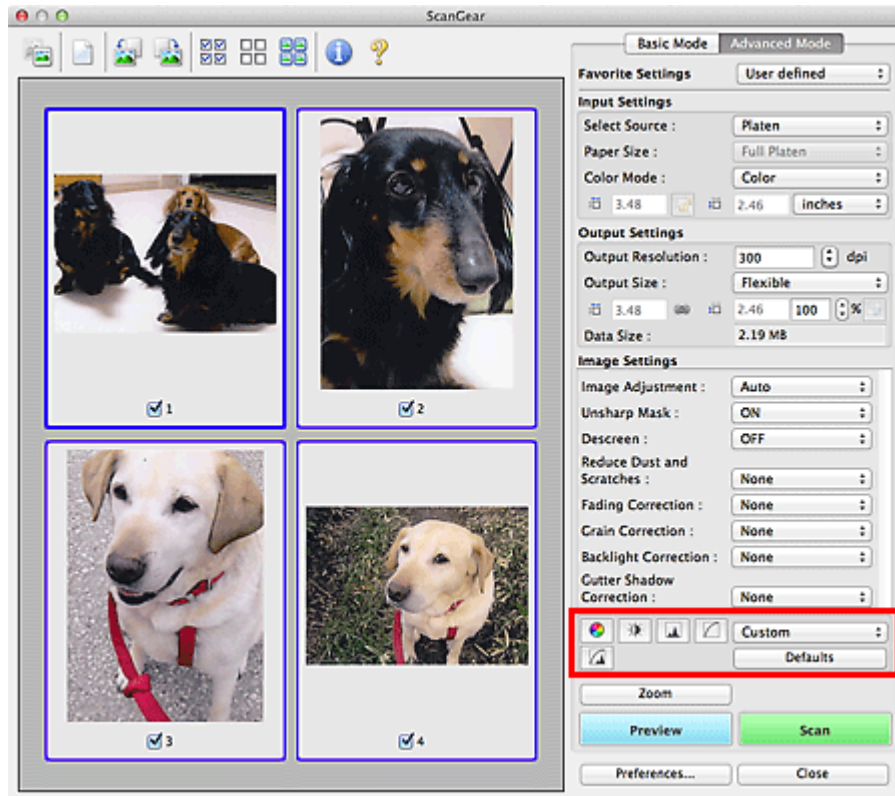
Important

- Image quality may not change depending on the film type.
- This setting is not available when **Apply the tone value to all frames / Apply the tone value to all crops** is applied.

Page top ▲

Color Adjustment Buttons

The Color Adjustment Buttons allow you to make fine corrections to the image brightness and color tones including adjustments to the image's overall brightness or contrast and adjustments to its highlight and shadow values (histogram) or balance (tone curve).



Important

- The Color Adjustment Buttons are not available when you select **Color Matching** on the **Color Settings** tab of the **Preferences** dialog.

Note

- When **Select Source** is film, you can use the Color Adjustment Buttons after preview.
- Selectable settings depend on **Color Mode** settings.
- When you adjust the image via the Color Adjustment Buttons, the results will be reflected in the preview image.

Click a Color Adjustment Button to set the following items:

-  **(Saturation/Color Balance)**
Adjust the saturation (vividness) and color tone of the image. Use this function to brighten colors that have faded with time or due to colorcast. "Colorcast" is a phenomenon where a specific color affects the entire picture due to the weather or ambient strong colors.
➡ [Adjusting Saturation and Color Balance](#)
-  **(Brightness/Contrast)**
Adjust the brightness and contrast of the image. If the image is too dark or too bright, or if the image quality is flat due to lack of contrast, you can adjust the levels of brightness and contrast.
➡ [Adjusting Brightness and Contrast](#)

- **(Histogram)**

A histogram allows you to see the data concentration at each brightness level of an image. You can specify the brightest level (highlight) and darkest level (shadow) within an image, cut the levels and expand the middle of the tonal range of the image.

➡ [Adjusting Histogram](#)

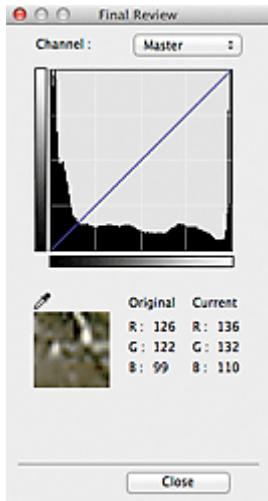
- **(Tone Curve Settings)**

Adjust the brightness of an image by selecting the type of graph (tone curve) showing the balance of tone input and output. You can make fine adjustments to the brightness of a specific area.

➡ [Adjusting Tone Curve](#)

- **(Final Review)**

Make a final check of color adjustments. The final synthesized tone curve and the histogram derived from the subsequent image processing will be displayed. There are no settings to make in this screen.



- For a color image, select a color in **Channel** to check either **Red**, **Green**, or **Blue**, or select **Master** to check three colors together.
- If you place the cursor on the preview image, the portion will be enlarged and its RGB values (only L when **Color Mode** is **Grayscale**) before and after the adjustments will be displayed.

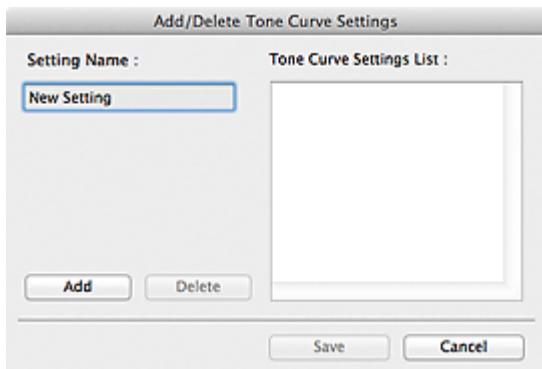
- **(Threshold)**

Set the boundary (threshold) at which black and white are divided. By adjusting the threshold level, you can sharpen text in a document or reduce show-through in newspapers.

➡ [Setting Threshold](#)

- **Custom**

You can name and save a set of tone curve and threshold settings of the Color Adjustment Buttons. Select **Add/Delete...** from the pop-up menu; when **Color Mode** is set to anything but **Black and White**, the **Add/Delete Tone Curve Settings** dialog opens; when **Color Mode** is **Black and White**, the **Add/Delete Threshold Settings** dialog opens.



Enter **Setting Name** and click **Add**; the name appears in **Tone Curve Settings List** or **Threshold Settings List**.

Click **Save** to save.

You can load and apply the saved tone curve/threshold settings to a preview image. To load the settings, select the saved item from the pop-up menu.

To delete an item, select it in **Tone Curve Settings List** or **Threshold Settings List** and click **Delete**. Click **Save** to save the settings displayed in **Tone Curve Settings List** or **Threshold Settings List**.



Note

- Save up to 20 items.
-

- **Defaults**

Reset all adjustments (saturation/color balance, brightness/contrast, histogram, and tone curve).

[Page top ▲](#)

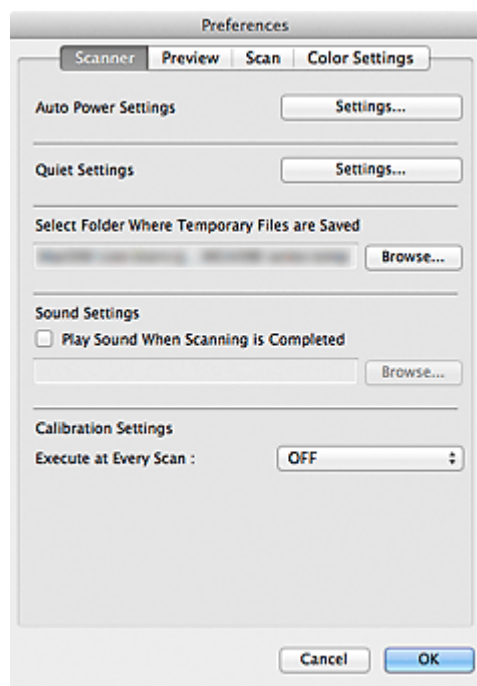
S932

ScanGear

Preferences Dialog

Click **Preferences...** in the ScanGear (scanner driver) screen to open the **Preferences** dialog.

In the **Preferences** dialog, you can make advanced settings to ScanGear functions via the **Scanner**, **Preview**, **Scan**, and **Color Settings** tabs.



Scanner Tab

Allows you to set the quiet mode, auto power settings, folder in which to save images temporarily, and music file to play at the end of a scan.

➡ [Scanner Tab](#)

Preview Tab

Allows you to select what to do with Preview when ScanGear is started, how to display cropping frames after previewing images, and the cropping size for thumbnails of scanned documents and film.

➡ [Preview Tab](#)

Scan Tab

Allows you to select what to do with ScanGear after scanning, set the option for scanning film into applications that do not open the ScanGear screen, and set the **Color Mode** (48/16 bit output) option for **Advanced Mode** tab.

➡ [Scan Tab](#)

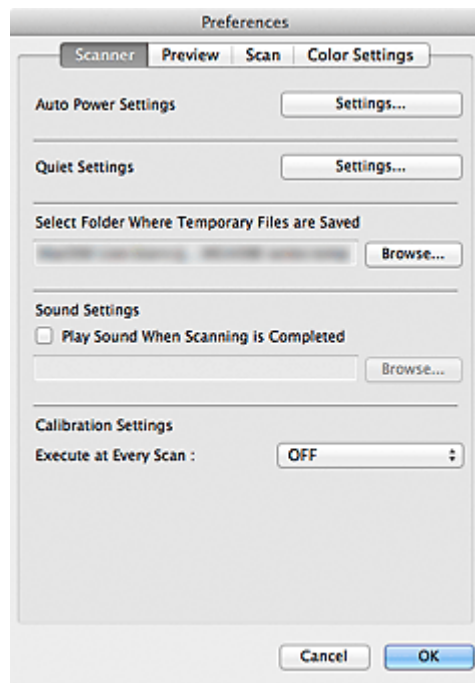
Color Settings Tab

Allows you to select how to adjust color, and specify the monitor gamma value.

➡ [Color Settings Tab](#)

Scanner Tab

On the **Scanner** tab, you can specify the following settings.

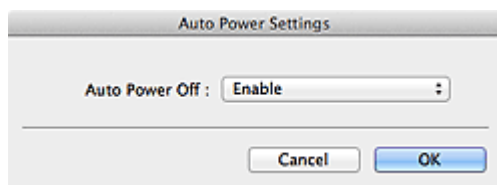


- **Auto Power Settings**

You can set to turn the machine off automatically.
Click **Settings...** to display the **Auto Power Settings** dialog.

Note

- If the machine is off, a message may appear because the computer cannot collect the machine status. In that case, click **OK** to exit ScanGear (scanner driver).



- **Auto Power Off**

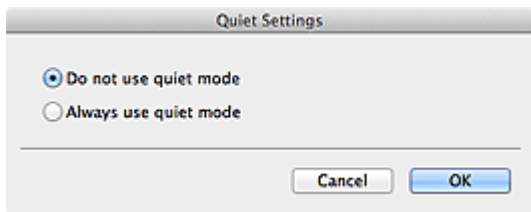
Select **Enable** to turn off the machine automatically after 240 minutes of inactivity (no ScanGear or scanner button operation).

- **Quiet Settings**

The silent function allows you to reduce the operating noise of this machine. Use this when you wish to reduce the operating noise such as when scanning at nights.
Click **Settings...** to set the quiet mode.

Note

- Scanning may take longer than usual when this function is used.



- **Do not use quiet mode**

Select this option when you wish to use the machine with volume of normal operating noise.

- **Always use quiet mode**

Select this option when you wish to reduce the operating noise of the machine.

- **Select Folder Where Temporary Files are Saved**

Displays the folder in which to save images temporarily. To change the folder, click **Browse...** to specify another one.

- **Sound Settings**

You can set the machine to play music at the end of a scan.

Select the **Play Sound When Scanning is Completed** checkbox, then click **Browse...** and specify a sound file.

You can specify the following files.

- MIDI file (*.mid, *.midi)
- Audio file (*.wav, *.aif, *.aiff)
- MP3 file (*.mp3)

- **Calibration Settings**

When you set **Execute at Every Scan** to **ON**, the scanner will be calibrated every time before previewing and scanning, to reproduce correct color tones in scanned images. For film, the scanner will be calibrated every time before previewing.

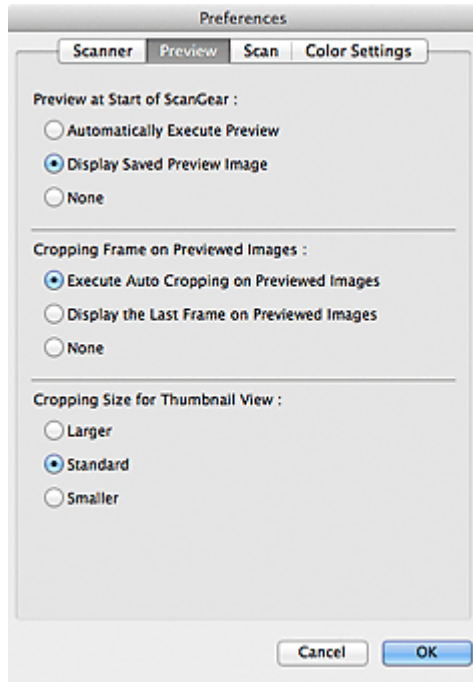


Note

- Even when **Execute at Every Scan** is set to **OFF**, the scanner may be calibrated automatically in some cases (such as immediately after you turn the machine on).
 - Calibration may take time depending on your computer.
-

Preview Tab

On the **Preview** tab, you can specify the following settings.



- **Preview at Start of ScanGear**

Select what to do with Preview when ScanGear (scanner driver) is started.

- **Automatically Execute Preview**

ScanGear will automatically start previewing at startup.

- **Display Saved Preview Image**

The previously previewed image will be displayed.

The Color Adjustment Button settings, the Toolbar settings, and the **Advanced Mode** tab settings are also saved.

- **None**

No preview image will be displayed at startup.



Note

- Select **None** if you do not want to save the preview image.

- **Cropping Frame on Previewed Images**

Select how to display cropping frames after previewing images.

- **Execute Auto Cropping on Previewed Images**

The cropping frame (scan area) will automatically be displayed in the document size after previewing.

- **Display the Last Frame on Previewed Images**

A cropping frame of the same size as the last used cropping frame will be displayed after previewing.

- **None**

No cropping frame will be displayed after previewing.

- **Cropping Size for Thumbnail View**

Select the cropping size for thumbnails of scanned documents and film.

- **Larger**

Displays 105% (in width and height) of the area displayed for the standard size.

- **Standard**

The standard size.

- **Smaller**

Displays 95% (in width and height) of the area displayed for the standard size.

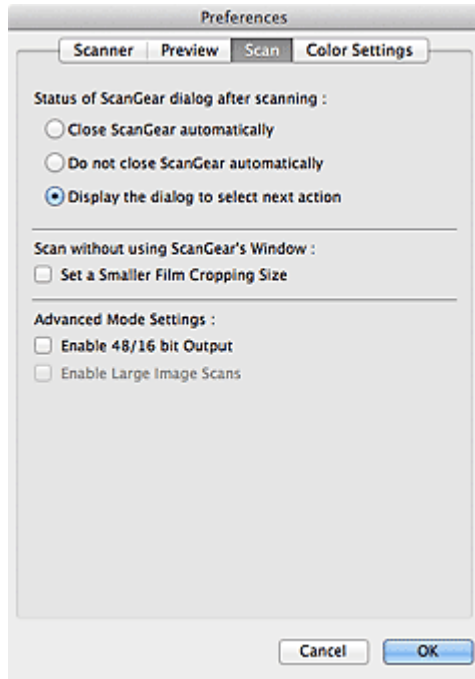


Note

- When you change the **Cropping Size for Thumbnail View** setting, the preview images will be refreshed and cropped to the new size. As the preview images are refreshed, the color adjustments and other settings applied to them are reset.
-

Scan Tab

On the **Scan** tab, you can specify the following settings.



- **Status of ScanGear dialog after scanning**

Select what to do with ScanGear (scanner driver) after scanning images.

- **Close ScanGear automatically**

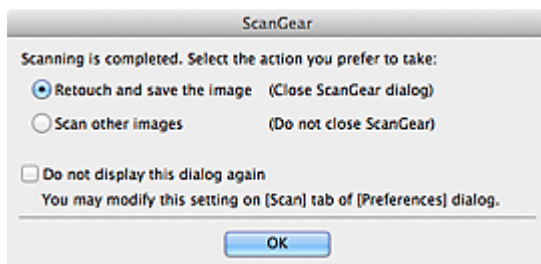
Select this to return to the original application when scanning is completed.

- **Do not close ScanGear automatically**

Select this to return to the ScanGear screen for another scan when scanning is completed.

- **Display the dialog to select next action**

Select this to open a screen and select what to do when scanning is completed.



Note

- Even if **Do not close ScanGear automatically** or **Display the dialog to select next action** is set, some applications may not support it.

- **Scan without using ScanGear's Window**

Set the option for scanning film into applications that do not open the ScanGear screen.

- **Set a Smaller Film Cropping Size**

Select this checkbox to display 95 % (in width and height) of the area displayed for the standard

film size.

Important

- This setting is not applied when scanning with the ScanGear screen displayed.

• Advanced Mode Settings

• Enable 48/16 bit Output

Select this checkbox to display **Color(48bit)** in **Color Mode** on the **Advanced Mode** tab. When **Select Source** is film, **Grayscale(16bit)** will also be displayed.

Important

- Some applications cannot receive images scanned in **Color(48bit)** or **Grayscale(16bit)**, or may close when such images are received.

Note

- When **Color(48bit)** or **Grayscale(16bit)** is selected for **Color Mode**, deselecting this checkbox changes **Color(48bit)** to **Color** and **Grayscale(16bit)** to **Grayscale**.
- When you scan using ScanGear with the **Enable 48/16 bit Output** checkbox selected and with JPEG or PDF selected as the file format for saving, images are converted to 24 bit or 8 bit images when saved.

• Enable Large Image Scans

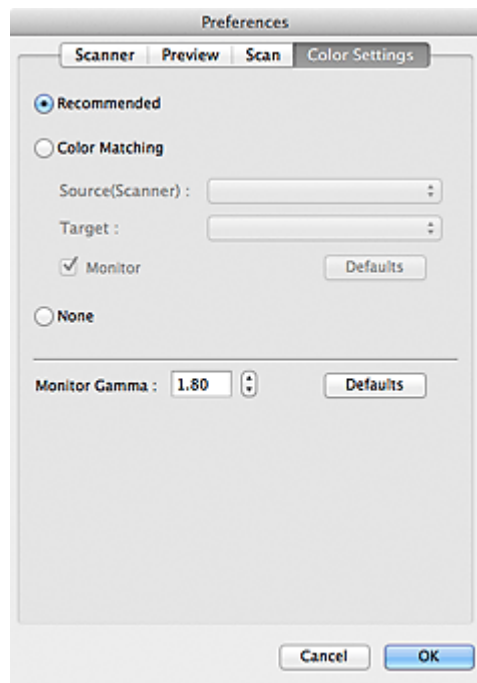
You cannot set **Enable Large Image Scans** from this tab. To scan large images, set it from IJ Scan Utility.

➡ [Settings \(ScanGear\) Dialog](#)

[Page top](#) ▲

Color Settings Tab

On the **Color Settings** tab, you can specify the following settings.



- **Color Adjustment**

Select either of the following.

You can select one when **Color Mode** is **Color**, **Color(48bit)**, **Grayscale**, or **Grayscale(16bit)**.

- **Recommended**

Select this to vividly reproduce the tone of a document on the screen. It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

- **Color Matching**

Select this to automatically match the scanner, monitor, and color printer colors, thus reducing time and trouble to manually match the monitor and printer colors.

Color Adjustment Buttons will be disabled.

This function is available when **Color Mode** is **Color** or **Color(48bit)**.

- **Source(Scanner)**: Select scanner profile.

- **Target**: Select target profile.

- **Monitor**: Select this to display preview image with optimum correction for monitor.

- **Defaults**: Returns to the default **Color Matching** settings.

- **None**

Select this to disable color correction provided by ScanGear (scanner driver).



Note

- Color Matching is available when ScanGear, monitor, color management-compliant application (such as Adobe Photoshop) and printer are set up correctly.
Refer to the corresponding manual for the monitor, printer, and application settings.

- **Monitor Gamma**

By setting the gamma value of a monitor, you can adjust the input data to the brightness characteristics of the monitor. Adjust the value if your monitor's gamma value does not match the default value set in ScanGear, and the colors of the original image are not accurately reflected in the monitor.

Click **Defaults** to return to the default Monitor Gamma value (1.80).



Note

- Refer to the manual of your monitor to check its gamma value. If it is not written in the manual, contact the manufacturer.
-

[Page top ▲](#)

S942

General Notes (Scanner Driver)

ScanGear (scanner driver) is subject to the following restrictions. Keep these points in mind when using it.

Scanner Driver Restrictions

- If the computer is shared among multiple users or when you have logged out and back on, a message indicating that ScanGear is in use may appear. In that case, disconnect the USB cable from the computer, then reconnect it.
- Scanning may fail if the computer has resumed from sleep state with ScanGear active. In that case, follow these steps and scan again.
 1. Turn off the machine.
 2. Exit ScanGear, then disconnect the USB cable from the computer and reconnect it.
 3. Turn on the machine.
- Do not connect two or more scanner or multifunction printers with scanner function to the same computer simultaneously. If multiple scanning devices are connected, you cannot scan from the scanner buttons of the machine and also may experience errors while accessing the devices.
- Make sure that you have adequate disk space available when scanning large images at high resolutions. For example, at least 300 MB of free space is required to scan an A4 document at 600 dpi in full-color.
- Thick documents may not be cropped correctly when scanned. In that case, crop each item individually or crop manually.
- Do not enter the computer into sleep or hibernate state during scanning.
- Calibration may take time if the machine is connected via USB1.1.
- Scanning may continue after scanning is completed when a scanner button on the machine is continuously pressed.

Page top ▲

Useful Information on Scanning

- [Adjusting Cropping Frames](#)
- [Resolution](#)
- [Data Formats](#)
- [Color Matching](#)

[Page top ▲](#)

S307

Adjusting Cropping Frames

"Cropping" is the act of selecting the area you want to keep in an image and discarding the rest when scanning it.

➡ IJ Scan Utility

➡ ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

IJ Scan Utility

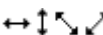
In the **Image Stitch** window, you can specify a cropping frame on the image displayed in the Preview area.

Initial Cropping Frame

No cropping frame is specified. When you select the **Adjust cropping frames** checkbox, an active cropping frame is automatically specified around the image in the Preview area. You can drag the cropping frame to specify the area.

When you perform a scan, the image in the area specified with the cropping frame will be scanned.

Adjusting a Cropping Frame

The cursor will change into  (Arrow) when it is positioned over a cropping frame. If you click and drag the mouse in the direction of the arrow, the cropping frame will expand or contract accordingly.



The cursor will change into  (Hand) when it is positioned within a cropping frame. Click and drag the mouse to move the entire cropping frame.



Deleting Cropping Frames

To delete the cropping frame, deselect the **Adjust cropping frames** checkbox.

ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

On the **Basic Mode** tab and **Advanced Mode** tab, you can specify cropping frames (scan areas) on the image(s) displayed in the Preview area of the screen.

When you perform a scan, each area specified with a cropping frame will be scanned as a separate image.



Note

- In whole image view, you can specify multiple cropping frames on the preview image.

Initial Cropping Frame

In thumbnail view

No cropping frame is specified. You can drag the mouse over a thumbnail to specify a cropping frame.

In whole image view

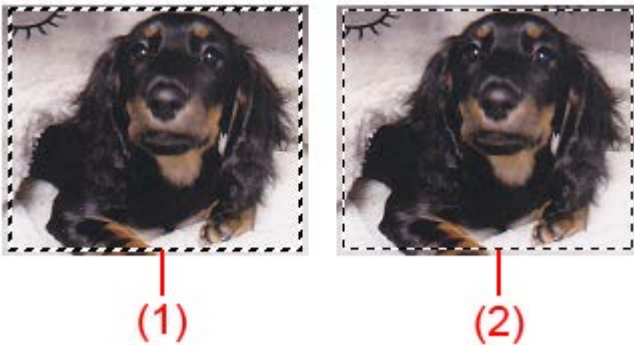
An active cropping frame is automatically specified around the preview image. You can drag the cropping frame in the Preview area to specify the area.



Note

- You can change the auto crop setting in the **Preferences** dialog. See **Cropping Frame on Previewed Images** in "[Preview Tab](#)" for details.

Cropping Frame Types



(1) Thick cropping frame (rotating or stationary)

Represents a selected cropping frame. Appears only in whole image view. You can select multiple cropping frames by clicking them while pressing the command key. Output size, image corrections and other settings on the **Basic Mode** tab or **Advanced Mode** tab will be applied to all the selected cropping frames.

(2) Thin cropping frame

- In thumbnail view

Output size, image corrections and other settings on the **Basic Mode** tab or **Advanced Mode** tab will be applied.

- In whole image view

Represents an unselected cropping frame. The settings on the **Basic Mode** tab or **Advanced Mode** tab will not be applied.

Adjusting a Cropping Frame

The cursor will change into (Arrow) when it is positioned over a cropping frame. If you click and drag the mouse in the direction of the arrow, the cropping frame will expand or contract accordingly.



The cursor will change into (Crosshair Arrow) when it is positioned within a cropping frame. Click and drag the mouse to move the entire cropping frame.



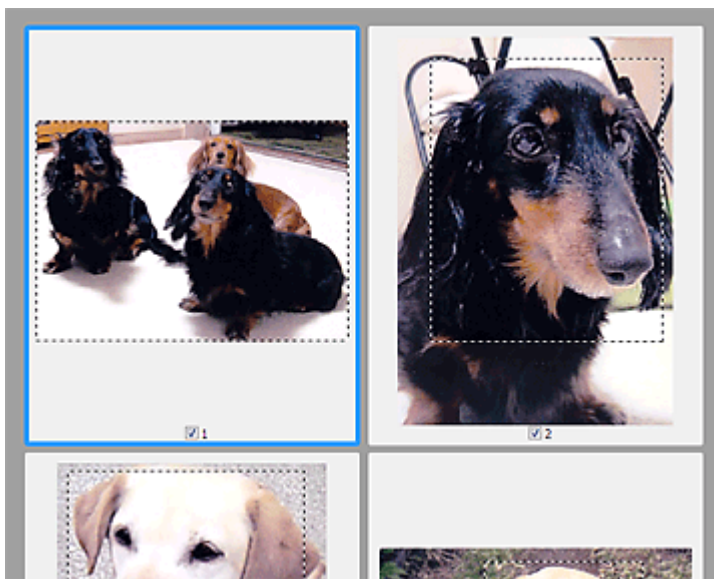
Note

- On the **Advanced Mode** tab, you can specify the cropping frame size by entering the values into  (Width) and  (Height) in **Input Settings**.
➡ **Input Settings**
- You can rotate a cropping frame 90 degrees by clicking  (Switch Aspect Ratio). However,  (Switch Aspect Ratio) is not available when **Output Size** is **Flexible**.

Creating Multiple Cropping Frames

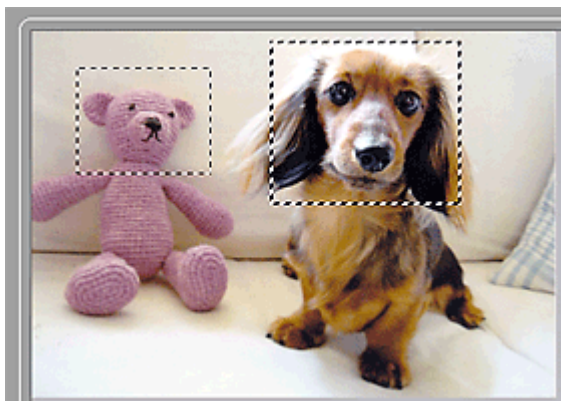
In thumbnail view

You can only create one cropping frame per image.



In whole image view

Click and drag the mouse in a space outside the existing cropping frame to create a new cropping frame in the Preview area. The new cropping frame will be the active cropping frame, and the old cropping frame will be the unselected cropping frame.



You can create multiple cropping frames and apply different scan settings to each cropping frame. You can also select multiple cropping frames by clicking them while pressing the command key. If you select multiple cropping frames and change the settings on a tab at the right of ScanGear, the settings will be applied to all the selected cropping frames. When you create a new cropping frame, it retains the settings of the latest cropping frame.

Note

- The maximum numbers of cropping frames are as follows:
 - When item type is paper or photo: 12 frames
 - When item type is film: 30 frames
 - Scanning takes longer than usual when multiple cropping frames are scanned.
-

Deleting Cropping Frames

In thumbnail view

To delete a cropping frame, click an area outside the cropping frame on an image.

In whole image view

To delete a cropping frame, select it and click  (Remove Cropping Frame) on the Toolbar. Alternatively, press the delete key.

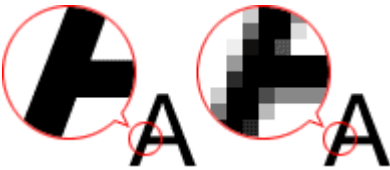
When there are multiple cropping frames, all the selected cropping frames (active cropping frame and selected cropping frames) are deleted simultaneously.

Page top ▲

Resolution

The data in the image you have scanned is a collection of dots carrying information about brightness and color. The density of these dots is called "resolution", and resolution will determine the amount of detail your image contains. The unit of resolution is dots per inch (dpi). Dpi is the number of dots per inch (2.5 cm).

The higher the resolution (value), the more detail in your image; the lower the resolution (value), the less detail.



How to Set the Resolution

You can set the resolution in the following screens.

- IJ Scan Utility**
 **Resolution** on the (Scanning from a Computer) tab or **Resolution** on the  (Scanning Using the Scanner Buttons) tab of the Settings dialog
- ScanGear (Scanner Driver)**
Output Resolution in **Output Settings** on the **Advanced Mode** tab

Appropriate Resolution Settings

Set the resolution according to the use of the scanned image.

Item Type	Use	Color Mode	Appropriate Resolution
Film	Copying (Printing)	Color	1200 dpi
Color photo	Copying (Printing)	Color	300 dpi
	Creating a postcard	Color	300 dpi
	Saving to a computer	Color	300 dpi
	Using on a website or attaching to e-mail	Color	150 dpi
Black and white photo	Saving to a computer	Grayscale	300 dpi
	Using on a website or attaching to e-mail	Grayscale	150 dpi
Text document (document or magazine)	Copying	Color, Grayscale, or Black and White	300 dpi
	Attaching to e-mail	Color, Grayscale, or Black and White	150 dpi
	Scanning text using OCR	Color or Grayscale	300 dpi

Important

- If you double the resolution, the data size of the scanned image quadruples. If the file is too large, the processing speed will slow down significantly, and you will experience inconvenience such as lack of memory. Set the minimum required resolution according to the use of the image.

Note

- When you will be printing the scanned image by enlarging it, scan by setting a higher resolution than the recommended one above.
-

[Page top ▲](#)

Data Formats

You can select a data format when saving scanned images. You should specify the most suitable data format according to how you want to use the image on which application.

Available data formats vary by application and operating system (Windows or Mac OS).

See below for the characteristics of each image data format.

PNG (Standard File Extension: .png)

A data format often used on websites.

PNG is suitable for editing saved images.

JPEG (Standard File Extension: .jpg)

A data format often used on websites and for digital camera images.

JPEG features high compression rates. JPEG images slightly degrade every time they are saved, and cannot be returned to their original state.

JPEG is not available for black and white images.

TIFF (Standard File Extension: .tif)

A data format featuring a relatively high compatibility between various computers and applications.

TIFF is suitable for editing saved images.



Note

- Some TIFF files are incompatible.
- IJ Scan Utility supports the following TIFF file formats.
 - Uncompressed, black and white binary
 - Uncompressed, RGB (8 bits per channel)
 - Uncompressed, RGB (16 bits per channel)
 - Uncompressed, Grayscale

PDF (Standard File Extension: .pdf)

A data format for electronic documents, developed by Adobe Systems Incorporated.

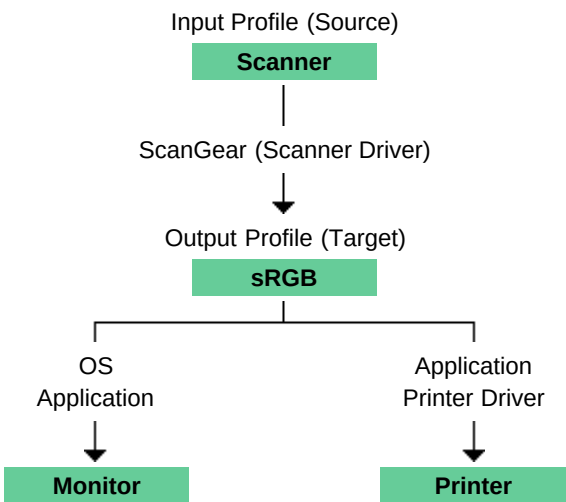
It can be used on various computers and operating systems, and fonts can be embedded as well; therefore, people in different environments can exchange the files without being aware of the differences.

S310

Color Matching

"Color Matching" is the act of making adjustments so that the color tones match between the original item, the monitor display and the color printout. On your scanner or printer, the color tones are adjusted as shown below.

Example: When sRGB is selected as the output profile (target)



The image's color space is converted from the scanner's color space to sRGB by ScanGear.

When displaying on a monitor, the image's color space is converted from sRGB to the monitor's color space based on the operating system's monitor settings and the application's working space settings.

When printing, the image's color space is converted from sRGB to the printer's color space based on the application's print settings and the printer driver's settings.

Placing Items (When Scanning from a Computer)

Learn how to place items on the platen of your scanner. Place items correctly according to the type of item to be scanned. Otherwise, items may not be scanned correctly.

Important

- Do not place items that weigh 4.4 lbs (2.0 kg) or more on the platen. Also, do not press on the item with a force exceeding 4.4lbs (2.0 kg). If you press heavily, the scanner may not work correctly or you might break the glass.
- Close the document cover when scanning.
- When scanning items other than film, make sure that the FAU protective sheet (Film Adapter Unit protective sheet) is attached to the inner side of the document cover. Without the FAU protective sheet, the item type may not be detected correctly.

- **When Scanning Photos, Documents, Etc.**

- ➡ [Placing Items](#)

- **When Scanning Film**

- ➡ [Placing Film \(When Scanning from a Computer\)](#)

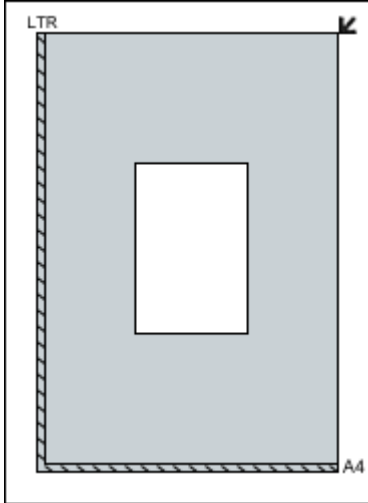
Placing Items

Place items as described below to scan by detecting the item type or size automatically.

Important

- When scanning by specifying the item size in IJ Scan Utility or ScanGear (scanner driver), align an upper corner of the item with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen.
- Photos that have been cut to various shapes and items smaller than 1.2 inches (3 cm) square cannot be cropped accurately when scanning.
- Reflective disc labels may not be scanned as expected.

For Photos, Postcards, Business Cards, or BD/DVD/CD	For Magazines, Newspapers, or Documents
 Placing a Single Item Place the item face-down on the platen, with 0.4 inch (1 cm) or more space between the edges (diagonally striped area) of the platen and the item. Portions placed on the diagonally striped area cannot be scanned.	 Place the item face-down on the platen and align an upper corner of the item with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the platen. Portions placed on the diagonally striped area cannot be scanned.

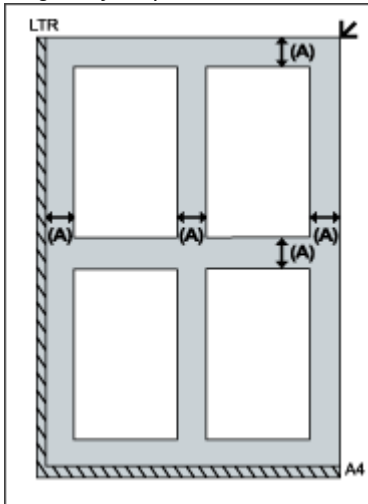


Important

- Large items (such as A4 size photos) that cannot be placed away from the edges/arrow (alignment mark) of the platen may be saved as PDF files. To save in a format other than PDF, scan by specifying the data format.

Placing Multiple Items

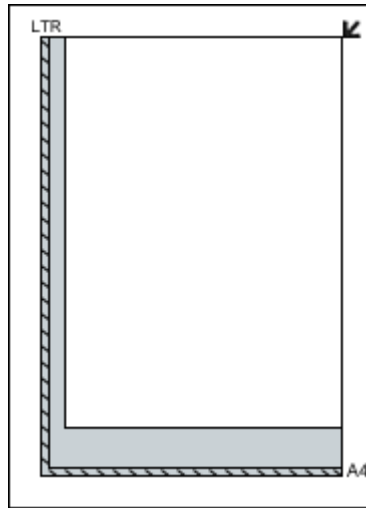
Allow 0.4 inch (1 cm) or more space between the edges (diagonally striped area) of the platen and items, and between items. Portions placed on the diagonally striped area cannot be scanned.



(A) more than 0.4 inch (1 cm)

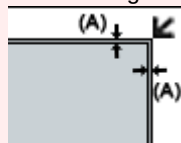
Note

- You can place up to 12 items.
- Positions of slanted items (10 degrees or less) are corrected automatically.



Important

- The portion within 0.08 inch (2 mm) inwards from the alignment mark cannot be scanned.



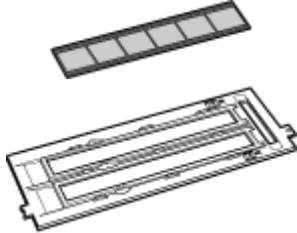
(A) 0.08 inch (2 mm)

S406

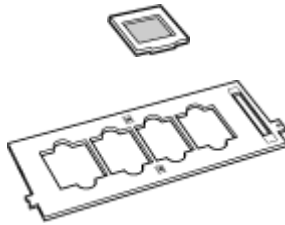
Placing Film (When Scanning from a Computer)

Learn how to place film on the platen of the scanner. Your scanner supports 35 mm films (film strips and mounted slides) and 120 format films.

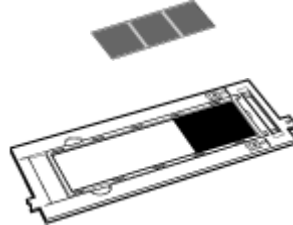
Prepare the supplied film guide and the film you want to scan.



35 mm Film Strip
Film Guide



35 mm Mounted Slides
Film Guide
(positive film for slides)

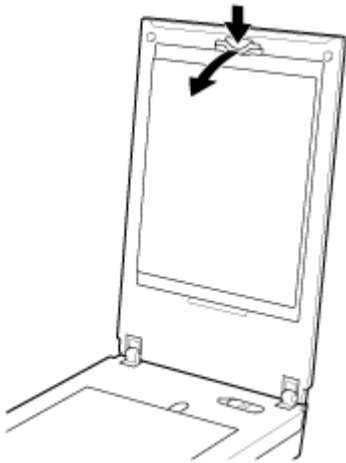


120 Format Film
Film Guide

Preparation

Remove the FAU protective sheet (Film Adapter Unit protective sheet) from the document cover.

1. Open the document cover.
2. While pressing the lever at the top, pull the FAU protective sheet forward to remove it.



Important

- Film scanning is not available when the FAU protective sheet is attached to the document cover.
- Be careful not to lose the removed FAU protective sheet. Keep it in a safe place.
- To avoid damaging the light source, be sure to attach the FAU protective sheet when not scanning film.

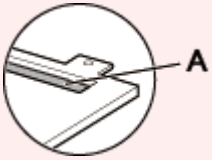
Placing Film



Important

- Hold the film by the edge to avoid smudges and fingerprints.
- Dust on the film or platen appears in scanned images. Remove dust from the film and platen.

- Do not block the calibration slot (A) on the film guide when scanning. If the slot is blocked, the film cannot be scanned in correct colors.



- A sticker label attached to the margin of the film may be recognized as an image.
- Close the document cover gently.

➡ 35 mm Film Strips

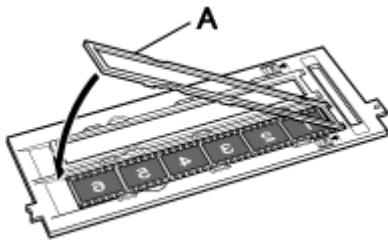
➡ Mounted Slides

➡ 120 Format Film Strips

35 mm Film Strips

1. Load the film into the film guide.

Open the film holder (A) and place the film on the film guide, with the front side of the film (the side on which images appear correctly) facing down.

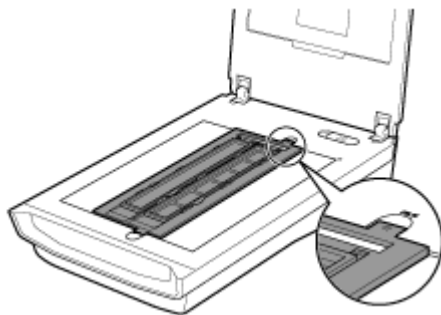


Note

- Make sure that the spaces between frames are aligned with the white lines on the holder.

2. Place the film guide on the platen.

Align the tabs on the film guide with the FILM symbol on the platen.

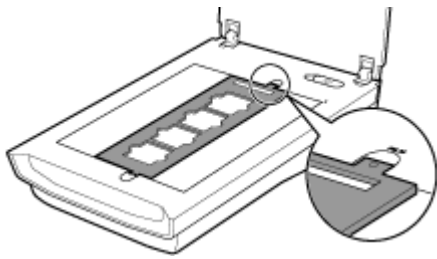


3. Gently close the document cover.

Mounted Slides

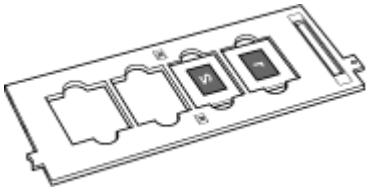
1. Place the film guide on the platen.

Align the tabs on the film guide with the FILM symbol on the platen.



2. Load the film into the film guide.

Place the film on the film guide, with the front side of the film (the side on which images appear correctly) facing down.



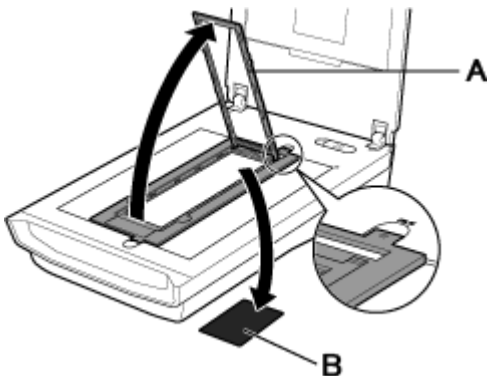
3. Gently close the document cover.

120 Format Film Strips

1. Place the film guide on the platen.

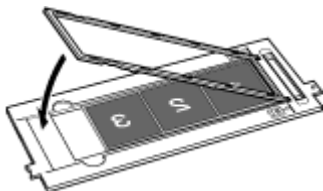
Align the tabs on the film guide with the FILM symbol on the platen.

2. Open the film holder (A) and remove the film retainer sheet (B).



3. Load the film into the film guide.

Load with the front side of the film (the side on which images appear correctly) facing down.



Important

- Make sure that there is no gap between the edge of the film (the side closer to the **A** mark) and the hinge.
- When loading two or more 120 format films, allow 0.2 inch (5 mm) between films.

4. Gently close the document cover.

When the 120 Format Film is Curled (How to Use the Film Retainer Sheet)

If a curled film touches the platen while scanning, circular stripe patterns (Newton's rings) may appear in scanned images.

To scan a curled 120 format film, flatten it using the supplied film retainer sheet.

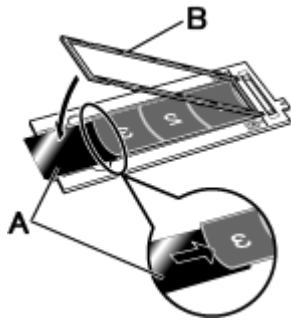
Important

- Do not cover the frames you want to scan with the film retainer sheet.
- Place the film retainer sheet so that the glossy side (the side without illustrations) touches the film. Otherwise, it may damage the film.
- Do not rub the film with the film retainer sheet. It may damage the film.

1. Load the film into the film guide correctly, with the front side of the film (the side on which images appear correctly) facing down.

The long sides of the film are curled up.

2. With the glossy side (the side without illustrations) facing up, insert the film retainer sheet (A) under the edge of the film.

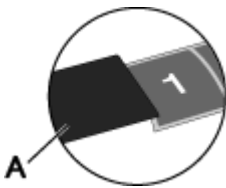


3. Close the film holder (B) and secure it into the film guide.

The entire film is pressed flat with the film holder.

Note

- If Newton's rings still appear after scanning with the above method, the film is heavily warped. Try the following method.
 1. Turn over the film and load it into the film guide, with the front side of the film (the side on which images appear correctly) facing up. The long sides of the film are curled down.
 2. With the rough side (illustrated side) facing up, place the film retainer sheet (A) on the edge of the film.



3. Close the film holder and secure it into the film guide.

4. After preview, click  (Mirror) on the Toolbar of ScanGear (scanner driver) to invert the images, then click **Scan**.

A002

Useful Software

The following useful software can be used with the machine.

- [My Image Garden](#)
- [Quick Menu](#)

My Image Garden

My Image Garden is an application that allows you to utilize photos taken with digital cameras and other images saved on your computer, in many ways for various purposes. You can organize a vast number of images easily, or create collages, cards and other items from your favorite photos and print them. Moreover, you can perform various scans with one click.



➤ [My Image Garden Guide](#)



Important

- A Canon printer that supports My Image Garden is required to print the images and items.

Quick Menu

Quick Menu is software that allows you to easily start the applications and manuals supplied with the machine, or quickly access online product information. In addition, with simultaneously installed Image Display, you can enjoy patterns of collages and other items created automatically by the item recommendation function of My Image Garden as well as slide shows of images saved on a computer.



Note

- By default, Quick Menu starts automatically when you start up the computer.
- From the **Go** menu of **Finder**, select **Applications**, then double-click the **Canon Utilities** folder, **Quick Menu** folder, then **Canon Quick Menu** icon to start Quick Menu.
- If Image Display does not appear even when Quick Menu is started, click the  (Start Image Display) icon. If My Image Garden is not installed, the application will be downloaded and installed. Internet connection is required to download the software. Internet connection fees apply.
- The computer must be connected to the Internet to access the website for useful information, etc. Internet connection fees apply.
- See Help of Quick Menu for details on Quick Menu.
To display Help, control-click Quick Menu and select **Help** from the displayed menu.
- To use the item recommendation function of My Image Garden, you need to register information beforehand. See the My Image Garden manual for details.

My Image Garden Guide



MA-8768-V1.00

| General Notes (My Image Garden) |

What Is My Image Garden?

- » What You Can Do with My Image Garden
- » Starting My Image Garden

Utilizing the Item Recommendation Function

- » Enjoying Items Recommended by My Image Garden
- » Registering Various Information to Photos

Printing

- » Printing Photos and Documents
- » Creating and Printing Items
- » Capturing and Printing Still Images from Videos
- » Printing Recommended Items and Images Displayed in Slide Shows
- » Downloading and Printing PREMIUM Contents

Using Various Functions

- » Scanning Photos and Documents
- » Correcting/Enhancing Photos
- » Enhancing Photos Using Special Filters
- » Extracting Text from Images (OCR Function)
- » Editing Items
- » Cropping Photos
- » Creating/Editing PDF Files
- » Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites

My Image Garden Screens

- » Main Screen
- » Special Image Filters Window
- » Print Settings Dialog
- » Correct/Enhance Images Window
- » Create/Edit PDF File View
- » Preferences Dialog

Troubleshooting

What Is My Image Garden?

- What You Can Do with My Image Garden
- Starting My Image Garden

What You Can Do with My Image Garden

My Image Garden is an application that allows you to utilize photos taken with digital cameras and other images saved on your computer, in many ways for various purposes.

You Can Do the Following

- ➡ Leave Item Creation to My Image Garden
- ➡ Organize Photos Easily
- ➡ Print Photos and Documents Easily
- ➡ Print Personalized Items
- ➡ Capture and Print Still Images from Videos
- ➡ Scan Photos and Documents Easily
- ➡ Correct/Enhance Photos

Leave Item Creation to My Image Garden

My Image Garden employs a technology called "Image Assorting Technology" that provides the following functions.

- The image analysis function that groups images by person by detecting face areas in photos, and also registers images and videos to a calendar automatically by detecting information such as the shooting date and time
- The item recommendation function that automatically recommends patterns of items in which analyzed images are suitably laid out

You can print various items such as collages and cards by utilizing this technology.

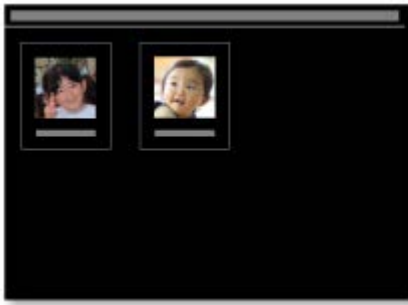
➡ Utilizing the Item Recommendation Function



Organize Photos Easily

Images analyzed in My Image Garden appear in the **Unregistered People** view or **People** view by person, and also appear in the **Calendar** view based on the shooting date and time. By registering people's profiles and event information, you can easily organize a vast number of images, or quickly search for images you want to see.

- ➡ Registering People
- ➡ Registering Events



Print Photos and Documents Easily

You can print your favorite photos easily after checking them in preview.

You can also print documents saved as PDF files.

➡ Printing Photos and Documents



Print Personalized Items

You can combine your favorite photos with preset themes to create and print personalized items such as collages and cards.

➡ Creating and Printing Items



Capture and Print Still Images from Videos

You can capture your favorite scenes from videos and print them as still images.

➡ Capturing and Printing Still Images from Videos



Scan Photos and Documents Easily

You can scan photos and documents easily by automatically detecting the item type.

➡ Easy Scanning with Auto Scan



Correct/Enhance Photos

You can correct red eyes or adjust the brightness and contrast of images.

➡ Correcting/Enhancing Photos



Note

- In My Image Garden, there are many screens for selecting images, PDF files and videos.
See "[Selecting Images, PDF Files and Videos](#)" for details.
- File formats available in My Image Garden vary by function.
See "[File Formats](#)" for details.

File Formats

File formats available for use or saving in each function of My Image Garden are as follows.

- ➡ File Formats Available for Printing
- ➡ File Formats Available for Use as Materials in Items
- ➡ File Formats Available for Use in **Video Frame Capture**
- ➡ File Formats Available for Saving Scans
- ➡ About Exif Print

File Formats Available for Printing

- JPEG (.jpg, .jpeg)
- TIFF (.tif, .tiff)
- PNG (.png)
- PDF (.pdf)



Important

- For PDF files, only those created in My Image Garden or IJ Scan Utility are supported. PDF files created or edited in other applications are not supported.

File Formats Available for Use as Materials in Items

- JPEG (.jpg, .jpeg)
- TIFF (.tif, .tiff)
- PNG (.png)

File Formats Available for Use in Video Frame Capture

- MOV (.mov)
- MP4 (.mp4)



Important

- Only video files recorded with Canon digital cameras or digital camcorders are supported. In addition, ImageBrowser Ver.6.5 or later or ImageBrowser EX Ver.1.0 or later supplied with the digital camera or digital camcorder needs to be installed.
Only MOV format video files are available when ImageBrowser is used.
MOV and MP4 format video files are available when ImageBrowser EX is used.

File Formats Available for Saving Scans

- JPEG/Exif (.jpg, .jpeg)
- TIFF (.tif, .tiff)
- PNG (.png)
- PDF (.pdf)



Note

-
- The following TIFF file formats are supported.
 - Uncompressed, black and white binary
 - Uncompressed, RGB (8 bits per channel)
 - Uncompressed, YCC (8 bits per component)
 - Uncompressed, RGB (16 bits per channel)
 - Uncompressed, YCC (16 bits per component)
 - Uncompressed, Grayscale
-

About Exif Print

My Image Garden supports "Exif Print."

Exif Print is a standard for enhancing the communication between digital cameras and printers. By connecting to an Exif Print-compliant digital camera, print results suitable for the shooting conditions, shooting scenes, etc. can be obtained based on the camera information at the time of shooting.

[Page top ▲](#)

Selecting Images, PDF Files and Videos

In My Image Garden, there are many screens for selecting images, PDF files and videos. You can select images, PDF files or videos by clicking the thumbnails displayed in the screens. The selected files are outlined in white.

- ➡ Searching by date of shooting or creation (**Calendar** view)
- ➡ Selecting files by registered event (**Event** view)
- ➡ Selecting files by registered person (**People** view)
- ➡ Searching for photos containing people (**Unregistered People** view)
- ➡ Selecting files saved in specific folders (folder view)



Important

- For PDF files, only those created in My Image Garden or IJ Scan Utility are supported. PDF files created or edited in other applications are not supported.
- You cannot print images and PDF files at the same time. Print images and PDF files separately.
- To select multiple files in the same folder at the same time, click the thumbnails of images, PDF files or videos while pressing the command key or shift key. You cannot select images in different folders or views at the same time.



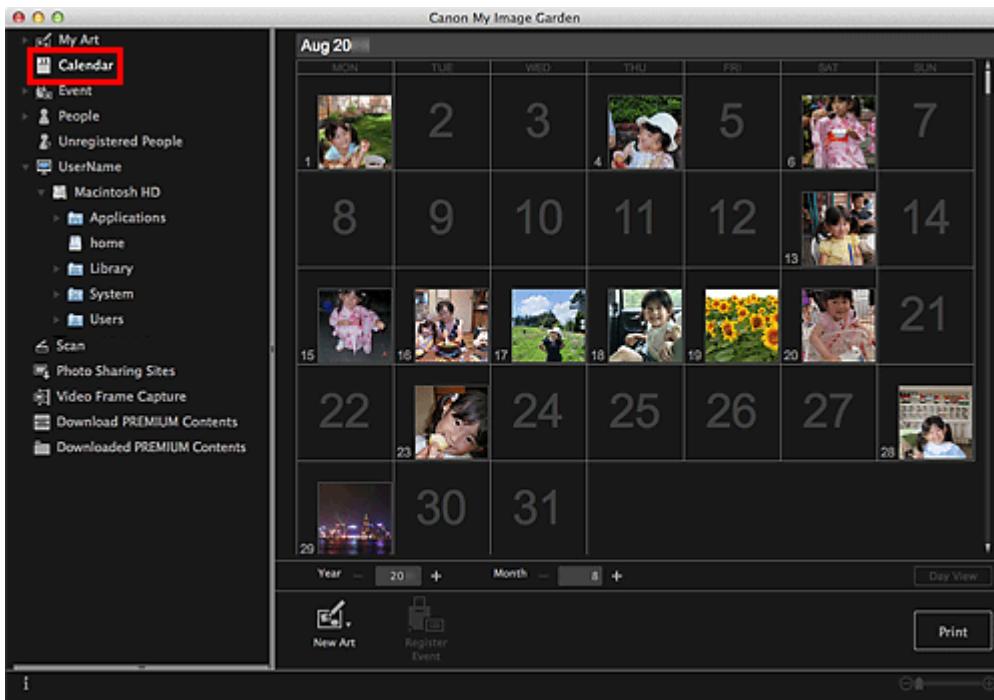
Note

- You can also select still images by capturing them from videos.
 - ➡ [Capturing and Printing Still Images from Videos](#)
- You can also select images downloaded from photo sharing sites on the Internet.
 - ➡ [Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites](#)
- For videos, only MOV or MP4 format videos recorded with Canon digital cameras or digital camcorders appear.

Calendar View (Images, PDF Files and Videos)

In Month View

When you click **Calendar**, the view switches to **Calendar** set to Month View and a thumbnail of one of the images or PDF files registered to the date appears for each date. When you click a thumbnail, all images, PDF files and videos contained in the date will be selected.

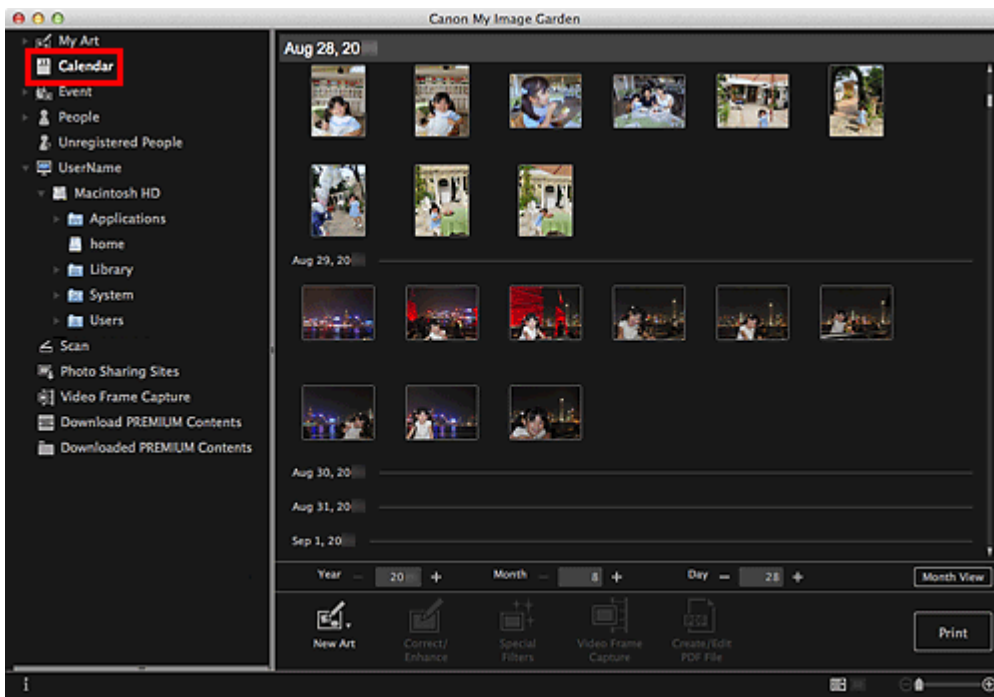


Note

- Click a date and select **Select All** from the **Edit** menu to select all dates of the month.

In Day View

When you click **Day View** in the **Calendar** view set to Month View, the view switches to **Calendar** set to Day View, and images, PDF files and videos appear as thumbnails by date.

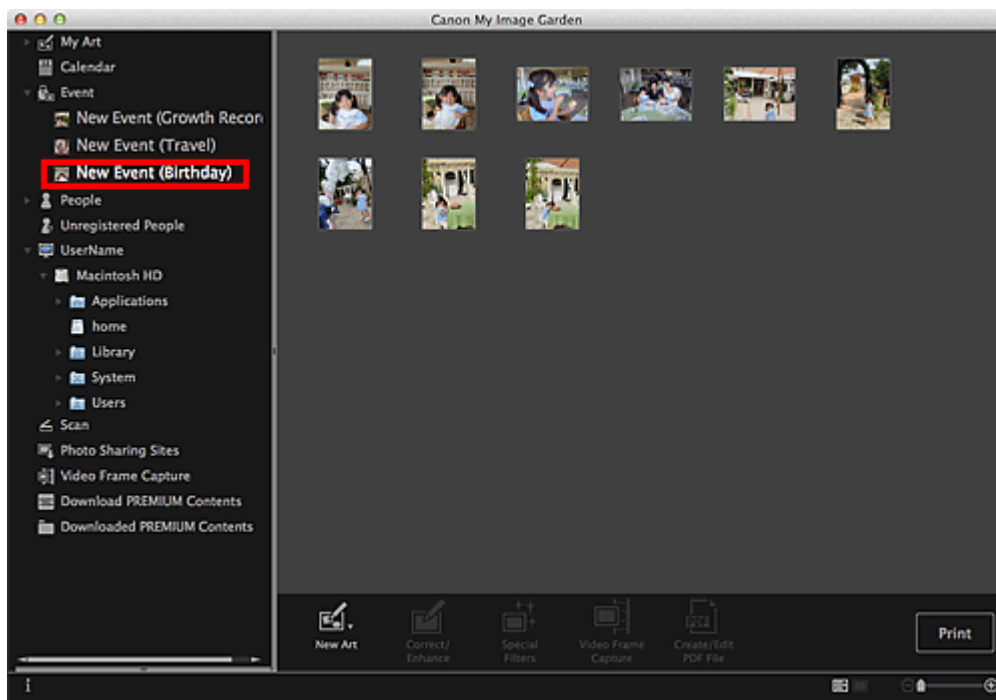


Note

- Click a thumbnail of an image or PDF file and select **Select All** from the **Edit** menu to select all images, PDF files and videos of the date.

Event View (Images, PDF Files and Videos)

When you click an event name displayed below **Event**, images, PDF files and videos contained in the event appear as thumbnails.

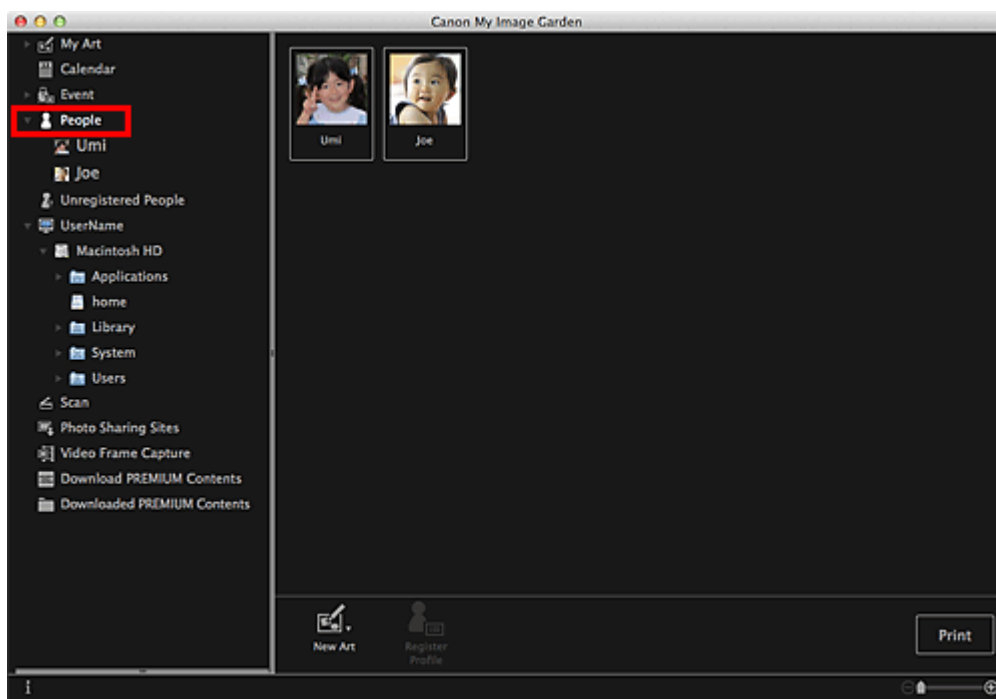


Note

- Select **Select All** from the **Edit** menu to select all images, PDF files and videos.

People View (Images)

When you click **People**, the view switches to **People** and the images of registered people appear as thumbnails. When you click a thumbnail, all images contained in the person will be selected.

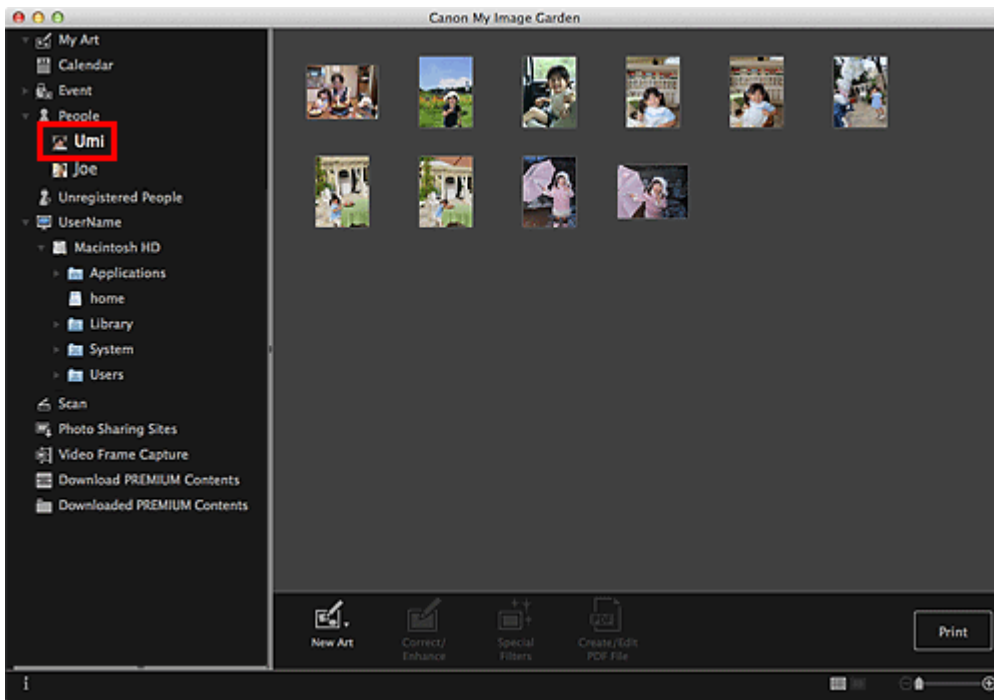


Note

- Select **Select All** from the **Edit** menu to select all people.

In Expanded display

When you click a name displayed below **People**, the view switches to the expanded display of **People** and the images registered to the person appear as thumbnails.

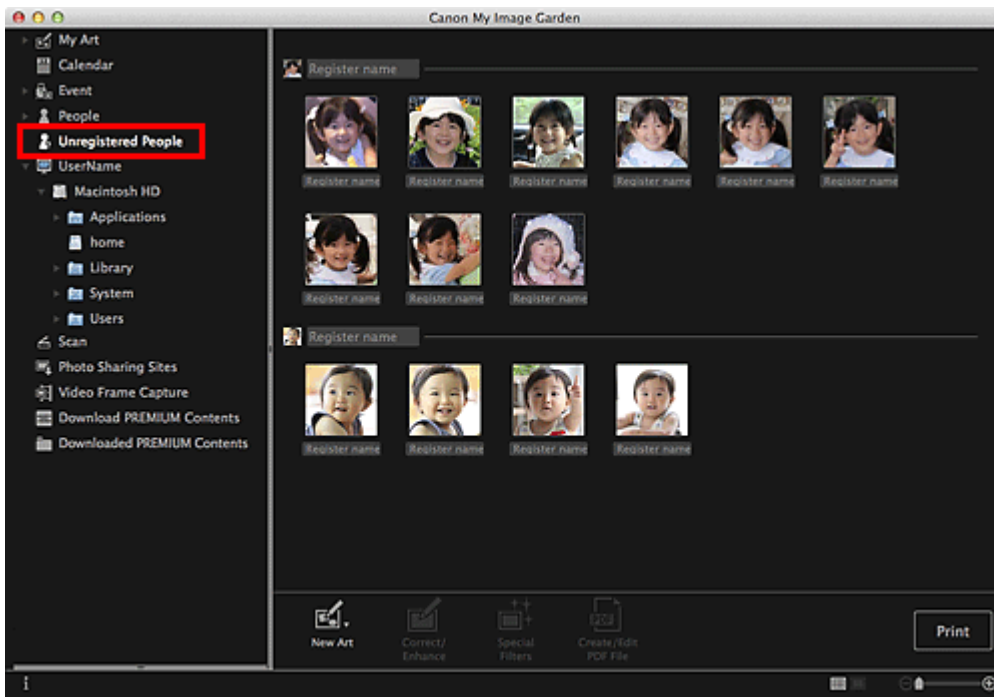


Note

- Select **Select All** from the **Edit** menu to select all images.

Unregistered People View (Images)

When you click **Unregistered People**, the view switches to **Unregistered People** and images detected as a result of image analysis appear as thumbnails.



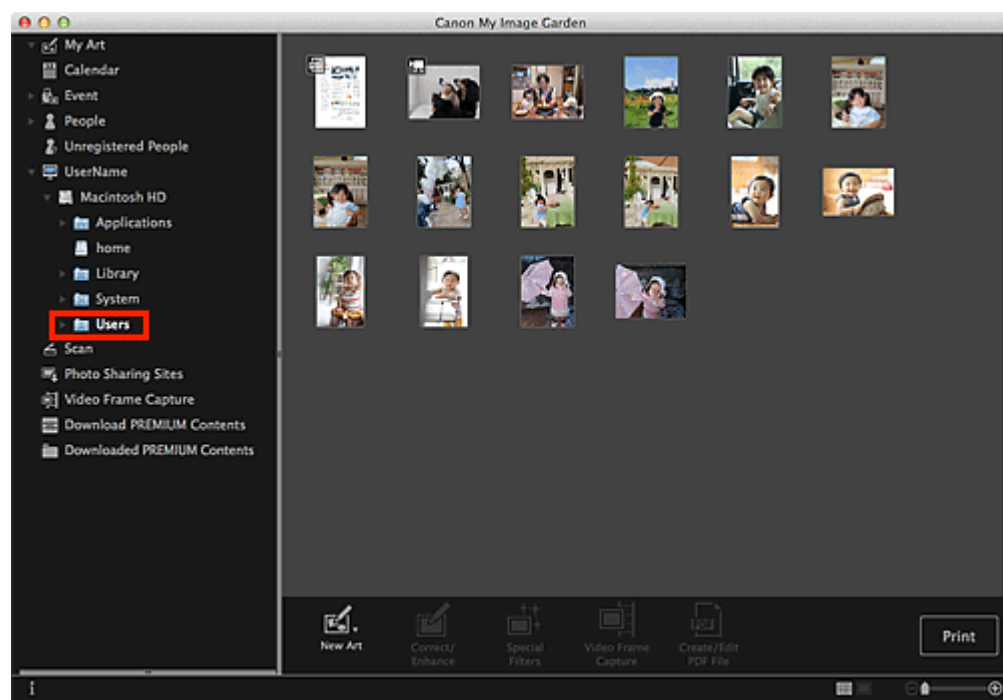
Note

- Click a smaller thumbnail to select all images that are automatically organized as those of the same person.
- Select **Select All** from the **Edit** menu to select all images that are automatically organized as those of the same person.
- **Identifying people...** appears at **Unregistered People** in Global Menu during image analysis.

Folder View (Images, PDF Files and Videos)

When you select a folder in the folder tree, images, PDF files and videos in the folder appear as

thumbnails.

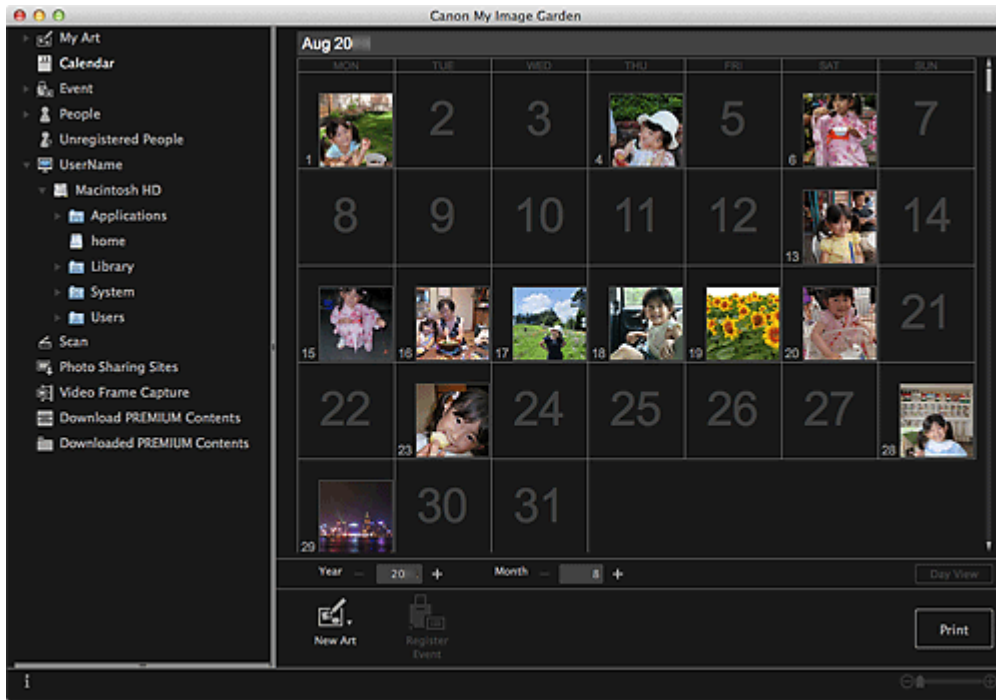


[Page top ▲](#)

A013

My Image Garden

Starting My Image Garden



Note

- There are the following two methods for starting My Image Garden.
 - From the **Go** menu of Finder select **Applications**, then double-click the **Canon Utilities** folder, **My Image Garden** folder, and then **My Image Garden** icon
 - Click  (Start My Image Garden) on Quick Menu

[Page top ▲](#)

Utilizing the Item Recommendation Function

- Enjoying Items Recommended by My Image Garden
- Registering Various Information to Photos

Page top ▲

Enjoying Items Recommended by My Image Garden

Creating collages, calendars, etc. using photos saved on a computer require a lot of time and effort to select your favorite photos among a huge number of images and to enlarge/reduce photos to fit the layout frames.

When you use the item recommendation function of My Image Garden, patterns of items such as collages and calendars with automatically selected/placed photos will appear as slide shows in Image Display of Quick Menu, allowing you to create the item you like with simple mouse clicks.

In addition, by registering people's profiles and event information, patterns suitable for the people and events will appear, allowing you to easily print items such as your children's growth record and calendars full of family memories.

Record Your Children's Growth Process (Growth Record)

When you register your child's birthday and relationship with you to the child's profile...

After the First Birthday



Collage in which photos shot every month up to the first birthday are automatically laid out

- The layout focuses on face areas.



After the Third Birthday



Collage in which photos shot every three months up to the third birthday are automatically laid out

- The layout focuses on face areas.

You can enjoy the growth record collages for up to the sixth birthday.

Various Themes Corresponding to Your Children's Growth

My Image Garden recommends delightful items corresponding to various scenes.

Celebrate the Birthday

When you register a birthday event in the **Calendar** view...

Collage/card in which photos shot on the birthday are automatically laid out



Preserve the Proud Moments

When you register a recital event in the **Calendar** view...



Collage/card/calendar in which photos shot on the day of the recital are automatically laid out

Record the Memories of Family Travel

When you register a travel event in the **Calendar** view...



Collage/card/calendar in which photos shot during the travel period are automatically laid out

- Photos of people and landscape photos are laid out in a good balance.
- The layout will be like a series of snapshots portraying the places visited.

Celebrate the Start of a New Chapter in Life

When you register a wedding event in the **Calendar** view...



Collage/card/calendar in which photos shot on the wedding day are automatically laid out

In addition to these, numerous items such as the following are provided. Enjoy the item recommendation function of My Image Garden by registering memorable events, ceremonies and various other occasions.

- Calendars with seasonal photos displayed once every month, every six months and every year
- Items with photos of your hobbies
- Items with photos of the family's memories of one month, three months, six months or one year

And more!



Note

- See "[Registering Various Information to Photos](#)" for how to utilize the item recommendation function.
- See "[Printing Recommended Items and Images Displayed in Slide Shows](#)" for how to print patterns displayed in slide shows.

Registering Various Information to Photos

Images analyzed in My Image Garden appear in the **Unregistered People** view or **People** view by person, and also appear in the **Calendar** view based on the shooting date and time. Even this alone will display patterns of items such as collages and calendars with automatically selected/placed photos as slide shows in Image Display, allowing you to enjoy various items; however, by registering people's profiles and event information, you can also utilize the item recommendation function. The more information you register, the more patterns suitable for the people and events will appear.

In addition, registering information will make it easier to find the target photos when you search for them, or to create and print the items you like.

➡ Registering People and Profiles

➡ Registering Event Information

➡ Registering Favorite Levels

Registering People and Profiles

This will make it easier to organize or browse photos by person. You can register images that are automatically identified as those of the same person, at once, or register by specifying the face area in images one by one.

➡ Registering People



In addition, after registering a person in the **Unregistered People** view, you can register the person's profile (birthday, relationship with you, etc.) to the person.

When the birthday is registered, the person's growth record of the previous age (from the day after the birthday to the next birthday) will appear automatically.

In addition, when the relationship with you is registered, the person will be placed with priority in patterns. For example, when **Daughter** is set for the relationship, patterns with layouts focusing on **Daughter** will appear.



When the relationship is not registered



The daughter may appear smaller, or the layout may focus on a friend.

When the relationship is registered



The layout focuses on the daughter.

Moreover, if the parent-child relationship is registered, patterns that enrich family memories will also appear.

➡ Registering People's Profiles

Registering Event Information

This will make it easier to organize or browse photos displayed in the **Calendar** view by event. You can easily register events while checking the images displayed in a calendar. When event information is registered, various patterns in which images shot during the event period are used will appear according to the category.

➡ Registering Events



Patterns Displayed by Category

Category	Patterns Displayed

Kids	Growth record	Unisex collages, cards, calendars, etc. of growth records
	Entrance ceremony, Graduation, Recital, Sports day, Birthday, Others	Unisex collages, cards, calendars, etc. specific for each event
Anniversary	Wedding	Photo studio-like collages, marriage cards, calendars, etc. of weddings
	Birthday, Others	Collages, cards, calendars, etc. specific for each event
Leisure	Travel, Others	Collages, cards, calendars, etc. of memories with your family/grandparents/friends
Hobby	-	Favorite item collages, cards, calendars, etc.

Registering Favorite Levels

Images that will be automatically laid out in patterns are placed in the following order of priority.

- 1. In descending order of stars of images for which favorite levels are set
- 2. In descending order of print count
- 3. In descending order of access count
- 4. In descending order of shooting date

To make your favorite photos more likely to be placed, it is recommended that you register favorite levels to the images. You can register favorite levels on a photo-by-photo basis, or to multiple photos at once.

➡ Registering Favorite Levels



Registering People

Register the information of people to images so that you can browse the images by person.

➡ Registering People from the **Unregistered People** View

➡ Registering People from the Details View



Important

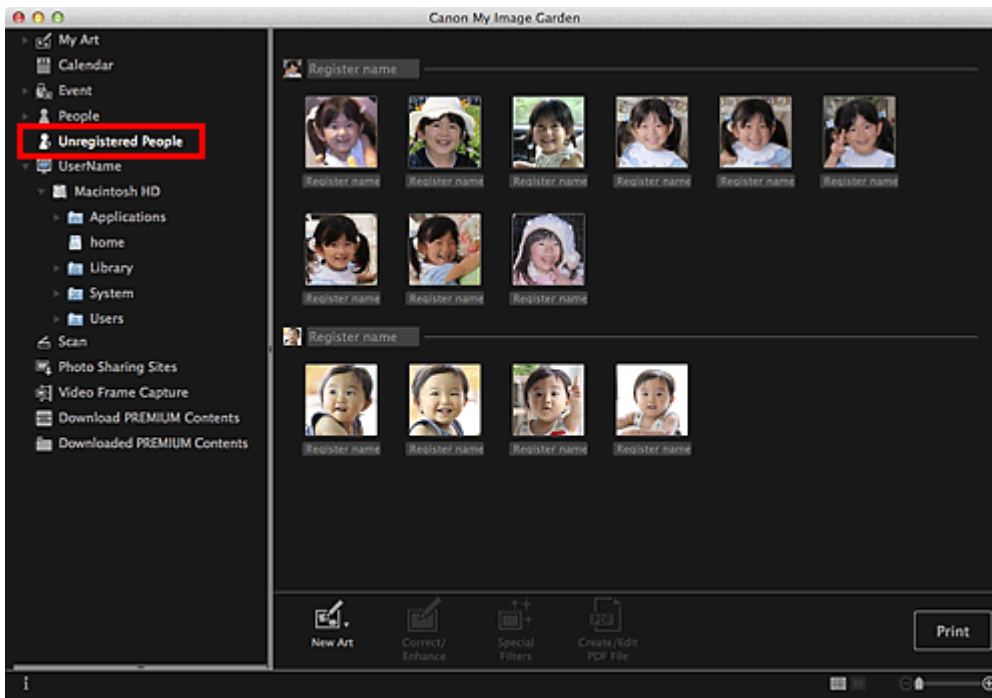
- The information of people can only be registered to images saved in folders under **Perform Image Analysis in the Following Folder(s)**. See "**Image Analysis Settings Tab**" for how to set **Perform Image Analysis in the Following Folder(s)**.

Registering People from the Unregistered People View

Photos containing people appear automatically in the **Unregistered People** view as a result of image analysis. You can register images that are identified as those of the same person, at once, or register images one by one.

1. Click **Unregistered People**.

The view switches to **Unregistered People**.



Important

- You cannot delete or hide the images displayed in the **Unregistered People** view.



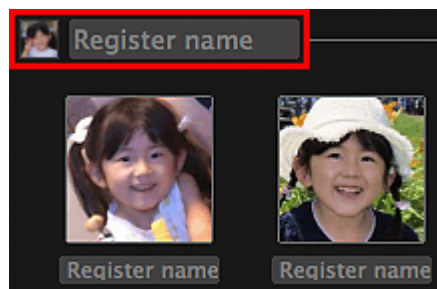
Note

- **Identifying people...** appears during image analysis.
- Images may not be correctly identified as those of the same person depending on the face status (expression, glasses, angle, etc.).
- Areas that are not of people in photos may be identified as people.
- Image analysis only applies to images saved in folders under **Perform Image Analysis in the Following Folder(s)**. See "**Preferences Dialog**" for details on image analysis.

2. Click **Register name**, then enter the name.

When Registering All Images Identified as Those of the Same Person

Click **Register name** displayed next to the smaller thumbnail, then enter the name.



When Registering People in Images One by One

Select a larger thumbnail and click **Register name** displayed below it, then enter the name.



The image(s) is (are) registered to the **People** view.

Note

- When a registered name is entered, its image(s) and the name(s) appear in the pop-up menu. To register as the same person as the registered person, select the name in the pop-up menu. To register as a different person, click an area outside the white frame to complete the name entry.
- For registered people, you can also register by dragging and dropping the thumbnail to the name displayed below **People** on the left side of the screen.
- If a person is identified as a different person, register the name individually or drag and drop the thumbnail to the name displayed below **People** on the left side of the screen.
- To delete a registered person, control-click the person in the **People** view and select **Delete** from the displayed menu to display a deletion confirmation window. Click **Yes** to delete the name from the **People** view. Images whose names of people have been deleted appear as those of unregistered people in the **Unregistered People** view.
- You can also set the profiles of registered people, such as their relationships with you and their birthdays.

➡ [Registering People's Profiles](#)

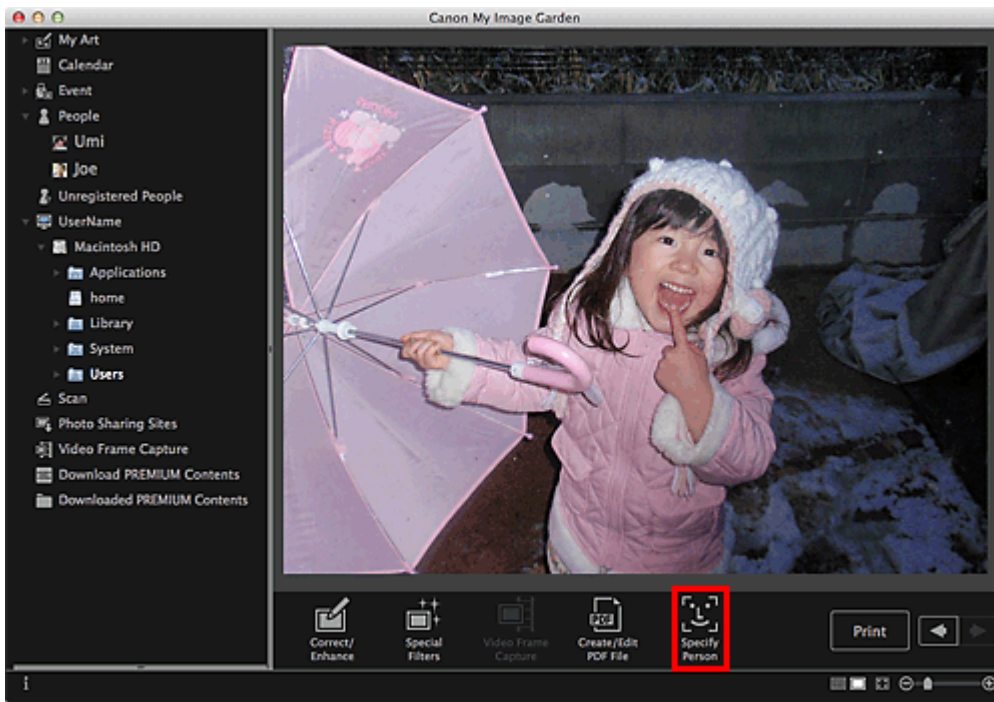
Registering People from the Details View

You can register people by specifying the face area in the image preview. People can be registered one by one even when there are multiple people in one photo.

1. Switch the image to the details view.

Select an image in any of the **Calendar** view set to **Day View**, **Event** view, the expanded display of the **People** view, **Unregistered People** view and folder view, then click  (Details View) at the bottom right of the screen to switch to the details view.

2. Click **Specify Person**.



A white frame to specify the area to register appears on the image.

3. Specify the area of the person you want to register.

Drag the white frame on the image to specify the area to register. The area specified here appears as the thumbnail in the **People** view.



Note

- Click  (Close) to remove the white frame.

4. Click **Register name** below the white frame, then enter the name of the person to register.

5. Click an area outside the white frame.

The image(s) is (are) registered to the **People** view.

Note

- When a registered name is entered, its image(s) and the name(s) appear in the pop-up menu. To register as the same person as the registered person, select the name in the pop-up menu. To register as a different person, click an area outside the white frame to complete the name entry.
- To delete a registered person, control-click the person in the **People** view and select **Delete** from the displayed menu to display a deletion confirmation window. Click **Yes** to delete the name.

from the **People** view. Images whose names of people have been deleted appear as those of unregistered people in the **Unregistered People** view.

- You can also set the profiles of registered people, such as their relationships with you and their birthdays.

➡ [Registering People's Profiles](#)



Important

- When the file name of an image is changed or an image is moved, the registered information of people may be lost.
- Even if you copy images with information of people registered, the registered information of people will not be retained.

Related Topic

🕒 [Unregistered People View](#)

🕒 [People View](#)

🕒 [Expanded Display](#)

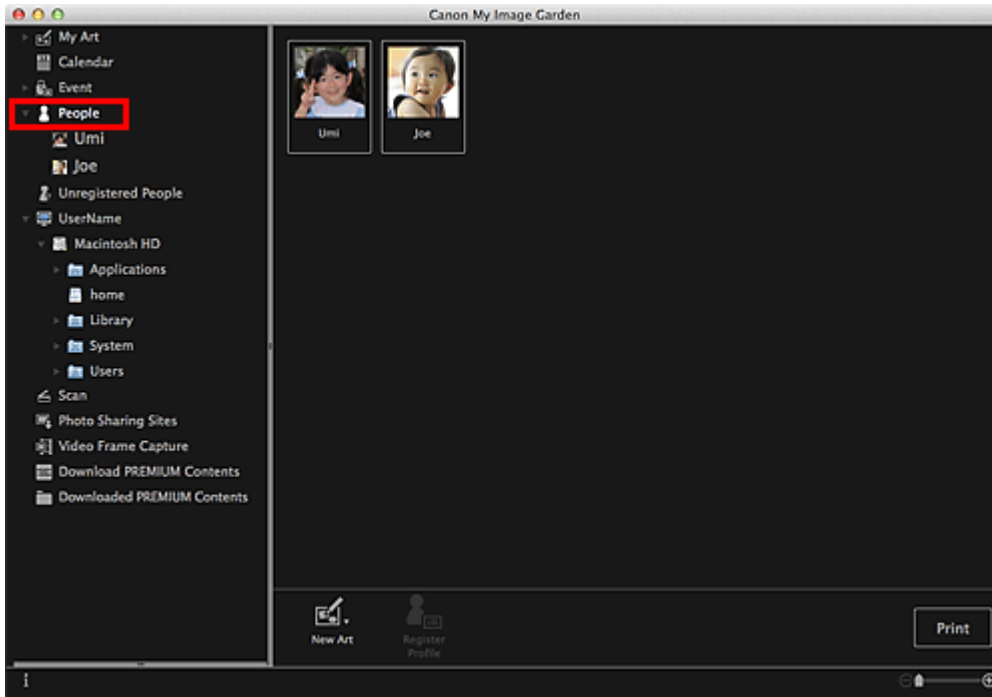
Page top ▲

Registering People's Profiles

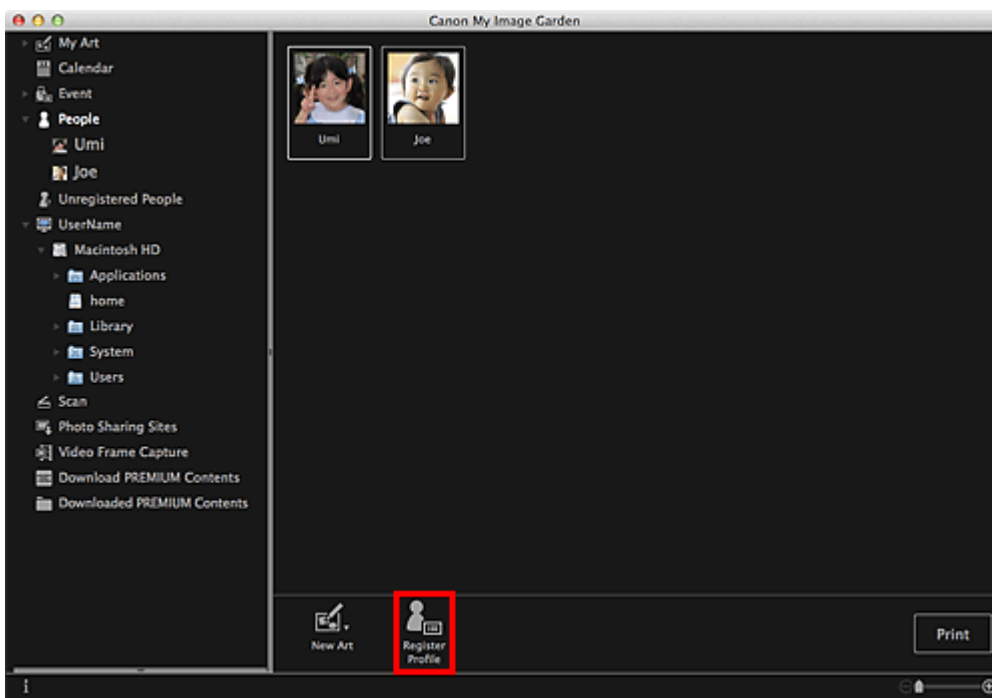
For registered people, you can set your relationships with them and their birthdays. You can also change the names.

1. Click **People**.

The view switches to **People**.

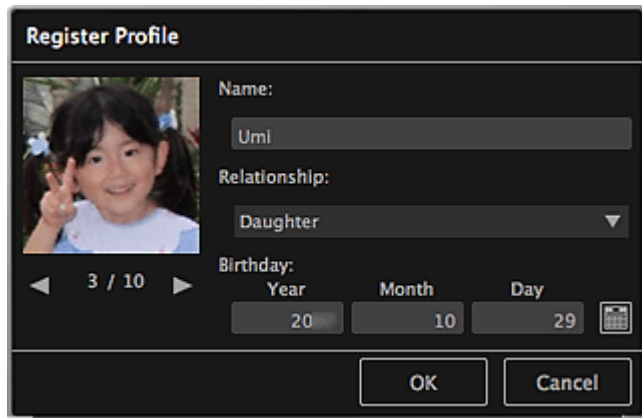


2. Select the person of whom you want to set a profile, then click **Register Profile**.



The **Register Profile** dialog appears.

3. Set Name, Relationship and Birthday.



The image shows a 'Register Profile' dialog box with a dark theme. On the left is a photo of a young girl with pigtails, with '3 / 10' below it. To the right of the photo are three input fields: 'Name:' with the text 'Umi', 'Relationship:' with a dropdown menu showing 'Daughter', and 'Birthday:' with three sub-fields for 'Year' (20), 'Month' (10), and 'Day' (29). A small calendar icon is next to the day field. At the bottom right are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

4. Click OK.

The profile is saved.

Related Topic

🟢 People View

A045

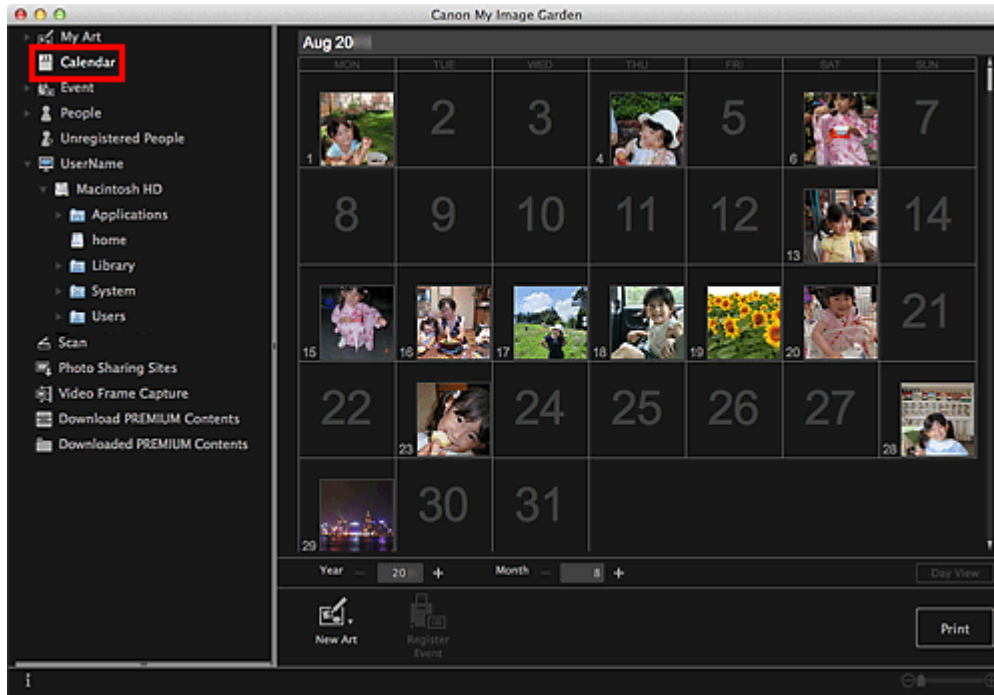
My Image Garden

Registering Events

Register the event information to images so that you can browse the images by event.

1. Click **Calendar**.

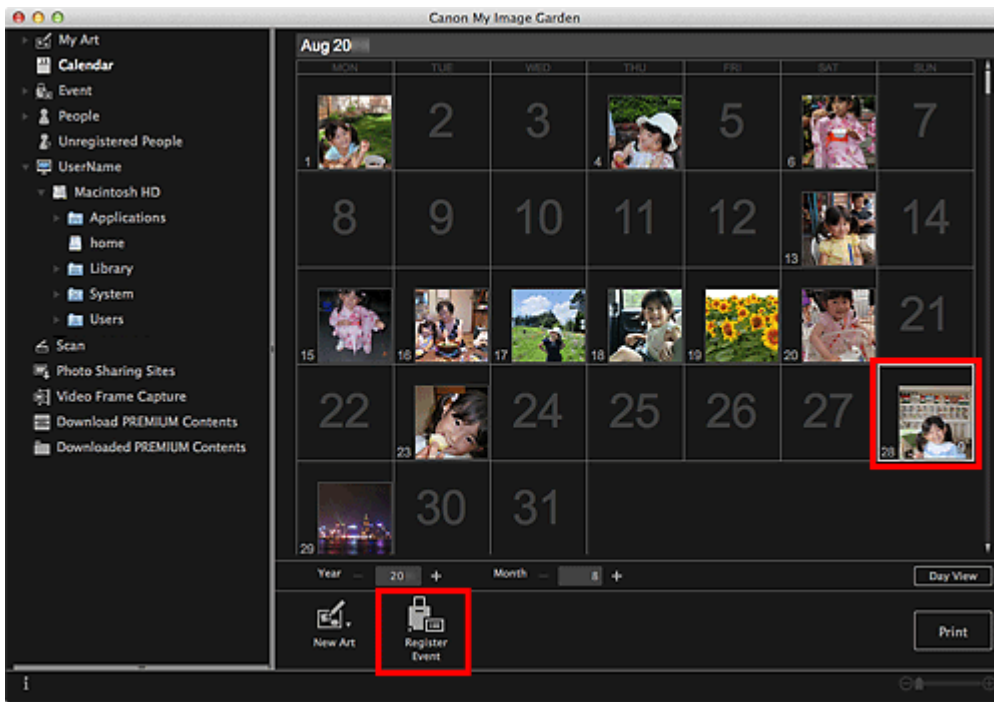
The view switches to **Calendar**.



Note

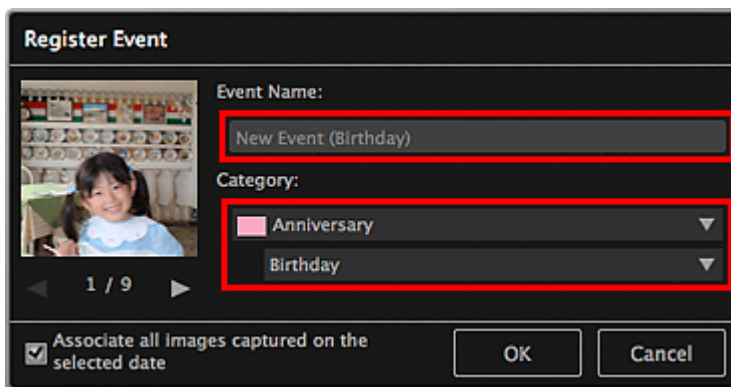
- Events can be registered only when the **Calendar** view is set to Month View. If set to Day View, click **Month View** at the bottom right of the screen to switch to Month View.

2. Select the date for which you want to register an event, then click **Register Event**.



The **Register Event** dialog appears.

3. Set **Event Name** and **Category**.



Note

- See "[Register Event Dialog](#)" for the **Register Event** dialog.

4. Click **OK**.

The event label appears in the **Calendar** view, and the registered event name appears below **Event** on the left side of the screen.

Note

- When you place the cursor over an event label, the shape of the cursor changes to  (Left Right Arrow). In that state, you can drag the label to extend or shorten the event period.
- To delete a registered event, control-click the event displayed below **Event** on the left side of the screen and select **Delete** from the displayed menu to display a deletion confirmation window. Click **Yes** to delete the event name from the **Event** view.

Important

- When the file name of an image is changed or an image is moved, the registered event information may be lost.
- Even if you copy images with event information registered, the registered event information will not be retained.

Related Topic

- Calendar View
- Event View

Page top ▲

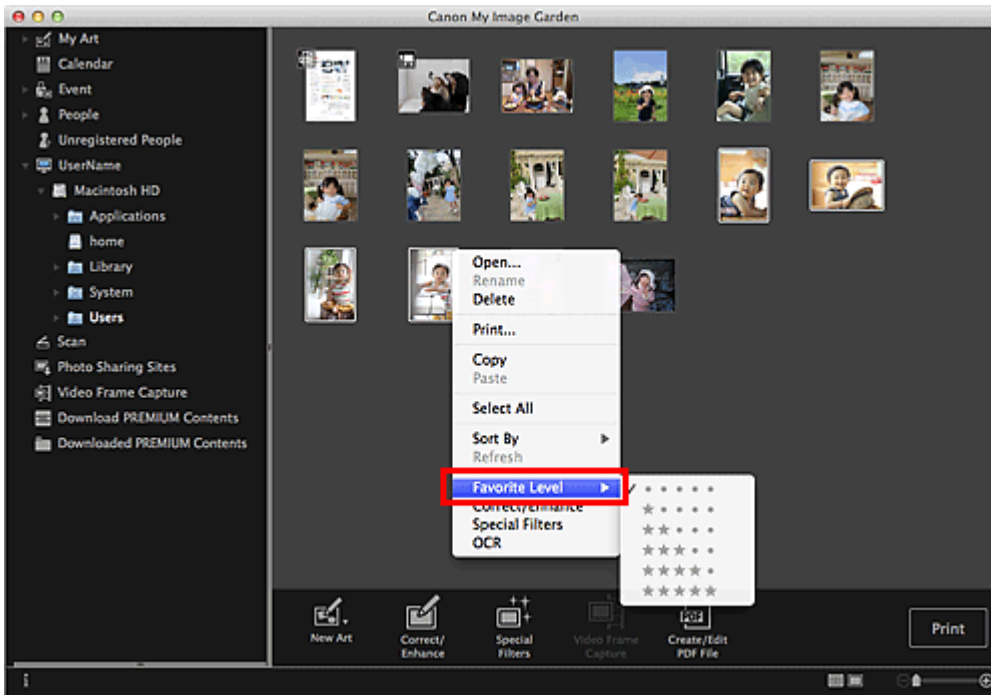
Registering Favorite Levels

When you register favorite levels to images, those with higher favorite levels are more likely to be laid out automatically in recommended items.

Important

- Favorite levels can only be registered to images saved in folders under **Perform Image Analysis in the Following Folder(s)**. See "**Image Analysis Settings Tab**" for how to set **Perform Image Analysis in the Following Folder(s)**.
- Even if a favorite level is set, the image may not be placed with priority in the item depending on the image analysis result.

- Control-click the thumbnail of the image to which you want to register a favorite level, then select **Favorite Level**.



Note

- Select multiple images and control-click to specify the same favorite level to them at once.
- When a person is selected in the **People** view or when a date is selected in the **Calendar** view set to **Month View**, you can specify the same favorite level to all images registered to the selected person or date.

- Register the favorite level.

Specify the number of ★ (Stars) according to the favorite level of the image.

The favorite level can be specified in six levels. The more stars, the higher the favorite level becomes.

Note

- You can also register the favorite level by selecting an image then selecting **Favorite Level** from the **Image** menu.

Important

- When the file name of an image is changed or an image is moved, the registered favorite level may be lost.
- Even if you copy images with favorite levels set, the set favorite levels will not be retained.

[Page top ▲](#)

Printing

- 🌱 [Printing Photos and Documents](#)
- 🌱 [Printing Recommended Items and Images Displayed in Slide Shows](#)
- 🌱 [Creating and Printing Items](#)
- 🌱 [Downloading and Printing PREMIUM Contents](#)
- 🌱 [Capturing and Printing Still Images from Videos](#)

[Page top](#) ▲

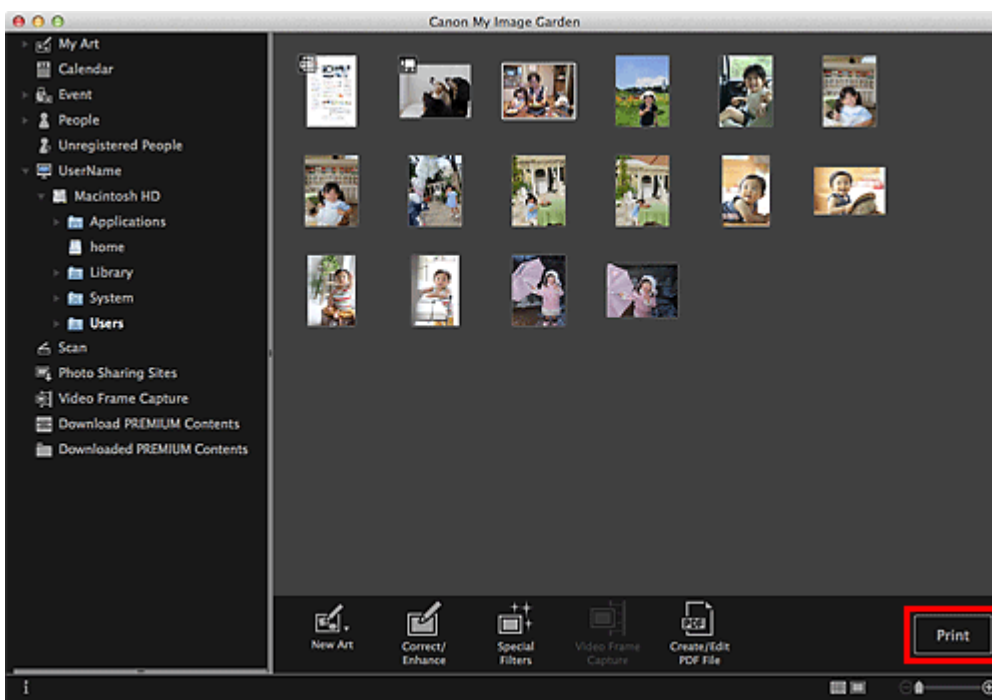
Printing Photos and Documents

You can print your favorite photos easily.

You can also print documents (PDF files) created in My Image Garden.

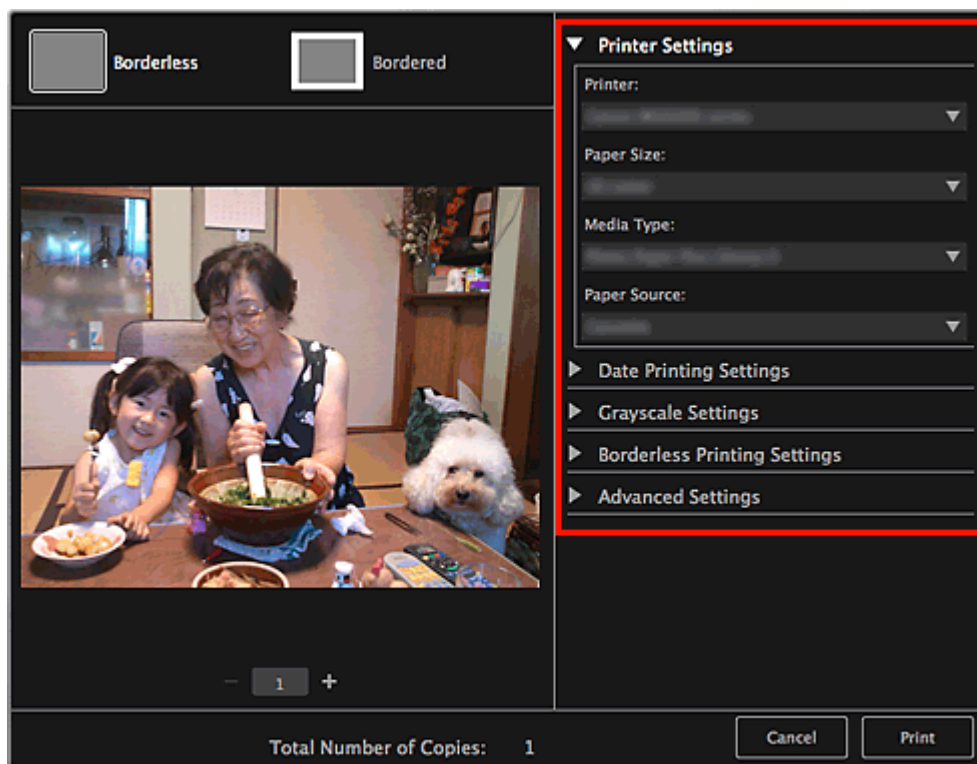


1. Make sure that your scanner or printer is turned on.
2. Start My Image Garden.
➡ Starting My Image Garden
3. Select the image(s) or PDF file(s) you want to print.
➡ Selecting Images, PDF Files and Videos
4. Click **Print**.



The print settings dialog appears.

- Set the number of copies to print, the printer and paper to use, etc.



Note

- See "Print Settings Dialog" for details on the print settings dialog.

- Load paper.

- Click **Print**.

A message appears.

- Click **OK**.

The Print dialog appears.

Important

- If you change the printer in the Print dialog, a message appears and printing will be canceled.

- Click **Print**.

Important

- When you print a large number of high resolution images at one time, printing may stop halfway through.
- When you print on a bordered layout, the margins on the left and right or the top and bottom may become wider than the other.

Note

- You can correct or enhance images before printing.
 - Correcting/Enhancing Photos
 - Enhancing Photos Using Special Filters

Printing Recommended Items and Images Displayed in Slide Shows

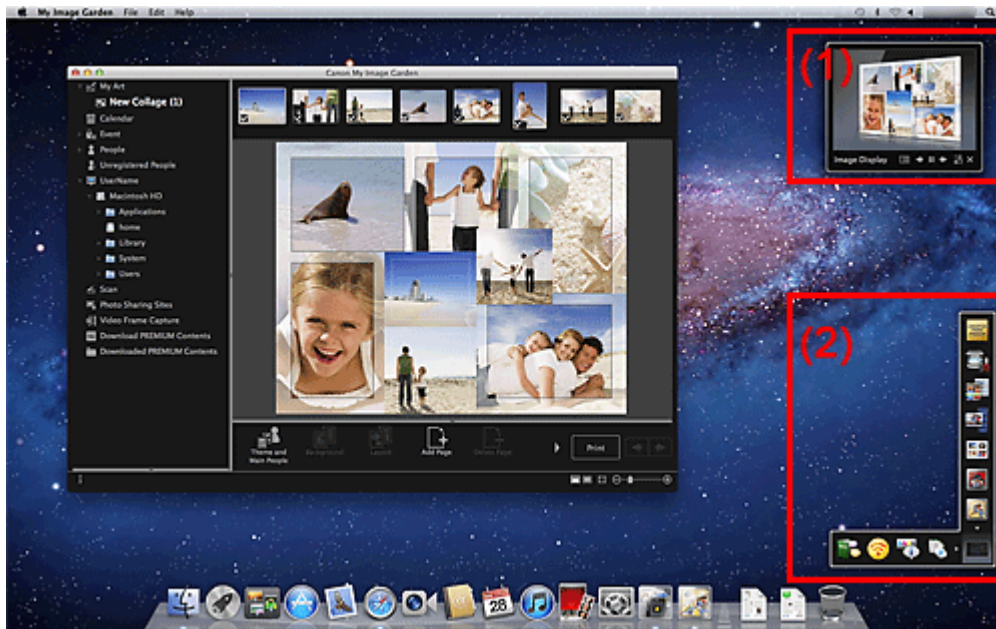
You can print recommended patterns and images displayed in Image Display with simple steps.

Important

- To use Image Display, you need to install Quick Menu. You can download Quick Menu from the Canon website.
Internet connection is required to download the software. Internet connection fees apply.

Note

- See "[Utilizing the Item Recommendation Function](#)" for how to display recommended items in slide shows.
- See Help of Quick Menu for how to operate Quick Menu and Image Display.



(1) Image Display

(2) Quick Menu

1. Click a pattern or image displayed in Image Display.



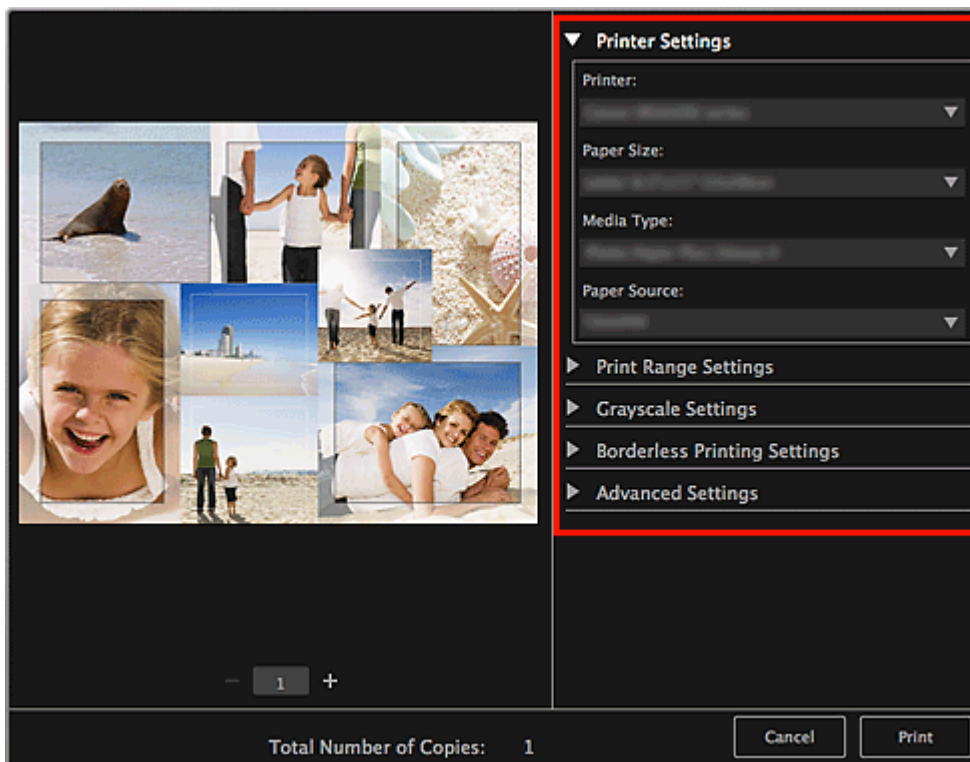
My Image Garden starts. When a pattern is clicked, the item appears in the **My Art** view. When an image is clicked, the **Calendar** view appears in Day View.

2. Click **Print**.



The print settings dialog appears.

3. Set the number of copies to print, the printer and paper to use, etc.



Note

- See "Print Settings Dialog" for details on the print settings dialog.

4. Click **Print**.

A message appears.

5. Click **OK**.

The Print dialog appears.

Important

- If you change the printer in the Print dialog, a message appears and printing will be canceled.

6. Click **Print**.

Note

- You can correct or enhance images before printing.
 - ➡ [Correcting/Enhancing Photos](#)
 - ➡ [Enhancing Photos Using Special Filters](#)
- You can swap images in patterns.
 - ➡ [Inserting/Adjusting Images](#)

Related Topic

-  [My Art View](#)
-  [Calendar View](#)

Page top 

Creating and Printing Items

You can easily create personalized items using your favorite photos and print them.

Select an image in the **Calendar** view, **Event** view, **People** view, **Unregistered People** view or folder view, then click **New Art** at the bottom of the screen to select the item you want to create.

You can create and print items such as the following.

Printing Photos in a Variety of Layouts

You can print your favorite photos with dates or in a variety of layouts.

➡ [Printing Photos in a Variety of Layouts](#)



Printing Collages

You can create and print collages using your favorite photos and print them.

➡ [Printing Collages](#)



Printing Cards

You can create cards for anniversaries and annual events using your favorite photos and print them.

➡ [Printing Cards](#)



Printing Calendars

You can create personalized calendars using your memorable photos and print them.

➡ [Printing Calendars](#)



Printing Stickers

You can create personalized stickers by printing your favorite photos on sticker sheets.

➡ [Printing Stickers](#)



Printing Disc Labels

You can create personalized disc labels using your favorite photos and print them.

➡ [Printing Disc Labels](#)



Printing in a Cinematic Layout

You can print your favorite photos in a layout that resembles a film or theater.

➡ Printing in a Cinematic Layout



Printing Paper Crafts

You can print downloaded PREMIUM Contents (paper crafts) and create three-dimensional art.

➡ Printing Paper Crafts



Page top ▲

Printing Photos in a Variety of Layouts

You can print your favorite photos with dates or in a variety of layouts.



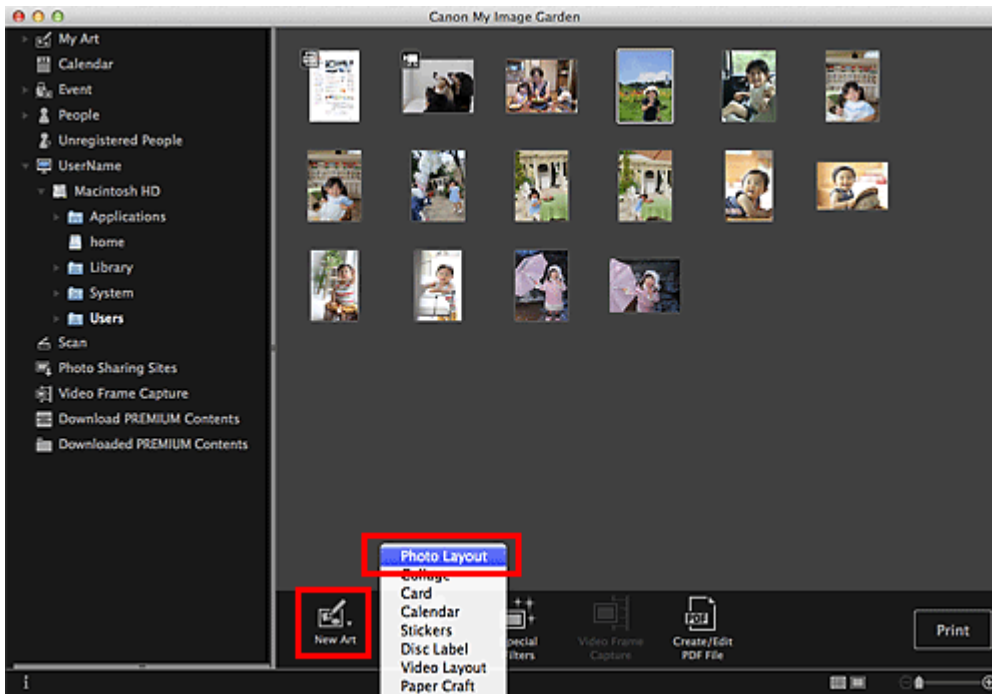
1. Start My Image Garden.

➡ Starting My Image Garden

2. Select the image(s) you want to print.

➡ Selecting Images, PDF Files and Videos

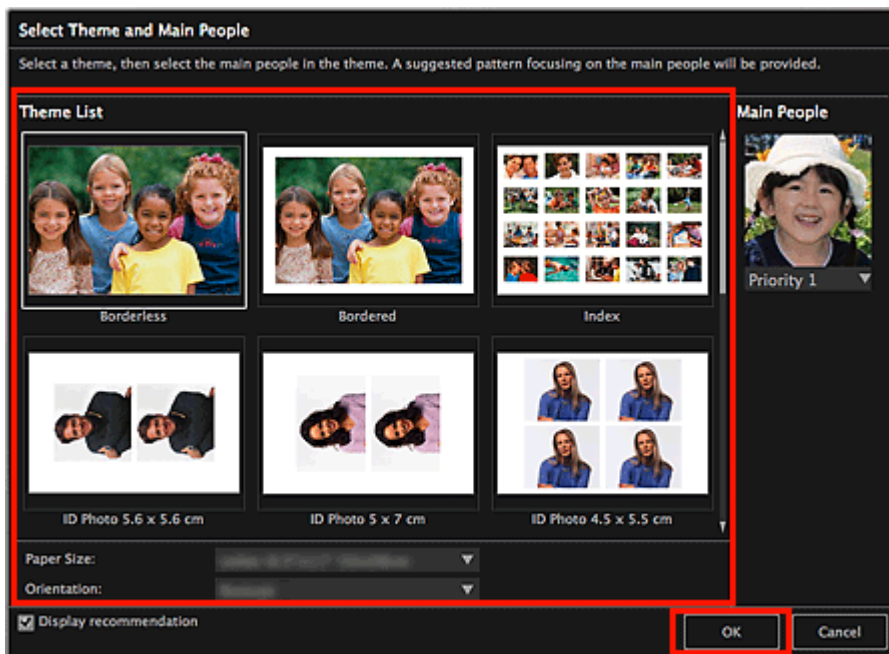
3. Click **Photo Layout** from **New Art**.



The **Select Theme and Main People** dialog appears.

4. Set the theme, **Paper Size**, etc., then click **OK**.

➡ Setting the Theme and Main People



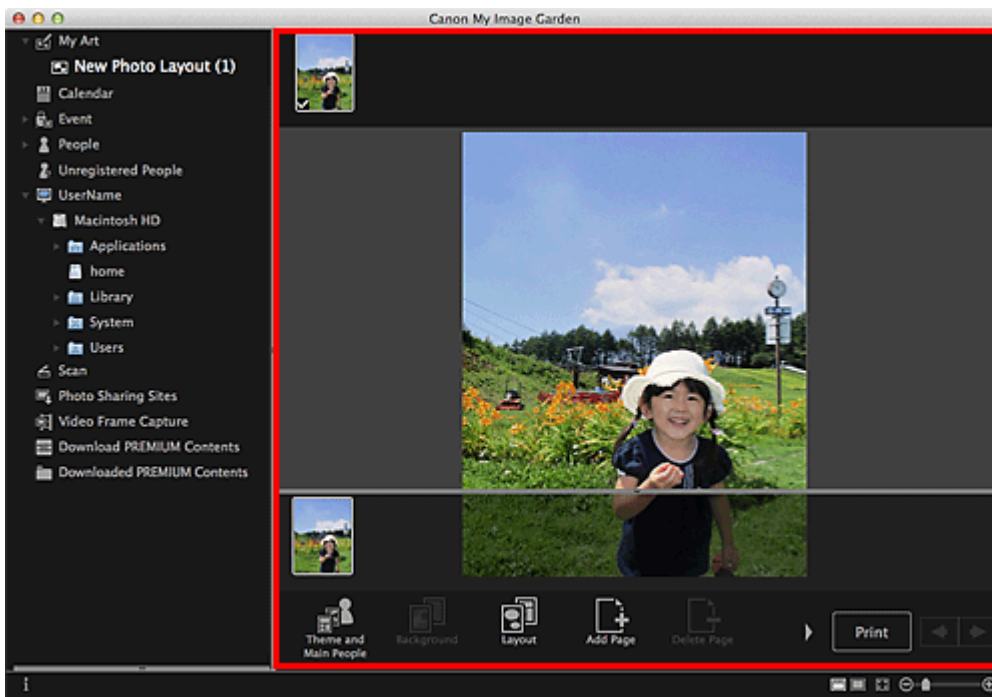
An item with the image(s) placed according to the selected layout appears in the **My Art** view.

Note

- Even if a high priority is set, the person may not be placed in the item depending on the selected theme.
- The layout may not be as expected depending on the photo information or analysis results of the selected images.

5. Edit the item according to your preference.

➡ Editing Items

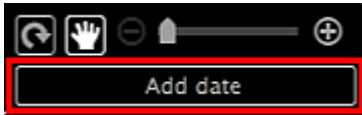


Note

- When **Identifying people...** appears at **Unregistered People** in Global Menu, the result may not be as expected since automatic placement does not apply to images for which analysis has not been completed.
- Refer to "**Inserting/Adjusting Images**" to swap automatically placed images.

6. Add the date according to your preference.

Select the image to which you want to add the date to display the image editing tool. Click **Add date** to place a checkmark; the date is added to the image.



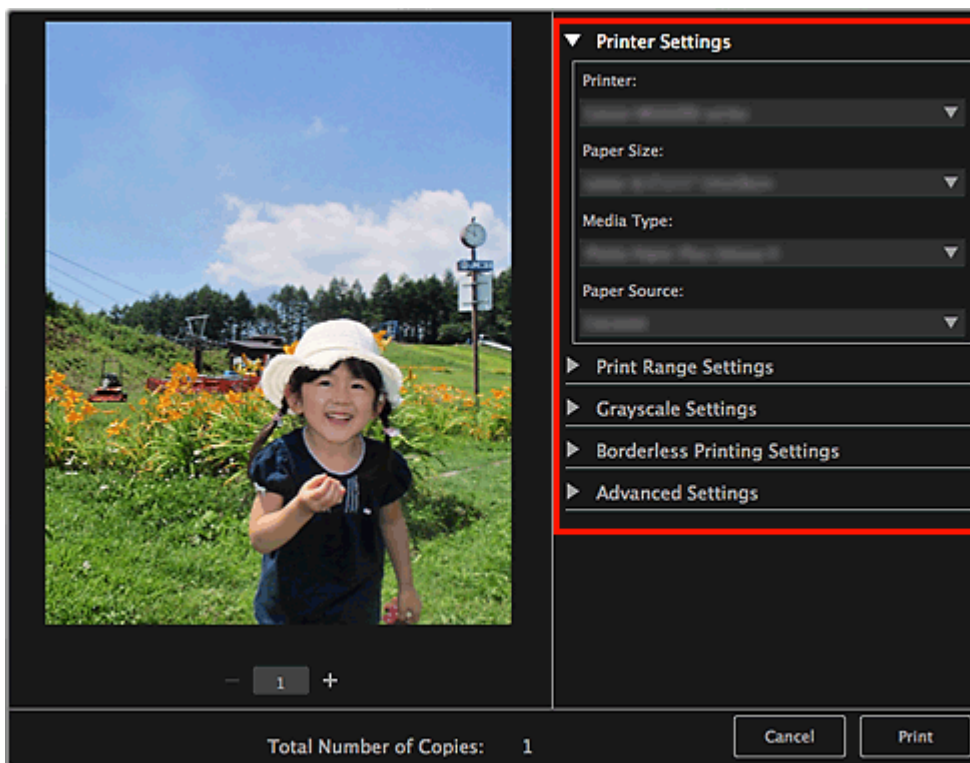
Note

- In the **Advanced Settings** dialog displayed by clicking **Advanced...** at the bottom of the screen, you can set to print dates on all images. If **Advanced...** is not displayed, click  (Right Scroll).
➡ [Advanced Settings Dialog \(Photo Layout\)](#)

7. Click **Print** at the bottom right of the screen.

The print settings dialog appears.

8. Set the number of copies to print, the printer and paper to use, etc.



Note

- See "[Print Settings Dialog](#)" for details on the print settings dialog.

9. Click **Print**.

A message appears.

10. Click **OK**.

The Print dialog appears.

Important

- If you change the printer in the Print dialog, a message appears and printing will be canceled.

11. Click **Print**.

Note

- You can correct or enhance images before printing.

- ➡ Correcting/Enhancing Photos
 - ➡ Enhancing Photos Using Special Filters
 - You can swap images in items.
 - ➡ Inserting/Adjusting Images
-

Related Topic

 My Art View

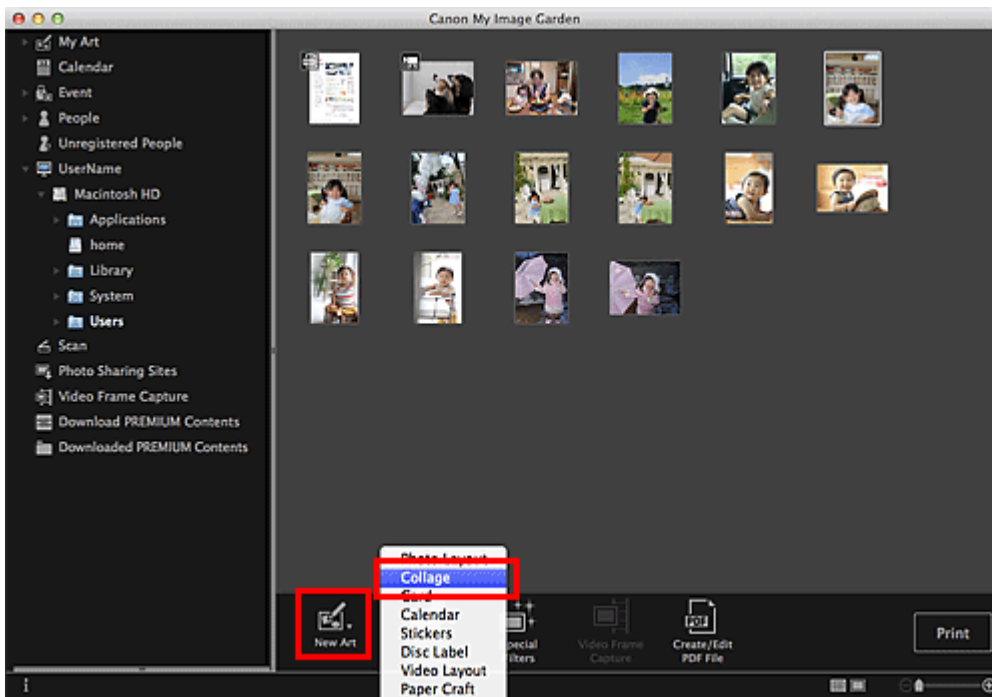
Page top ▲

Printing Collages

You can create collages using your favorite photos and print them.



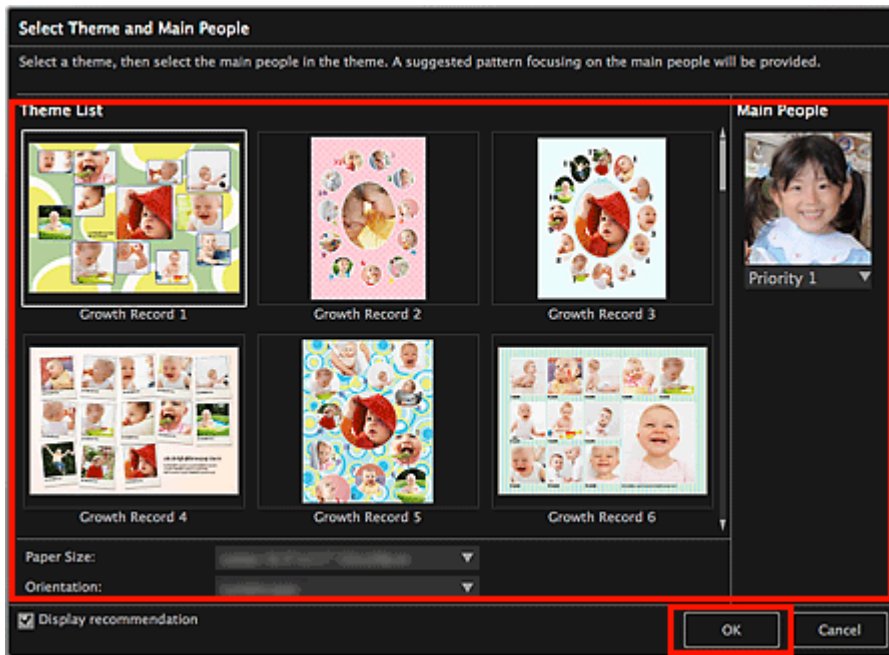
1. Start My Image Garden.
➡ Starting My Image Garden
2. Select the image(s) from which you want to create a collage.
➡ Selecting Images, PDF Files and Videos
3. Click **Collage** from **New Art**.



The **Select Theme and Main People** dialog appears.

4. Set the theme, priority of people for **Main People**, **Paper Size**, etc., then click **OK**.

➡ Setting the Theme and Main People



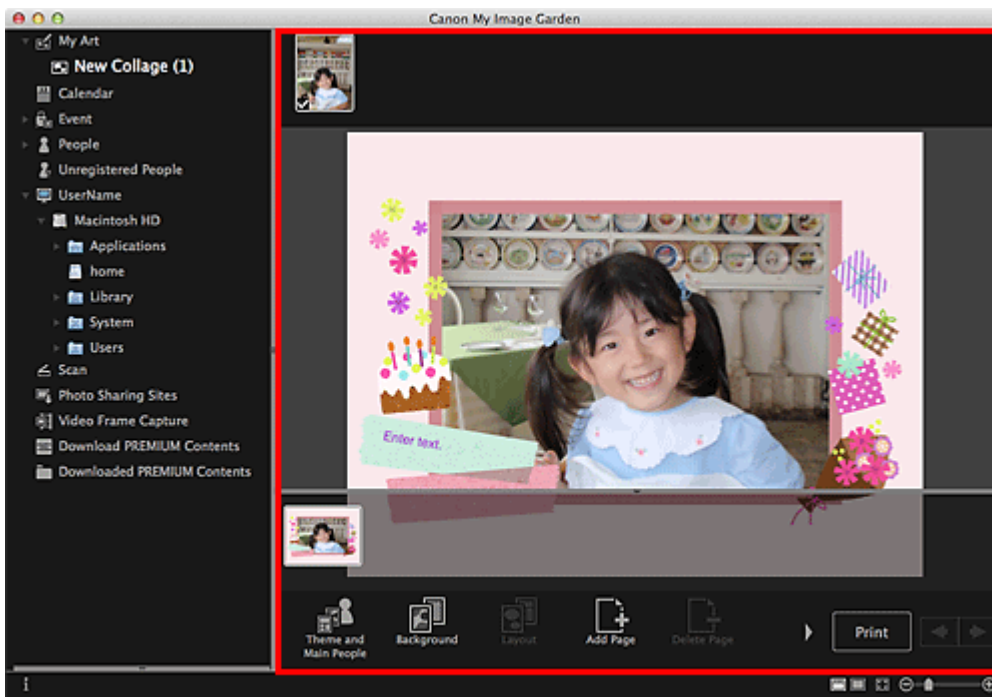
The collage appears in the **My Art** view.

Note

- Even if a high priority is set, the person may not be placed in the item depending on the selected theme.
- The layout may not be as expected depending on the photo information or analysis results of the selected images.

5. Edit the item according to your preference.

➡ Editing Items



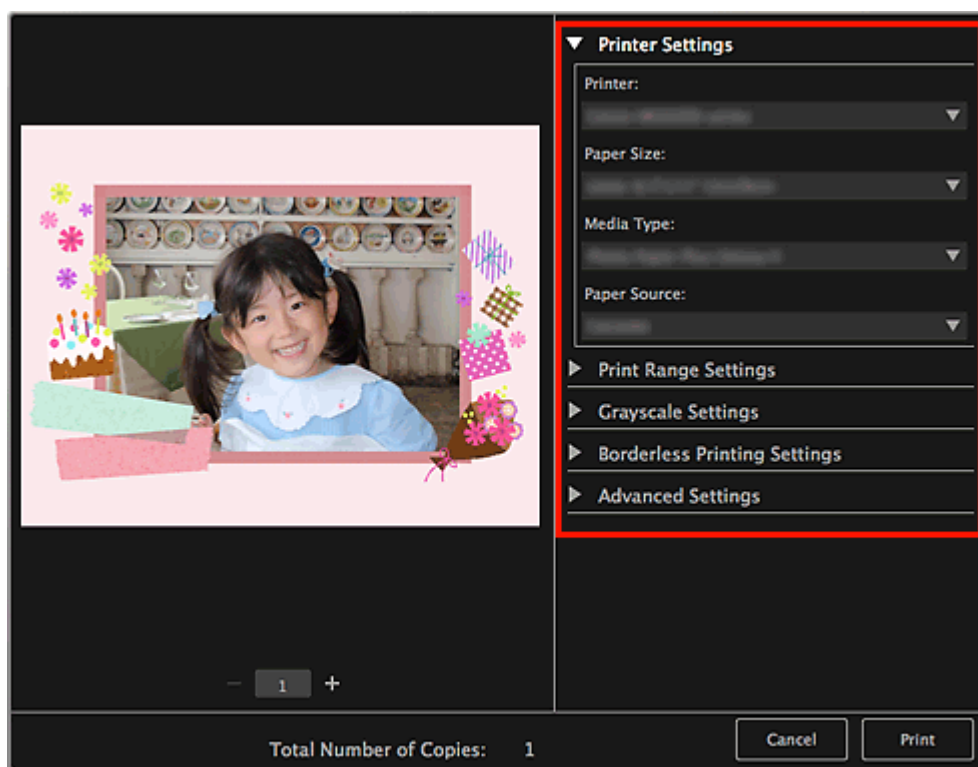
Note

- When **Identifying people...** appears at **Unregistered People** in Global Menu, the result may not be as expected since automatic placement does not apply to images for which analysis has not been completed.
- Refer to "[Inserting/Adjusting Images](#)" to swap automatically placed images.

6. Click **Print** at the bottom right of the screen.

The print settings dialog appears.

7. Set the number of copies to print, the printer and paper to use, etc.



Note

- See "Print Settings Dialog" for details on the print settings dialog.

8. Click **Print**.

A message appears.

9. Click **OK**.

The Print dialog appears.

Important

- If you change the printer in the Print dialog, a message appears and printing will be canceled.

10. Click **Print**.

Note

- You can correct or enhance images before printing.
 - Correcting/Enhancing Photos
 - Enhancing Photos Using Special Filters
- You can swap images in items.
 - Inserting/Adjusting Images

Related Topic

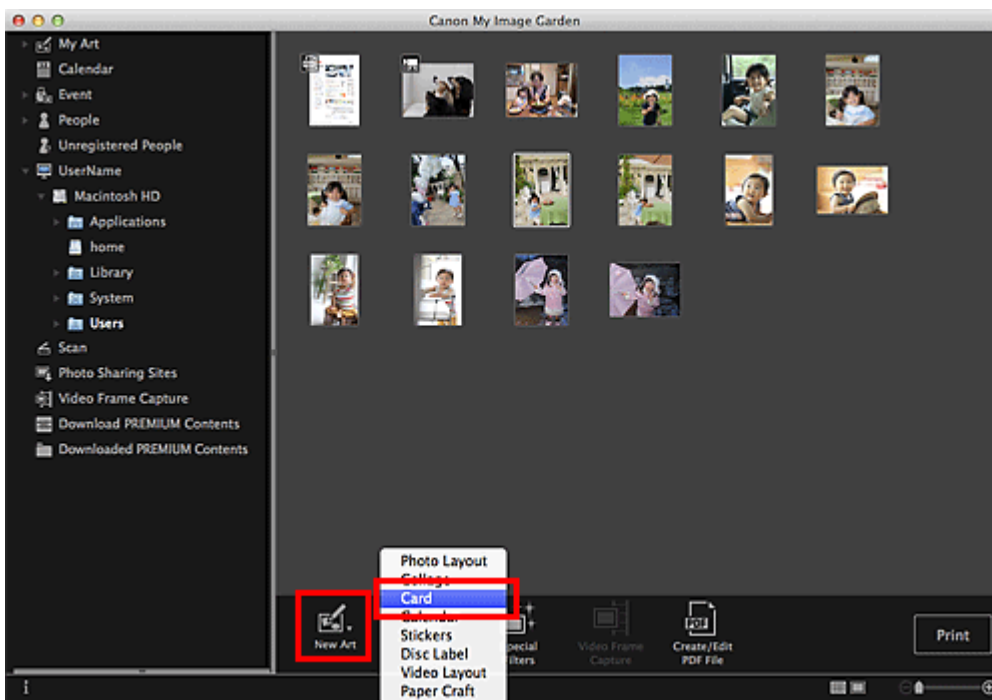
My Art View

Printing Cards

You can create cards for anniversaries and annual events using your favorite photos and print them.

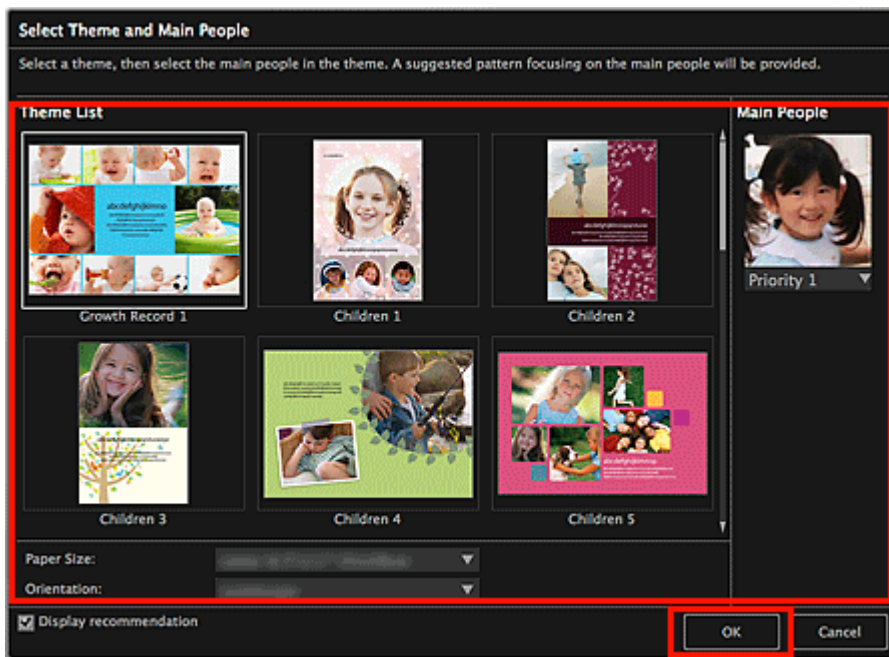


1. Start My Image Garden.
➡ Starting My Image Garden
2. Select the image(s) from which you want to create a card.
➡ Selecting Images, PDF Files and Videos
3. Click **Card** from **New Art**.



The **Select Theme and Main People** dialog appears.

4. Set the theme, priority of people for **Main People**, **Paper Size**, etc., then click **OK**.
➡ Setting the Theme and Main People



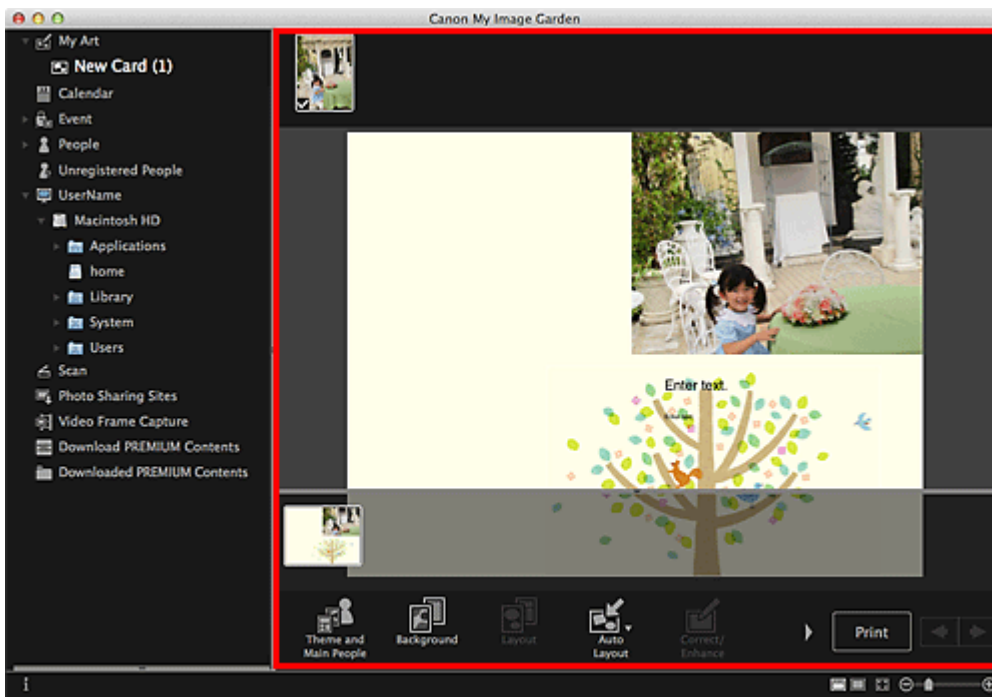
The card appears in the **My Art** view.

Note

- Even if a high priority is set, the person may not be placed in the item depending on the selected theme.
- The layout may not be as expected depending on the photo information or analysis results of the selected images.

5. Edit the item according to your preference.

➡ Editing Items



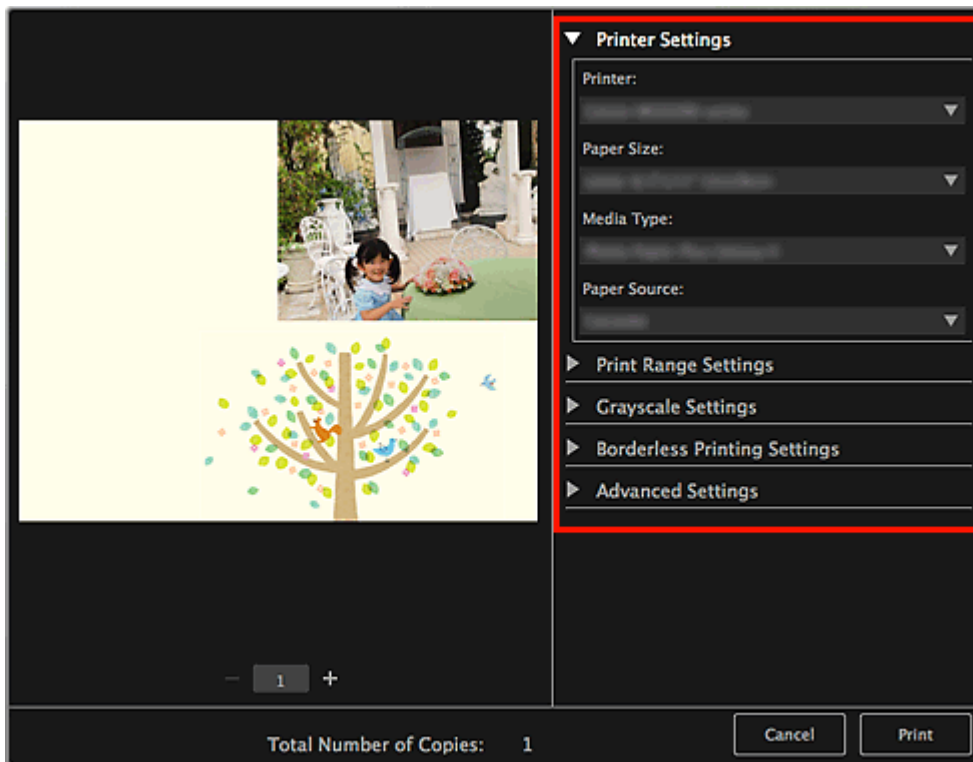
Note

- When **Identifying people...** appears at **Unregistered People** in Global Menu, the result may not be as expected since automatic placement does not apply to images for which analysis has not been completed.
- Refer to "**Inserting/Adjusting Images**" to swap automatically placed images.

6. Click **Print** at the bottom right of the screen.

The print settings dialog appears.

7. Set the number of copies to print, the printer and paper to use, etc.



Note

- See "Print Settings Dialog" for details on the print settings dialog.

8. Click **Print**.

A message appears.

9. Click **OK**.

The Print dialog appears.

Important

- If you change the printer in the Print dialog, a message appears and printing will be canceled.

10. Click **Print**.

Note

- You can correct or enhance images before printing.
 - Correcting/Enhancing Photos
 - Enhancing Photos Using Special Filters
- You can swap images in items.
 - Inserting/Adjusting Images

Related Topic

- My Art View

Printing Calendars

You can create personalized calendars using your memorable photos and print them.



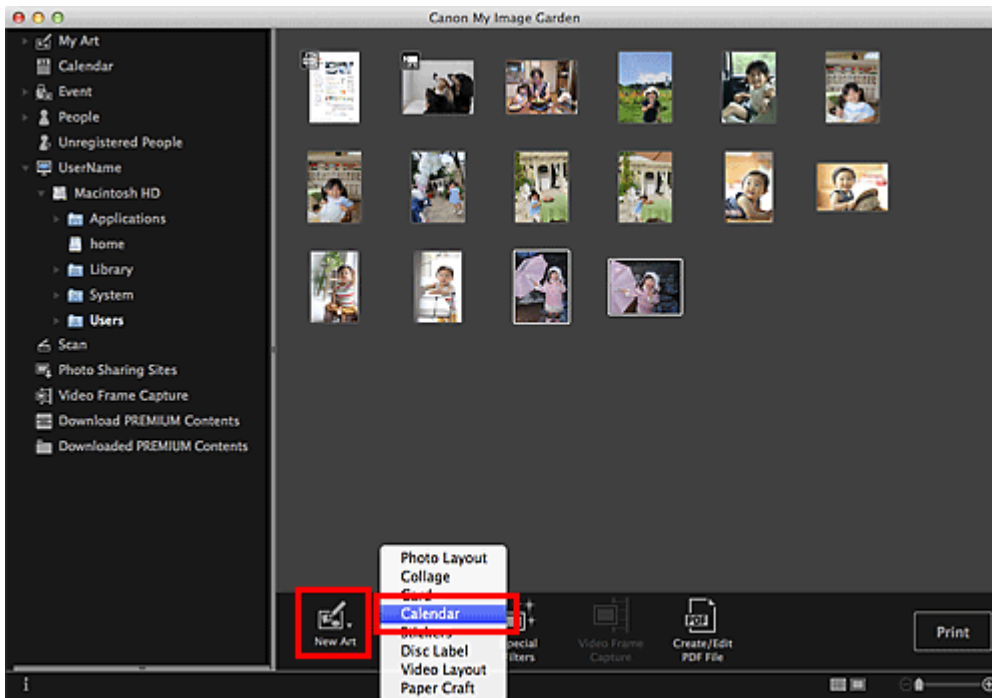
1. Start My Image Garden.

➡ Starting My Image Garden

2. Select the image(s) you want to use for a calendar.

➡ Selecting Images, PDF Files and Videos

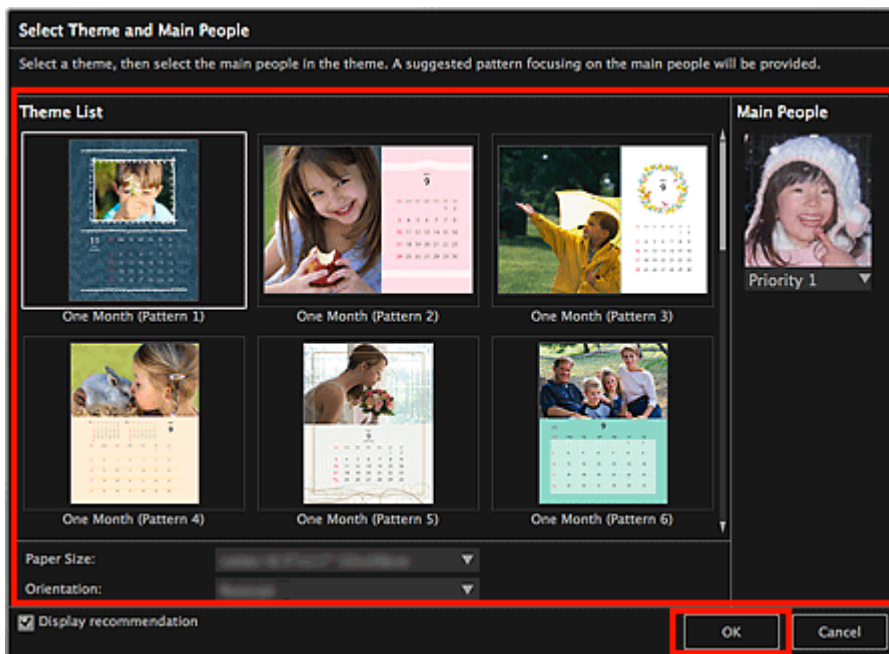
3. Click **Calendar** from **New Art**.



The **Select Theme and Main People** dialog appears.

4. Set the theme, priority of people for **Main People**, **Paper Size**, etc., then click **OK**.

➡ Setting the Theme and Main People

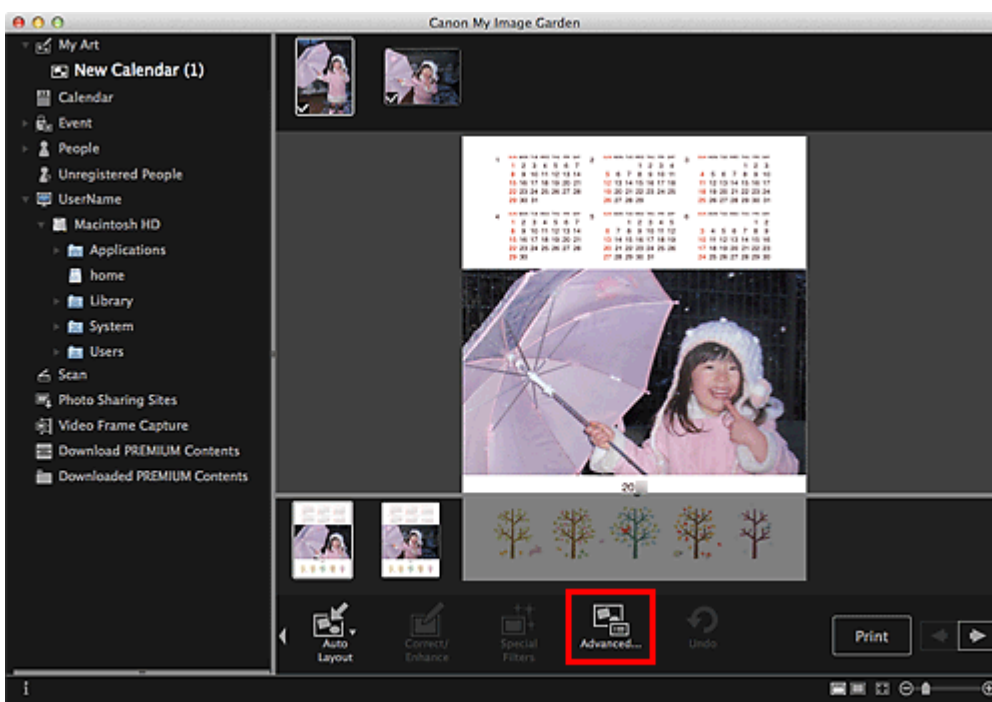


The calendar appears in the **My Art** view.

Note

- Even if a high priority is set, the person may not be placed in the item depending on the selected theme.
- The layout may not be as expected depending on the photo information or analysis results of the selected images.

5. Click **Advanced...**



The **Advanced Settings** dialog appears.

Note

- If **Advanced...** is not displayed, click  (Right Scroll).

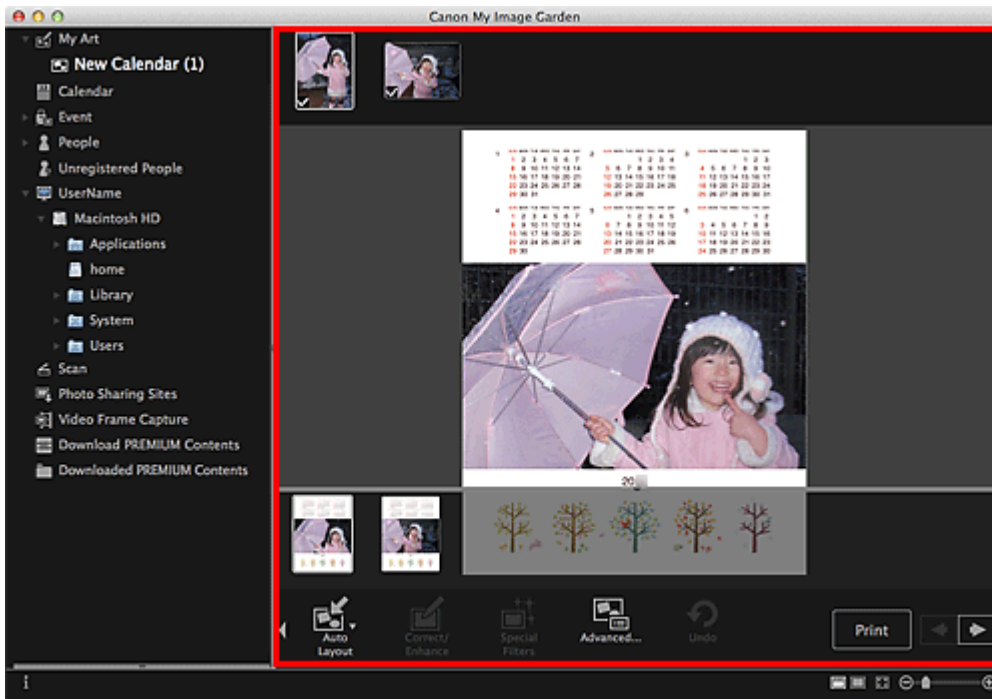
6. Set the calendar display format and holidays, then click **OK**.

➡ **Advanced Settings Dialog (Calendar)**

Click **OK** to return to the **My Art** view.

7. Edit the item according to your preference.

➡ Editing Items



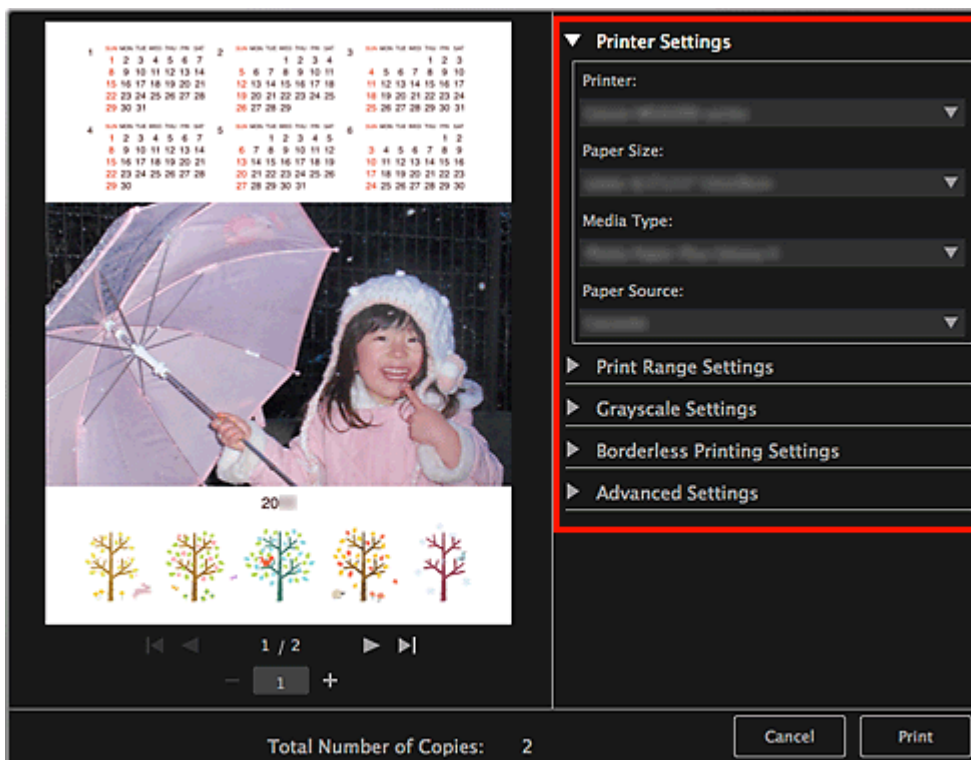
Note

- When **Identifying people...** appears at **Unregistered People** in Global Menu, the result may not be as expected since automatic placement does not apply to images for which analysis has not been completed.
- Refer to "[Inserting/Adjusting Images](#)" to swap automatically placed images.

8. Click **Print** at the bottom right of the screen.

The print settings dialog appears.

9. Set the number of copies to print, the printer and paper to use, etc.



Note

- See "[Print Settings Dialog](#)" for details on the print settings dialog.
-

10. Click **Print**.

A message appears.

11. Click **OK**.

The Print dialog appears.

Important

- If you change the printer in the Print dialog, a message appears and printing will be canceled.
-

12. Click **Print**.

Note

- You can correct or enhance images before printing.
 - ➡ [Correcting/Enhancing Photos](#)
 - ➡ [Enhancing Photos Using Special Filters](#)
 - You can swap images in items.
 - ➡ [Inserting/Adjusting Images](#)
-

Related Topic

 [My Art View](#)

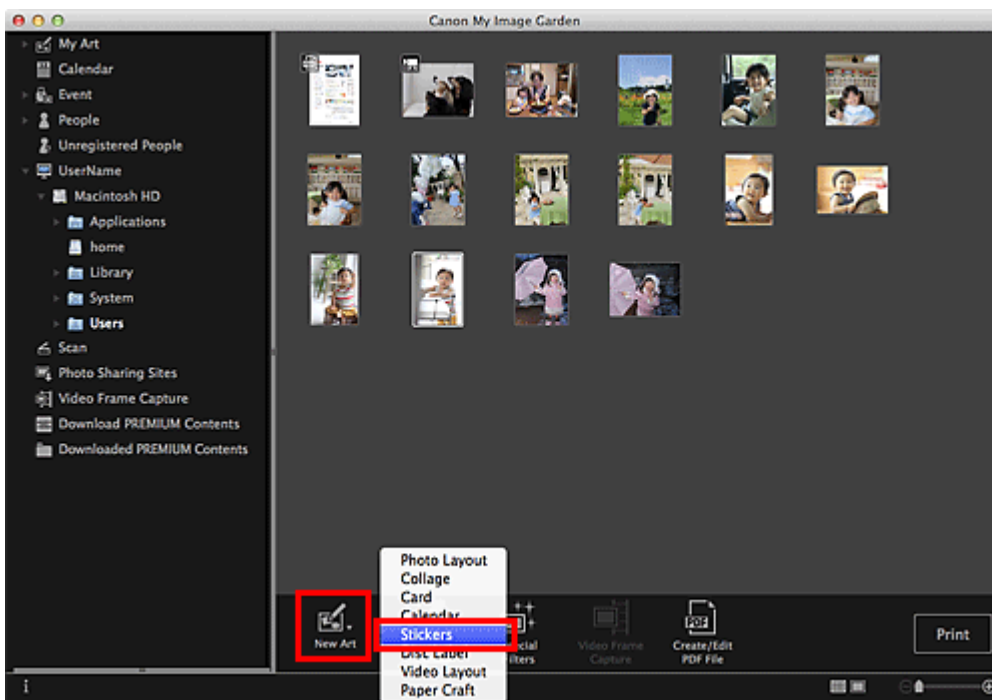
Page top ▲

Printing Stickers

You can create personalized stickers by printing your favorite photos on sticker sheets.

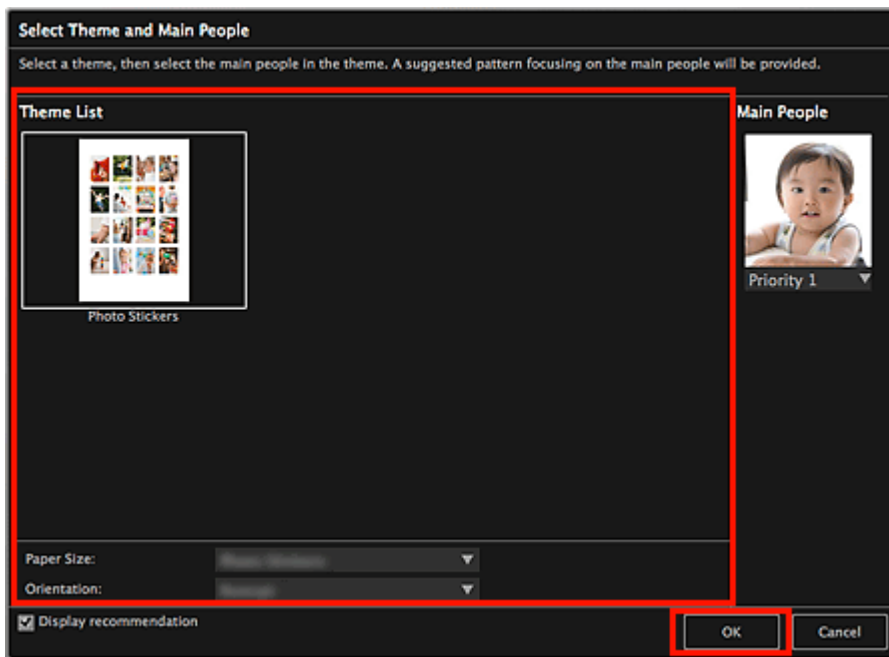


1. Start My Image Garden.
➡ Starting My Image Garden
2. Select the image(s) from which you want to create stickers.
➡ Selecting Images, PDF Files and Videos
3. Click **Stickers** from **New Art**.



The **Select Theme and Main People** dialog appears.

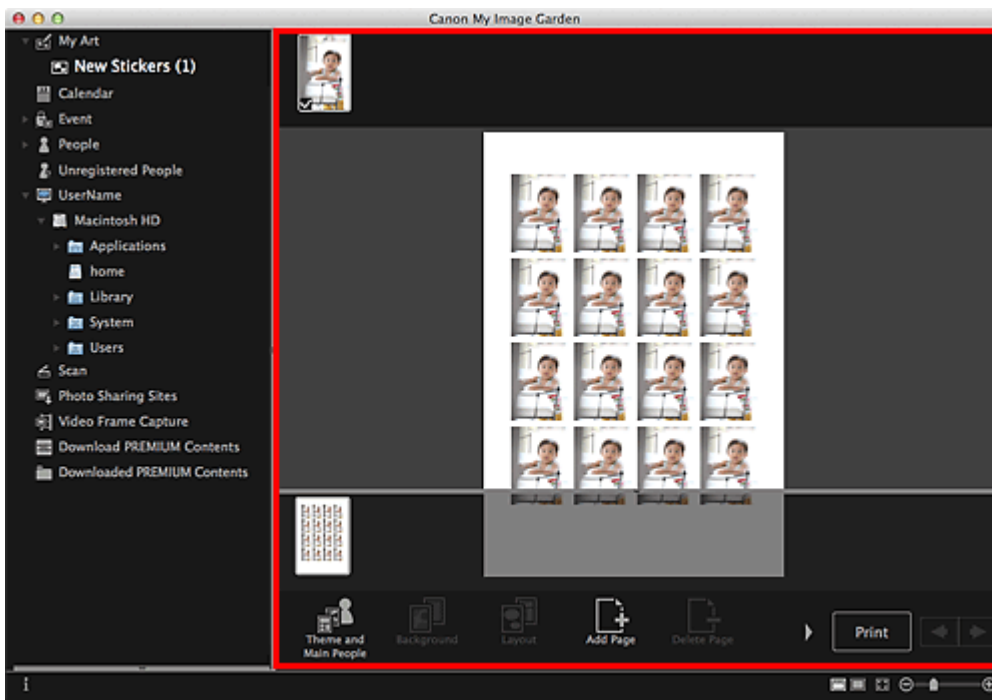
4. Set the theme, **Paper Size**, etc., then click **OK**.
➡ Setting the Theme and Main People



The sticker appears in the **My Art** view.

5. Edit the item according to your preference.

➡ Editing Items



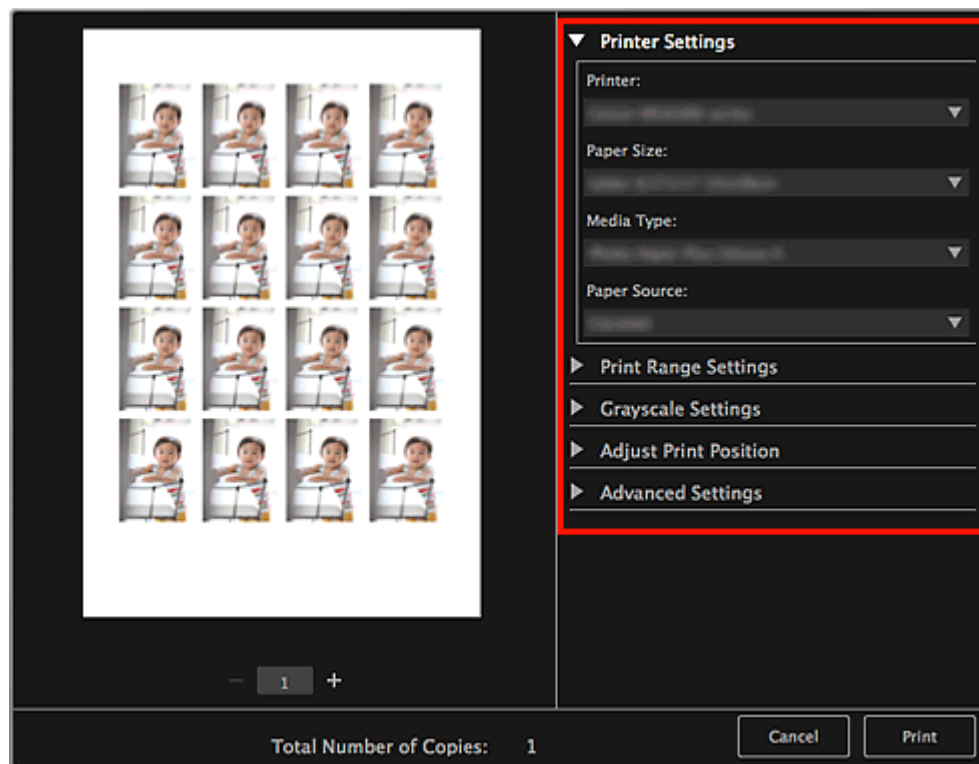
Note

- In the **Advanced Settings** dialog displayed by clicking **Advanced...** at the bottom of the screen, you can set to use the same image in all frames within the page. If **Advanced...** is not displayed, click  (Right Scroll).
- ➡ **Advanced Settings Dialog (Stickers)**
- When **Identifying people...** appears at **Unregistered People** in Global Menu, the result may not be as expected since automatic placement does not apply to images for which analysis has not been completed.
- Refer to "**Inserting/Adjusting Images**" to swap automatically placed images.

6. Click **Print** at the bottom right of the screen.

The print settings dialog appears.

7. Set the number of copies to print, the printer and paper to use, etc.



Note

- See "Print Settings Dialog" for details on the print settings dialog.

8. Click **Print**.

A message appears.

9. Click **OK**.

The Print dialog appears.

Important

- If you change the printer in the Print dialog, a message appears and printing will be canceled.

10. Click **Print**.

Note

- You can correct or enhance images before printing.
 - ➡ [Correcting/Enhancing Photos](#)
 - ➡ [Enhancing Photos Using Special Filters](#)
- You can swap images in items.
 - ➡ [Inserting/Adjusting Images](#)

Related Topic

 [My Art View](#)

Printing Disc Labels

You can create personalized disc labels using your favorite photos and print them.



Important

- Do not set the disc tray until a message prompting you to load a printable disc appears. Loading a printable disc while the scanner or printer is operating may damage the scanner or printer.

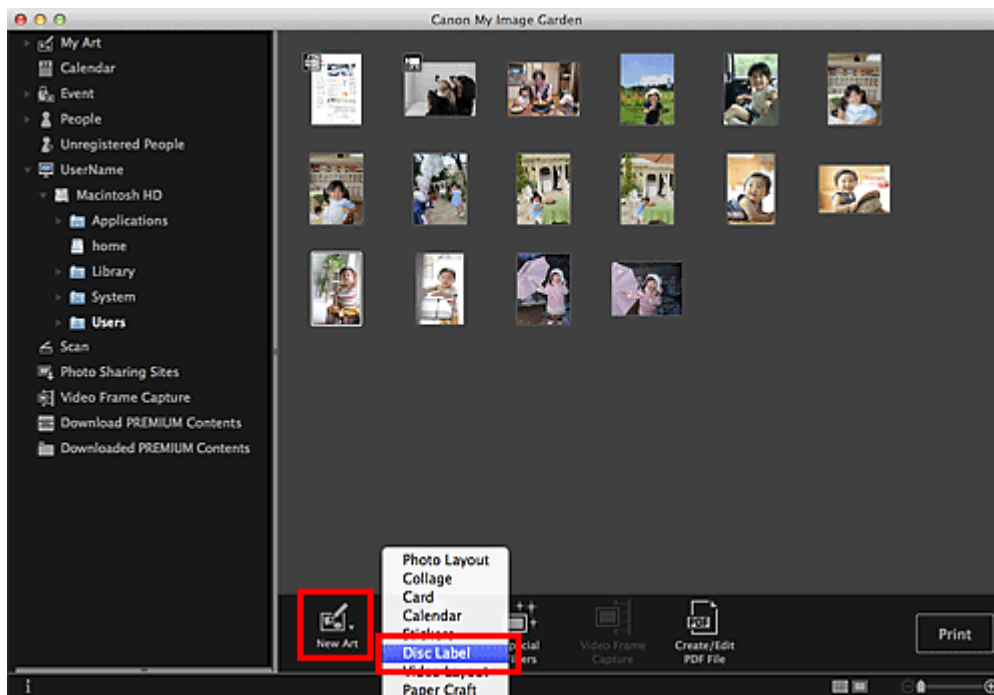
1. Start My Image Garden.

➡ Starting My Image Garden

2. Select the image(s) you want to use for a disc label.

➡ Selecting Images, PDF Files and Videos

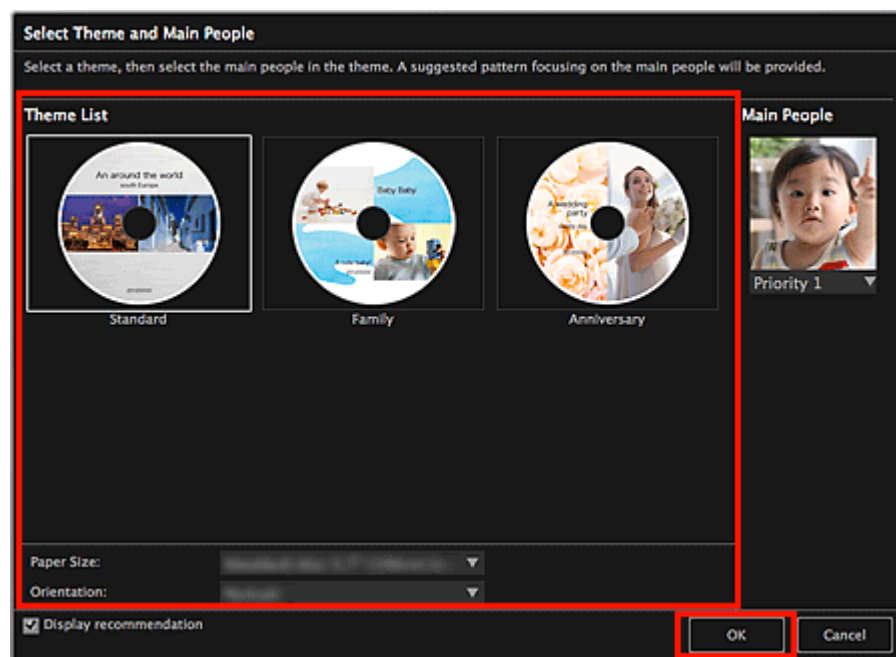
3. Click **Disc Label** from **New Art**.



The **Select Theme and Main People** dialog appears.

4. Set the theme, **Paper Size**, etc., then click **OK**.

➡ Setting the Theme and Main People



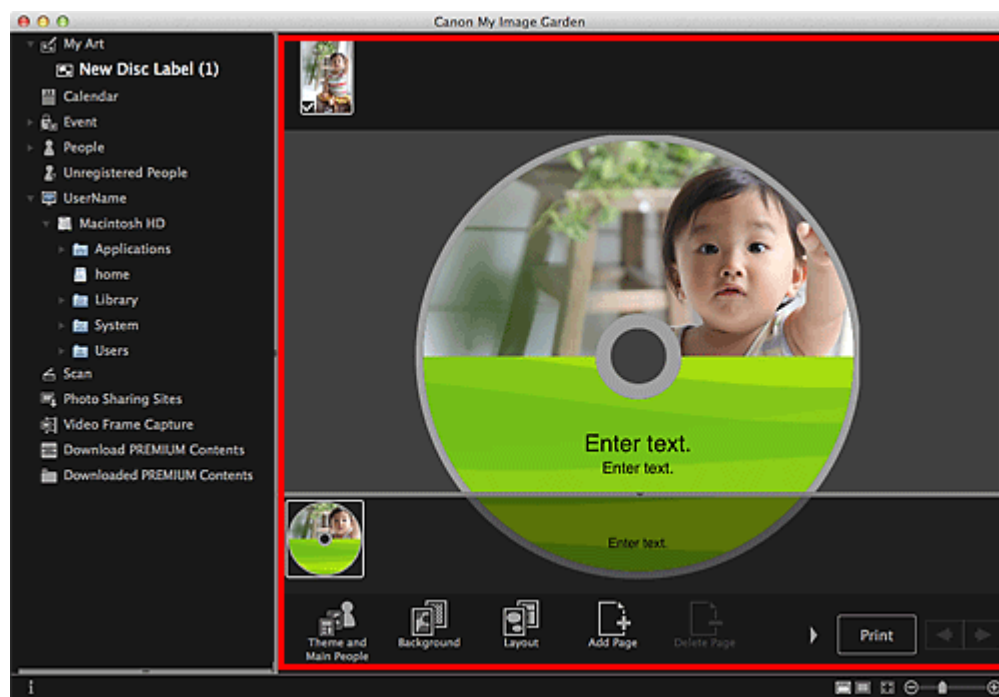
The disc label appears in the **My Art** view.

 Note

- Even if a high priority is set, the person may not be placed in the item depending on the selected theme.
- The layout may not be as expected depending on the photo information or analysis results of the selected images.

5. Edit the item according to your preference.

➡ Editing Items



 Note

- In the **Advanced Settings** dialog displayed by clicking **Advanced...** at the bottom of the screen, you can set the print area. If **Advanced...** is not displayed, click  (Right Scroll).

➡ Advanced Settings Dialog (Disc Label)

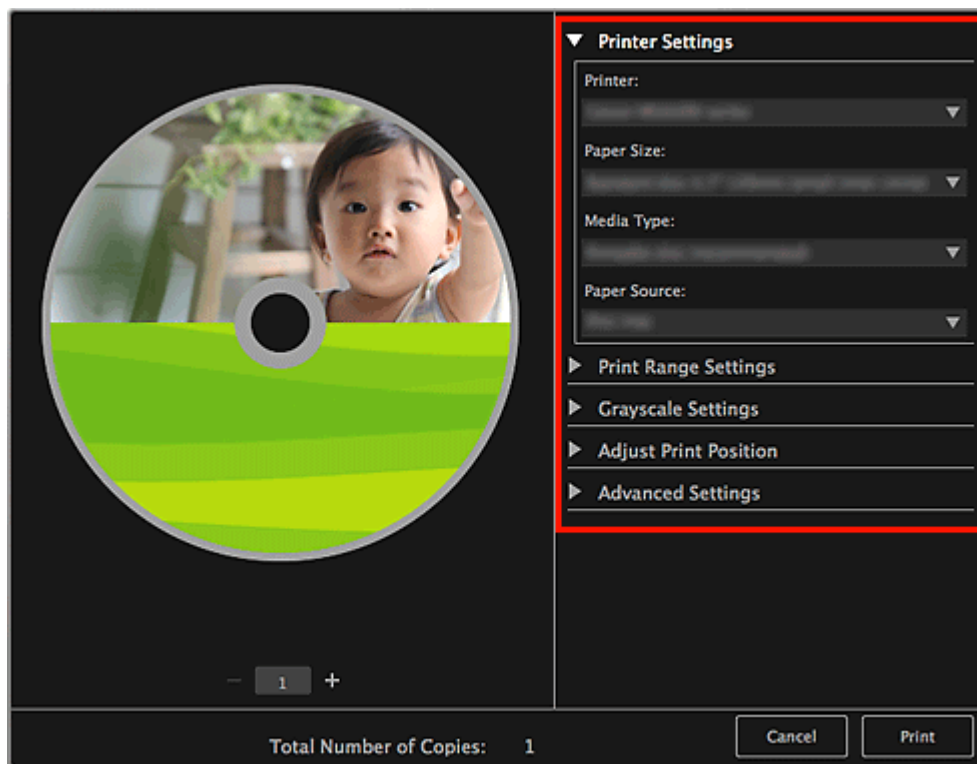
When **Identifying people...** appears at **Unregistered People** in Global Menu, the result may not be as expected since automatic placement does not apply to images for which analysis has not been completed.

- Refer to "[Inserting/Adjusting Images](#)" to swap automatically placed images.

6. Click **Print** at the bottom right of the screen.

The print settings dialog appears.

7. Set the number of copies to print, the printer and paper to use, etc.



Note

- See "[Print Settings Dialog](#)" for details on the print settings dialog.

8. Click **Print**.

A message appears.

9. Click **OK**.

The Print dialog appears.

Important

- If you change the printer in the Print dialog, a message appears and printing will be canceled.

10. Click **Print**.

Note

- You can correct or enhance images before printing.
 - ➡ [Correcting/Enhancing Photos](#)
 - ➡ [Enhancing Photos Using Special Filters](#)
- You can swap images in items.
 - ➡ [Inserting/Adjusting Images](#)

Related Topic

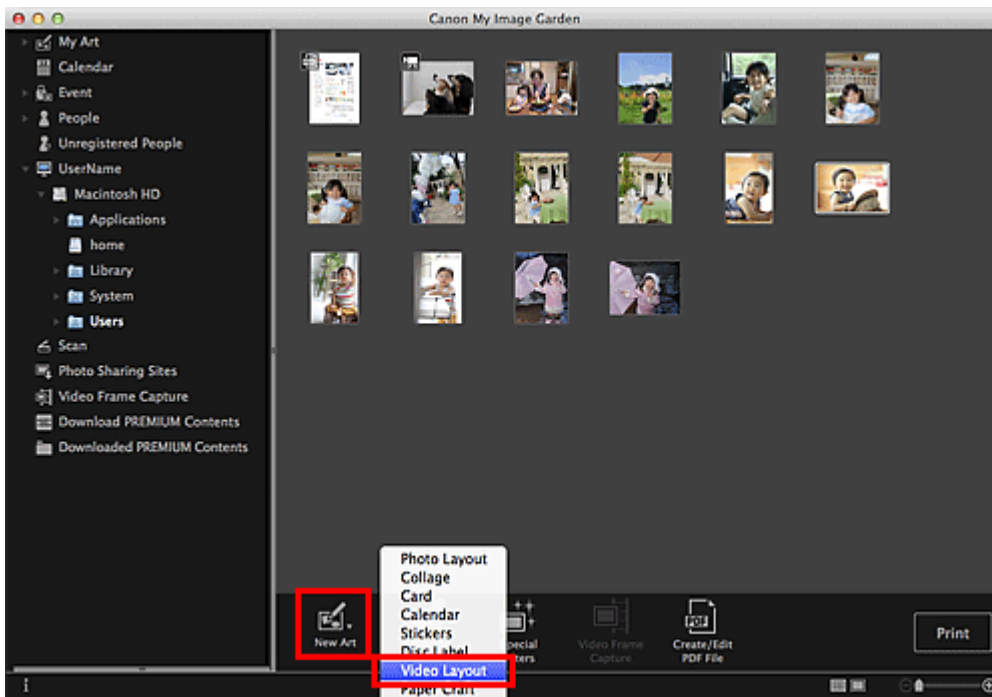


Printing in a Cinematic Layout

You can print your favorite photos in a layout that resembles a film or theater.

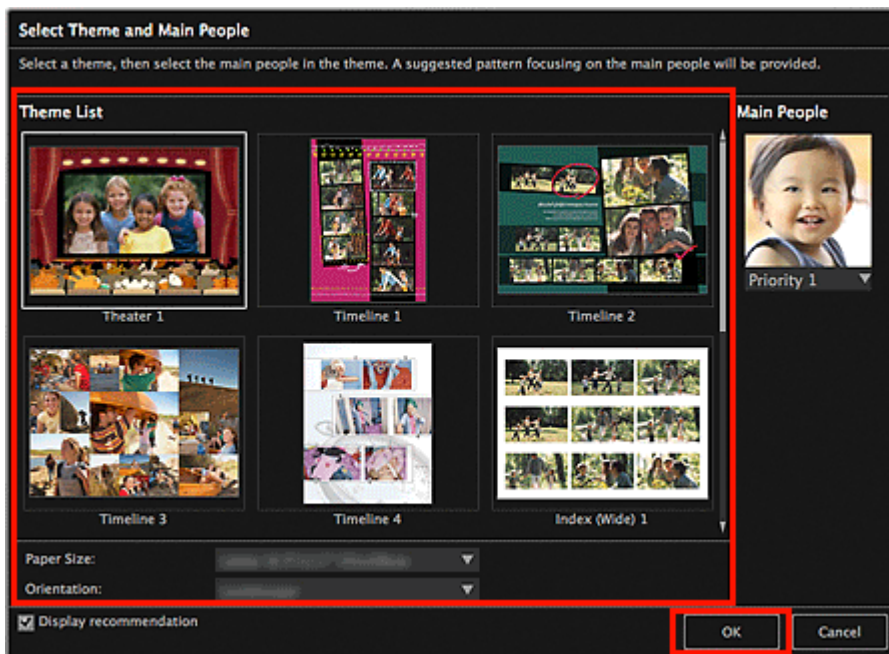


1. Start My Image Garden.
➡ Starting My Image Garden
2. Select the image(s) you want to place in a cinematic layout.
➡ Selecting Images, PDF Files and Videos
3. Click **Video Layout** from **New Art**.



The **Select Theme and Main People** dialog appears.

4. Set the theme, **Paper Size**, etc., then click **OK**.
➡ Setting the Theme and Main People



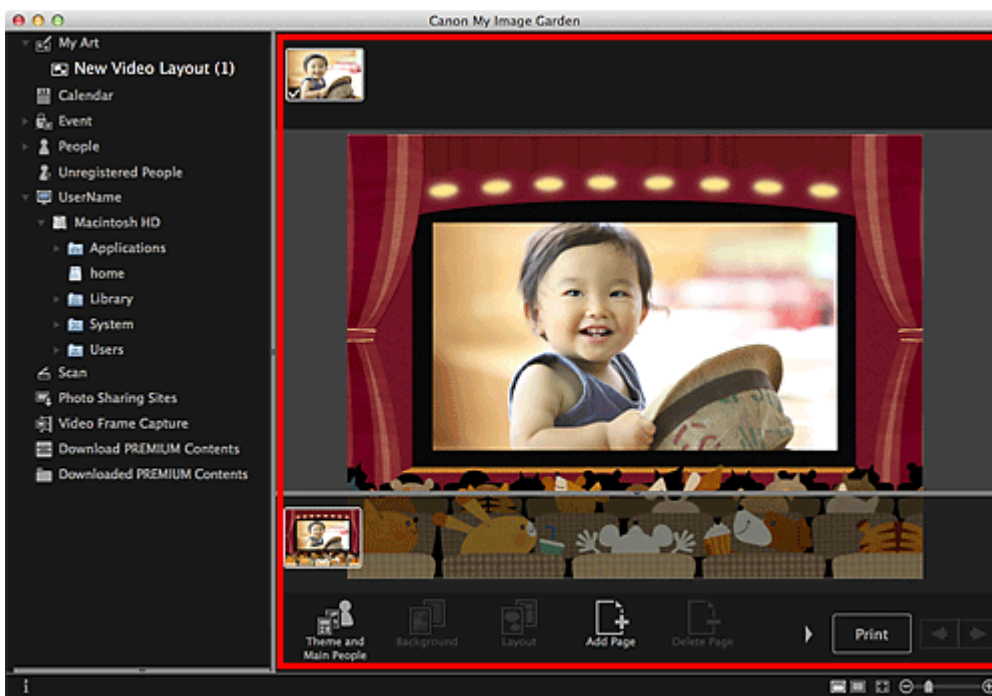
An item with the image(s) placed according to the selected layout appears in the **My Art** view.

Note

- Even if a high priority is set, the person may not be placed in the item depending on the selected theme.
- The layout may not be as expected depending on the photo information or analysis results of the selected images.

5. Edit the item according to your preference.

➡ Editing Items



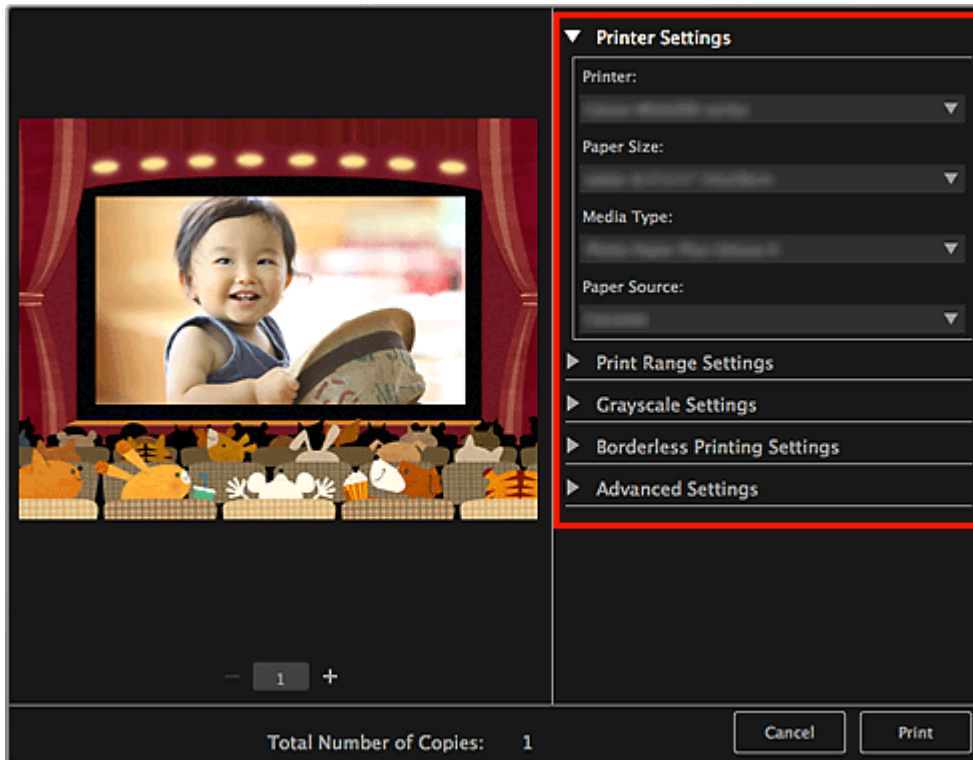
Note

- When **Identifying people...** appears at **Unregistered People** in Global Menu, the result may not be as expected since automatic placement does not apply to images for which analysis has not been completed.
- Refer to "[Inserting/Adjusting Images](#)" to swap automatically placed images.

6. Click **Print** at the bottom right of the screen.

The print settings dialog appears.

7. Set the number of copies to print, the printer and paper to use, etc.



Note

- See "Print Settings Dialog" for details on the print settings dialog.

8. Click **Print**.

A message appears.

9. Click **OK**.

The Print dialog appears.

Important

- If you change the printer in the Print dialog, a message appears and printing will be canceled.

10. Click **Print**.

Note

- You can correct or enhance images before printing.
 - ➡ Correcting/Enhancing Photos
 - ➡ Enhancing Photos Using Special Filters
- You can swap images in items.
 - ➡ Inserting/Adjusting Images

Related Topic

- My Art View

Printing Paper Crafts

You can print downloaded PREMIUM Contents (paper crafts) and create three-dimensional art.



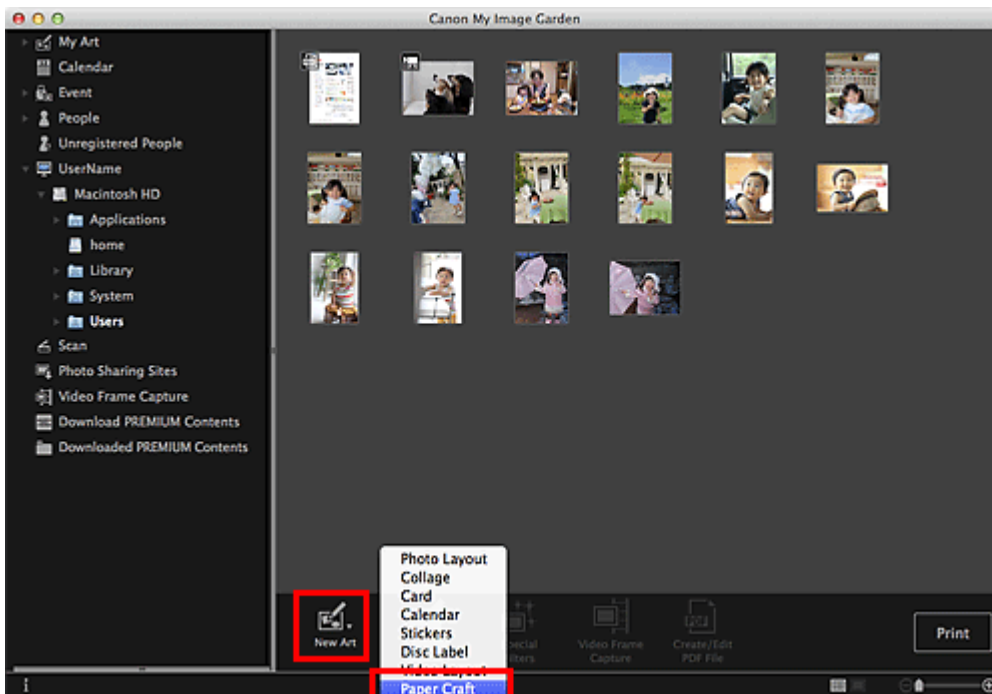
Important

- Keep these points in mind when printing paper crafts.
 - See "[Downloading PREMIUM Contents](#)" for how to download PREMIUM Contents.
 - You may only use downloaded or printed PREMIUM Contents for personal purposes. You may not use the content for commercial purposes.

1. Start My Image Garden.

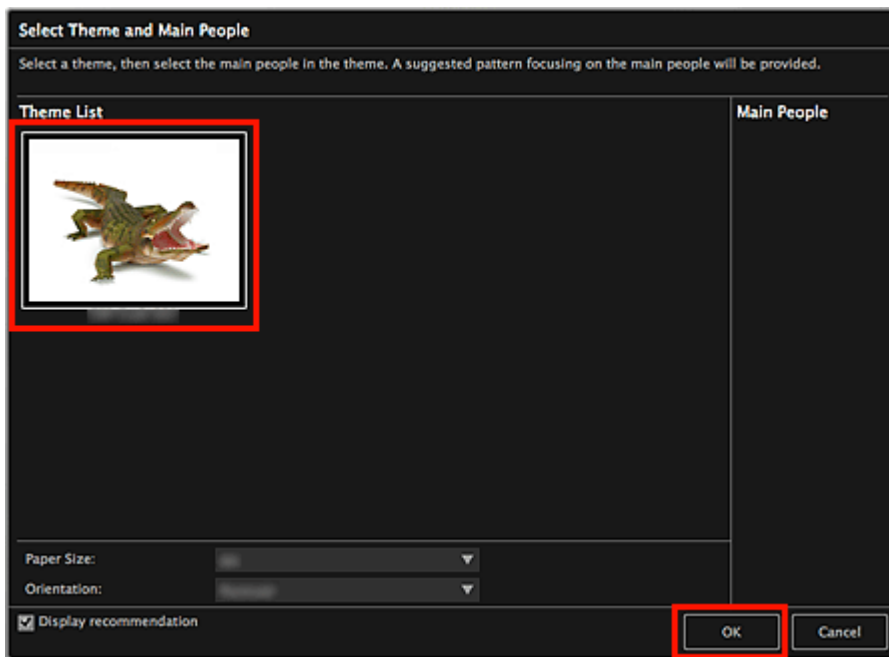
➡ Starting My Image Garden

2. Click **Paper Craft** from **New Art**.



The **Select Theme and Main People** dialog appears.

3. Select the theme, then click **OK**.



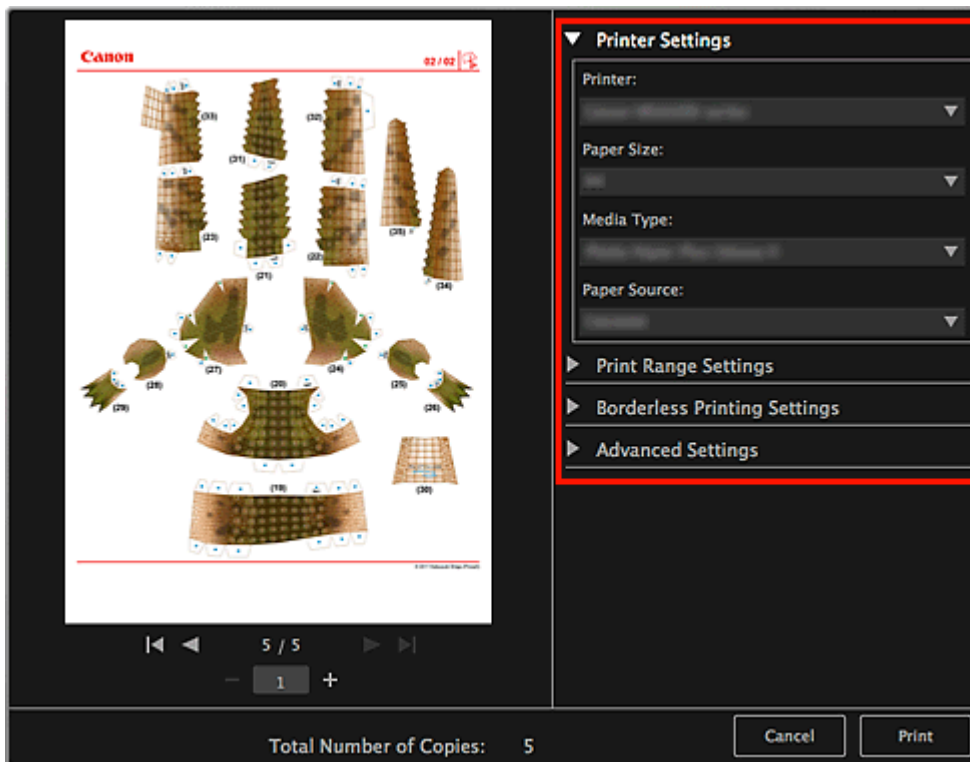
➡ Select Theme and Main People Dialog

The paper craft appears in the **My Art** view.

4. Click **Print** at the bottom right of the screen.

The print settings dialog appears.

5. Set the number of copies to print, the printer and paper to use, etc.



Note

- See "Print Settings Dialog" for details on the print settings dialog.

6. Click **Print**.

A message appears.

7. Click **OK**.

The Print dialog appears.



Important

- If you change the printer in the Print dialog or click **PDF** (**PDF** or **Preview** when using Mac OS X 10.6/Mac OS X 10.5), a message appears and printing will be canceled.

8. Click **Print**.

Related Topic

 [My Art View](#)

[Page top](#) 

Downloading and Printing PREMIUM Contents

You can download works of renowned artists in the **Download PREMIUM Contents** view.

You can also print downloaded PREMIUM Contents, or create personalized items by adding your favorite photos and text to them.



Important

- Keep these points in mind when using PREMIUM Contents.
 - To print PREMIUM Contents, make sure that genuine Canon ink tanks/ink cartridges are installed for all colors on a supported printer.
 - You may only use downloaded or printed PREMIUM Contents for personal purposes. You may not use the content for commercial purposes.
- If your printer does not support PREMIUM Contents, an error message appears after clicking **Download PREMIUM Contents**.

Downloading PREMIUM Contents

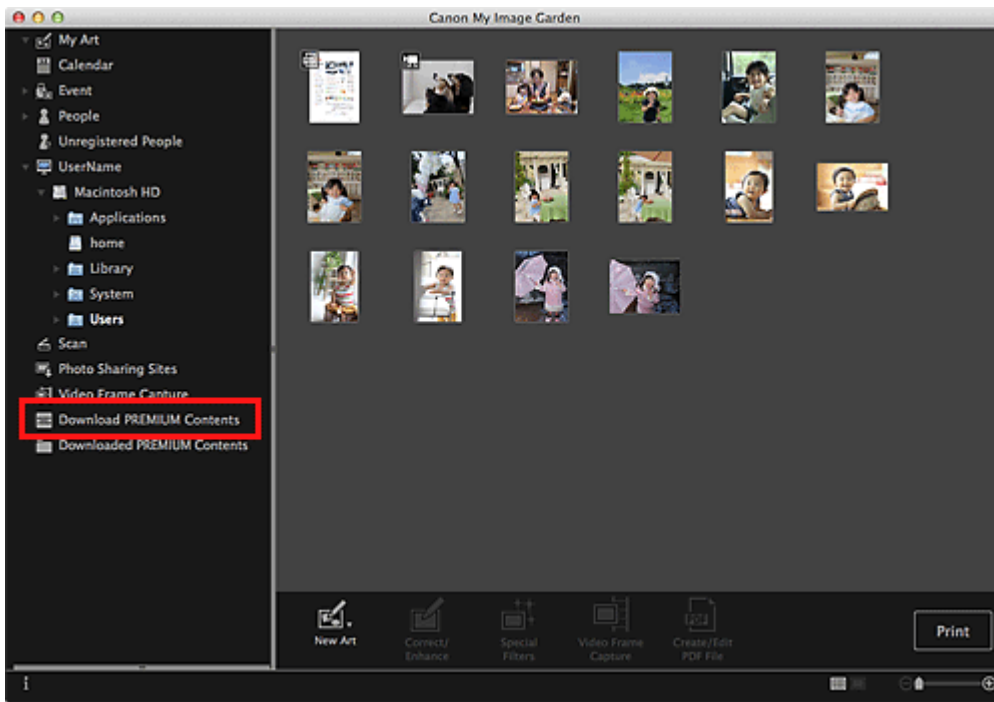
Downloadable PREMIUM Contents are as follows.

- Cards
- Calendars
- Collages
- Paper crafts

1. Start My Image Garden.

➡ Starting My Image Garden

2. Click **Download PREMIUM Contents**.



The view switches to **Download PREMIUM Contents**.

Important

- Internet connection is required to use this function. Internet connection fees apply.

Note

- When you click **Download PREMIUM Contents**, a message screen appears. Follow the on-screen prompts.

3. Select a category.
4. Select and download the PREMIUM Contents you want to print.

Printing PREMIUM Contents

You can edit and print downloaded PREMIUM Contents.

Downloaded PREMIUM Contents appear in the following screens.

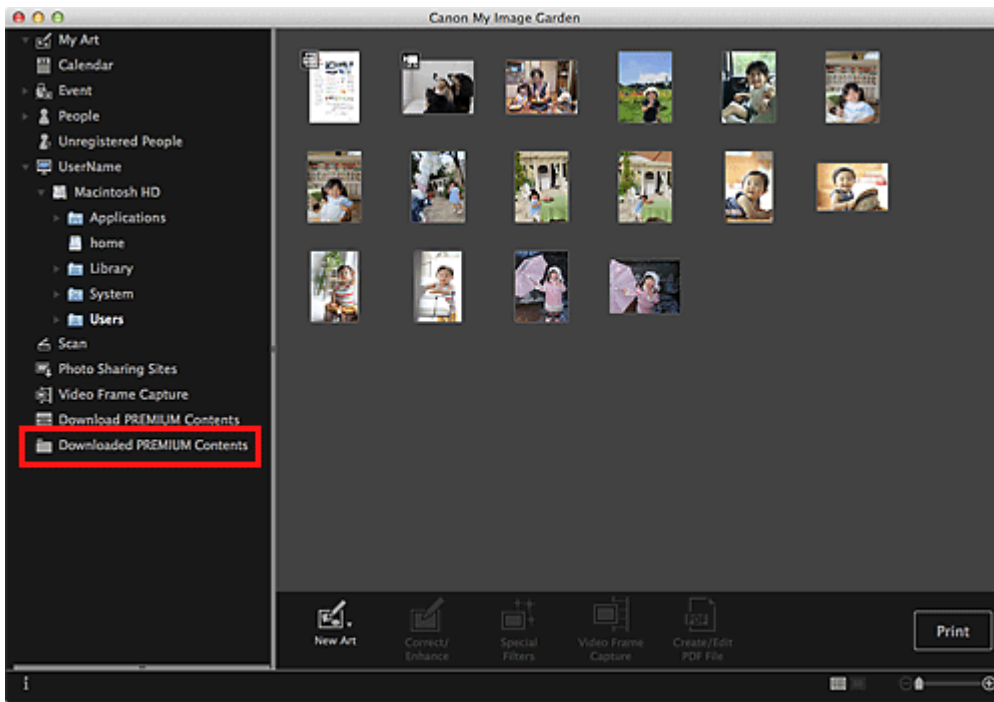
- **Select Theme and Main People** Dialog
- **Downloaded PREMIUM Contents** View

The following explains how to edit/print from the **Downloaded PREMIUM Contents** view.

Important

- The allowed number of print copies and the usage period are set for some PREMIUM Contents. PREMIUM Contents will be deleted when the set number of copies is exceeded or when the usage period has elapsed.

1. Start My Image Garden.
 - ➡ Starting My Image Garden
2. Click **Downloaded PREMIUM Contents**.

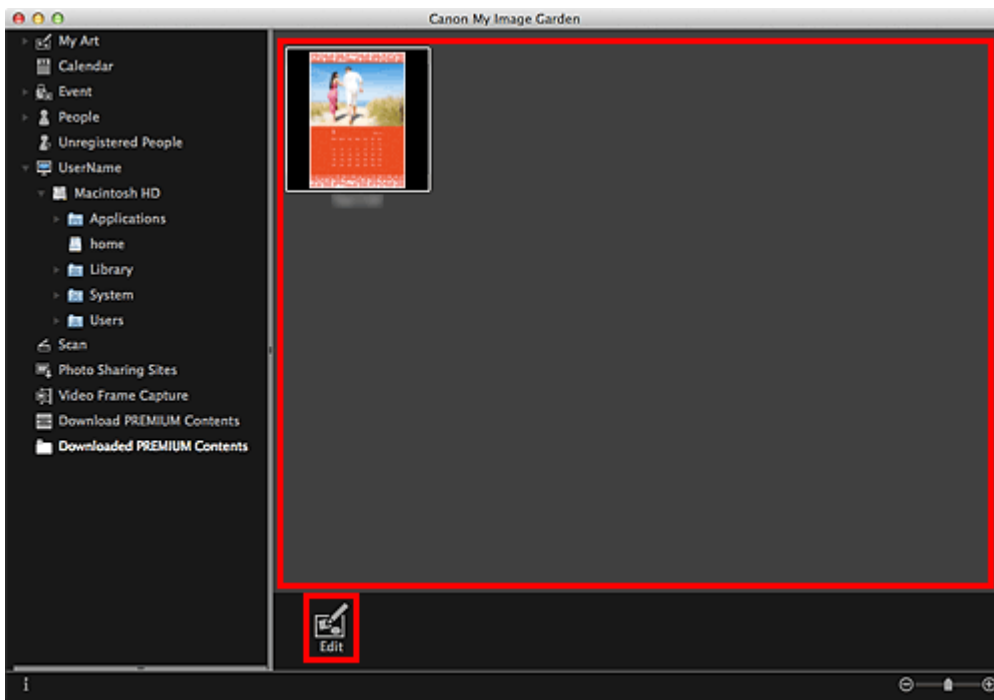


Downloaded PREMIUM Contents appear as thumbnails.

Note

- When you click **Downloaded PREMIUM Contents**, a message screen appears. Follow the on-screen prompts.

3. Select the PREMIUM Content you want to print, then click **Edit**.



The PREMIUM Content appears in the **My Art** view.

4. Click **Theme and Main People** to set **Paper Size** and **Orientation**.

Set **Paper Size** and **Orientation** in the **Select Theme and Main People** dialog, then click **OK**.

Note

- Move the cursor over a thumbnail of PREMIUM Content in the **Downloaded PREMIUM Contents** view to check supported paper sizes and other information.

5. Edit the item according to your preference.

➡ Editing Items

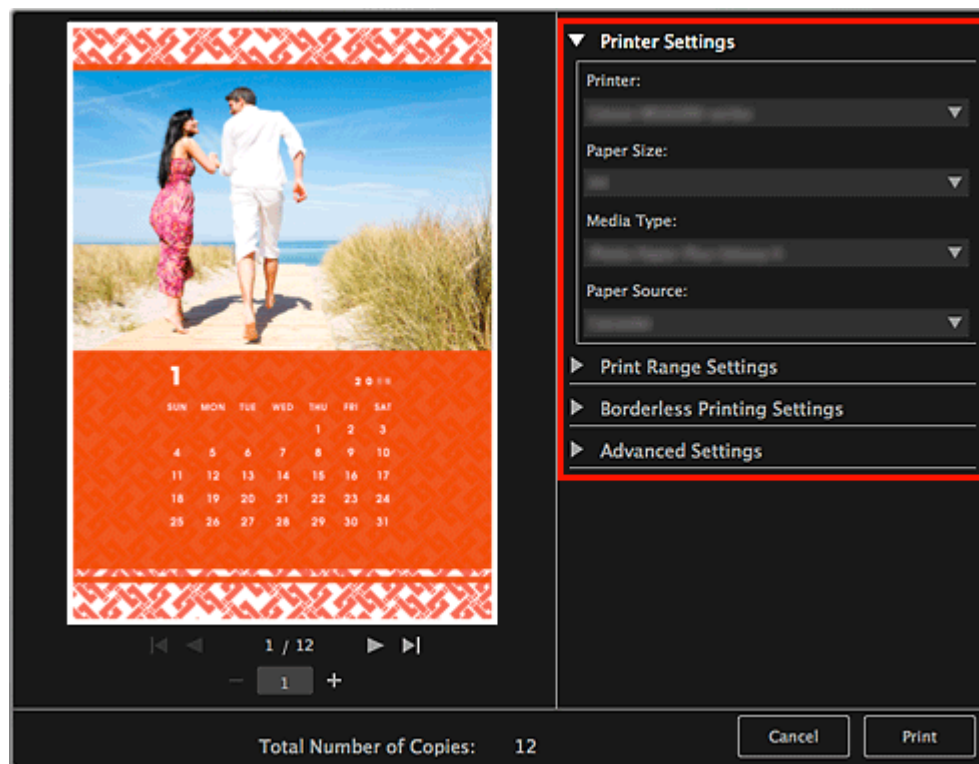
Note

- Available editing functions vary depending on the PREMIUM Content.

6. Click **Print** at the bottom right of the screen.

The print settings dialog appears.

7. Set the number of copies to print, the printer and paper to use, etc.



Note

- See "Print Settings Dialog" for details on the print settings dialog.

8. Click **Print**.

A message appears.

9. Click **OK**.

The Print dialog appears.

Important

- If you change the printer in the Print dialog or click **PDF** (**PDF** or **Preview** when using Mac OS X 10.6/Mac OS X 10.5), a message appears and printing will be canceled.

10. Click **Print**.

Note

- Depending on the PREMIUM Content, you can correct or enhance the inserted images before printing.
 - ➡ Correcting/Enhancing Photos
 - ➡ Enhancing Photos Using Special Filters
- Depending on the PREMIUM Content, you can swap images in the item.
 - ➡ Inserting/Adjusting Images

Related Topic

-  [Download PREMIUM Contents View](#)
-  [Downloaded PREMIUM Contents View](#)
-  [My Art View](#)

Capturing and Printing Still Images from Videos

You can capture video frames to create still images and print them.

Important

- If videos do not appear, check the system requirements and file formats. See "[File Formats](#)" for details.
- Videos may not play smoothly depending on your environment.
- Video color tones changed via the settings of the graphic driver (video card) or its utility are not reflected in captured still images. Therefore, color tones may differ between videos and captured still images.

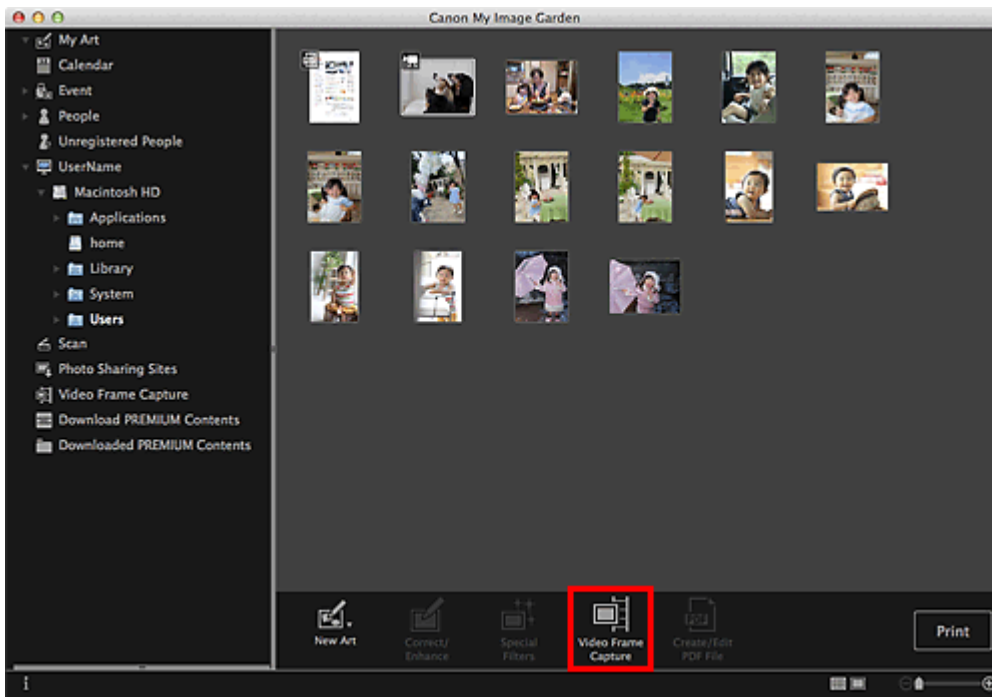
1. Start My Image Garden.

➡ [Starting My Image Garden](#)

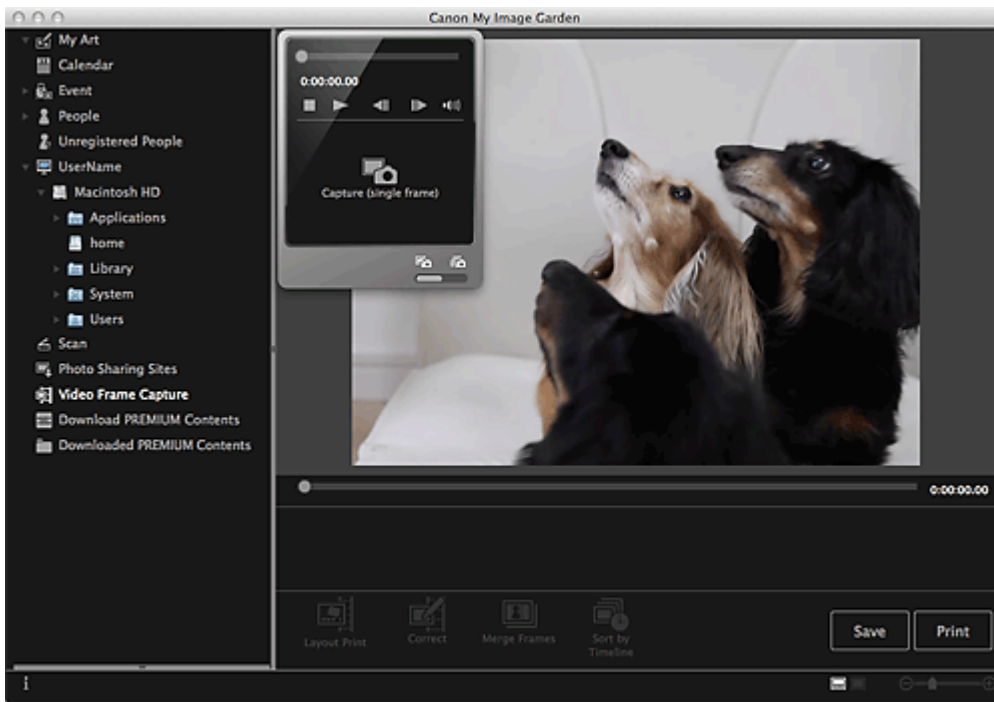
2. Select the video from which you want to capture still images.

➡ [Selecting Images, PDF Files and Videos](#)

3. Click **Video Frame Capture**.

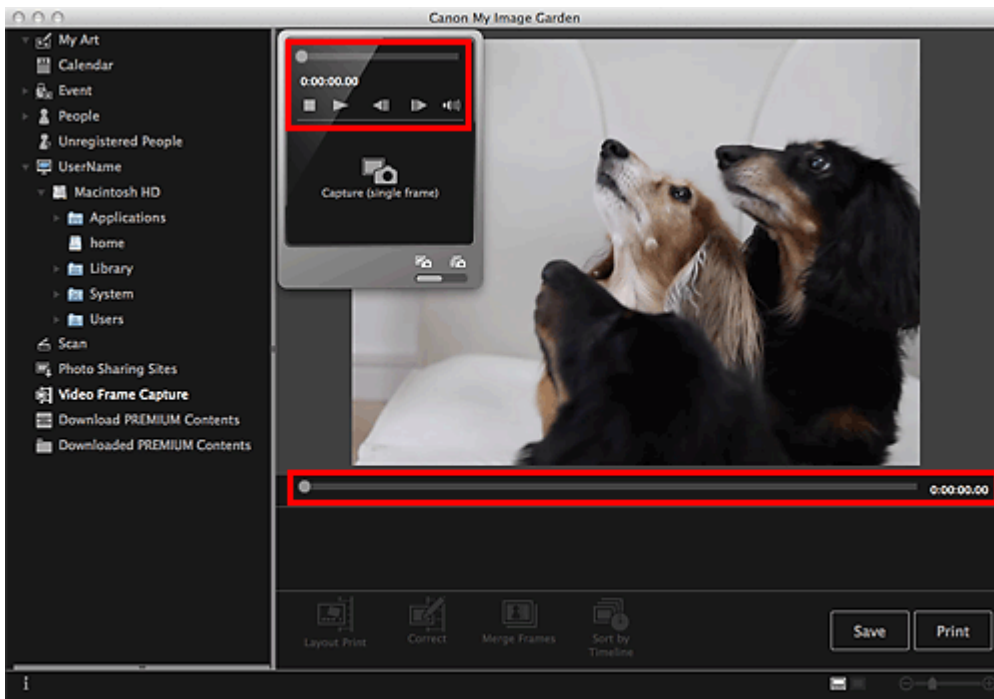


The view switches to **Video Frame Capture**, and the video appears with the still image capture panel.



4. Display the frame you want to capture as a still image.

Drag the slider in the **Video Frame Capture** view or use the still image capture panel to display the frame you want to capture.



Note

- [Pause] (Pause) or [Play] (Playback) appears on the still image capture panel while a video is playing or stopped, respectively.
- Using [Pause] and [Frame Backward]/[Frame Advance] on the still image capture panel makes it easier to display the frame you want to capture.

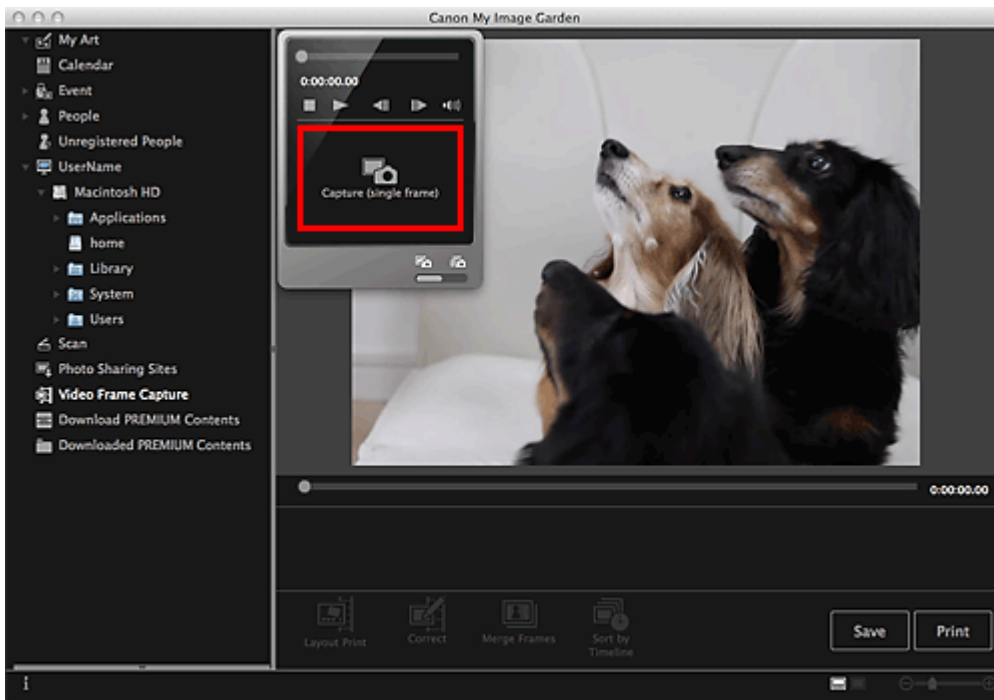
5. When the frame you want to capture as a still image appears, click **Capture (single frame)** on the still image capture panel.

Note

- See "Video Frame Capture View" for how to switch between **Capture (single frame)** and **Capture (multiple)**.
- In **Capture (multiple)**, you can capture multiple still images from a video at one time by

specifying the number of captures, etc.

- Select the **Prefer clearer images** checkbox to automatically detect less blurry frames when capturing images. Capture may take time depending on your environment.



When image capture is completed, the captured image(s) appear(s) in the Captured Images area.

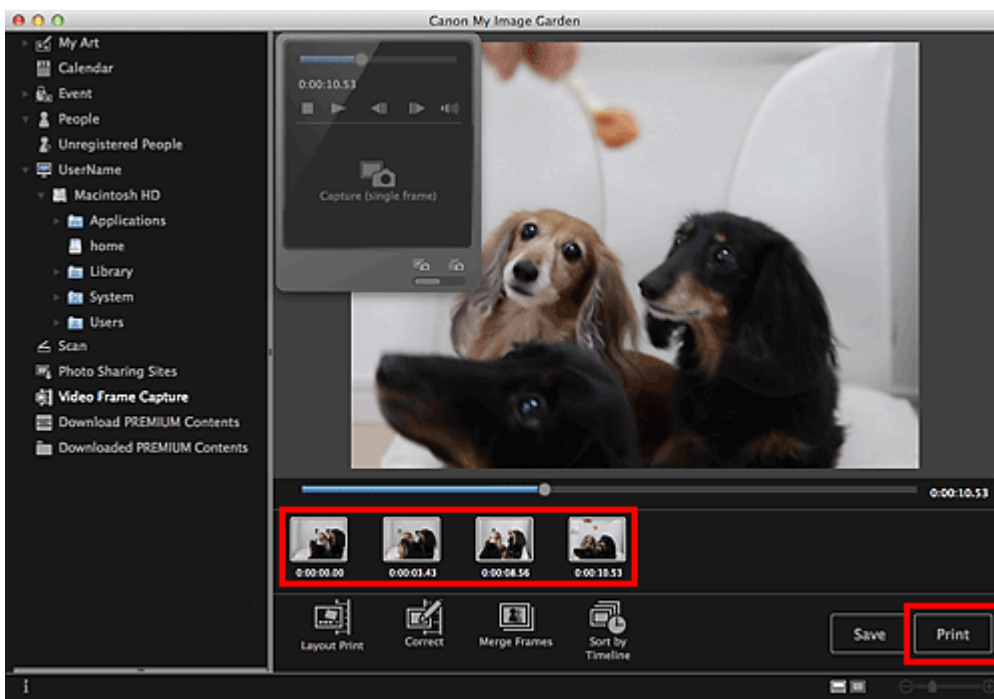
Important

- You can capture up to 150 still images from one video.

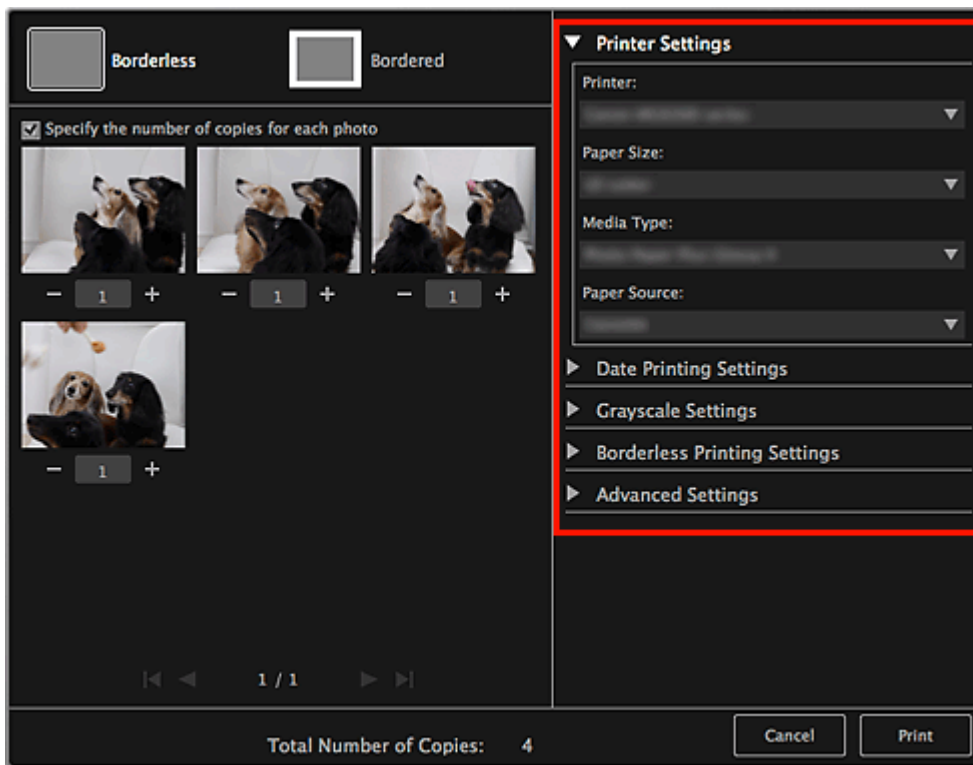
Note

- To sort still images in the Captured Images area by time of recording, click **Sort by Timeline** at the bottom of the screen.

6. Select the image(s) you want to print, then click **Print**.



7. Set the number of copies to print, the printer and paper to use, etc.



Note

- See "Print Settings Dialog" for details on the print settings dialog.

8. Click **Print**.

A message appears.

9. Click **OK**.

The Print dialog appears.

Important

- If you change the printer in the Print dialog, a message appears and printing will be canceled.

10. Click **Print**.

Note

- To save still images captured from videos, select the still image(s) you want to save in the Captured Images area, then click **Save**.
- Click **Layout Print** at the bottom of the screen to edit or print an item created from the captured still images in a cinematic layout.
 - ➡ [Printing in a Cinematic Layout](#)
- To correct a captured still image, select the still image you want to correct in the Captured Images area, then click **Correct** at the bottom of the screen.
 - ➡ [Correcting Still Images Captured from Videos](#)
- You can overlap and merge multiple captured still images in the order of the time code to create an image depicting the flow of a moving subject.
 - ➡ [Creating Images of Merged Video Frames](#)

Related Topic

- ➡ [Video Frame Capture View](#)

Creating Images of Merged Video Frames

You can overlap and merge multiple still images captured from a video in the order of the time code to create an image depicting the flow of a moving subject.

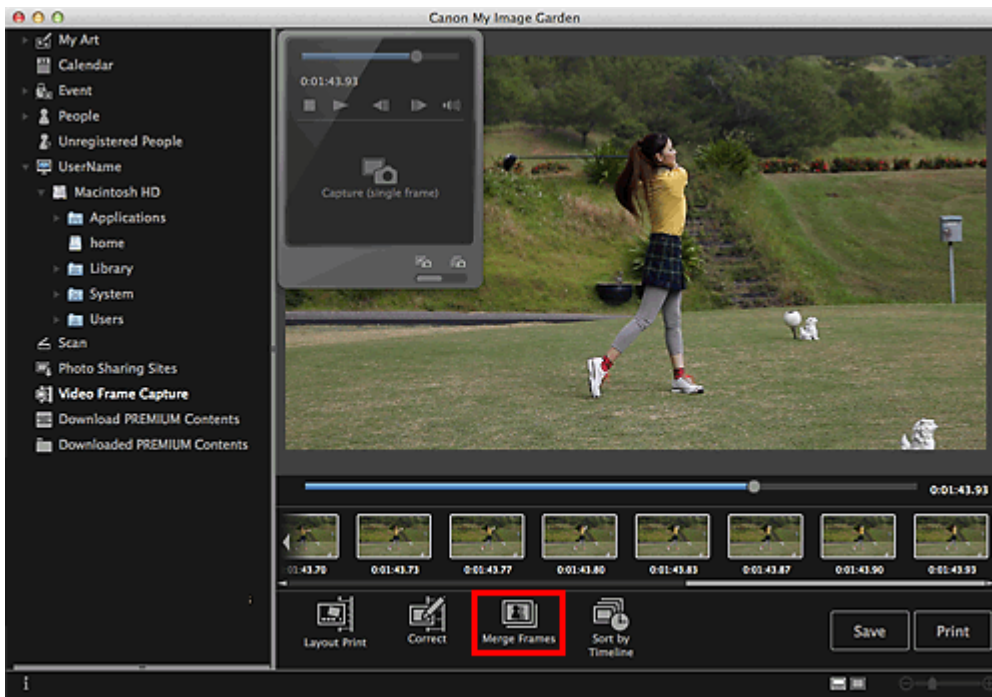
Important

- You can merge between 5 and 30 still images.
- Still images corrected in the **Correct** view cannot be used. The original uncorrected still images will be used.

Note

- It is recommended that you use still images captured from a video recorded with a steady camera (fixed to a tripod, etc.) without zooming or adjusting focus while recording.
- See "[Capturing and Printing Still Images from Videos](#)" for how to capture still images.

1. Select the still image(s) you want to merge in the Captured Images area of the **Video Frame Capture** view.
2. Click **Merge Frames**.

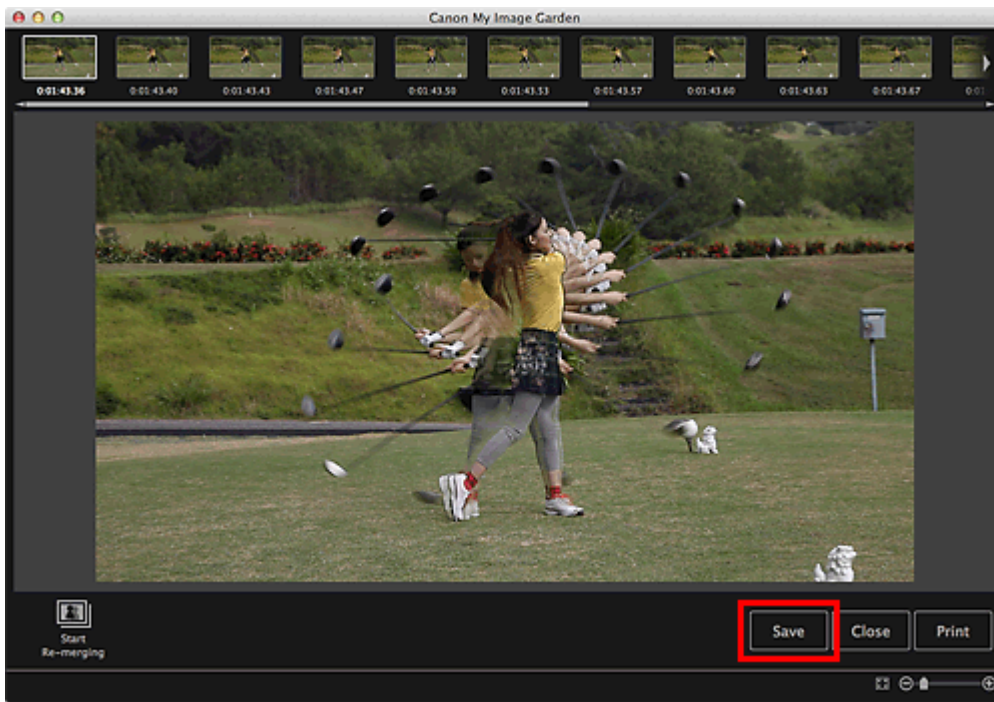


The view switches to **Merge Frames**, and the merged image appears in the Preview area.

Note

- When you click **Merge Frames**, a message screen appears. Follow the on-screen prompts.
- To change the images to merge, select images from the Selected Images area, then click **Start Re-merging**.

3. Click **Save**.



The **Save** dialog appears.

4. Specify the save settings.

➡ Save Dialog (Video Frame Capture View)

Note

- The created image can be saved in JPEG/Exif format only.

5. Click **Save**.

The created image is saved, and the **Merge Frames** view reappears.

6. Click **Close**.

The **Video Frame Capture** view reappears.

Important

- If the created image is not saved, the merged content will be deleted.

Related Topic

● Merge Frames View

Page top ▲

Correcting Still Images Captured from Videos

You can reduce noise or roughness in still images captured from videos.

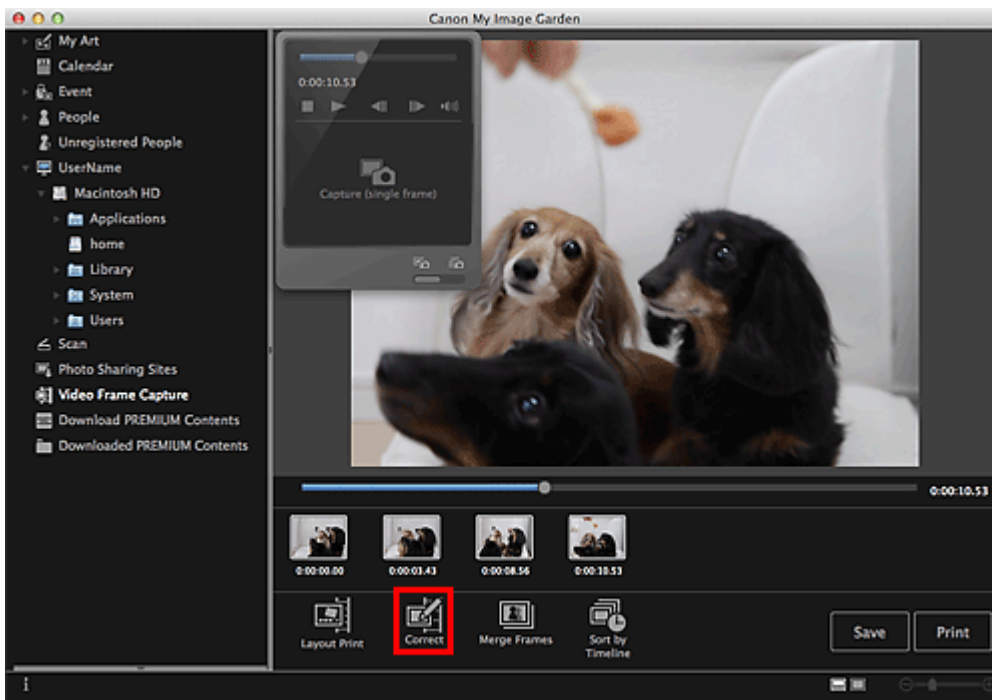
Important

- When a frame in which the subject or camera has moved significantly is captured, the still image may not be corrected properly.

Note

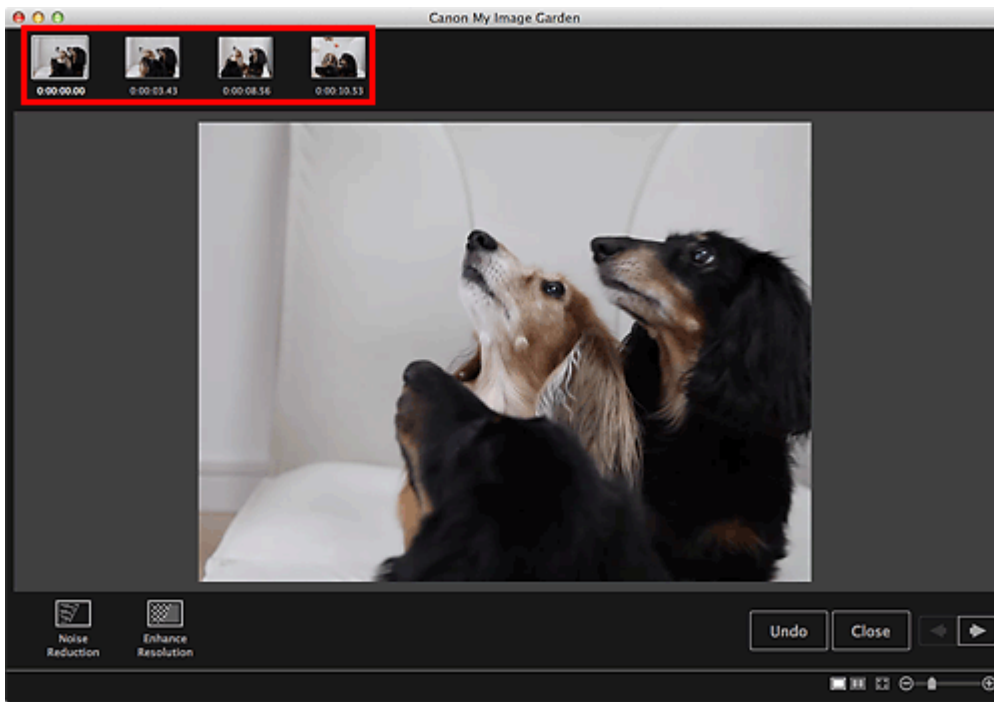
- See "[Capturing and Printing Still Images from Videos](#)" for how to capture still images.

1. Select the still image(s) you want to correct in the Captured Images area of the **Video Frame Capture** view.
2. Click **Correct**.



The view switches to **Correct**, and the image appears in the Preview area.

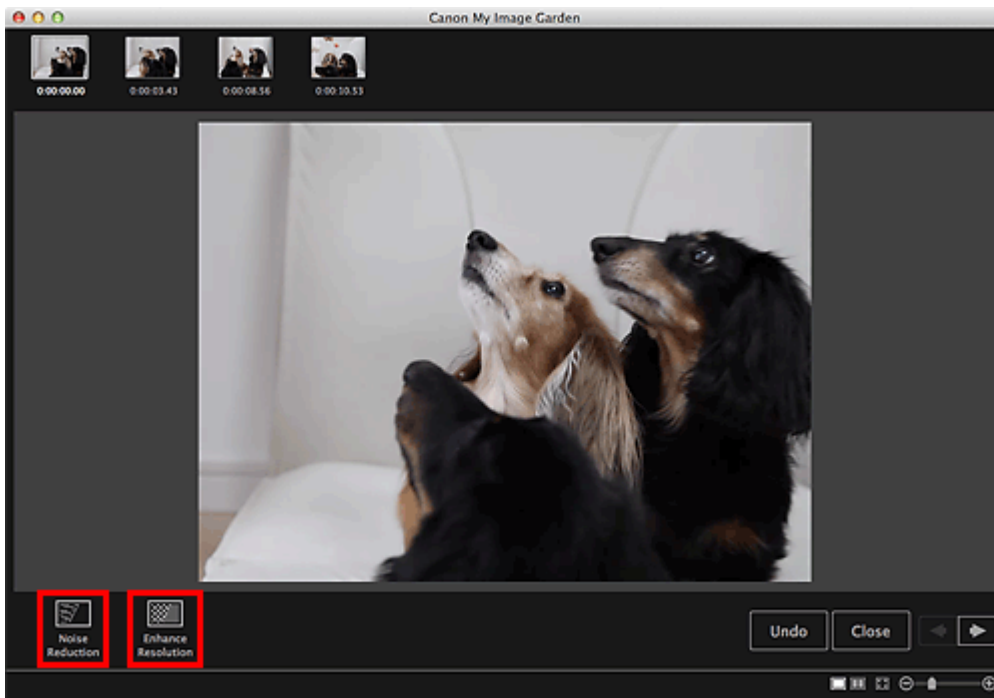
3. Select the image you want to correct from the Selected Images area.



Note

- You can also select and correct multiple images.

4. Click **Noise Reduction** or **Enhance Resolution** according to purpose.



The image is corrected, and the  (Correction) mark appears on the upper right of the image.

Note

- Click **Undo** to undo the correction.

5. Click **Close**.

The **Video Frame Capture** view reappears.

Related Topic

 [Correct View](#)

Using Various Functions

- 📁 Scanning Photos and Documents
- 📁 Editing Items
- 📁 Correcting/Enhancing Photos
- 📁 Cropping Photos
- 📁 Enhancing Photos Using Special Filters
- 📁 Creating/Editing PDF Files
- 📁 Extracting Text from Images (OCR Function)
- 📁 Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites

Page top ▲

Scanning Photos and Documents

- Easy Scanning with Auto Scan
- Scanning Photos
- Scanning Documents
- Scanning with Favorite Settings
- Cropping Scanned Images

Note

- By clicking **Stitch** in the **Scan** view, you can scan the left and right halves of an item larger than the platen and combine the scanned images back into one image. See the corresponding page of *On-screen Manual* for how to scan and combine images.
- By clicking **ScanGear** in the **Scan** view, you can start ScanGear (scanner driver) and scan by specifying the output size, image corrections and other settings. See the corresponding page of *On-screen Manual* for how to scan using ScanGear.

Easy Scanning with Auto Scan

You can scan easily by automatically detecting the item type.

1. Make sure that your scanner or printer is turned on.
2. Place the item on the platen of your scanner or printer.

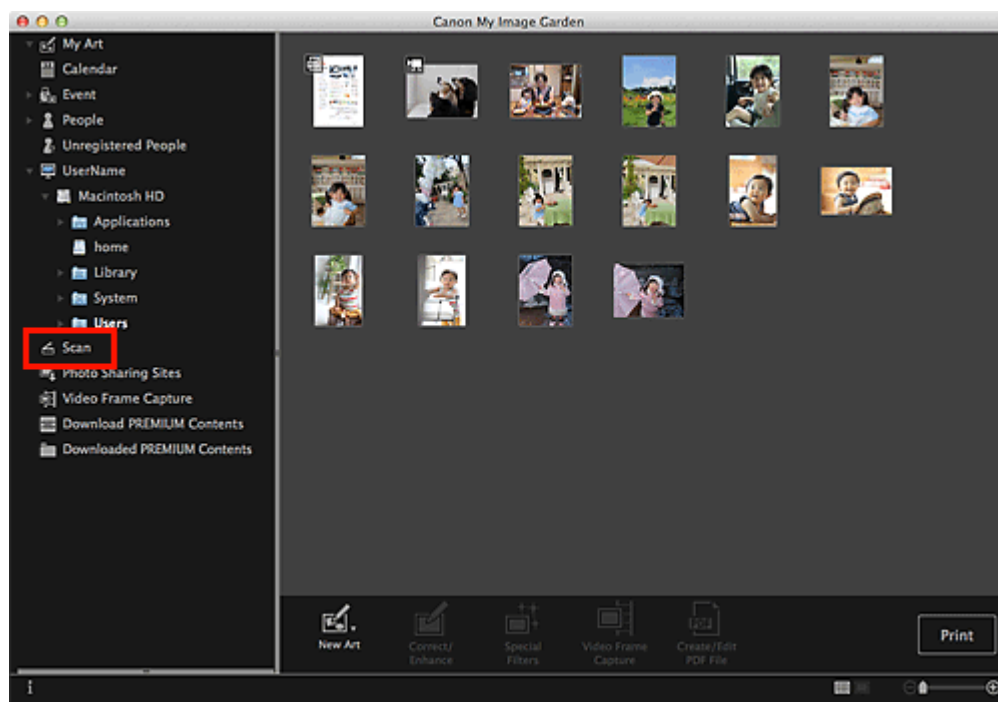
Note

- See the corresponding page of *On-screen Manual* for how to place items.

3. Start My Image Garden.

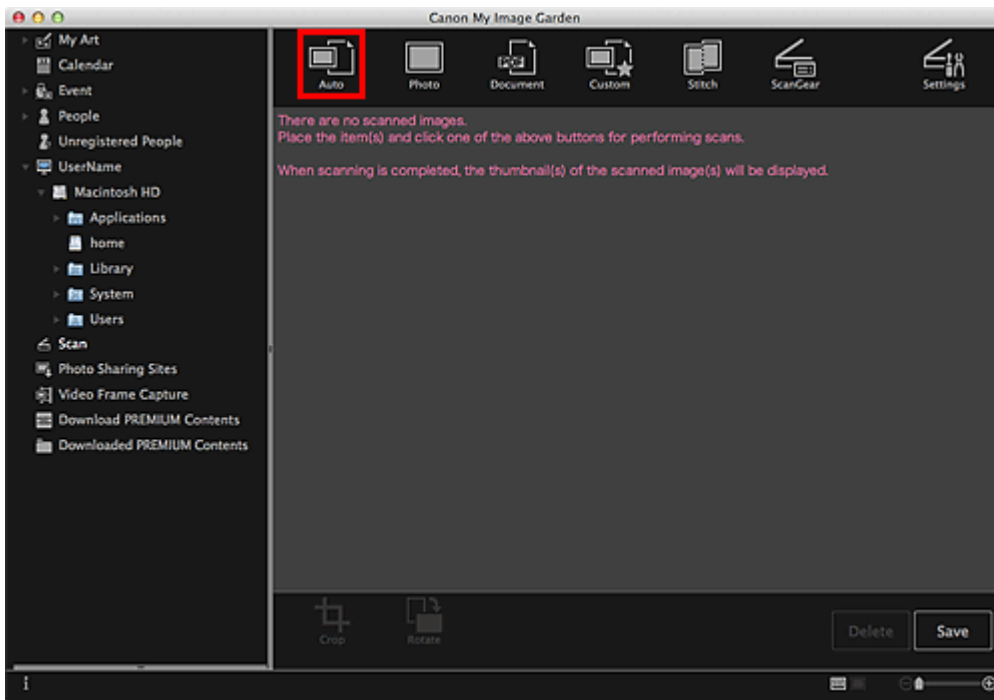
➡ Starting My Image Garden

4. Click **Scan**.



The view switches to **Scan**.

5. Click **Auto**.

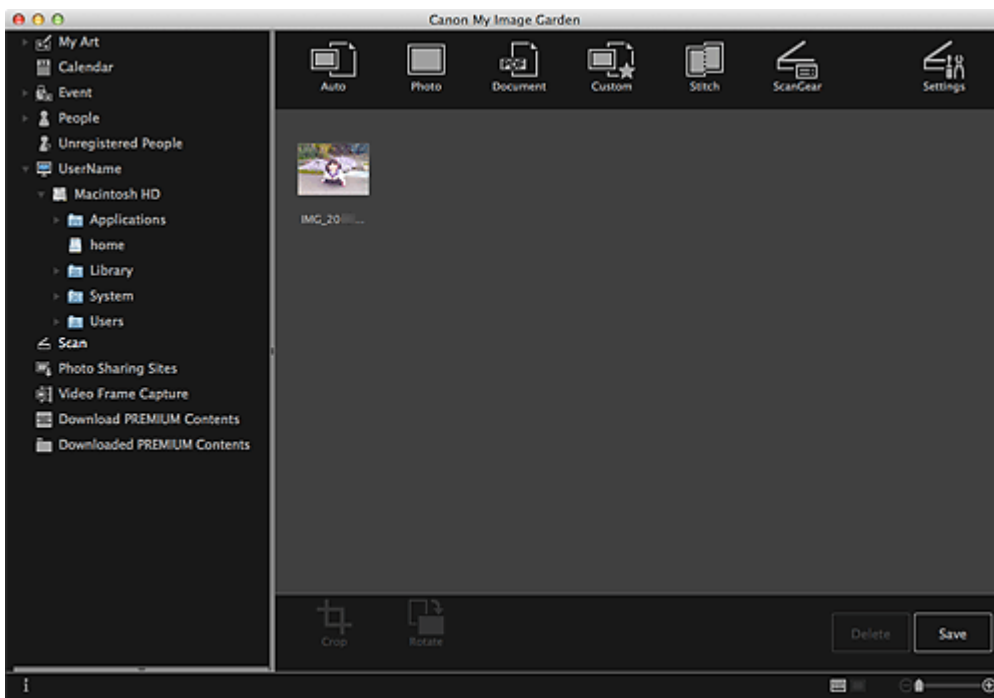


Scanning starts.

Note

- Refer to the corresponding page of *On-screen Manual* to specify the scan settings.
- Click **Cancel** to cancel the scan.

When scanning is completed, the image appears as a thumbnail.



Note

- You can rotate the selected image 90 degrees clockwise each time you click **Rotate**.
- You can crop images.
➡ **Cropping Scanned Images**
- Click **Save** to save rotated or cropped scanned images.
➡ **Save Dialog (Scan View)**
- You can set the save location for scanned images on the **Advanced Settings** tab of the **Preferences** dialog displayed by selecting **Preferences...** from the **My Image Garden** menu. See "**Preferences Dialog**" for details on the setting procedure.

Note

-
- You can also print scanned images. Control-click a thumbnail and select **Print...** from the displayed menu to display the print settings dialog. Select the printer and paper to use, then click **Print**.
[➡ Print Settings Dialog](#)
-

Related Topic

[📄 Scan View](#)

[Page top ▲](#)

Scanning Photos

You can scan with settings suitable for photos.

Note

- You can even scan two or more photos (small items) at one time. Refer to the corresponding page of *On-screen Manual* to specify the scan settings.

1. Place the item on the platen.

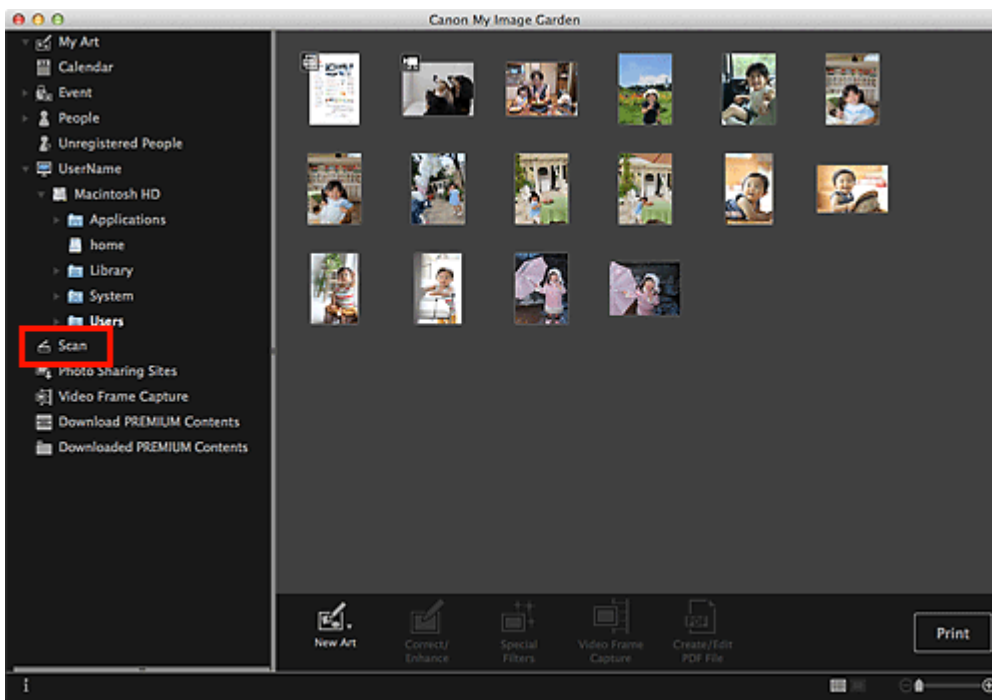
Note

- See the corresponding page of *On-screen Manual* for how to place items.

2. Start My Image Garden.

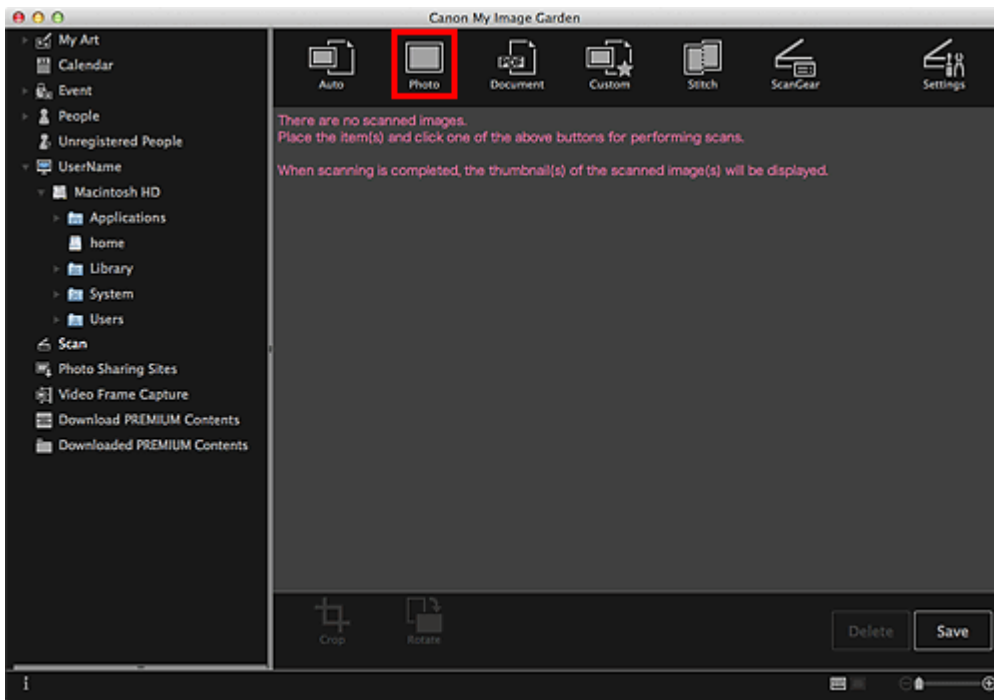
➡ Starting My Image Garden

3. Click **Scan**.



The view switches to **Scan**.

4. Click **Photo**.

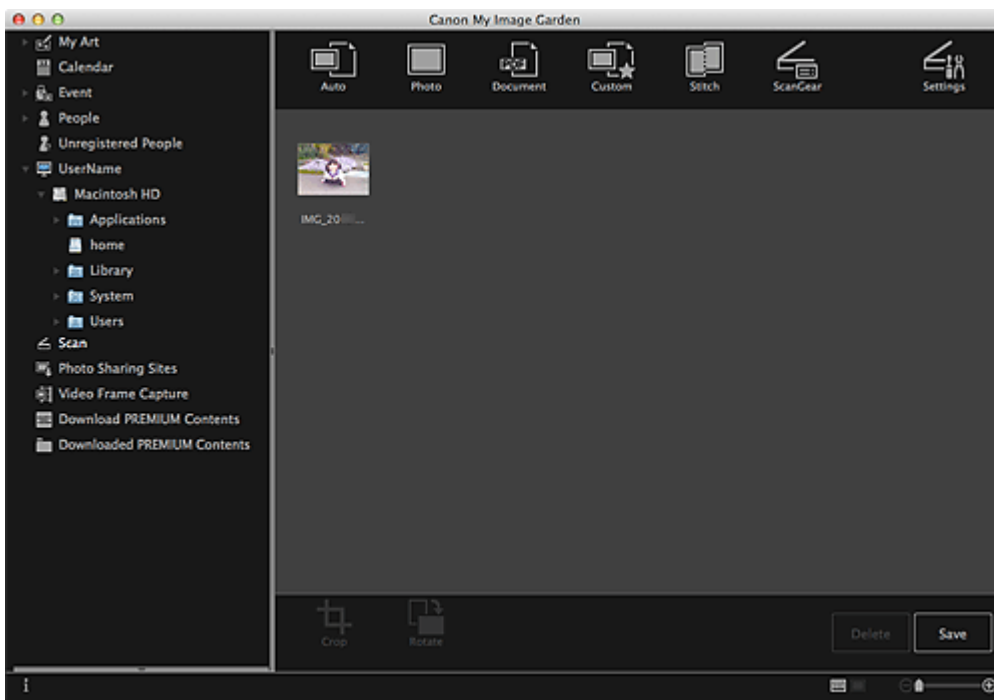


Scanning starts.

Note

- Click **Cancel** to cancel the scan.

When scanning is completed, the image appears as a thumbnail.



Note

- You can rotate the selected image 90 degrees clockwise each time you click **Rotate**.
- You can crop images.
 - ➡ **Cropping Scanned Images**
- Click **Save** to save rotated or cropped scanned images.
 - ➡ **Save Dialog (Scan View)**
- You can set the save location for scanned images on the **Advanced Settings** tab of the **Preferences** dialog displayed by selecting **Preferences...** from the **My Image Garden** menu. See "**Preferences Dialog**" for details on the setting procedure.

Note

You can also print scanned images. Control-click a thumbnail and select **Print...** from the displayed menu to display the print settings dialog. Select the printer and paper to use, then click **Print**.

 [Print Settings Dialog](#)

Related Topic

 [Scan View](#)

Page top 

Scanning Documents

You can scan with settings suitable for documents.

Note

- You can even scan two or more small items at one time. Refer to the corresponding page of *On-screen Manual* to specify the scan settings.

1. Place the item on the platen.

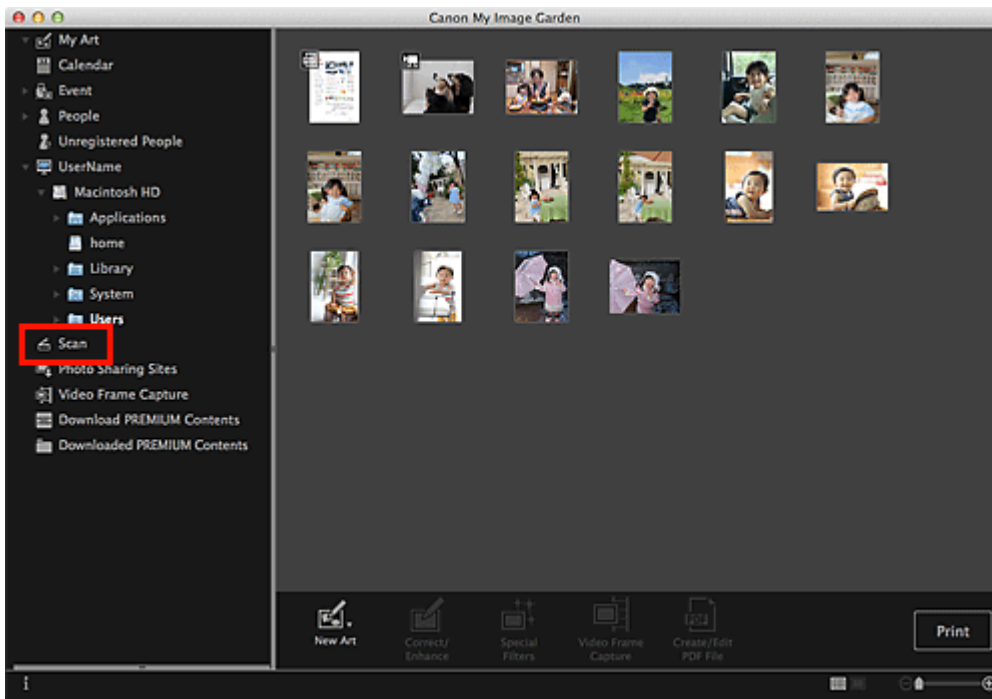
Note

- See the corresponding page of *On-screen Manual* for how to place items.

2. Start My Image Garden.

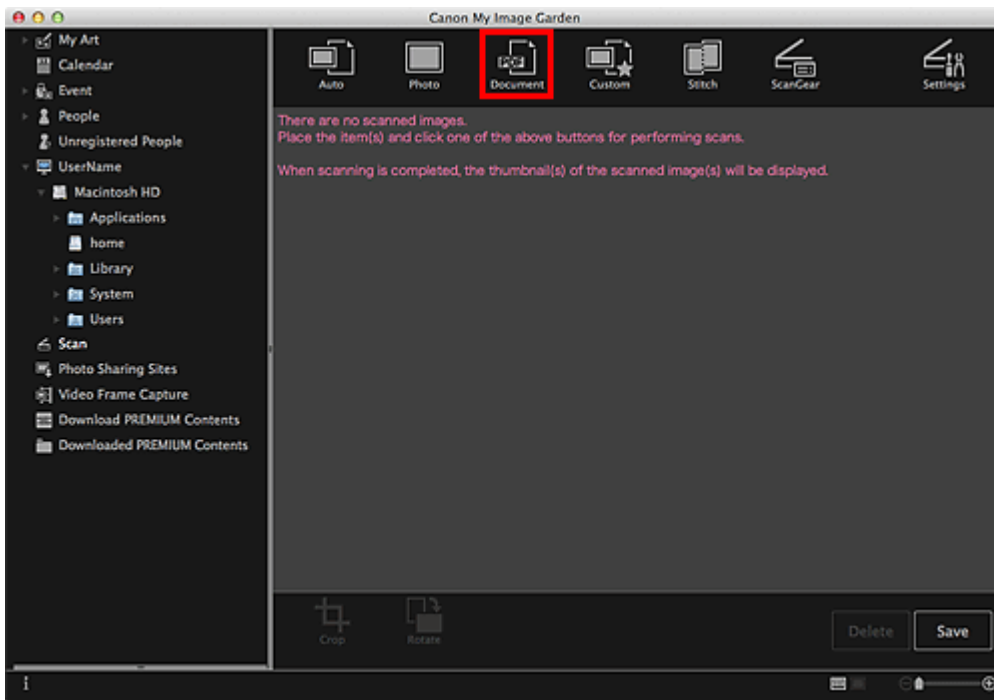
➡ Starting My Image Garden

3. Click **Scan**.



The view switches to **Scan**.

4. Click **Document**.

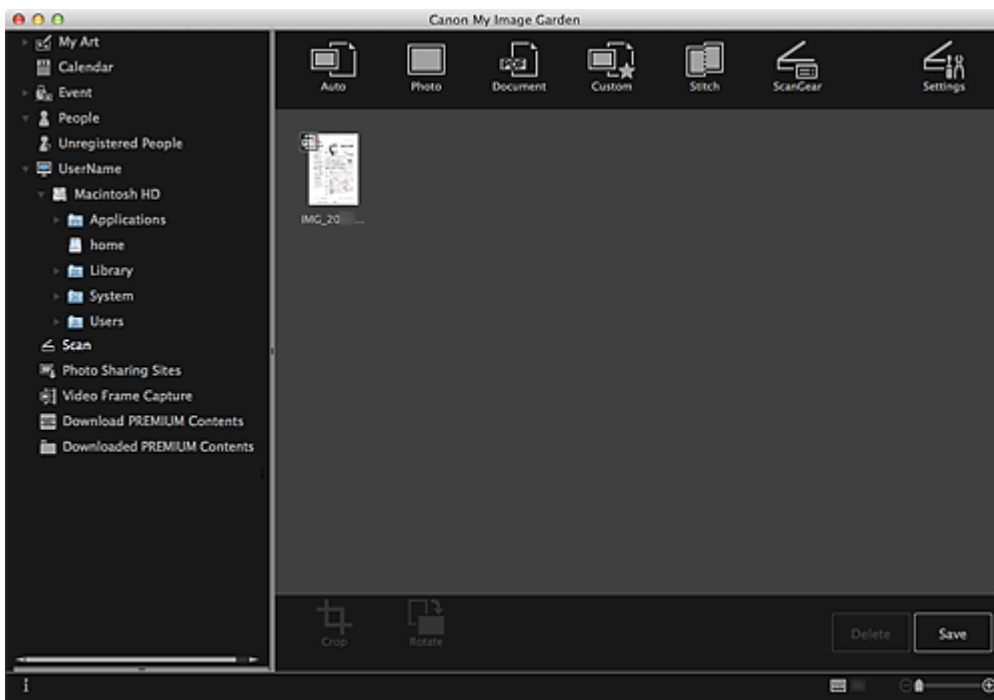


Scanning starts.

Note

- Click **Cancel** to cancel the scan.

When scanning is completed, the image appears as a thumbnail.



Note

- Click **Save** to save scanned images.
➡ [Save Dialog \(Scan View\)](#)
- You can set the save location for scanned images on the **Advanced Settings** tab of the **Preferences** dialog displayed by selecting **Preferences...** from the **My Image Garden** menu. See "[Preferences Dialog](#)" for details on the setting procedure.

Note

- You can also print scanned images. Control-click a thumbnail and select **Print...** from the displayed menu to display the print settings dialog. Select the printer and paper to use, then click **Print**.
➡ [Print Settings Dialog](#)

Related Topic

 [Scan View](#)

[Page top](#) 

Scanning with Favorite Settings

You can scan with your favorite, frequently used settings by saving them beforehand.

Note

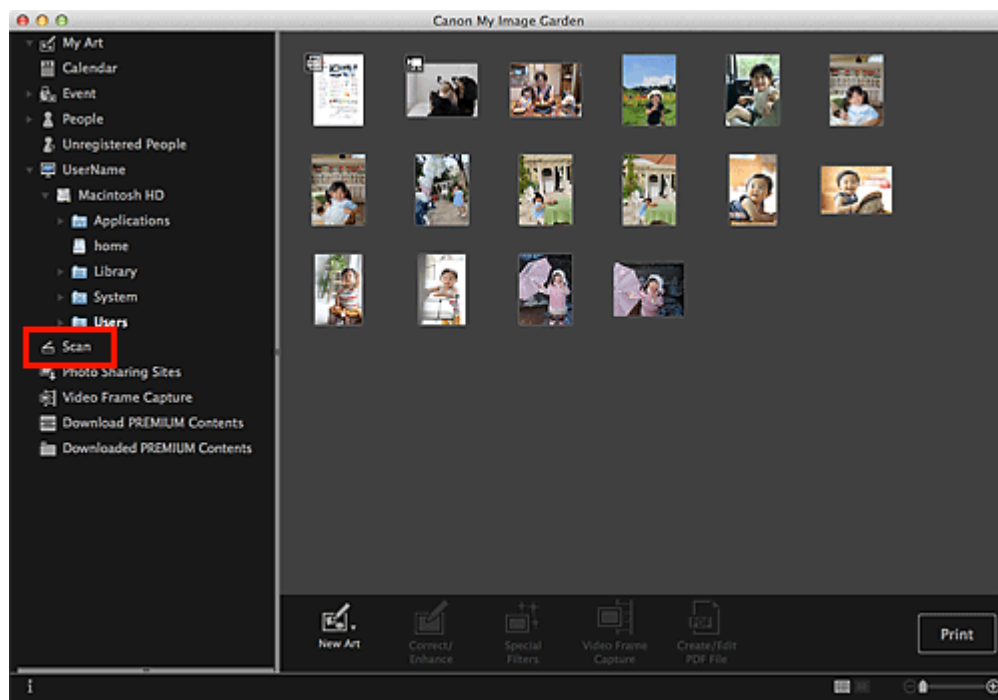
- You can save your favorite settings in the dialog displayed by clicking **Settings**. See the corresponding page of *On-screen Manual* for details on the setting procedure.

1. Place the item on the platen.

2. Start My Image Garden.

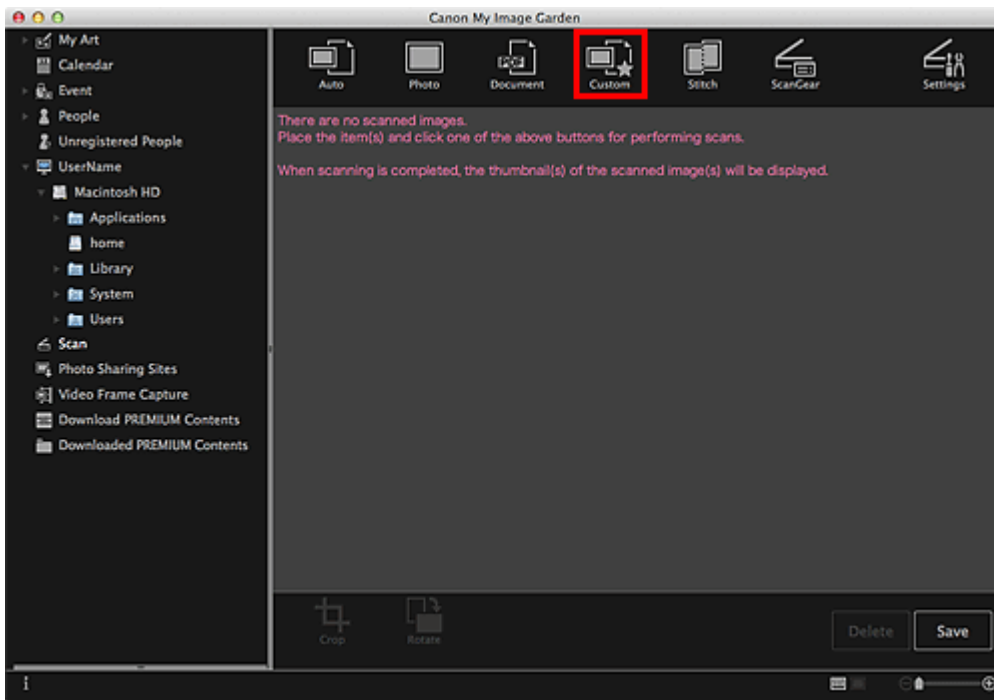
➡ Starting My Image Garden

3. Click **Scan**.



The view switches to **Scan**.

4. Click **Custom**.

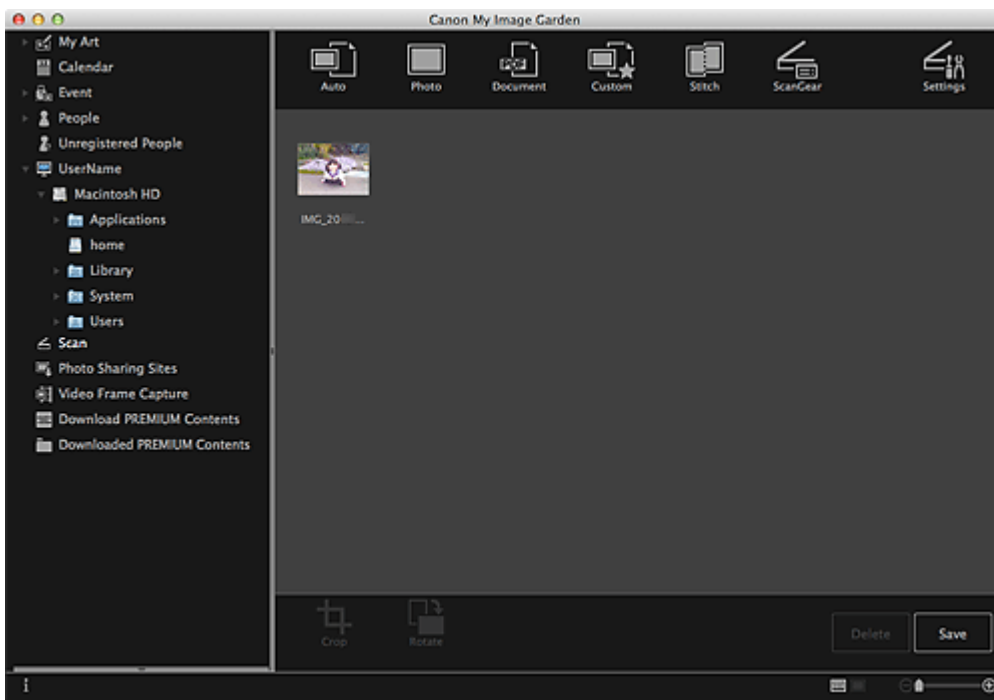


Scanning starts.

Note

- Click **Cancel** to cancel the scan.

When scanning is completed, the image appears as a thumbnail.



Note

- You can rotate the selected image 90 degrees clockwise each time you click **Rotate**.
- You can crop images.
 - ➡ **Cropping Scanned Images**
- Click **Save** to save rotated or cropped scanned images.
 - ➡ **Save Dialog (Scan View)**
- You can set the save location for scanned images on the **Advanced Settings** tab of the **Preferences** dialog displayed by selecting **Preferences...** from the **My Image Garden** menu. See "**Preferences Dialog**" for details on the setting procedure.

Note

You can also print scanned images. Control-click a thumbnail and select **Print...** from the displayed menu to display the print settings dialog. Select the printer and paper to use, then click **Print**.

 [Print Settings Dialog](#)

Related Topic

 [Scan View](#)

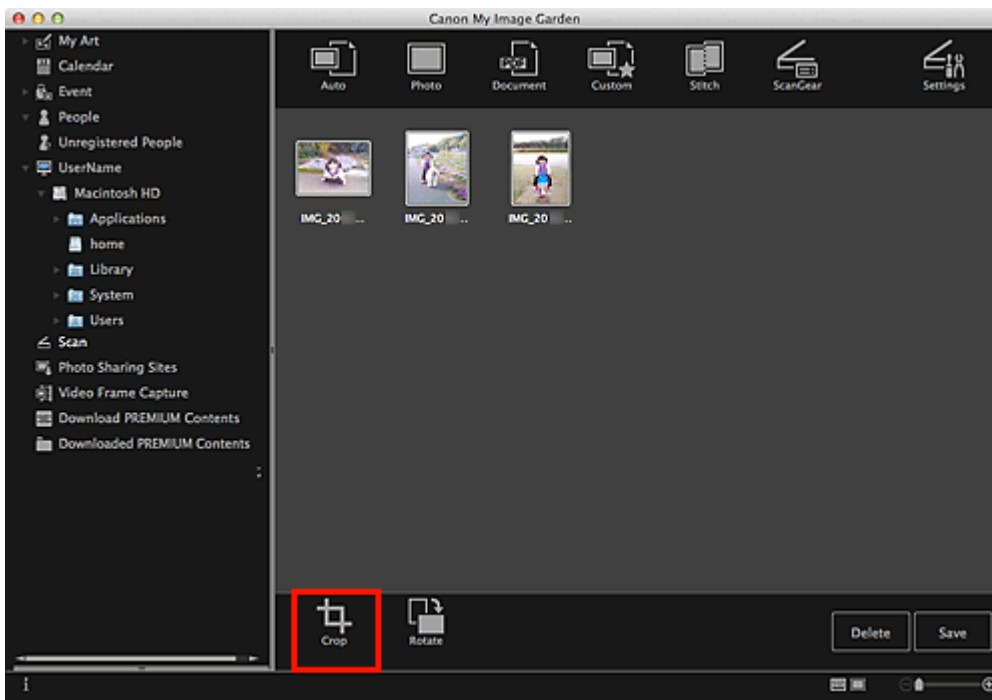
Page top 

Cropping Scanned Images

You can crop scanned images. "Cropping" is the act of selecting the area you want to keep in an image and discarding the rest.



1. Select an image in the **Scan** view, then click **Crop** at the bottom of the screen.

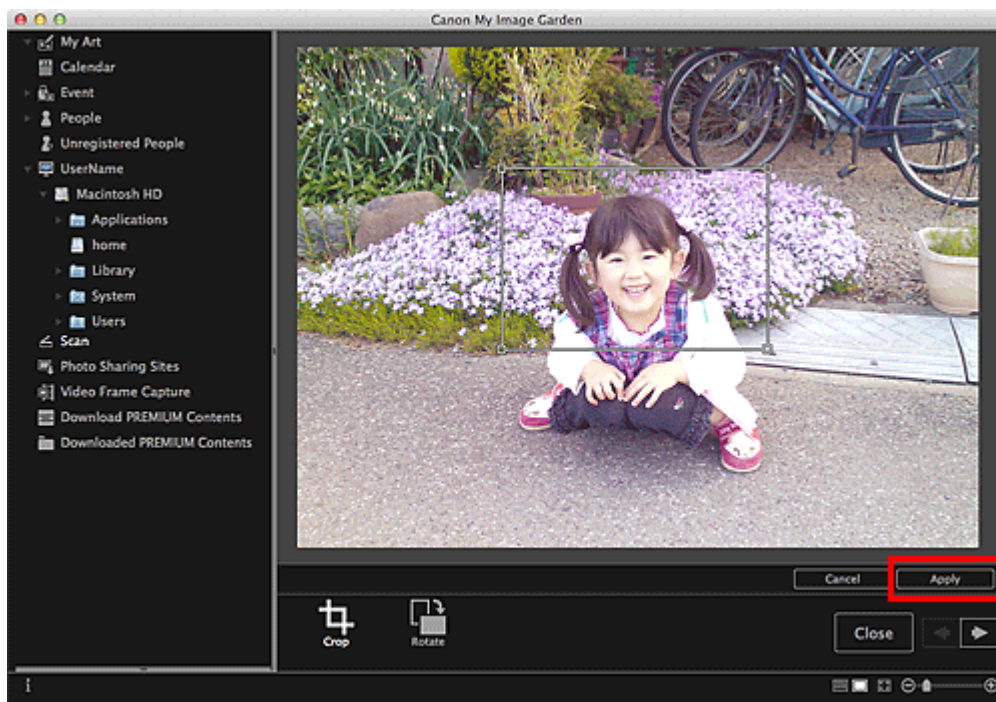


The view switches to **Crop**, and a white frame appears along the border of the image.

Note

- See "[Scanning Photos](#)" for how to scan images.

2. Drag the white frame on the image to adjust the cropping area, then click **Apply**.



Note

- To move the cropping area, place the cursor within the white frame and drag it.
- You can rotate the selected image 90 degrees clockwise each time you click **Rotate**.

3. Click **Close**.

The view switches to **Scan**.

4. Click **Save**.

➡ Save Dialog (Scan View)

Related Topic

🟢 Crop View (Scan View)

Page top ▲

A061

My Image Garden

Editing Items

- Setting the Theme and Main People
- Changing Background
- Changing Layout
- Arranging Photos Automatically
- Adding, Deleting or Rearranging Pages
- Inserting/Adjusting Images
- Adding Text to Photos

Page top ▲

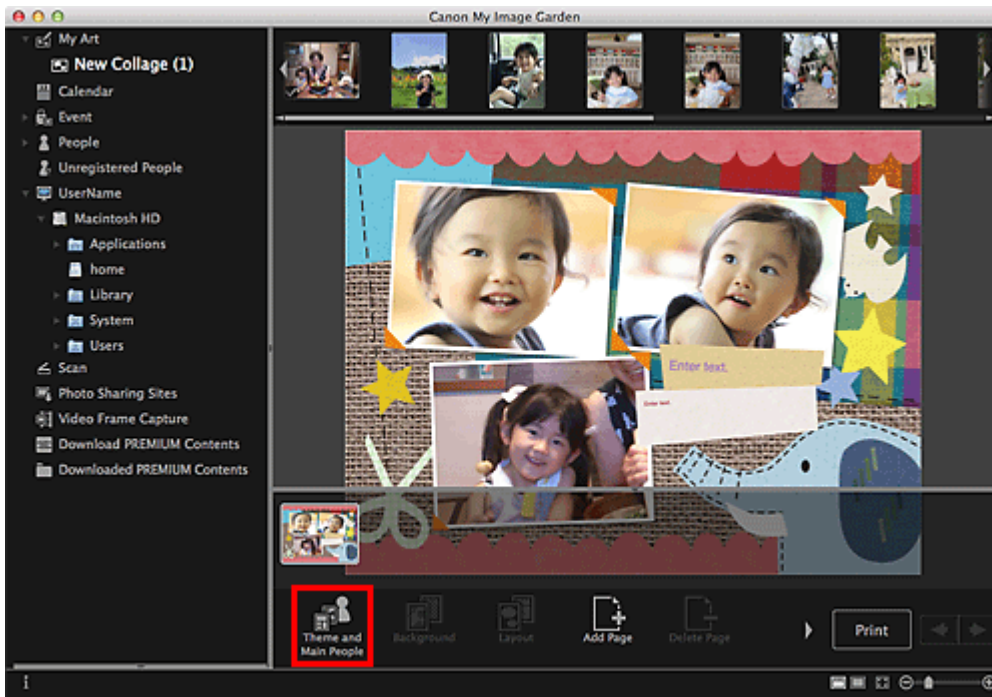
Setting the Theme and Main People

In the **My Art** view, you can set the theme and main people of your items.

Note

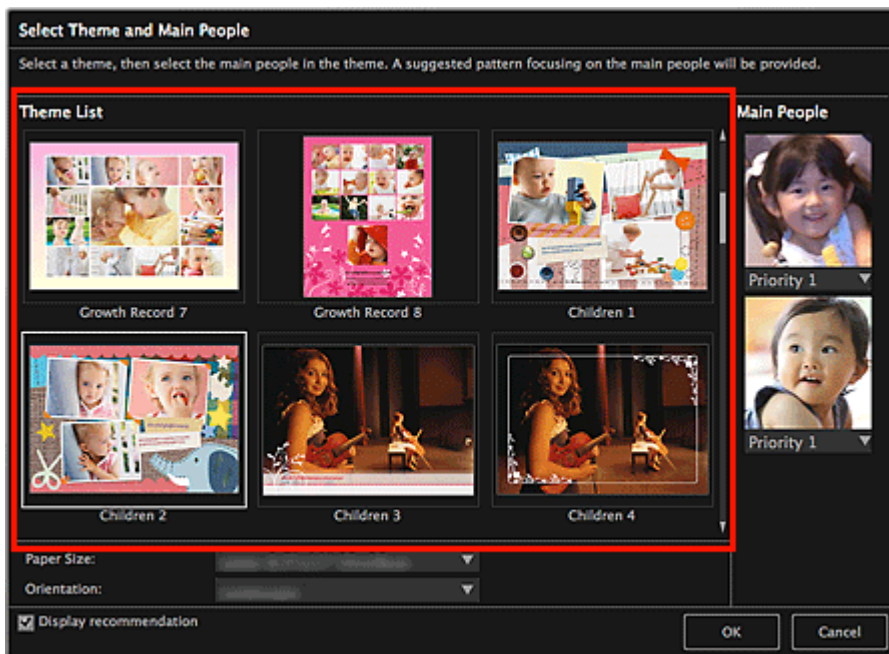
- See "[My Art View](#)" for how to switch to the **My Art** view.
- Collage editing is used as an example in the following descriptions. The screen(s) may vary depending on what you create.

1. Click **Theme and Main People** in the **My Art** view.



The **Select Theme and Main People** dialog appears.

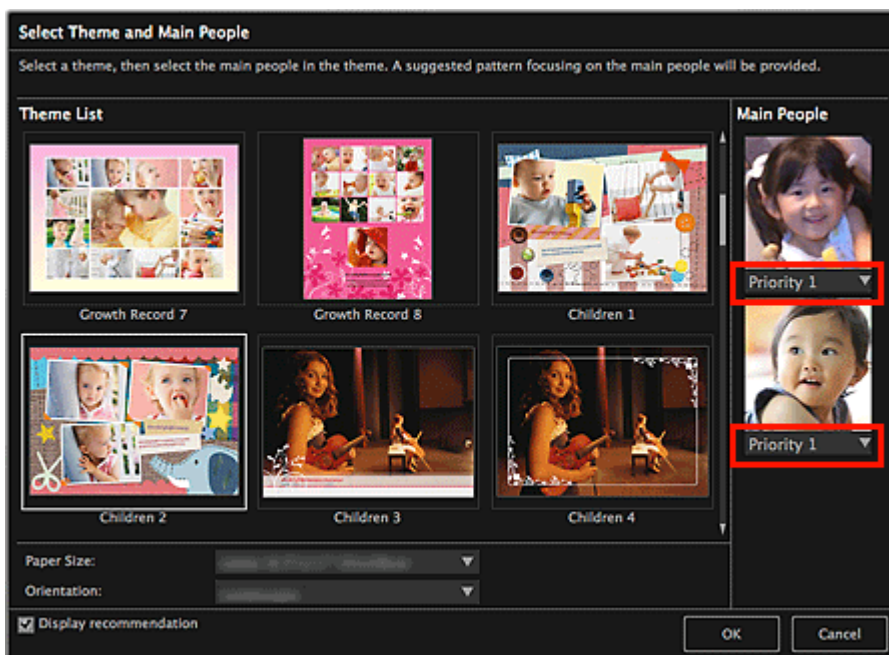
2. Select the theme you want to use.



3. Set the priority of people.

You can select **Priority 1** or **Priority 2**.

Leave the field blank if not setting the priority.



4. Select **Paper Size** and **Orientation**.

Note

- Selectable **Paper Size** and **Orientation** vary depending on the theme.

5. Make sure that the **Display recommendation** checkbox is selected.

Images will be automatically inserted to the item's layout frames based on the information registered to the images.

See "[Registering Various Information to Photos](#)" for how to register information to images.

Note

- Images with higher favorite levels and frequently browsed images are used with priority.
- Deselect the checkbox if you want to specify the images that are to be inserted into your item. See "[Inserting/Adjusting Images](#)" for how to insert images.

- When **Identifying people...** appears at **Unregistered People** in Global Menu, the result may not be as expected since automatic placement does not apply to images for which analysis has not been completed.
 - People different from those set as the main people may be placed depending on the image analysis results.
-

6. Click **OK**.

The theme and main people are set, and the item appears.

Related Topic

 [Select Theme and Main People Dialog](#)

Page top 

Changing Background

In the **My Art** view, you can change the background of your items by page.



Important

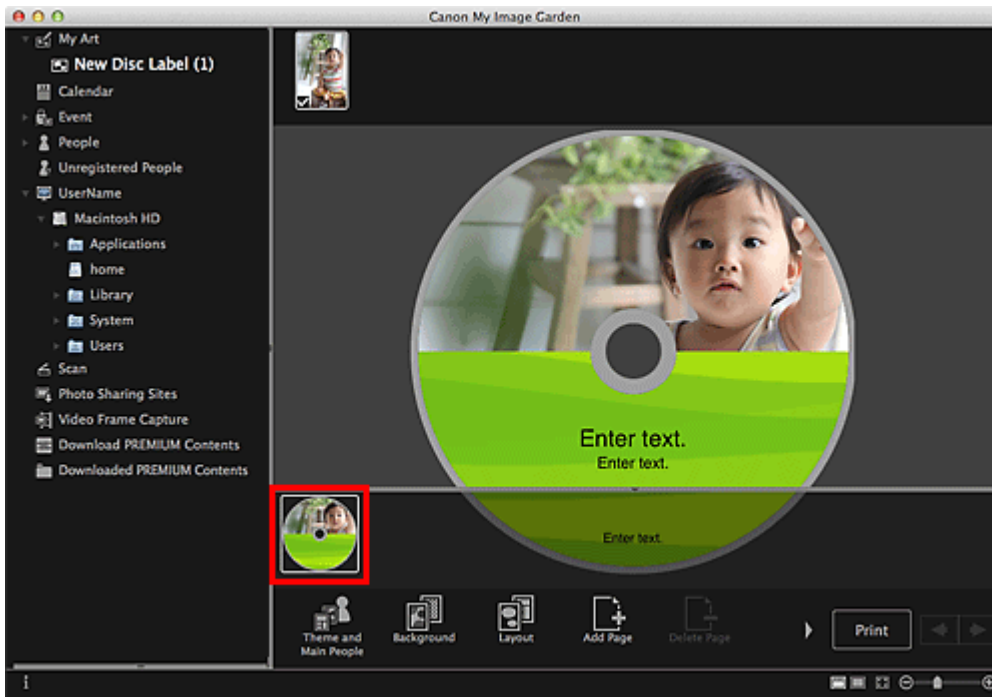
- This function is not available when PREMIUM Contents are used.
- This function may not be available depending on the type and theme of your item.



Note

- See "[My Art View](#)" for how to switch to the **My Art** view.
- Disc label editing is used as an example in the following descriptions. The screen(s) may vary depending on what you create.

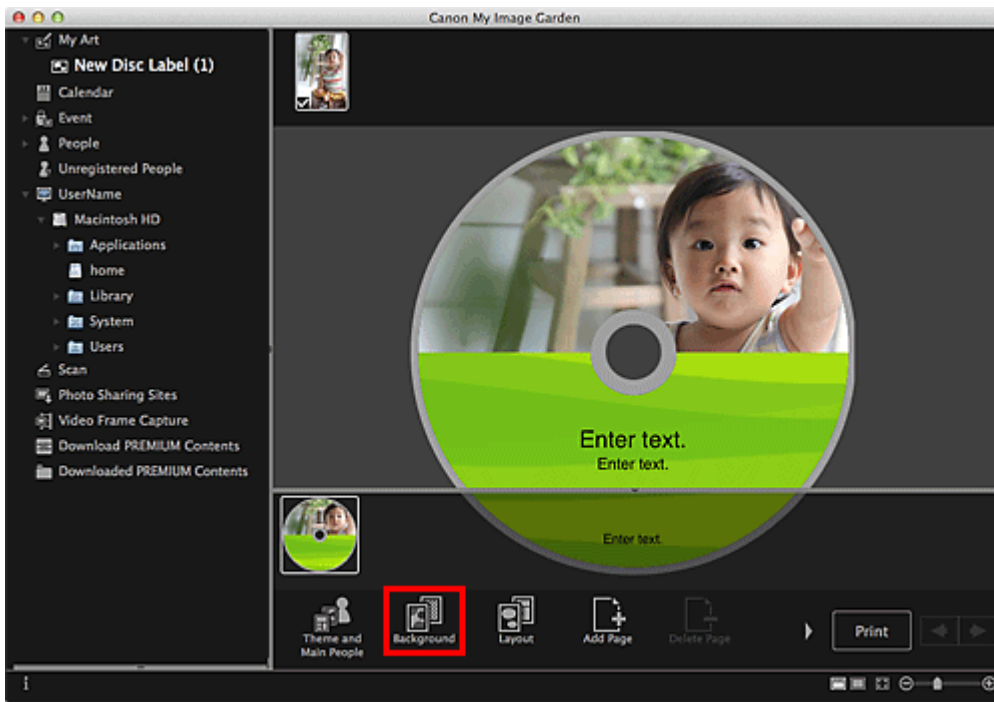
1. In the Page Thumbnails area, select the page of which you want to change the background.



Note

- If the Page Thumbnails area is not displayed, click the bar above the operation buttons.

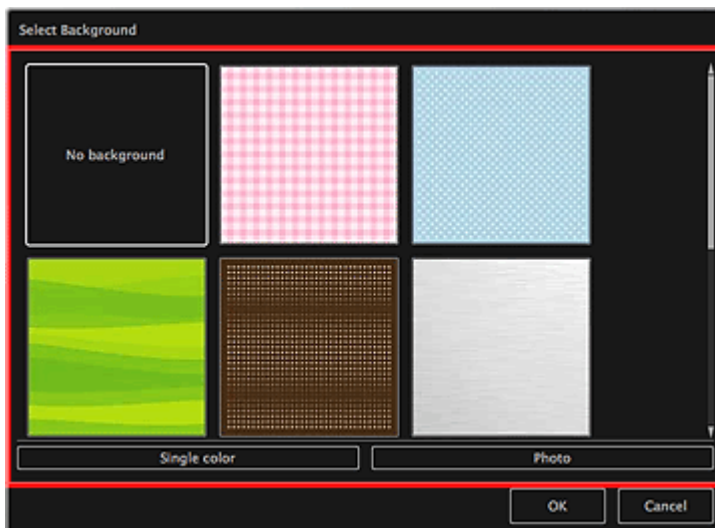
2. Click **Background**.



The **Select Background** dialog appears.

3. Select a background.

Select the type of background you want to use in the **Select Background** dialog.



When **No background** is selected

The background will be blank (white).

When a sample image is selected

The selected image is set as the background.

When **Single color** is selected

The **Colors** dialog appears. Select a color.

When **Photo** is selected

You can insert a photo of your choice into the background.

Note

- **Single color** and **Photo** do not appear depending on the item type and selected theme.

4. Click **OK**.

The selected background is set for the selected page.

When **Photo** is selected, you can insert an image into the background by dragging and dropping it

from the Materials area. You can also scan an item such as a photo and insert it into the background. Control-click the background of the page in the Edit area, then select **Use Scanned Image** from the displayed menu.

When you insert a background, the background editing toolbar with which you can adjust the position, transparency and size of the background image appears at the bottom right of the image.



(Adjust Position)

You can switch the cursor between  (Move) and the standard one. Switch to  (Move) and drag the image to change its position. Switch to the standard cursor to lock the image position.



(Adjust Transparency)

You can freely adjust the transparency of the image by dragging the slider. You can also change the transparency by clicking  (Transparency: 0%) or  (Transparency: 100%).



(Reduce/Enlarge)

Click  (Reduce) or  (Enlarge) to reduce or enlarge the display size of the background image. You can also freely change the display size by dragging the slider.



Note

- Depending on the display size of preview, the background editing toolbar may be hidden behind the Page Thumbnails area and cannot be operated. In that case, click the bar at the top of the Page Thumbnails area to hide it.
- See "[Inserting/Adjusting Images](#)" for how to insert a scanned image into the background.

Related Topic

 [Select Background Dialog](#)

[Page top](#) 

Changing Layout

In the **My Art** view, you can change the layout of your items by page.



Important

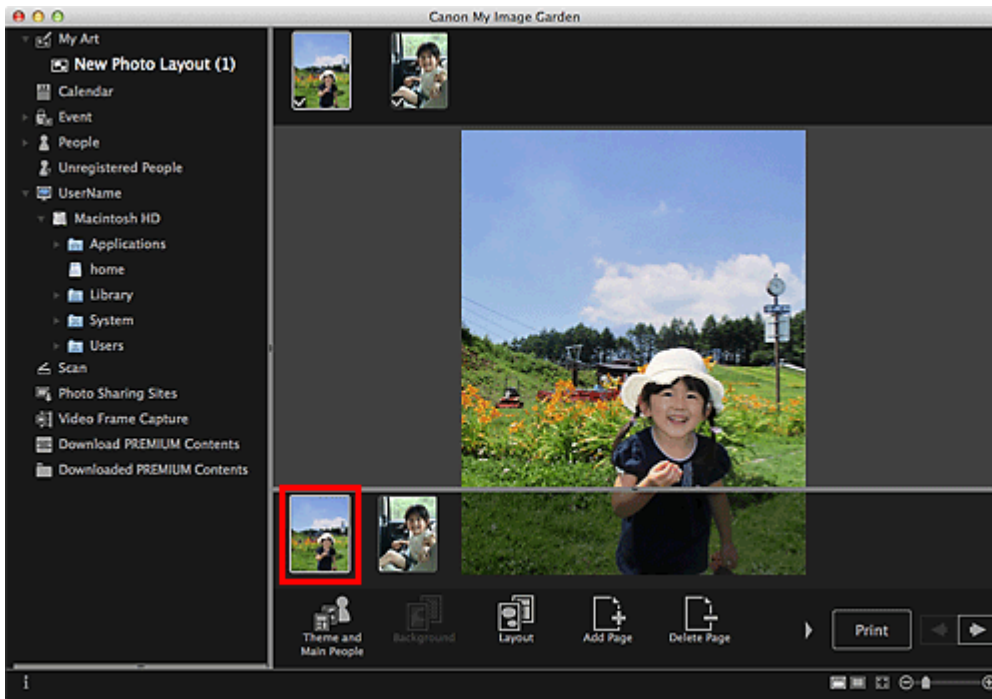
- This function is not available when PREMIUM Contents are used.
- This function may not be available depending on the type and theme of your item.



Note

- See "[My Art View](#)" for how to switch to the **My Art** view.
- Photo layout editing is used as an example in the following descriptions. The screen(s) may vary depending on what you create.

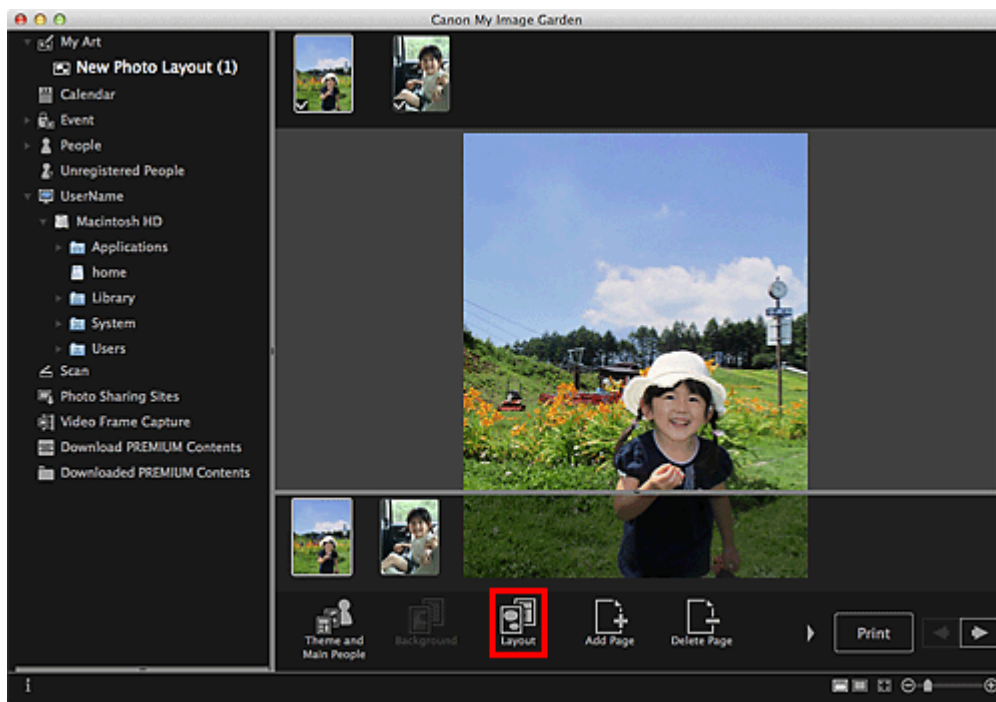
1. Select a page in the Page Thumbnails area.



Note

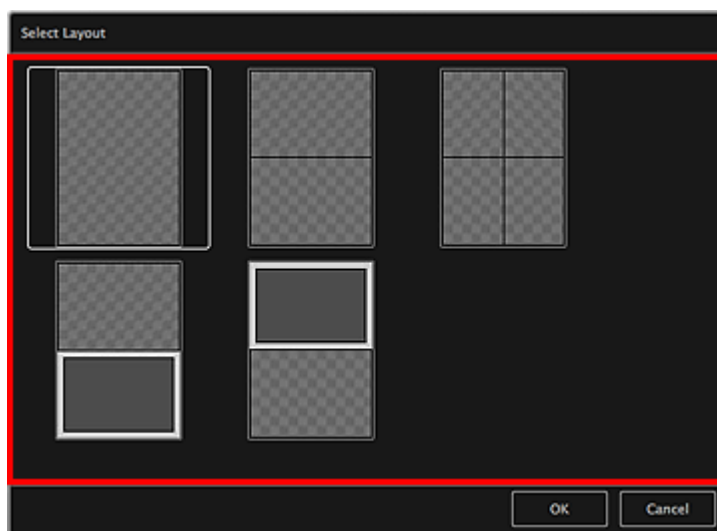
- If the Page Thumbnails area is not displayed, click the bar above the operation buttons.

2. Click **Layout**.



The **Select Layout** dialog appears.

3. Select the layout you want to use.



4. Click **OK**.

The layout of the selected page changes to the selected one.

Related Topic

- [Select Layout Dialog](#)

[Page top](#) ▲

Arranging Photos Automatically

In the **My Art** view, you can automatically place images into the layout frames of your items.

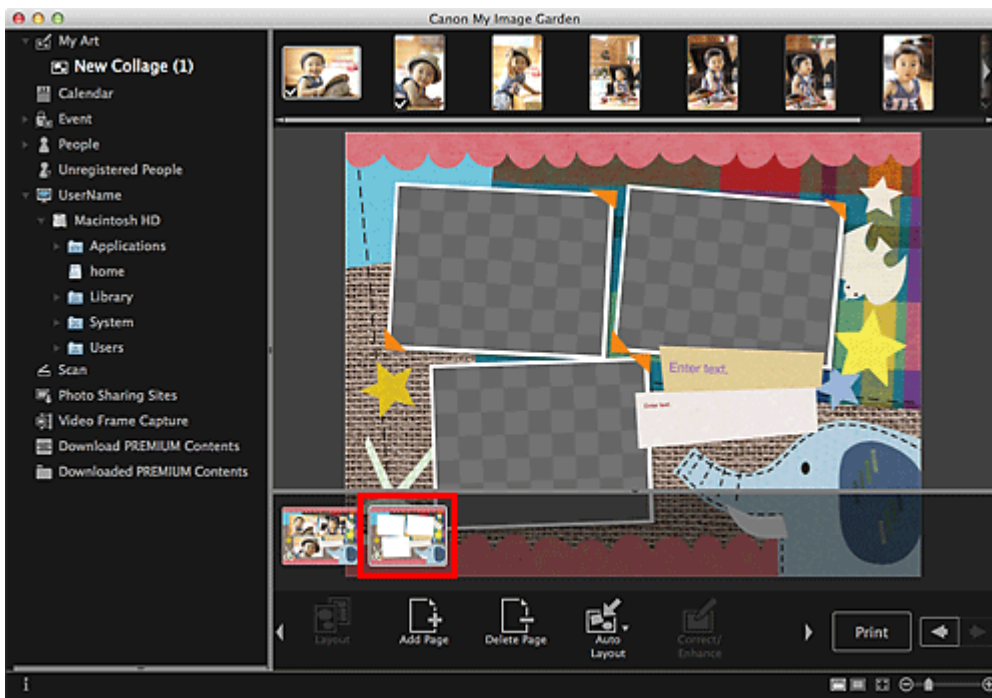
Important

- This function may not be available when PREMIUM Contents are used.

Note

- See "[My Art View](#)" for how to switch to the **My Art** view.
- Collage editing is used as an example in the following descriptions. The screen(s) may vary depending on what you create.

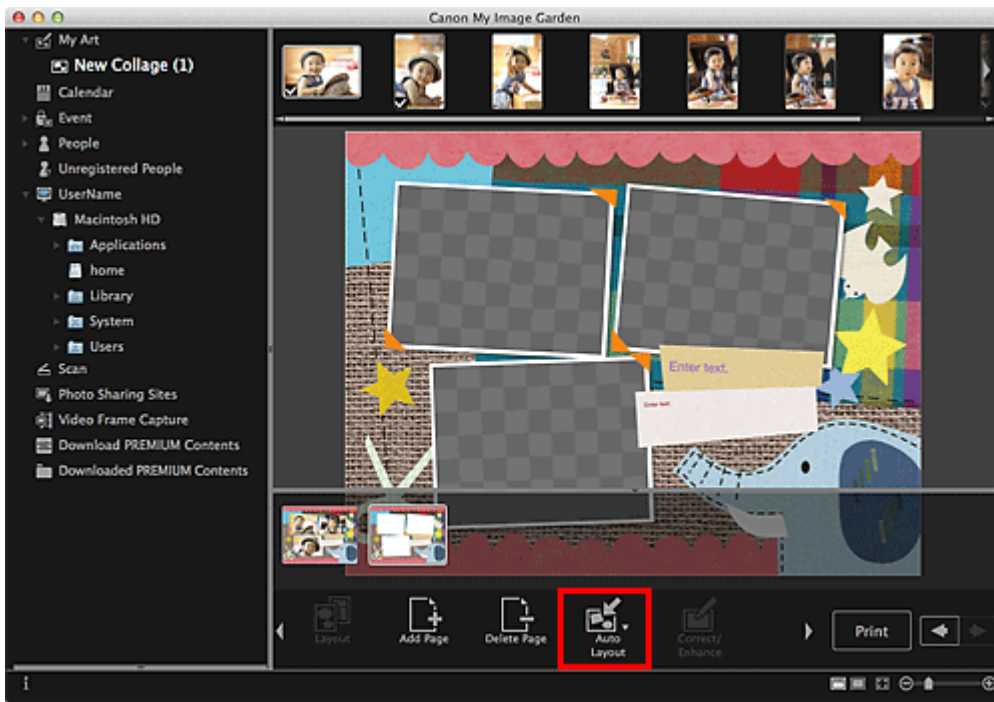
1. In the Page Thumbnails area, select the page in which you want to place images.



Note

- If the Page Thumbnails area is not displayed, click the bar above the operation buttons.

2. Click **Auto Layout**.



3. Select a layout type from the displayed menu.

Images in the Materials area are placed automatically according to the selected layout type.

When **Display recommendation** is selected

Based on the favorite level and information of people registered to images, suitable images are selected and placed into the layout frames. The image placement switches each time you click this option, displaying various patterns of the item.

Important

- The layout may not be as expected if there is an image for which image analysis is not completed in the Materials area. See "**Image Analysis Settings Tab**" for how to specify the image analysis settings.

When **Material order** is selected

Images are placed into the layout frames in the order they are displayed in the Materials area.

When **Date order** is selected

Images are placed into the layout frames in chronological order by date of shooting or creation.

Note

- You can also rearrange placed images by dragging and dropping them in the Edit area.

Adding, Deleting or Rearranging Pages

In the **My Art** view, you can add pages to or delete pages from your items. You can also rearrange pages.

- ➡ Adding Pages
- ➡ Deleting Pages
- ➡ Rearranging Pages



Important

- This function is not available for calendars or cards.
- This function is not available when PREMIUM Contents are used.



Note

- See "[My Art View](#)" for how to switch to the **My Art** view.
- Collage editing is used as an example in the following descriptions. The screen(s) may vary depending on what you create.

Adding Pages

You can add pages of the same layout as that displayed in the Edit area.

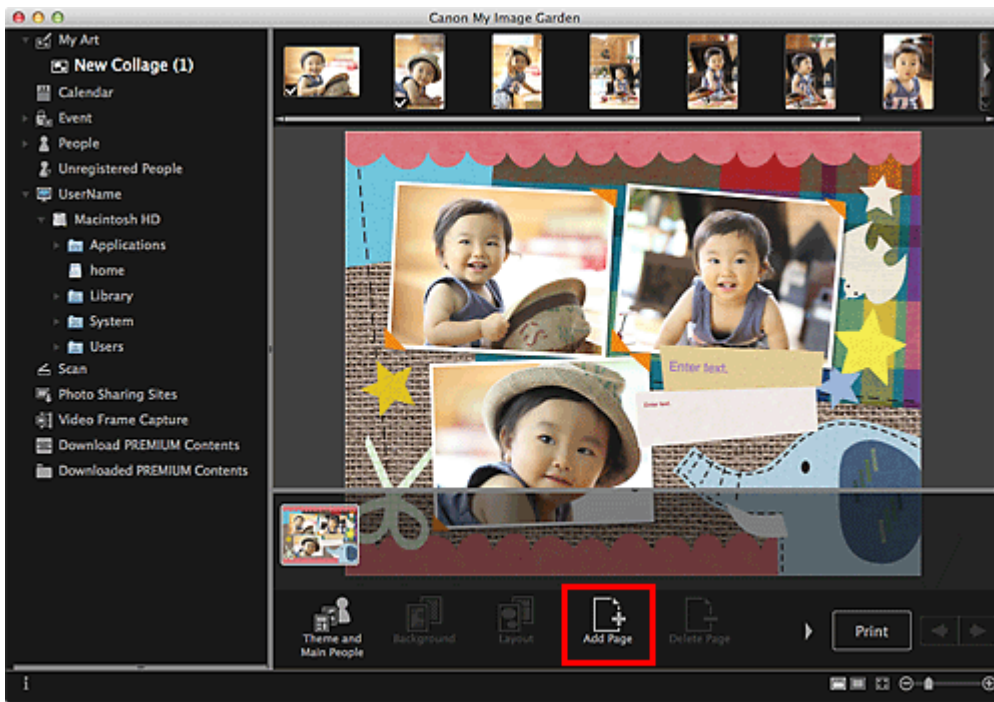
1. Select a page in the Page Thumbnails area.



Note

- If the Page Thumbnails area is not displayed, click the bar above the operation buttons.

2. Click **Add Page**.



A new page is added after the selected page.

Deleting Pages

You can delete unwanted pages.



Note

- Pages can be deleted only when there are multiple pages.

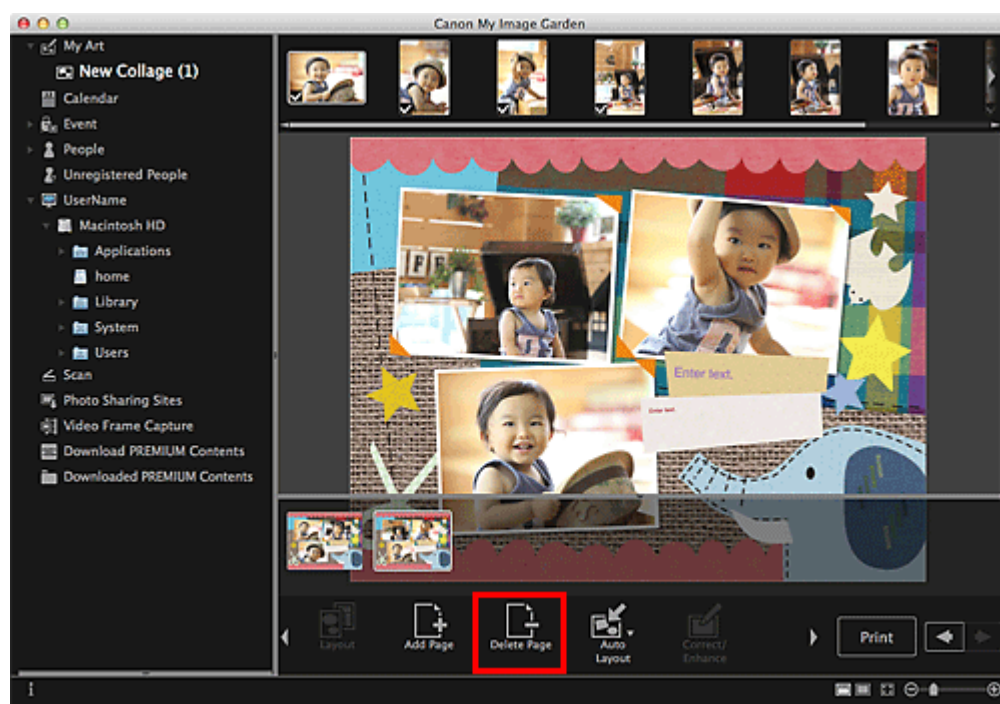
1. Select an unwanted page in the Page Thumbnails area.



Note

- If the Page Thumbnails area is not displayed, click the bar above the operation buttons.

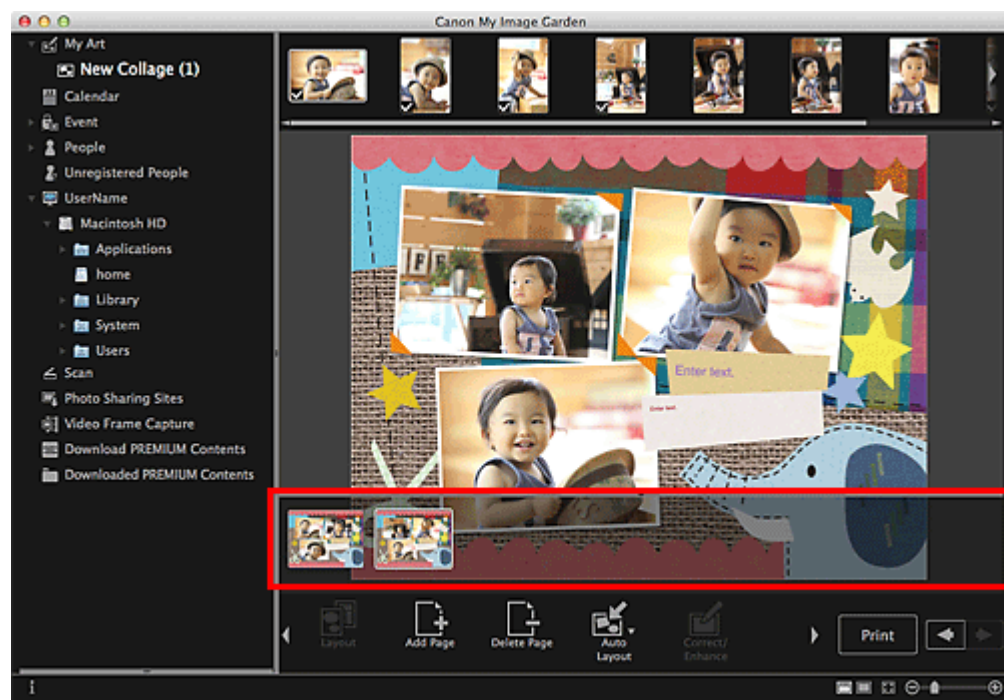
2. Click **Delete Page**.



The page is deleted.

Rearranging Pages

You can rearrange the order of pages by dragging and dropping them in the Page Thumbnails area.



Page top ▲

Inserting/Adjusting Images

In the **My Art** view, you can insert images into your items by dragging and dropping materials or by scanning items such as photos. You can also change the angle, position and size of images. You can also correct or enhance images.

➡ Inserting Images from the Materials Area

➡ Scanning and Inserting Images

➡ Adjusting Images

➡ Correcting/Enhancing Images



Important

- This function may not be available when PREMIUM Contents are used.



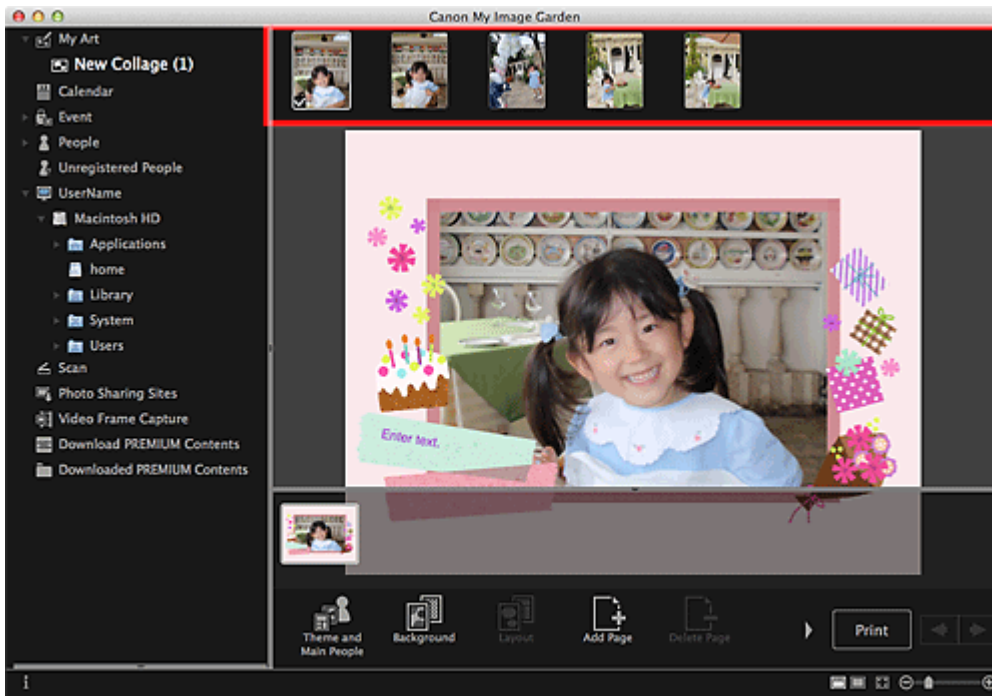
Note

- See "My Art View" for how to switch to the **My Art** view.
- Collage editing is used as an example in the following descriptions. The screen(s) may vary depending on what you create.

Inserting Images from the Materials Area

You can insert images in the Materials area into the layout frames of your item or replace images.

1. In the **My Art** view, select an image in the Materials area.



2. Drag and drop it to a layout frame of your item.

When you move an image to a layout frame, a cross icon appears on the image.

Scanning and Inserting Images

You can scan and insert your favorite photos, etc. into your items. You can scan with simple steps or by

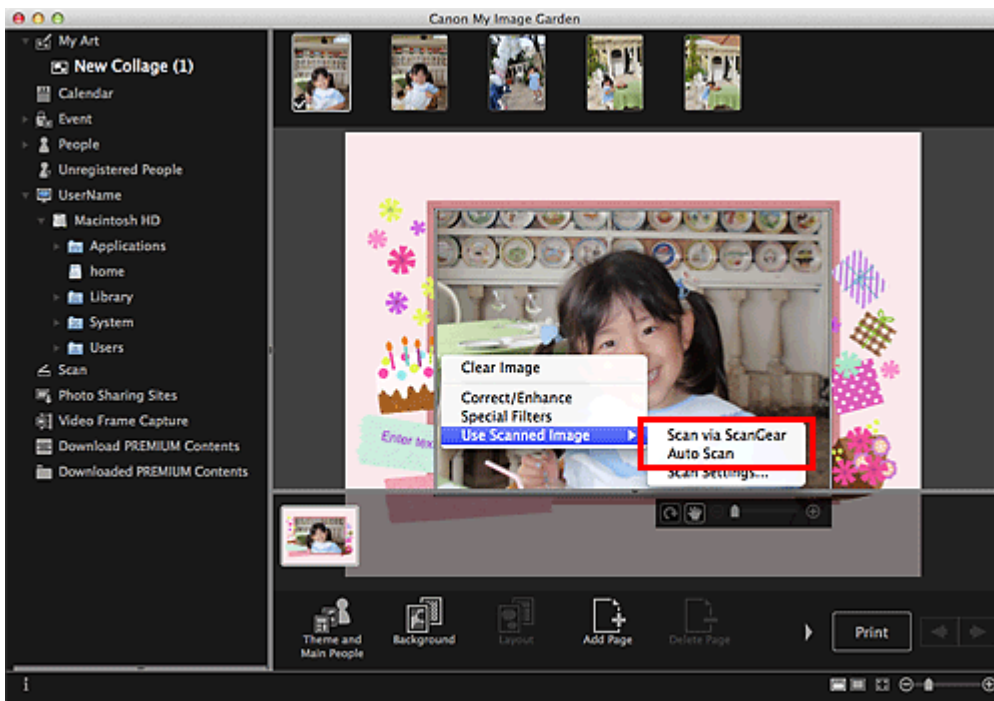
using ScanGear (scanner driver).

1. Place the item on the platen.
2. In the Edit area of the **My Art** view, control-click an image, a layout frame or the background, then select **Use Scanned Image** from the displayed menu.

Note

- To insert a scanned image into the background, place a checkmark beside **Photo** in the **Select Background** dialog.

3. From the **Use Scanned Image** menu, click **Scan via ScanGear** or **Auto Scan**.



When **Scan via ScanGear** is selected

The ScanGear screen appears. You can scan in the mode you want to use.

See the corresponding page of *On-screen Manual* for details on scanning.

When **Auto Scan** is selected

Scanning starts. Items are detected automatically.

Note

- To specify the scan/save settings, click **Scan Settings...** from the **Use Scanned Image** menu. See the corresponding page of *On-screen Manual* for setting procedure.

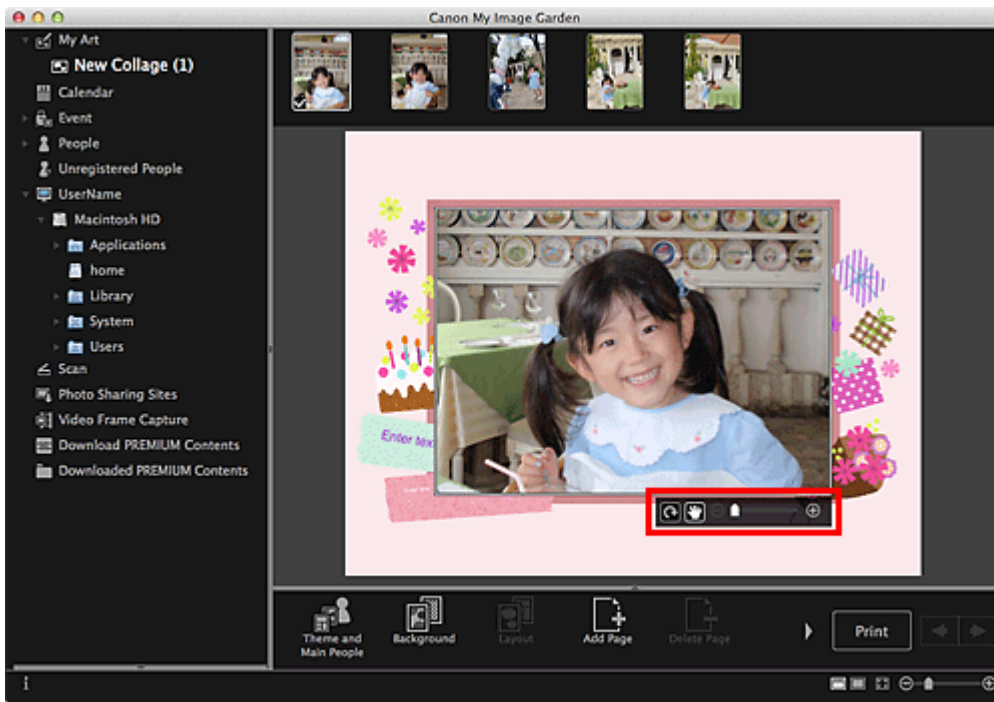
Adjusting Images

You can change the angle, position and size of the images inserted in your item. You can also enhance images by adjusting the image brightness and contrast or by using special filters.

Changing Angle, Position and Size of Images

1. Select an image in the Edit area of the **My Art** view.

The image editing tool appears below the selected image.



2. Change the angle, position and size using the editing toolbar.



(Rotate 90°)

You can rotate the image 90 degrees clockwise each time you click it.



(Adjust Position)

You can switch the cursor between  (Move) and the standard one. Switch to  (Move) and drag the image to change its position. Switch to the standard cursor to lock the image position.



(Reduce/Enlarge)

Click  (Reduce) or  (Enlarge) to reduce or enlarge the display size of the image. You can also freely change the display size by dragging the slider.

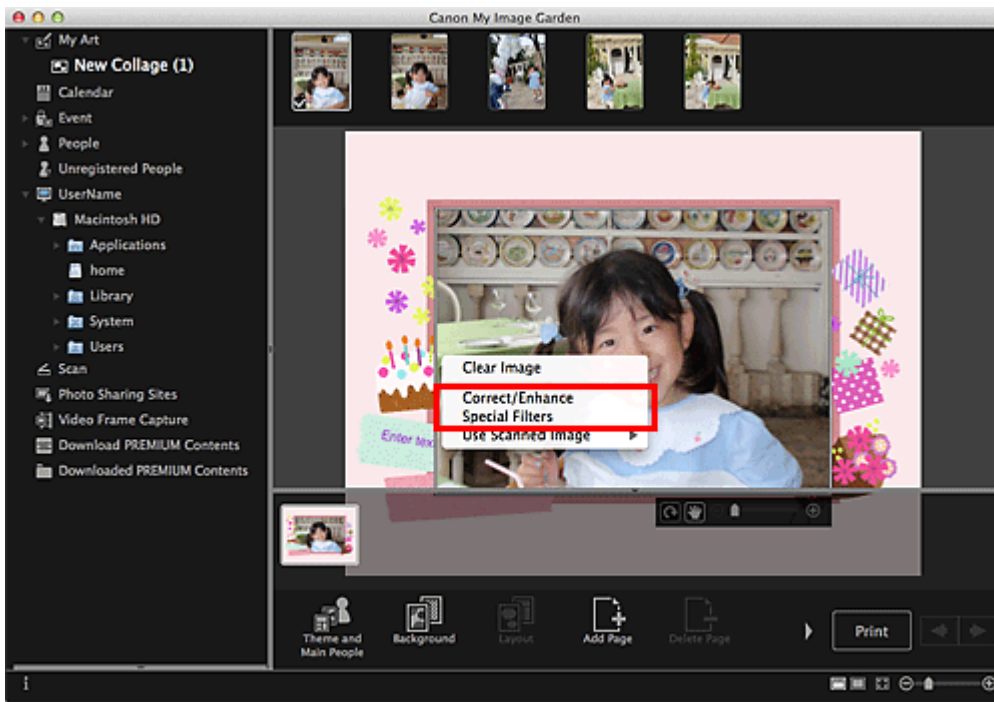


Note

- When the item is a photo layout, **Add date** appears. Click to add the date to the photo.

Correcting/Enhancing Images

1. In the Edit area, control-click the image, then select **Correct/Enhance** or **Special Filters** from the displayed menu.



When **Correct/Enhance** is selected

The **Correct/Enhance Images** window appears. You can correct red eyes or adjust the brightness and contrast of images.

➡ Correcting/Enhancing Photos

When **Special Filters** is selected

The **Special Image Filters** window appears. You can joyfully enhance photos using the filter you want to use.

➡ Enhancing Photos Using Special Filters

Page top ▲

Adding Text to Photos

In the **My Art** view, you can add text to cards, collages, disc labels and other items containing a text box.

Important

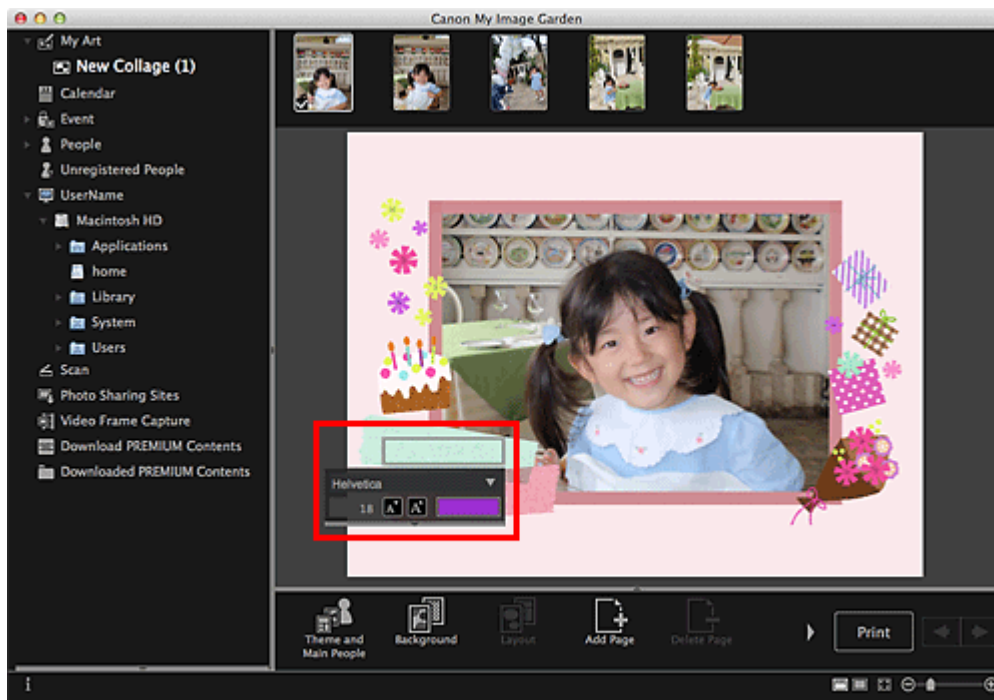
- This function may not be available depending on the type and theme of your item.

Note

- See "[My Art View](#)" for how to switch to the **My Art** view.
- Collage editing is used as an example in the following descriptions. The screen(s) may vary depending on what you create.

1. In the **My Art** view, click a text box in your item.

The text input palette appears below the text box.



2. Enter text in the text box.

3. Use the text input palette to change the font type, font size, font color and text position.



(1) Font

Select the font type.

(2) Size

You can set the font size within the range of 5 to 100 points.



(Decrease Size)

Decreases the font size by 1 point each time it is clicked.



(Increase Size)

Increases the font size by 1 point each time it is clicked.

(3) Color

You can select the font color.



(Color Setting)

Click to display the **Colors** dialog. Select the color you want to set.

(4) Text Alignment

You can set how you want to align text.

For text alignment, you can select align left, align center or align right.

(5) Font Style

You can set the font style.

For font style, you can select bold, italic, outline or shadow.

You can also set multiple font styles.



Note

- Click the bar at the bottom of the text input palette to show or hide Text Alignment and Font Style.
 - Available font styles vary depending on the selected font.
-

4. Click outside the text box.

The entered text is reflected in the item.

Correcting/Enhancing Photos

You can correct red eyes or adjust the brightness and contrast of images.

Select an image in the Edit area of the **My Art** view, **Calendar** view set to **Day View**, **Event** view, the expanded display of the **People** view, **Unregistered People** view or folder view, then click **Correct/Enhance** at the bottom of the screen to display the **Correct/Enhance Images** window. You can make the following corrections and enhancements in the **Correct/Enhance Images** window.



Important

- This function is not available when a PDF file is selected.
- Correction/enhancement may not be possible due to insufficient memory depending on the size of the selected image.

Auto Photo Fix

You can automatically apply corrections suitable for photos based on the analysis of the shot scene.

➡ Using Auto Photo Fix



Red-Eye Correction

You can reduce red eye caused by a camera flash.

➡ Using Red-Eye Correction



Face Brightener

You can brighten dark faces caused by bright background.

➡ Using Face Brightener



Face Sharpener

You can sharpen out-of-focus faces.

➡ Using Face Sharpener



Digital Face Smoothing

You can enhance skin beautifully by reducing blemishes and wrinkles.

➡ Using Digital Face Smoothing



Blemish Remover

You can reduce moles.

➡ Using Blemish Remover



Image Adjustment

You can adjust brightness and contrast, sharpen the entire image, etc.

You can also blur the outline of the subjects or remove the base color.

➡ Adjusting Images



Crop

You can select the area you want to keep in an image and discard the rest.

➡ Cropping Photos



Related Topic

 [Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)

Using Auto Photo Fix

You can automatically apply corrections suitable for photos based on the analysis of the shot scene.



Important

- Auto Photo Fix cannot be applied to images that have been corrected with Auto Photo Fix and saved. In addition, Auto Photo Fix may not be available for images edited with an application, digital camera, etc. manufactured by other companies.

Note

- You can automatically correct photos when printing. See "Print Settings Dialog" for the setting procedure.

- Select the image(s) you want to correct.
➡ [Selecting Images, PDF Files and Videos](#)
- Click **Correct/Enhance** at the bottom of the screen.

The **Correct/Enhance Images** window appears.



- Select the image you want to correct from the Selected Images area.

The selected image appears in the Preview area.

Note

- If only one image is selected, only the preview appears and the Selected Images area does not appear.

4. Make sure that **Auto** is selected.

5. Click **Auto Photo Fix**, then click **OK**.

The entire photo is corrected automatically and the  (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- Click  (Display Comparison Screen) to display the images before and after the correction side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click **Reset Selected Image** to undo all corrections.
- Select the **Apply to all images** checkbox to correct the images displayed in the Selected Images area at one time.
- It is recommended that you deselect the **Prioritize Exif info** checkbox.
Deselect this checkbox to apply corrections based on the image analysis results.
Select this checkbox to apply corrections primarily based on the settings made at the time of shooting.
- The correction result may not be as expected depending on the selected image.

6. Click **Save Selected Image** or **Save All Corrected Images**.

Corrected images are saved as new files.

Note

- To save only the image(s) you like, select it (them) and click **Save Selected Image**. Click **Save All Corrected Images** to save all the corrected images at one time.
- The corrected image(s) can be saved in JPEG/Exif format only.

7. Click **Exit**.

Important

- If the corrected image(s) is (are) not saved, the correction(s) will be deleted.

Related Topic

 [Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)

Page top 

Using Red-Eye Correction

You can reduce red eye caused by a camera flash.
There are two Red-Eye Correction methods: automatic and manual.



Note

- You can automatically correct red eyes when printing. See "Print Settings Dialog" for the setting procedure.

1. Select the image(s) you want to correct.
➡ [Selecting Images, PDF Files and Videos](#)
2. Click **Correct/Enhance** at the bottom of the screen.

The **Correct/Enhance Images** window appears.



3. Select the image you want to correct from the Selected Images area.
The selected image appears in the Preview area.

Note

- If only one image is selected, only the preview appears and the Selected Images area does not appear.

Auto Correction

4. Make sure that **Auto** is selected.
5. Click **Red-Eye Correction**.
6. Click **OK**.

Red eyes are corrected and the  (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Important

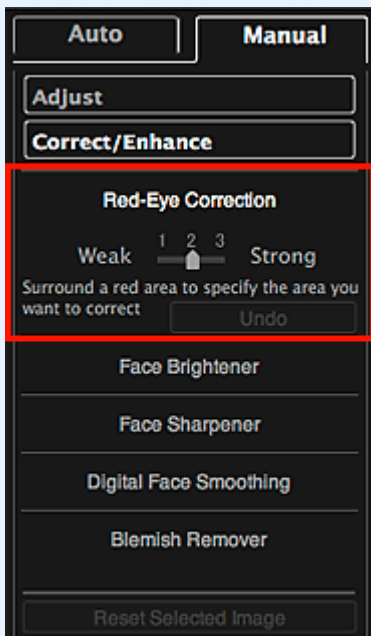
- Areas other than the eyes may be corrected depending on the image.

Note

- Click  (Display Comparison Screen) to display the images before and after the correction side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click **Reset Selected Image** to undo all corrections.
- Select the **Apply to all images** checkbox to correct the images displayed in the Selected Images area at one time.

Manual Correction

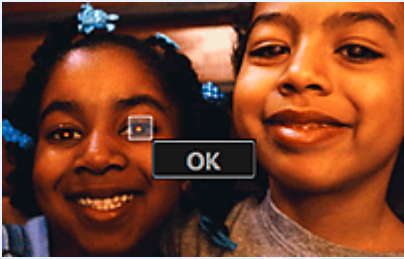
4. Click **Manual**, then click **Correct/Enhance**.
5. Click **Red-Eye Correction**.



Note

- The correction level can be changed by moving the slider displayed below **Red-Eye Correction**.
- When the cursor is moved over the image, the shape of the cursor changes to  (Cross).

6. Drag to specify the red area you want to correct, then click **OK** over the image.



Red eyes are corrected and the  (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- Click  (Display Comparison Screen) to display the images before and after the correction side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click **Undo** to undo the last operation.

7. Click **Save Selected Image** or **Save All Corrected Images**.

Corrected images are saved as new files.

Note

- To save only the image(s) you like, select it (them) and click **Save Selected Image**. Click **Save All Corrected Images** to save all the corrected images at one time.
- The corrected image(s) can be saved in JPEG/Exif format only.

8. Click **Exit**.

Important

- If the corrected image(s) is (are) not saved, the correction(s) will be deleted.

Related Topic

 [Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)

[Page top](#) 

Using Face Brightener

You can brighten dark faces caused by bright background.



Note

- It is recommended to apply Face Brightener when the correction made by Auto Photo Fix is not sufficient.

You can also brighten dark photos caused by bright background with Auto Photo Fix.

➡ [Using Auto Photo Fix](#)

1. Select the image(s) you want to correct.

➡ [Selecting Images, PDF Files and Videos](#)

2. Click **Correct/Enhance** at the bottom of the screen.

The **Correct/Enhance Images** window appears.



3. Select the image you want to correct from the Selected Images area.

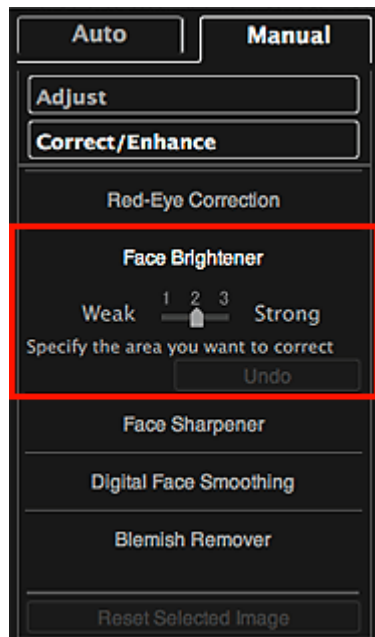
The selected image appears in the Preview area.

Note

- If only one image is selected, only the preview appears and the Selected Images area does not appear.

4. Click **Manual**, then click **Correct/Enhance**.

5. Click **Face Brightener**.



Note

- The correction level can be changed by moving the slider displayed below **Face Brightener**.
- When the cursor is moved over the image, the shape of the cursor changes to  (Cross).

6. Drag to specify the area you want to correct, then click **OK** that appears over the image.



The entire image is corrected so that the specified face area becomes brighter, and the  (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- You can also drag to rotate the selected area.
- Click  (Display Comparison Screen) to display the images before and after the correction side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click **Undo** to undo the last operation.

7. Click **Save Selected Image** or **Save All Corrected Images**.

Corrected images are saved as new files.

Note

- To save only the image(s) you like, select it (them) and click **Save Selected Image**. Click **Save All Corrected Images** to save all the corrected images at one time.
- The corrected image(s) can be saved in JPEG/Exif format only.

8. Click **Exit**.

Important

- If the corrected image(s) is (are) not saved, the correction(s) will be deleted.

Related Topic

 [Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)

Page top 

Using Face Sharpener

You can sharpen out-of-focus faces.

There are two Face Sharpener methods: automatic and manual.

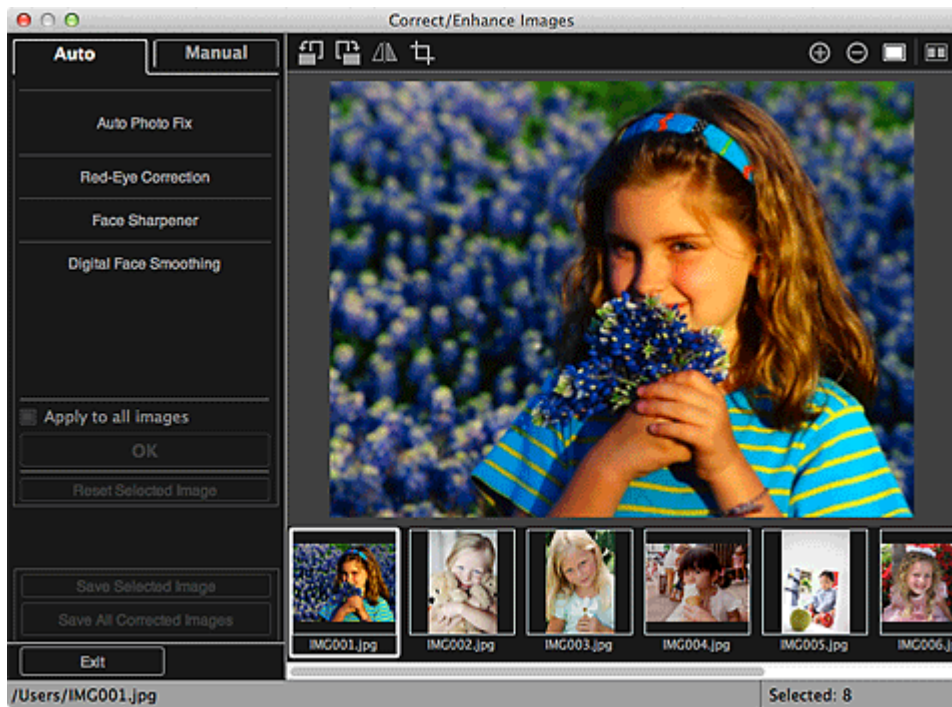


1. Select the image(s) you want to correct.

➡ [Selecting Images, PDF Files and Videos](#)

2. Click **Correct/Enhance** at the bottom of the screen.

The **Correct/Enhance Images** window appears.



3. Select the image you want to correct from the Selected Images area.

The selected image appears in the Preview area.

Note

- If only one image is selected, only the preview appears and the Selected Images area does not appear.

Auto Correction

4. Make sure that **Auto** is selected.

5. Click **Face Sharpener**.

Note

- The correction level can be changed by moving the slider displayed below **Face Sharpener**.

6. Click **OK**.

The face is sharpened and the  (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- Click  (Display Comparison Screen) to display the images before and after the correction side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click **Reset Selected Image** to undo all corrections.
- Select the **Apply to all images** checkbox to correct the images displayed in the Selected Images area at one time.

Manual Correction

4. Click **Manual**, then click **Correct/Enhance**.

5. Click **Face Sharpener**.



Note

- The correction level can be changed by moving the slider displayed below **Face Sharpener**.
- When the cursor is moved over the image, the shape of the cursor changes to  (Cross).

6. Drag to specify the area you want to correct, then click **OK** that appears over the image.



The face area in and around the selected area is sharpened and the  (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- You can also drag to rotate the selected area.
- Click  (Display Comparison Screen) to display the images before and after the correction side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click **Undo** to undo the last operation.

7. Click **Save Selected Image** or **Save All Corrected Images**.

Corrected images are saved as new files.

Note

- To save only the image(s) you like, select it (them) and click **Save Selected Image**. Click **Save All Corrected Images** to save all the corrected images at one time.
- The corrected image(s) can be saved in JPEG/Exif format only.

8. Click **Exit**.

Important

- If the corrected image(s) is (are) not saved, the correction(s) will be deleted.

Related Topic

 [Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)

Page top 

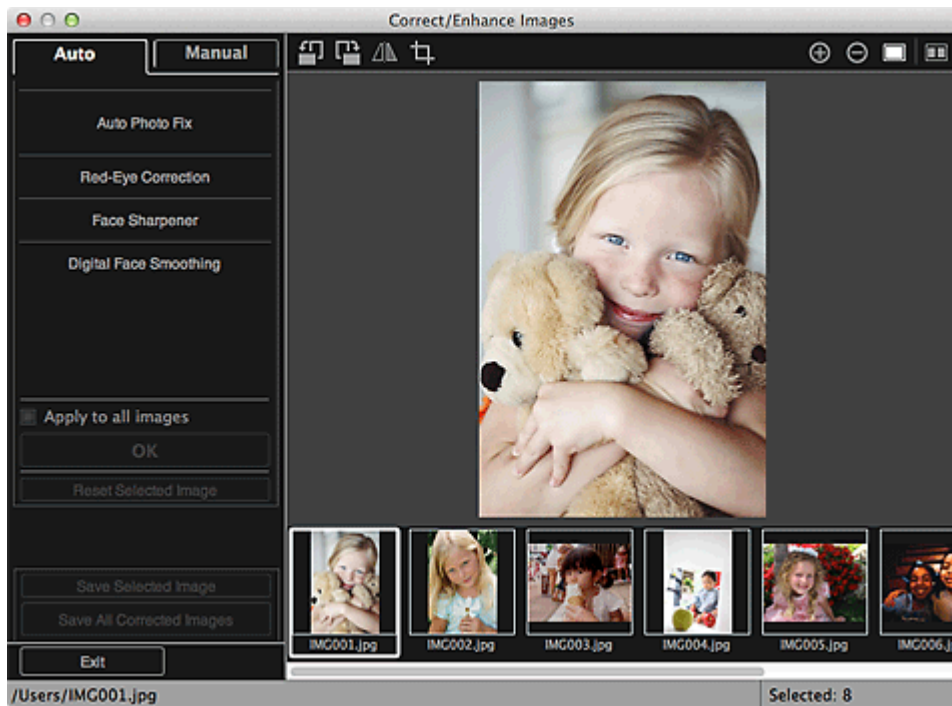
Using Digital Face Smoothing

You can enhance skin beautifully by reducing blemishes and wrinkles.
There are two Digital Face Smoothing methods: automatic and manual.



1. Select the image(s) you want to enhance.
➡ [Selecting Images, PDF Files and Videos](#)
2. Click **Correct/Enhance** at the bottom of the screen.

The **Correct/Enhance Images** window appears.



3. Select the image you want to enhance from the Selected Images area.

The selected image appears in the Preview area.

Note

- If only one image is selected, only the preview appears and the Selected Images area does not appear.

Auto Enhancement

4. Make sure that **Auto** is selected.

5. Click **Digital Face Smoothing**.

 Note

- The enhancement level can be changed by moving the slider displayed below **Digital Face Smoothing**.

6. Click **OK**.

Skin is enhanced beautifully and the  (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

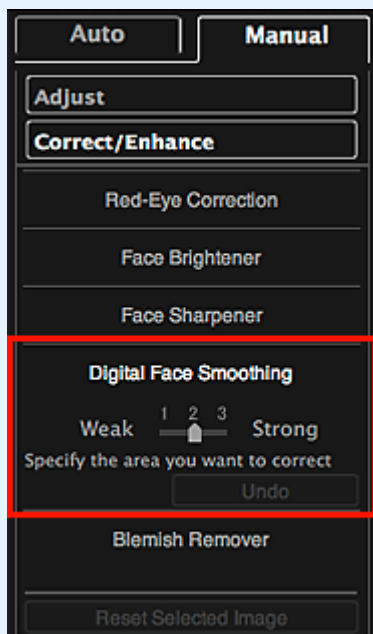
 Note

- Click  (Display Comparison Screen) to display the images before and after the enhancement side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click **Reset Selected Image** to undo all enhancements.
- Select the **Apply to all images** checkbox to enhance the selected images at one time.

Manual Enhancement

4. Click **Manual**, then click **Correct/Enhance**.

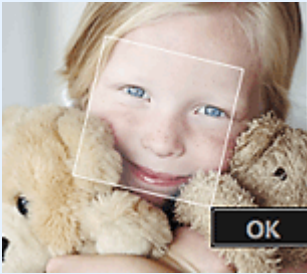
5. Click **Digital Face Smoothing**.



 Note

- The enhancement level can be changed by moving the slider displayed below **Digital Face Smoothing**.
- When the cursor is moved over the image, the shape of the cursor changes to  (Cross).

6. Drag to specify the area you want to correct, then click **OK** that appears over the image.



Skin in and around the specified area is enhanced beautifully and the  (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- You can also drag to rotate the selected area.
- Click  (Display Comparison Screen) to display the images before and after the enhancement side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click **Undo** to undo the last operation.

7. Click **Save Selected Image** or **Save All Corrected Images**.

Enhanced images are saved as new files.

Note

- To save only the image(s) you like, select it (them) and click **Save Selected Image**. Click **Save All Corrected Images** to save all the enhanced images at one time.
- The enhanced image(s) can be saved in JPEG/Exif format only.

8. Click **Exit**.

Important

- If the enhanced image(s) is (are) not saved, the enhancement(s) will be deleted.

Related Topic

 [Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)

Page top 

A077

My Image Garden

Using Blemish Remover

You can reduce moles.

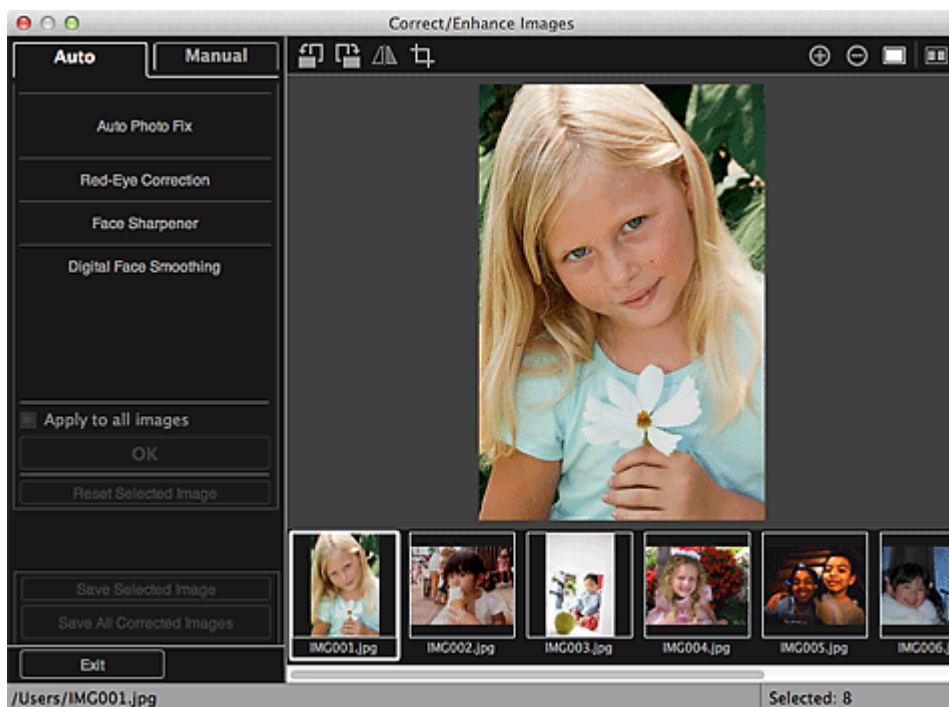


1. Select the image(s) you want to enhance.

➡ Selecting Images, PDF Files and Videos

2. Click **Correct/Enhance** at the bottom of the screen.

The **Correct/Enhance Images** window appears.



3. Select the image you want to enhance from the Selected Images area.

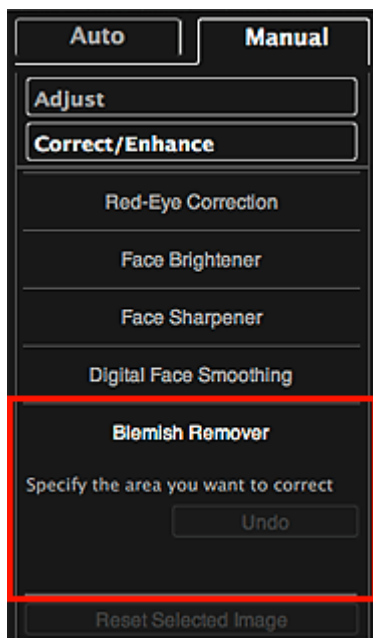
The selected image appears in the Preview area.

Note

- If only one image is selected, only the preview appears and the Selected Images area does not appear.

4. Click **Manual**, then click **Correct/Enhance**.

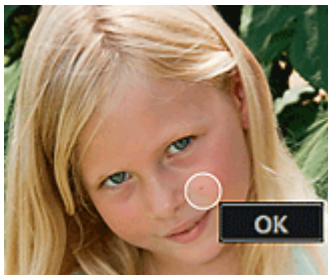
5. Click **Blemish Remover**.



Note

- When the cursor is moved over the image, the shape of the cursor changes to $\oplus$ (Cross).

- Drag to specify the area you want to enhance, then click **OK** that appears over the image.



Moles in and around the specified area are reduced and the  (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- Click  (Display Comparison Screen) to display the images before and after the enhancement side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click **Undo** to undo the last operation.

- Click **Save Selected Image** or **Save All Corrected Images**.

Enhanced images are saved as new files.

Note

- To save only the image(s) you like, select it (them) and click **Save Selected Image**. Click **Save All Corrected Images** to save all the enhanced images at one time.
- The enhanced image(s) can be saved in JPEG/Exif format only.

- Click **Exit**.

Important

- If the enhanced image(s) is (are) not saved, the enhancement(s) will be deleted.

Related Topic

Adjusting Images

You can make fine adjustments to the overall brightness, contrast, etc. of images.



1. Select the image(s) you want to adjust.

➡ [Selecting Images, PDF Files and Videos](#)

2. Click **Correct/Enhance** at the bottom of the screen.

The **Correct/Enhance Images** window appears.



3. Select the image you want to adjust from the Selected Images area.

The selected image appears in the Preview area.

Note

- If only one image is selected, only the preview appears and the Selected Images area does not appear.

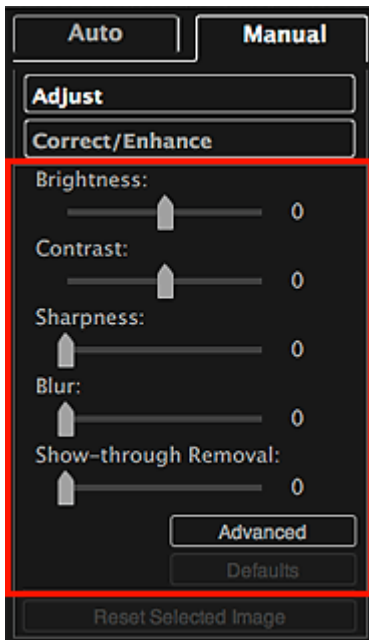
4. Click **Manual**, then click **Adjust**.

5. Move the slider of each item to adjust the level.

The following adjustments are available:

Brightness

Contrast
Sharpness
Blur
Show-through Removal



The image is adjusted and the  (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- Click  (Display Comparison Screen) to display the images before and after the adjustment side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click **Advanced** to make fine adjustments to the image brightness and color tone. See **Advanced** in "Correct/Enhance Images Window" for details.
- Click **Defaults** to undo all adjustments.

6. Click **Save Selected Image** or **Save All Corrected Images**.

Adjusted images are saved as new files.

Note

- To save only the image(s) you like, select it (them) and click **Save Selected Image**. Click **Save All Corrected Images** to save all the adjusted images at one time.
- The adjusted image(s) can be saved in JPEG/Exif format only.

7. Click **Exit**.

Important

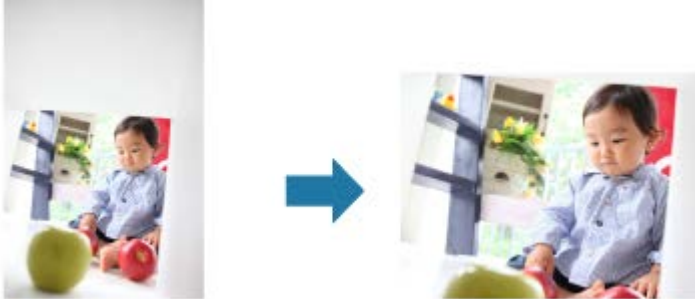
- If the adjusted image(s) is (are) not saved, the adjustment(s) will be deleted.

Related Topic

 [Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)

Cropping Photos

Cropping is the act of selecting the area you want to keep in an image and discarding the rest.



Important

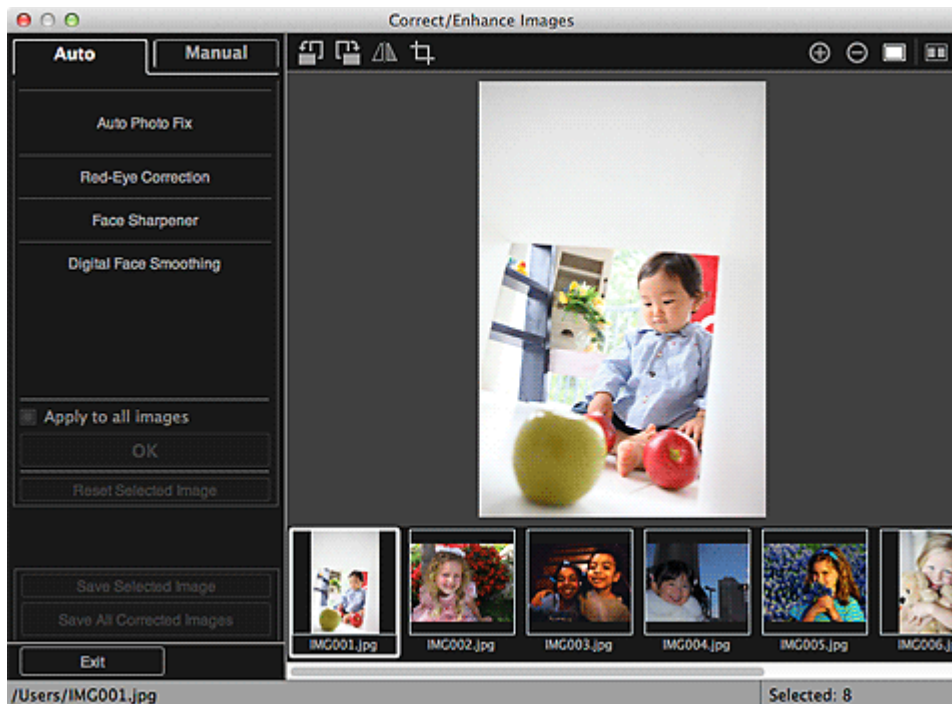
- This function may not be available when PREMIUM Contents are used.
- Images cannot be cropped while editing items.

1. Select the image(s) you want to crop.

➡ [Selecting Images, PDF Files and Videos](#)

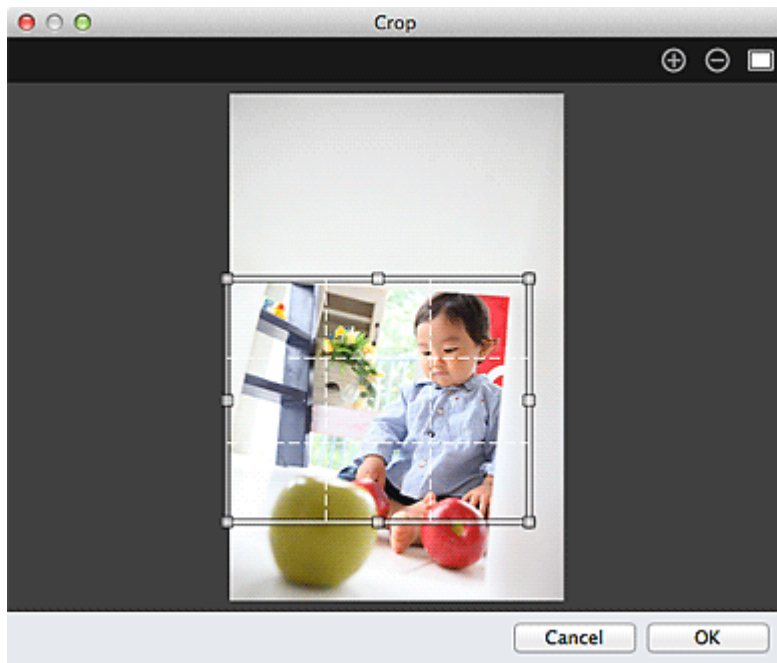
2. Click **Correct/Enhance** at the bottom of the screen.

The **Correct/Enhance Images** window appears.



3. Click  (Crop).

The **Crop** window appears.



4. Drag the white squares on the image to specify the area to be cropped, then click **OK**.

Note

- Click **Reset Selected Image** in the **Correct/Enhance Images** window to undo all enhancements.

Related Topic

 [Crop Window](#)

[Page top](#) ▲

Enhancing Photos Using Special Filters

Transform your photos into unique and attractive images using special filters.

Select an image in the Edit area of the **My Art** view, **Calendar** view set to **Day View**, **Event** view, the expanded display of the **People** view, **Unregistered People** view or folder view, then click **Special Filters** at the bottom of the screen to display the **Special Image Filters** window. You can make the following corrections and enhancements in the **Special Image Filters** window.



Important

- This function is not available when a PDF file is selected.
- Correction/enhancement may not be possible due to insufficient memory depending on the size of the selected image.

Fish-eye Effect

You can enhance an image to resemble a photo taken with a fish-eye lens.

➡ Enhancing with Fish-eye Effect



Miniature Effect

You can enhance an image (landscape photo, etc.) to resemble a photo of a miniature model (diorama).

➡ Enhancing with Miniature Effect



Toy Camera Effect

You can enhance an image to resemble a retro photo taken with a toy camera.

➡ Enhancing with Toy Camera Effect



Soft Focus

You can soften an image to resemble a photo taken with a soft focus lens.

➡ Enhancing with Soft Focus



Blur Background

You can blur the background to emphasize the subject or specific areas.

➡ Blurring the Background



Related Topic

🕒 Special Image Filters Window

Page top ▲

A081

My Image Garden

Enhancing with Fish-eye Effect

You can enhance an image to resemble a photo taken with a fish-eye lens.

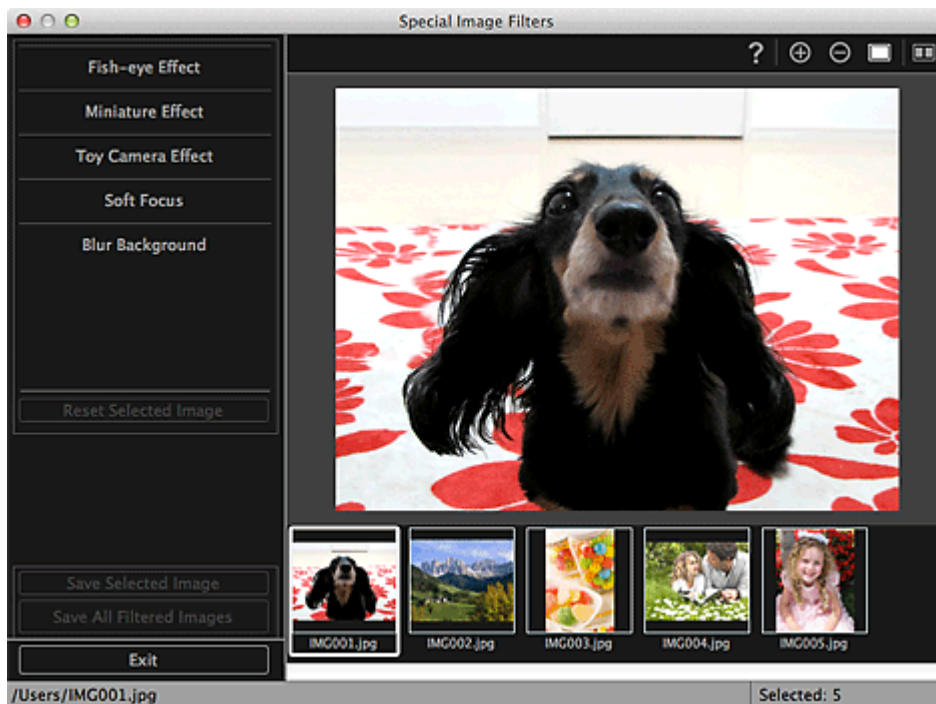


1. Select the image(s) you want to enhance.

➡ Selecting Images, PDF Files and Videos

2. Click **Special Filters** at the bottom of the screen.

The **Special Image Filters** window appears.



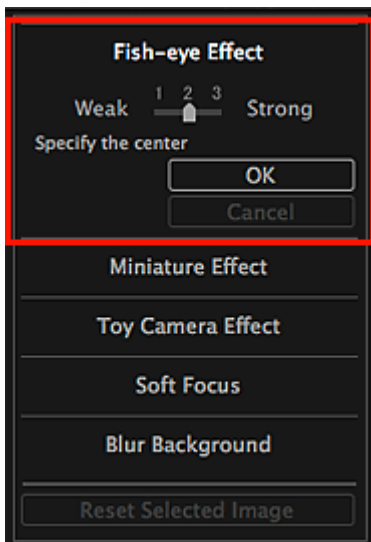
3. Select the image you want to enhance from the Selected Images area.

The selected image appears in the Preview area.

Note

- If only one image is selected, only the preview appears and the Selected Images area does not appear.

4. Click **Fish-eye Effect**.



The ✱ (Center) mark for setting the center position appears in the Preview area.

Note

- The effect level can be changed by moving the slider displayed below **Fish-eye Effect**.

5. Drag the ✱ (Center) mark to set the center position, then click **OK**.



The edges of the image are distorted, focusing on the specified area, and the  (Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- Click  (Display Comparison Screen) to display the images before and after the enhancement side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click **Cancel** to undo the enhancement. Enhancements made with other functions are retained.

6. Click **Save Selected Image** or **Save All Filtered Images**.

Enhanced images are saved as new files.

Note

- To save only the image(s) you like, select it (them) and click **Save Selected Image**. Click **Save All Filtered Images** to save all the enhanced images at one time.
- The enhanced image(s) can be saved in JPEG/Exif format only.

7. Click **Exit**.

Important

- If the enhanced image(s) is (are) not saved, the enhancement(s) will be deleted.

Related Topic

 [Special Image Filters Window](#)

[Page top](#) 

Enhancing with Miniature Effect

You can enhance an image (landscape photo, etc.) to resemble a photo of a miniature model (diorama).



Note

- This filter is suitable for photos taken from above, looking down on the subject.

1. Select the image(s) you want to enhance.

➡ [Selecting Images, PDF Files and Videos](#)

2. Click **Special Filters** at the bottom of the screen.

The **Special Image Filters** window appears.



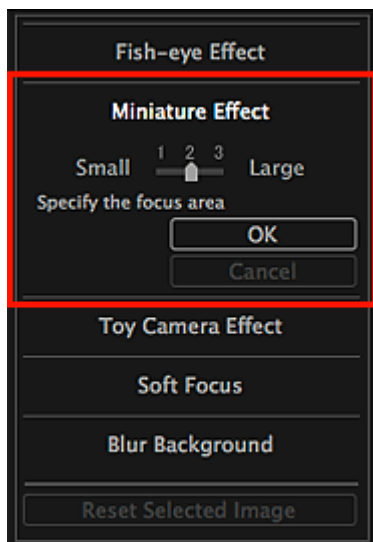
3. Select the image you want to enhance from the Selected Images area.

The selected image appears in the Preview area.

Note

- If only one image is selected, only the preview appears and the Selected Images area does not appear.

4. Click **Miniature Effect**.



Note

- A white frame (area that will not be blurred) appears in the Preview area.
- The frame size can be changed by moving the slider displayed below **Miniature Effect**.

5. Drag the frame up or down to specify the position on which to adjust the focus, then click **OK**.



The top and bottom of the specified area are blurred, and the  (Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- Click  (Display Comparison Screen) to display the images before and after the enhancement side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click **Cancel** to undo the enhancement. Enhancements made with other functions are retained.

6. Click **Save Selected Image** or **Save All Filtered Images**.

Enhanced images are saved as new files.

Note

- To save only the image(s) you like, select it (them) and click **Save Selected Image**. Click **Save All Filtered Images** to save all the enhanced images at one time.
- The enhanced image(s) can be saved in JPEG/Exif format only.

7. Click **Exit**.

Important

- If the enhanced image(s) is (are) not saved, the enhancement(s) will be deleted.

Related Topic

 [Special Image Filters Window](#)

[Page top](#) 

Enhancing with Toy Camera Effect

You can enhance an image to resemble a retro photo taken with a toy camera.

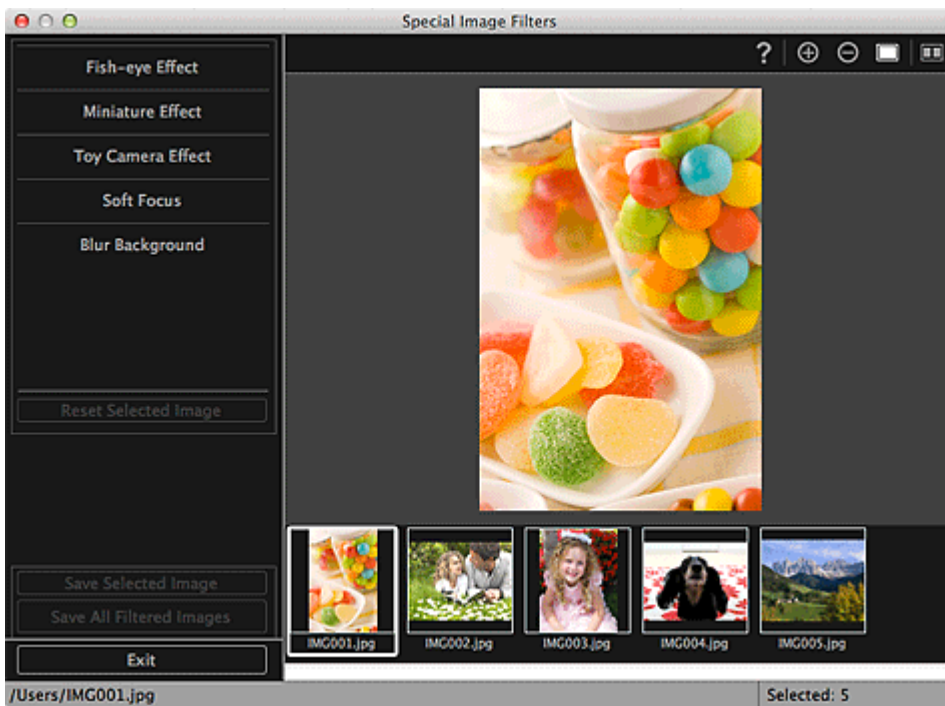


1. Select the image(s) you want to enhance.

➡ Selecting Images, PDF Files and Videos

2. Click **Special Filters** at the bottom of the screen.

The **Special Image Filters** window appears.



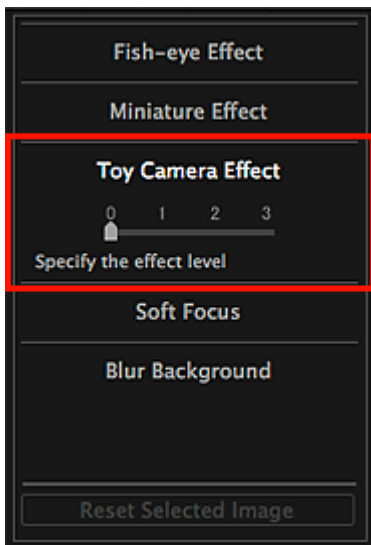
3. Select the image you want to enhance from the Selected Images area.

The selected image appears in the Preview area.

Note

- If only one image is selected, only the preview appears and the Selected Images area does not appear.

4. Click **Toy Camera Effect**.



5. Move the slider to adjust the level.

The entire image is enhanced to resemble a photo taken with a toy camera, and the  (Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

 Note

- Click  (Display Comparison Screen) to display the images before and after the enhancement side by side so that you can compare and check the result.

6. Click **Save Selected Image** or **Save All Filtered Images**.

Enhanced images are saved as new files.

 Note

- To save only the image(s) you like, select it (them) and click **Save Selected Image**. Click **Save All Filtered Images** to save all the enhanced images at one time.
- The enhanced image(s) can be saved in JPEG/Exif format only.

7. Click **Exit**.

 Important

- If the enhanced image(s) is (are) not saved, the enhancement(s) will be deleted.

 Note

- When an image enhanced with toy camera effect is printed without borders, the darkened four corners may not be printed depending on the paper size and the amount of extension set.

Related Topic

 [Special Image Filters Window](#)

Page top 

Enhancing with Soft Focus

You can soften an image to resemble a photo taken with a soft focus lens.



1. Select the image(s) you want to enhance.

➡ Selecting Images, PDF Files and Videos

2. Click **Special Filters** at the bottom of the screen.

The **Special Image Filters** window appears.



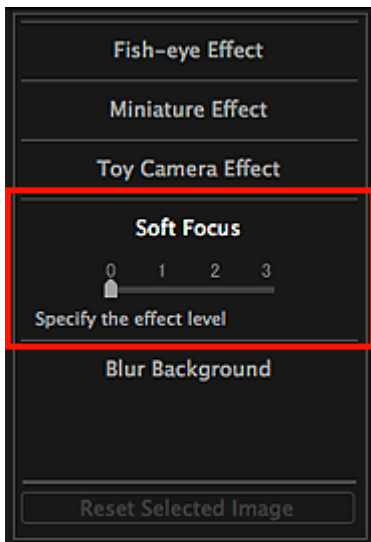
3. Select the image you want to enhance from the Selected Images area.

The selected image appears in the Preview area.

Note

- If only one image is selected, only the preview appears and the Selected Images area does not appear.

4. Click **Soft Focus**.



5. Move the slider to adjust the level.

The entire image is enhanced to resemble a photo taken with a soft focus lens, and the  (Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

 Note

- Click  (Display Comparison Screen) to display the images before and after the enhancement side by side so that you can compare and check the result.

6. Click **Save Selected Image** or **Save All Filtered Images**.

Enhanced images are saved as new files.

 Note

- To save only the image(s) you like, select it (them) and click **Save Selected Image**. Click **Save All Filtered Images** to save all the enhanced images at one time.
- The enhanced image(s) can be saved in JPEG/Exif format only.

7. Click **Exit**.

 Important

- If the enhanced image(s) is (are) not saved, the enhancement(s) will be deleted.

Related Topic

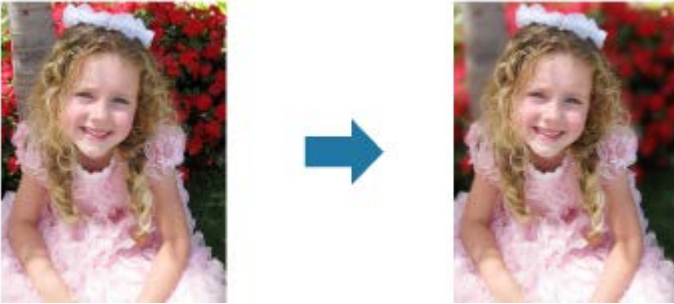
- [Special Image Filters Window](#)

A085

My Image Garden

Blurring the Background

You can blur the background to emphasize the subject or specific areas.



Note

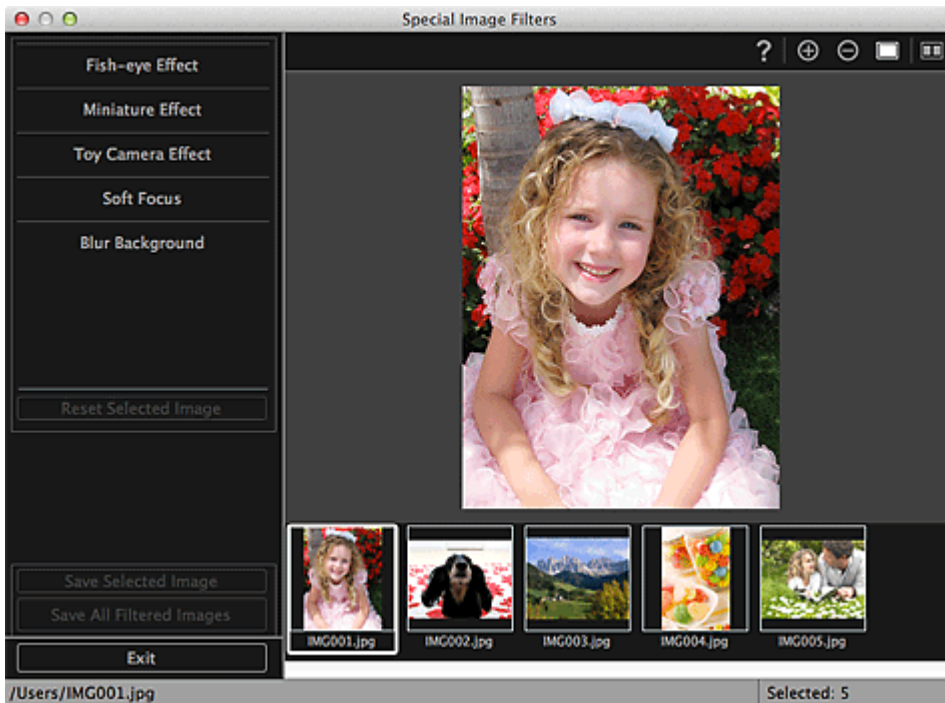
- Areas may not be specified as intended depending on how you surround them.
- This filter is suitable for photos in which the subject is clearly distinguished from the background.

1. Select the image(s) you want to enhance.

➡ [Selecting Images, PDF Files and Videos](#)

2. Select (an) image(s), then click **Special Filters** at the bottom of the screen.

The **Special Image Filters** window appears.



3. Select the image you want to enhance from the Selected Images area.

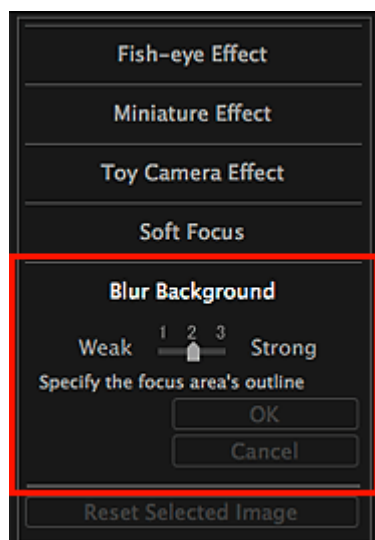
The selected image appears in the Preview area.



Note

- If only one image is selected, only the preview appears and the Selected Images area does not appear.

4. Click **Blur Background**.



 Note

- The effect level can be changed by moving the slider displayed below **Blur Background**.
- When the cursor is moved over the Preview area, the shape of the cursor changes to  (Pen).

5. Specify the focus area (area that will not be blurred) with a line by clicking along its outline.



 Note

- You can select whether to detect the outline automatically, by clicking  (Detect the Outline and Select the Area) on the Toolbar.
When the "Detect the outline and select the area" mode is selected, the outline near the cursor is automatically detected, enabling you to specify the area along the outline.
Specify the area while pressing the shift key to temporarily cancel the "Detect the outline and select the area" mode.
- When the "Detect the outline and select the area" mode is canceled, a clicked point and the next clicked point will be connected with a straight line.
- Press the delete key to undo the specified points one at a time.

6. When you finish surrounding the area, click the first point.

When you place the cursor over the first point, the cursor changes to  (Start Point of Area). When

you click it, the first and last points are connected and the focus area is specified.

Important

- You can specify up to 30 areas.

Note

- Double-click the last point to connect the first and last points automatically.
- Click  (Cancel the Selected Area) to delete the specified area.
- To edit the specified area, perform the operations below.
Moving a point: Drag the point to the target position
Adding a point: Place the cursor over the line of the specified area; when the cursor changes to  (Add a Point), drag it to the target position
Deleting a point: Drag the point to a point next to it, where the cursor changes to  (Delete a Point)
- When an area is created within a created area, the inner area will also be blurred.

7. Click **OK**.

The background outside the specified area(s) is blurred, and the  (Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- Click  (Display Comparison Screen) to display the images before and after the enhancement side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click **Cancel** to undo the enhancement. Enhancements made with other functions are retained.

8. Click **Save Selected Image** or **Save All Filtered Images**.

Enhanced images are saved as new files.

Note

- To save only the image(s) you like, select it (them) and click **Save Selected Image**. Click **Save All Filtered Images** to save all the enhanced images at one time.
- The enhanced image(s) can be saved in JPEG/Exif format only.

9. Click **Exit**.

Important

- If the enhanced image(s) is (are) not saved, the enhancement(s) will be deleted.

Related Topic

 [Special Image Filters Window](#)

Page top 

Creating/Editing PDF Files

You can create PDF files from images saved on a computer. You can also add pages to or delete pages from the created PDF files and rearrange pages.

Important

- You can create or edit up to 99 pages of a PDF file at one time.
- For PDF files, only those created in My Image Garden or IJ Scan Utility are supported. PDF files created or edited in other applications are not supported.

Note

- File formats that can be selected are PDF, JPEG, TIFF and PNG.

1. Select the image(s) from which you want to create (a) PDF file(s), or the PDF file(s) you want to edit.

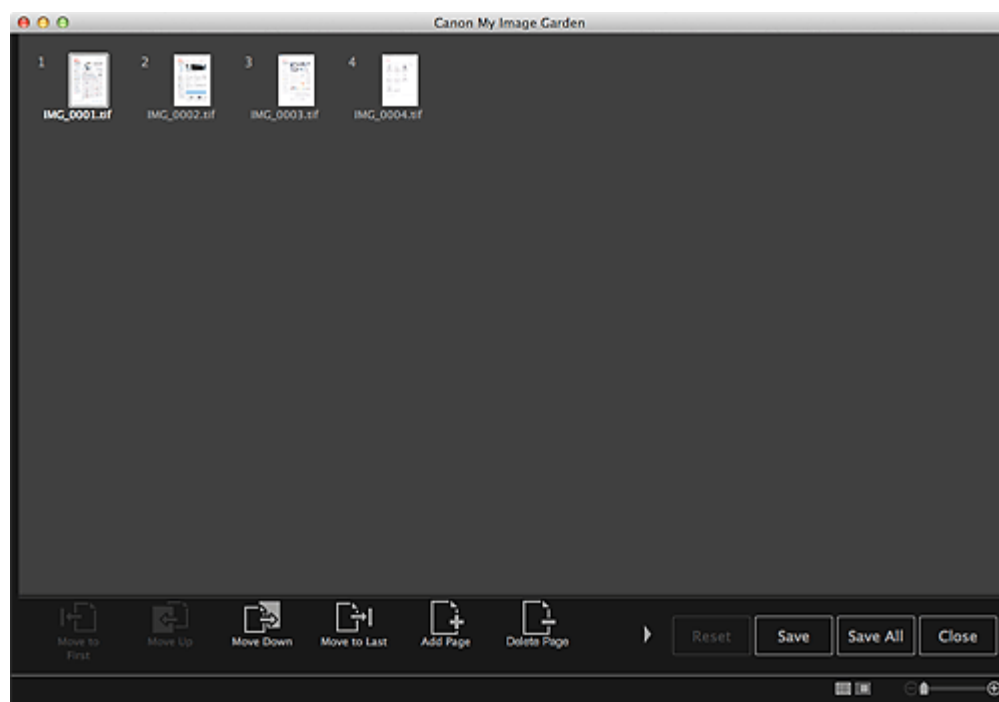
➡ [Selecting Images, PDF Files and Videos](#)

Important

- You cannot use images whose number of pixels in the vertical or horizontal direction is 10501 or more.

2. Click **Create/Edit PDF File** at the bottom of the screen.

The view switches to **Create/Edit PDF File**.



3. Add or delete pages as required.

When adding existing images or PDF files

Click **Add Page** at the bottom of the screen. After the **Open** dialog appears, select the image(s) or PDF file(s) you want to add, then click **Open**.

When deleting pages

Select the image(s), then click **Delete Page** at the bottom of the screen.

4. Change the page order as required.

You can change the page order by clicking a page then using **Move to First**, **Move Up**, **Move Down** or **Move to Last** at the bottom left of the screen.

You can also change the page order by dragging and dropping a page to the target location.

5. Click **Save** or **Save All**.

When saving only the selected page(s)

Click **Save** to display the **Save** dialog.

When saving all pages

Click **Save All** to display the **Save** dialog.

6. Specify the save settings.

➡ [Save Dialog \(Create/Edit PDF File View\)](#)

7. Click **Save**.

The PDF file(s) is (are) saved, and the **Create/Edit PDF File** view reappears.

8. Click **Close**.

The **Create/Edit PDF File** view closes.

The **PDF** icon appears on the upper left of the thumbnails of saved PDF files.

Related Topic

🔗 [Create/Edit PDF File View](#)

Page top ▲

Extracting Text from Images (OCR Function)

Scan text in images and display it in TextEdit (included with Mac OS).

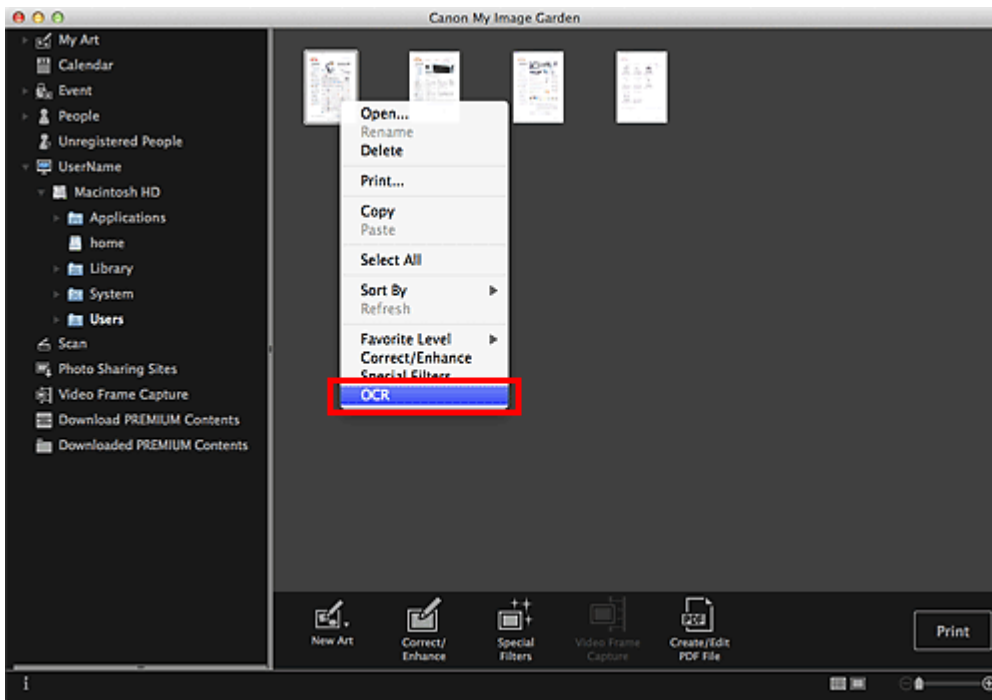
Important

- PDF files cannot be converted to text.
- Text conversion may not be possible depending on the size of the selected image.

1. Display the image you want to convert into text.

➡ [Selecting Images, PDF Files and Videos](#)

2. Control-click the image you want to convert into text, then click **OCR** from the displayed menu.



TextEdit (included with Mac OS) starts and editable text appears.

Note

- Only text written in languages that can be selected in the **Advanced Settings** tab of the **Preferences** dialog can be extracted to TextEdit (included with Mac OS). Click **Settings...** on the **Advanced Settings** tab and specify the language according to the language of the document to be scanned.
When scanning multiple documents, you can collect the extracted text into one file.
➡ [Preferences Dialog](#)
- Text displayed in TextEdit (included with Mac OS) is for guidance only. Text in the image of the following types of documents may not be detected correctly.
 - Documents containing text with font size outside the range of 8 points to 40 points (at 300 dpi)
 - Slanted documents
 - Documents placed upside down or documents with text in the wrong orientation (rotated characters)
 - Documents containing special fonts, effects, italics, or hand-written text
 - Documents with narrow line spacing
 - Documents with colors in the background of text

Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites

You can search for images on photo sharing sites on the Internet and download the images you want to print.

Important

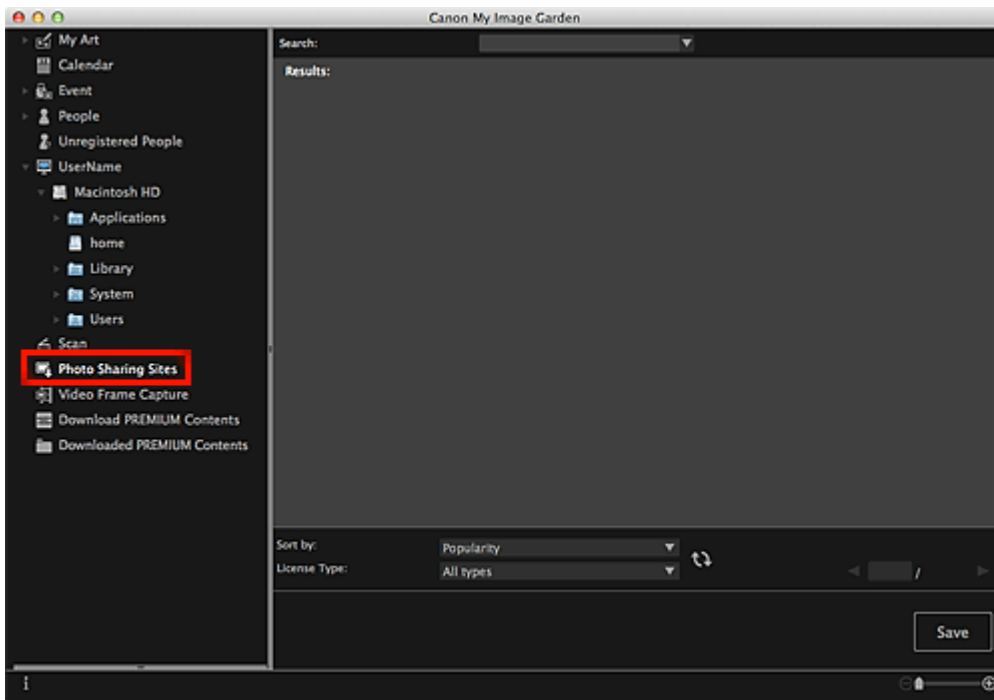
- Internet connection is required to use this function. Internet connection fees apply.
- This function may not be available in some regions.
- It is unlawful to reproduce or edit the copyrighted work of another person without permission from the copyright holder, except for personal use, use within the home, or other use within the limited scope as defined by the copyright.
Additionally, reproducing or editing photographs of people may infringe on portrait rights.
- You may be required permission of way to use the work from copyright holder when using the work of others except for personal use, use within the home, or other use within the limited scope as defined by the copyright. Please check the details carefully of the web page of work in the photo sharing site.
Please also check terms of service in the photo sharing site before using the work of others.
Canon is not responsible for any copyright issues arising from the use of this function.
- This application uses the Flickr API but is not endorsed or certified by Flickr.

1. Start My Image Garden.

➡ Starting My Image Garden

2. Click **Photo Sharing Sites**.

The view switches to **Photo Sharing Sites**



3. Enter the search text in **Search**, then press the return key.

Search starts, then the images that match the search text appear in the Search Results area.

Important

Some images, such as images in formats other than JPEG, do not appear.

Note

- The number of images that match the search text may be small depending on the language of the search text. In that case, entering the search text in English may increase search results.

4. Select **Sort by** and **License Type** at the bottom of the screen as required, then click  (Refresh).

Results in the Search Results area are refreshed.

Note

- Click  (Previous Page) or  (Next Page) to display the previous/next page. Alternatively, enter a page number in the page number entry box, then press the return key to display the specified page.

5. Select the image(s) you want to download.

Important

- You can select up to 30 images at one time.

6. Click **Save** at the bottom right of the screen.

The **Save** dialog appears.

7. Specify the save settings.

 [Save Dialog \(Photo Sharing Sites View\)](#)

8. Click **Save**.

The selected image(s) is (are) saved to your computer, and the **Photo Sharing Sites** view reappears.

Note

- Downloaded images can be saved in JPEG format only.

Note

- You can print downloaded images or create calendars and collages and print them. See "[Creating and Printing Items](#)" for details.

Related Topic

 [Photo Sharing Sites View](#)

Page top 

My Image Garden Screens

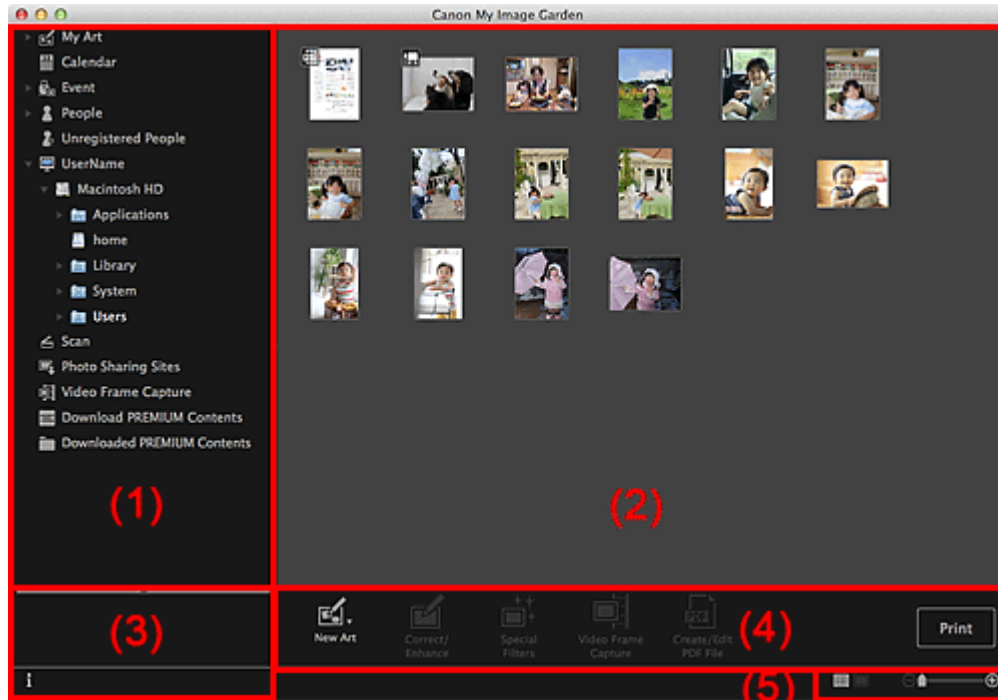
- Main Screen
- Correct/Enhance Images Window
- Special Image Filters Window
- Create/Edit PDF File View
- Print Settings Dialog
- Preferences Dialog

A094

My Image Garden

Main Screen

This is the screen in which you handle various functions of My Image Garden. You can organize, edit or print images and your items, or scan documents and photos by operating in the corresponding area.



- (1) Global Menu
- (2) Display/Operation Area
- (3) Information Area
- (4) Operation Buttons
- (5) Display Size Setting Bar

(1) Global Menu

Displays a list of functions available in My Image Garden and folders on your computer.

My Art

Click  (Right Arrow) to display the titles of created collages, cards, etc.
When you click a title, the view switches to **My Art** and you can edit or print the item.

➡ My Art View

Calendar

Switches to the **Calendar** view in which you can browse images, documents, videos, etc. saved on your computer in a calendar by date. You can also register events.

➡ Calendar View

Event

Click  (Right Arrow) to display the registered events.
When you click an event name, the view switches to **Event** and you can browse the images registered to the event name.

➡ Event View

People

Switches to the **People** view in which the registered people appear as thumbnails.

➡ People View

Click  (Right Arrow) to display the registered people.

When you click the name of a person, the view switches to the expanded display of **People** and you can browse the images registered to the person.

➡ [Expanded Display](#)

Unregistered People

Switches to the **Unregistered People** view in which images whose face areas have been automatically detected appear. You can register many people at one time.

➡ [Unregistered People View](#)

Note

- **Identifying people...** appears instead of **Unregistered People** during image analysis, such as when new images are saved to the computer.
-

Computer Name

Click  (Right Arrow) to display folders on your computer.

When you click a folder, the view switches to the folder view and you can browse images and documents in the folder.

➡ [Folder View](#)

Scan

Switches to the **Scan** view in which you can scan photos and documents easily.

➡ [Scan View](#)

Photo Sharing Sites

Switches to the **Photo Sharing Sites** view in which you can download images from photo sharing sites on the Internet.

➡ [Photo Sharing Sites View](#)

Video Frame Capture

You can switch to the **Video Frame Capture** view while capturing still images from a video.

➡ [Video Frame Capture View](#)

Download PREMIUM Contents

Switches to the **Download PREMIUM Contents** view in which you can download PREMIUM Contents.

➡ [Download PREMIUM Contents View](#)

Important

- Internet connection is required to download PREMIUM Contents. Internet connection fees apply.
-

Downloaded PREMIUM Contents

Switches to the **Downloaded PREMIUM Contents** view in which you can edit or print downloaded PREMIUM Contents.

➡ [Downloaded PREMIUM Contents View](#)

Important

- You may only use downloaded or printed PREMIUM Contents for personal purposes. You may not use the content for commercial purposes.
-

(2) Display/Operation Area

Displays the images, documents, items, etc. saved in the function or folder clicked in Global Menu.

You can edit images, documents, items, etc. via the operation buttons, control-click menu or drag-and-drop.

(3) Information Area

Displays the details such as file names of images, documents and items as well as dates and times they were saved.

(Information)

You can show or hide information area.

(4) Operation Buttons

Displays the buttons used for editing or printing images, documents and items. The buttons displayed vary depending on the function clicked in Global Menu.

(5) Display Size Setting Bar

Displays the buttons for switching the view of images, documents and items displayed in the Preview area or for changing the display size.



Note

- Thumbnail view (miniature view) and details view (preview) are available.
 - You can also switch the view by double-clicking a thumbnail or preview displayed in the Preview area.
-

Page top ▲

My Art View

You can edit or print items such as collages and cards.

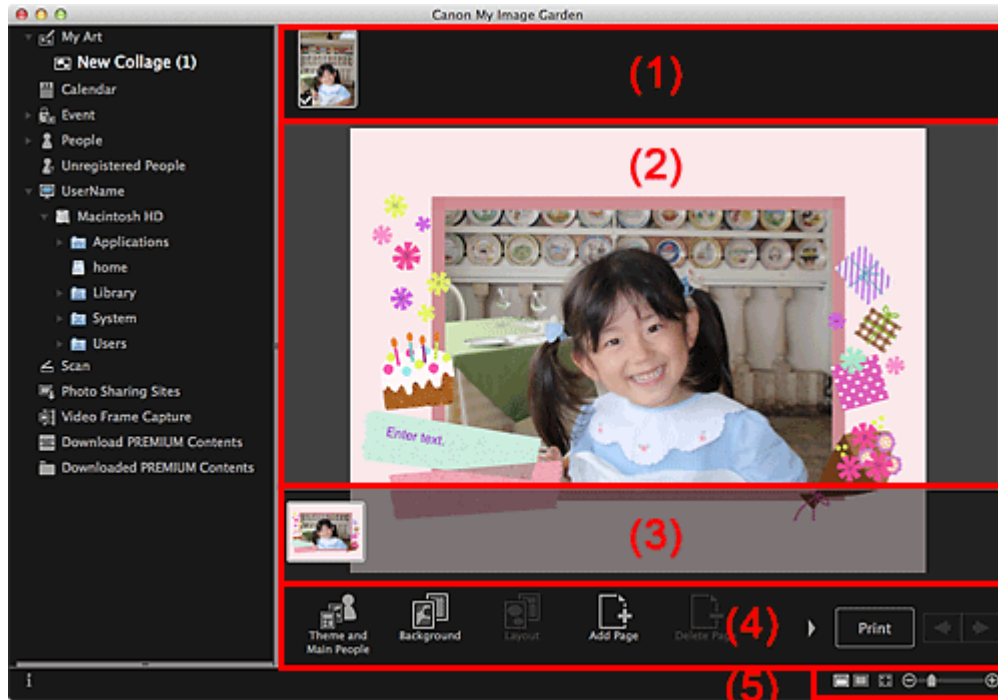


Important

- **Background** may not be clicked depending on the type and theme of your item.

Switch to the **My Art** view by one of the following operations

- Click a title displayed below **My Art** on the left side of the screen
- Click **OK** in the **Select Theme and Main People** dialog displayed by clicking **New Art** at the bottom left of each view
- Select a PREMIUM Content in the **Downloaded PREMIUM Contents** view, then click **Edit**
- Click a pattern displayed in Image Display of Quick Menu



- (1) Materials Area
- (2) Edit Area
- (3) Page Thumbnails Area
- (4) Operation Buttons
- (5) Display Size Setting Bar

(1) Materials Area

Displays the thumbnails of images that can be used for your item. A checkmark appears on the images in use.



Note

- You can drag and drop images to the layout frames in the Edit area to replace images.
- You can also add images for use by dragging and dropping them to the title on the left side of the screen.
- When you select **Delete** from the menu displayed by control-clicking a thumbnail, it will disappear

(2) Edit Area

Displays your item's preview in which you can enter text or change the orientation, position and size of images. You can also correct/enhance or scan and insert images from the menu displayed by control-clicking an image or layout frame.

(3) Page Thumbnails Area

Displays the pages in your item as thumbnails. When you click a thumbnail, a preview of the page appears in the Edit area. Click the bar at the top of the Page Thumbnails area to show or hide the area.

(4) Operation Buttons



Note

- The buttons displayed vary depending on the item being edited.
- **Background** can be clicked only when a page is selected in the Edit area.
- **Delete Page** can be clicked only when there are multiple pages.
- **Correct/Enhance** and **Special Filters** can be clicked only when an image is selected. When multiple images are selected, only the last selected image can be corrected, enhanced or adjusted.
- Click  (Left Scroll) or  (Right Scroll) to display the hidden buttons.



Theme and Main People

Displays the **Select Theme and Main People** dialog in which you can set your item's theme and main people, paper size and paper orientation.

➡ [Select Theme and Main People Dialog](#)



Background

Displays the **Select Background** dialog in which you can change the background of the page being edited.

➡ [Select Background Dialog](#)



Layout

Displays the **Select Layout** dialog in which you can change the layout of the page being edited.

➡ [Select Layout Dialog](#)



Add Page

You can add new pages after the page displayed in the Edit area.



Delete Page

You can delete the page displayed in the Edit area.



Auto Layout

When you select a layout pattern, images will be automatically placed in the layout frames displayed in the Edit area.

You can select from the following three types of layout pattern.

- **Display recommendation**
- **Material order**
- **Date order**

Note

- When you select **Display recommendation**, a suitable image is selected for and placed in each layout frame of the item.
-



Correct/Enhance

Displays the **Correct/Enhance Images** window in which you can correct or enhance images.

➡ [Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)



Special Filters

Displays the **Special Image Filters** window in which you can enhance images with special filters.

➡ [Special Image Filters Window](#)



Advanced...

Displays the **Advanced Settings** dialog in which you can specify the settings for stickers, photo layouts, calendars and disc labels.

Photo Layout

You can set whether to print dates on all images or specify the position, size, color, etc. for dates.

➡ [Advanced Settings Dialog \(Photo Layout\)](#)

Calendar

You can set holidays and the display format for the calendar.

➡ [Advanced Settings Dialog \(Calendar\)](#)

Stickers

You can set whether to use the same image in all layout frames within the page.

➡ [Advanced Settings Dialog \(Stickers\)](#)

Disc Label

You can set the area to print.

➡ [Advanced Settings Dialog \(Disc Label\)](#)



Undo

Undoes the last operation.

Each click restores the previous state.

Print

Displays the print settings dialog from which you can print items.

➡ [Print Settings Dialog](#)



(Previous File/Next File)

Switches the displayed image when there are multiple pages or images.

(5) Display Size Setting Bar



(Thumbnail View)

Switches to the thumbnail view in which you can edit items.



(Details View)

Switches the view to preview the image.



(Whole Image View)

Fits the preview to the area size.



(Reduce/Enlarge)

Click  (Reduce) or  (Enlarge) to reduce or enlarge the display size. You can also freely change the display size by dragging the slider.



Note

- See "[Editing Items](#)" for how to edit items.
 - To delete items, control-click the title below **My Art** on the left side of the screen, then select **Delete** from the displayed menu.
-

Related Topic

 [Creating and Printing Items](#)

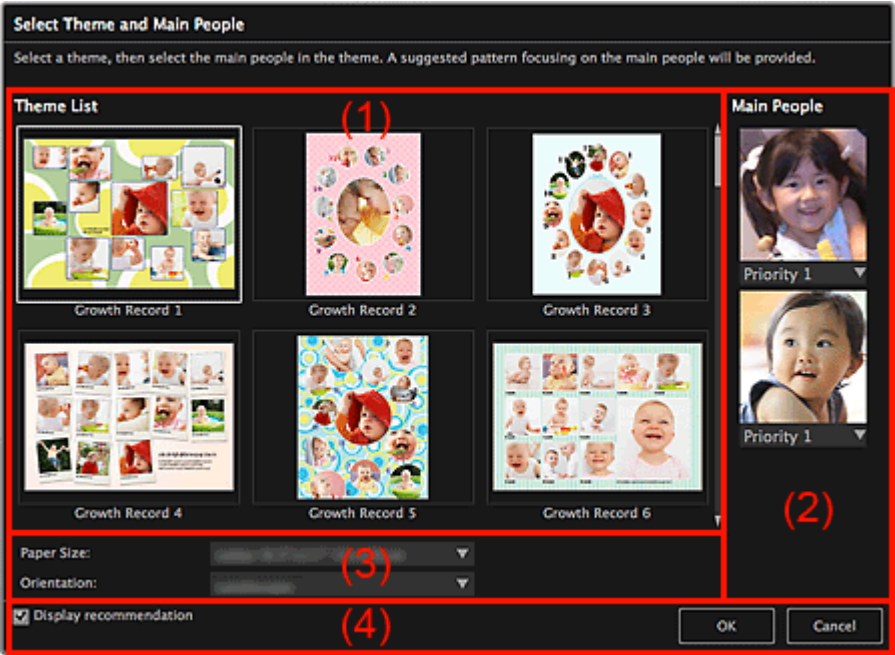
Page top 

Select Theme and Main People Dialog

You can set your item's theme and main people, paper size, etc.

Display the **Select Theme and Main People** dialog by one of the following operations.

- Select images, then click the item you want to create from **New Art** at the bottom of the screen
- Click **Theme and Main People** at the bottom of the **My Art** view



- (1) Theme Setting Area
- (2) Main People Settings Area
- (3) Paper Settings Area
- (4) Display recommendation

(1) Theme Setting Area

Theme List

Displays a list of themes. You can select the theme you want to use.

Note

- The themes displayed vary depending on the item.

(2) Main People Settings Area

Main People

Displays the thumbnails of the detected face areas when images of people for whom image analysis has been performed are selected.

Click  (Down Arrow) below a thumbnail, then select **Priority 1** or **Priority 2** to set the priority of the photo. Leave the field blank if not setting the priority.

An item is automatically created by placing photos with higher priority in the center.

(3) Paper Settings Area

Paper Size

You can select the paper size.

Orientation

You can select the paper orientation.

(4) Display recommendation

Select this checkbox to place images selected for the item in a state suitable for the layout frames of the item.

When your item is a photo layout or sticker and the number of images selected for the item or displayed in the Materials area is larger than the number of layout frames in a page, one or more pages will be automatically added.



Note

- When **Identifying people...** appears at **Unregistered People** in Global Menu, the result may not be as expected since automatic placement does not apply to images for which analysis has not been completed.
 - See "[Creating and Printing Items](#)" for how to create new items.
-

Related Topic

- 🌱 [Setting the Theme and Main People](#)

Page top ▲

Select Background Dialog

You can change the background of your item.

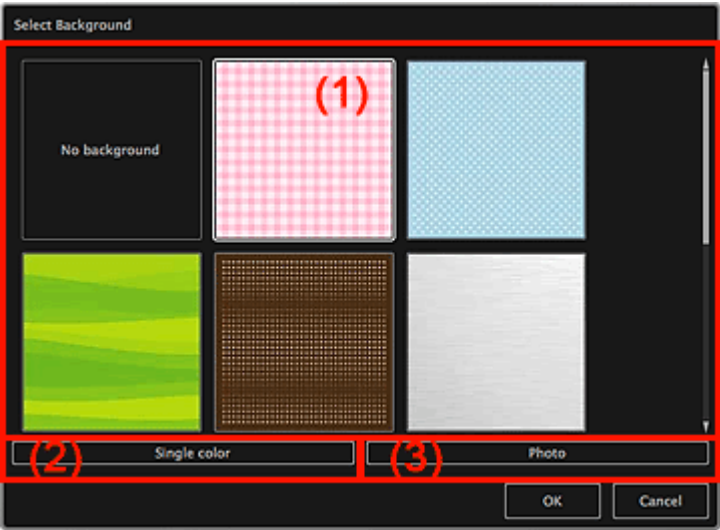
In the **My Art** view, click **Background** at the bottom of the screen to display the **Select Background** dialog.

Important

- **Background** may not be clicked depending on the type and theme of your item.

Note

- **Single color** and **Photo** do not appear depending on the item type and selected theme.



(1) Background Pattern Selection Area

(2) **Single color**

(3) **Photo**

(1) Background Pattern Selection Area

You can select the image you want to use as the background.
The background will not be set when **No background** is selected.

(2) Single color

The **Colors** dialog appears. Select the color you want to use as the background.

(3) Photo

Select this checkbox to use an image as the background.

In the Edit area of **My Art** view, you can scan and insert items such as photos, or drag and drop the image you want to set as the background from the Materials area.

A099

My Image Garden

Select Layout Dialog

You can change the layout of your item.

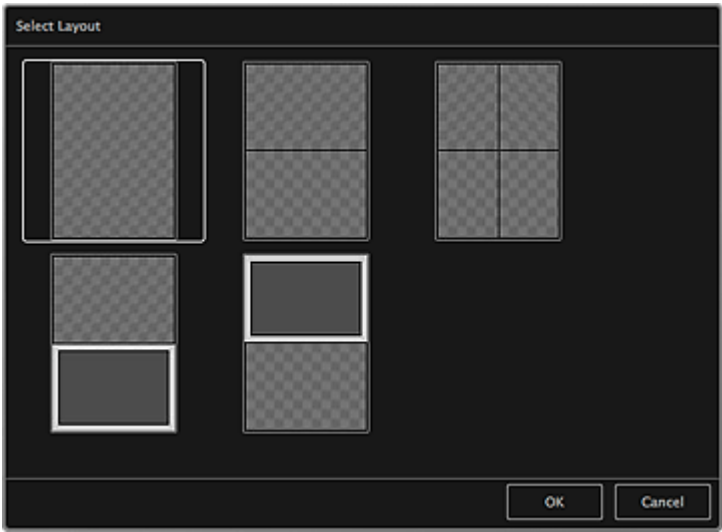
Click the page you want to change from the Page Thumbnails area of the **My Art** view, then click **Layout** at the bottom of the screen to display the **Select Layout** dialog.

Important

- **Layout** may not be clicked depending on the type and theme of your item.

Note

- The number and types of layouts displayed may vary depending on the item and selected theme.



Related Topic

➤ [Changing Layout](#)

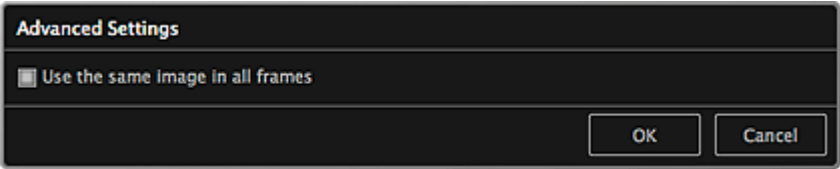
A100

My Image Garden

Advanced Settings Dialog (Stickers)

You can use the same image in all sticker frames.

In the **My Art** view, display stickers and click **Advanced...** at the bottom of the screen to display the **Advanced Settings** dialog.



Use the same image in all frames

Select this checkbox to use the same image in all frames within the page.

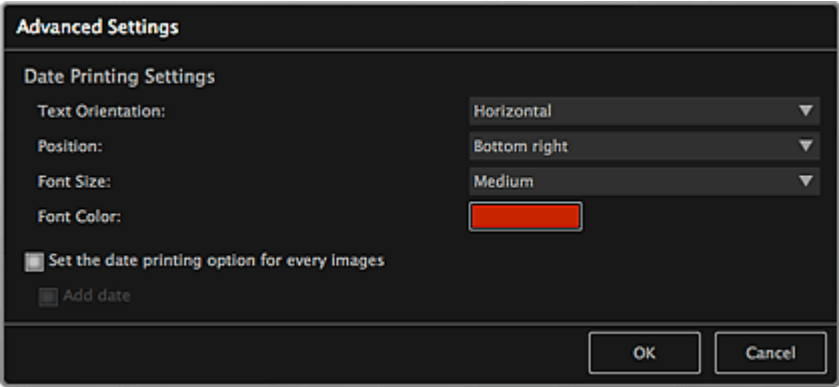
Related Topic

 [Printing Stickers](#)

Advanced Settings Dialog (Photo Layout)

When you want to add dates to the images to be used for layout printing, you can specify the position, size, color, etc. for the date.

In the **My Art** view, display a photo layout and click **Advanced...** at the bottom of the screen to display the **Advanced Settings** dialog.



Date Printing Settings

You can set how to print the date.

Text Orientation

You can select the orientation of the date.

Position

You can select the position to print the date.
The print position of the date does not change even if images are rotated.

Font Size

You can select the size of the date.

Font Color

You can set the color of the date.



The **Colors** dialog appears. Select a color.

Set the date printing option for every images

Add date

Select this checkbox to add dates to all images placed in the layout frames.

Note

- The date is the image shooting date recorded as Exif data. If there is no Exif data, the date of last update to the image will be printed.

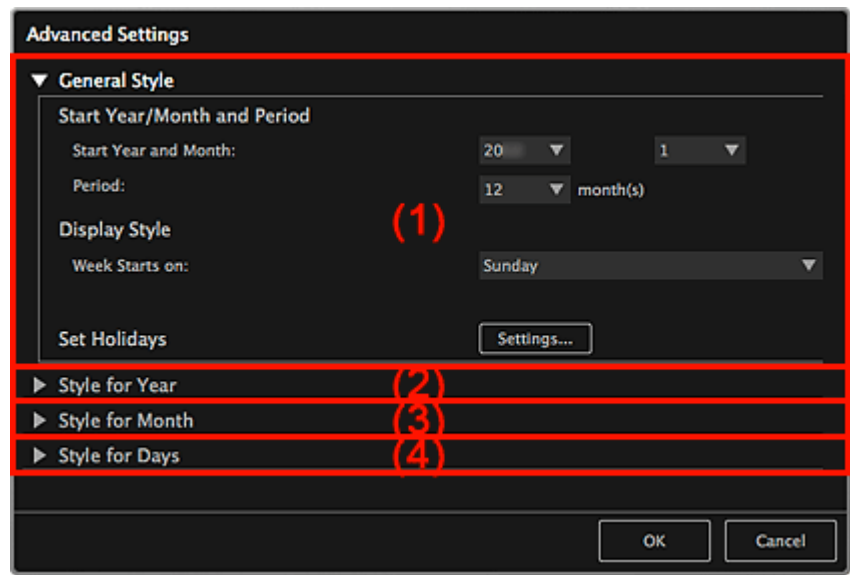
Related Topic

🌿 [Printing Photos in a Variety of Layouts](#)

Advanced Settings Dialog (Calendar)

You can specify basic settings, font, font color, display format, etc. for the calendar.

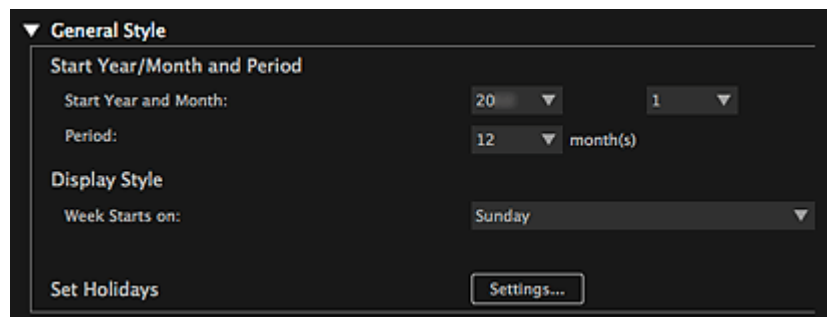
In the **My Art** view, display a calendar and click **Advanced...** at the bottom of the screen to display the **Advanced Settings** dialog.



- (1) General Style
- (2) Style for Year
- (3) Style for Month
- (4) Style for Days

(1) General Style

You can set the start year and month, display format of the week, holidays, etc. for the calendar.



Start Year/Month and Period

Start Year and Month

You can select the start year and month for the calendar.

Period

You can select the number of months for the calendar.

Display Style

Week Starts on

You can set the start day of the week. You can select **Sunday** or **Monday**.

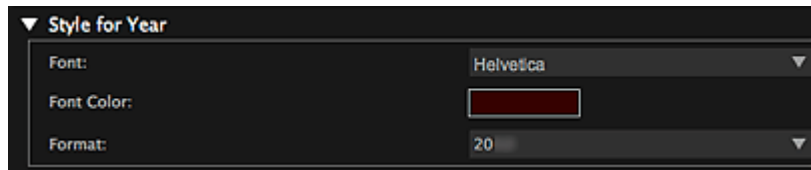
Set Holidays

Click **Settings...** to display the **Advanced Settings** dialog (Calendar holiday settings) in which you can set holidays for the calendar.

➡ [Advanced Settings Dialog \(Calendar Holiday Settings\)](#)

(2) Style for Year

You can set the font, font color and display format to be applied to the year.



Font

You can select the font type to be applied to the year.

Font Color

You can select the font type to be applied to the year.



(Color Setting)

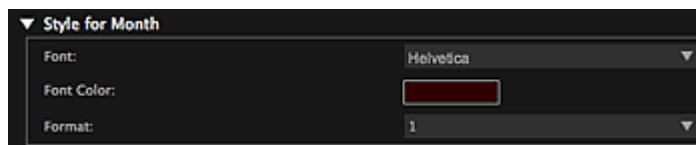
The **Colors** dialog appears. Select a color.

Format

Select the display format of the year.

(3) Style for Month

You can set the font, font color and display format to be applied to the month name.



Font

You can select the font type to be applied to the month name.

Font Color

You can select the font color of the month name.



(Color Setting)

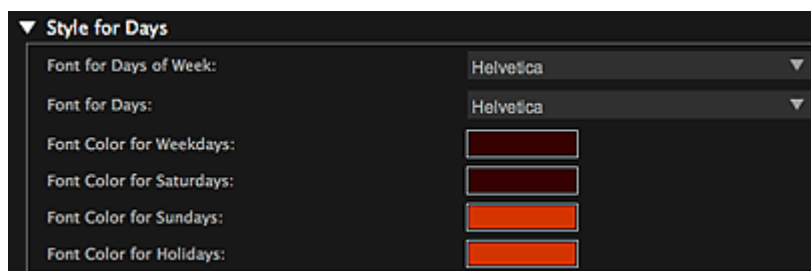
The **Colors** dialog appears. Select a color.

Format

You can select the display format of the month.

(4) Style for Days

You can set the font and font color to use for the days of the week and dates.



Font for Days of Week/Font for Days

You can select the font to use for the days of the week and dates.

Font Color for Weekdays/Font Color for Saturdays/Font Color for Sundays/Font Color for Holidays

You can select the font color of the days of the week and dates.



(Color Setting)

The **Colors** dialog appears. Select a color.

Related Topic

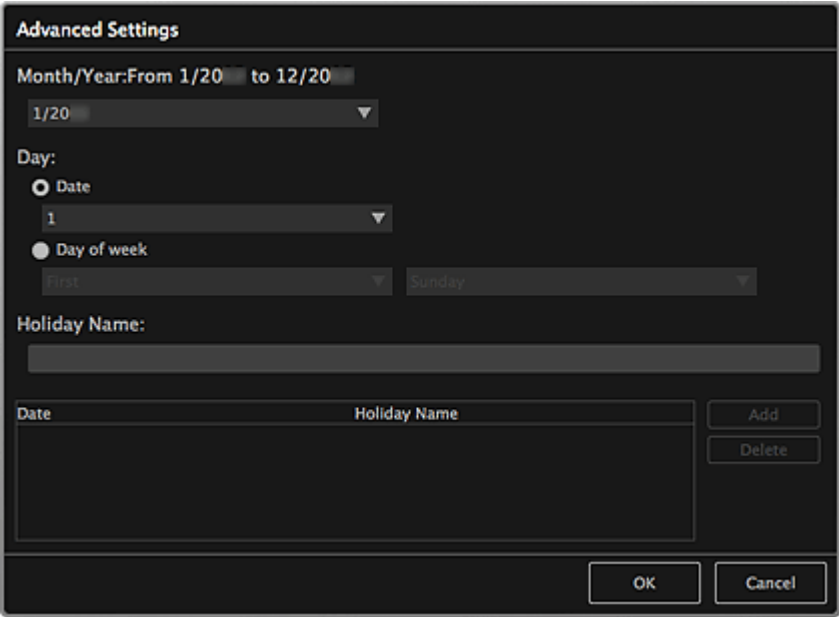
 [Printing Calendars](#)

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Settings Dialog (Calendar Holiday Settings)

You can set holidays for the calendar.

In the **My Art** view, display the **Advanced Settings** dialog and click **Settings...** in **General Style** to display the holiday settings screen.



Month/Year

Displays the calendar period. You can select the year and month for which to add or edit holidays.

Day

You can specify the date to add or edit as a holiday.

Date

You can specify the holiday to add or edit by date.
Dates that appear in the list vary depending on the selected month.

Day of week

You can specify the holiday to add or edit by week number and the day of the week.

Holiday Name

You can enter the name of the holiday.
When editing a saved holiday, the name saved for the holiday appears.

Date

Displays a list of dates saved as holidays.

Holiday Name

Displays the names of the saved holidays.

Add

Newly adds the holiday with the specified settings.

Delete

Deletes the holiday selected in the list on the left.

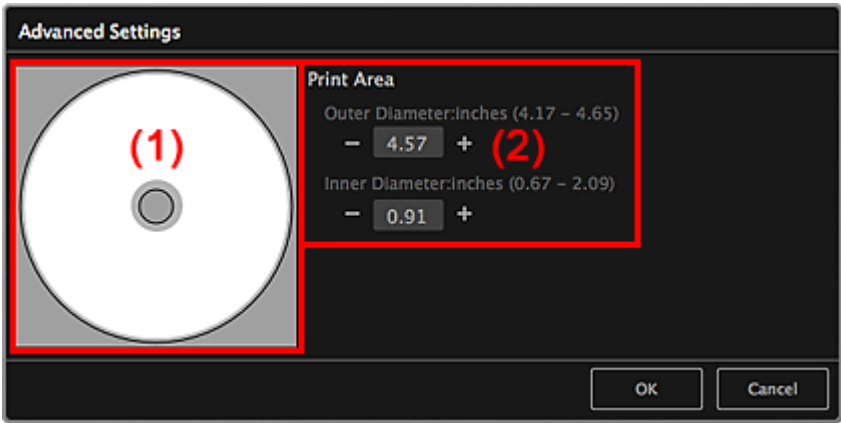
Related Topic

[Printing Calendars](#)

Advanced Settings Dialog (Disc Label)

You can set the print area for disc labels.

In the **My Art** view, display a disc label and click **Advanced...** at the bottom of the screen to display the **Advanced Settings** dialog.



- (1) [Preview](#)
- (2) [Print Area Settings Area](#)

(1) Preview

You can check the set print area.
The white area represents the print area.

(2) Print Area Settings Area

Outer Diameter

You can set the outer diameter of the print area in 0.01 inch (0.1 mm) increments.

Inner Diameter

You can set the inner diameter of the print area in 0.01 inch (0.1 mm) increments.

⏮ ⏭ (Decrease)/(Increase)

Adjusts the size. The size increases or decreases in 0.01 inch (0.1 mm) increments with each click.
You can also enter the values directly.

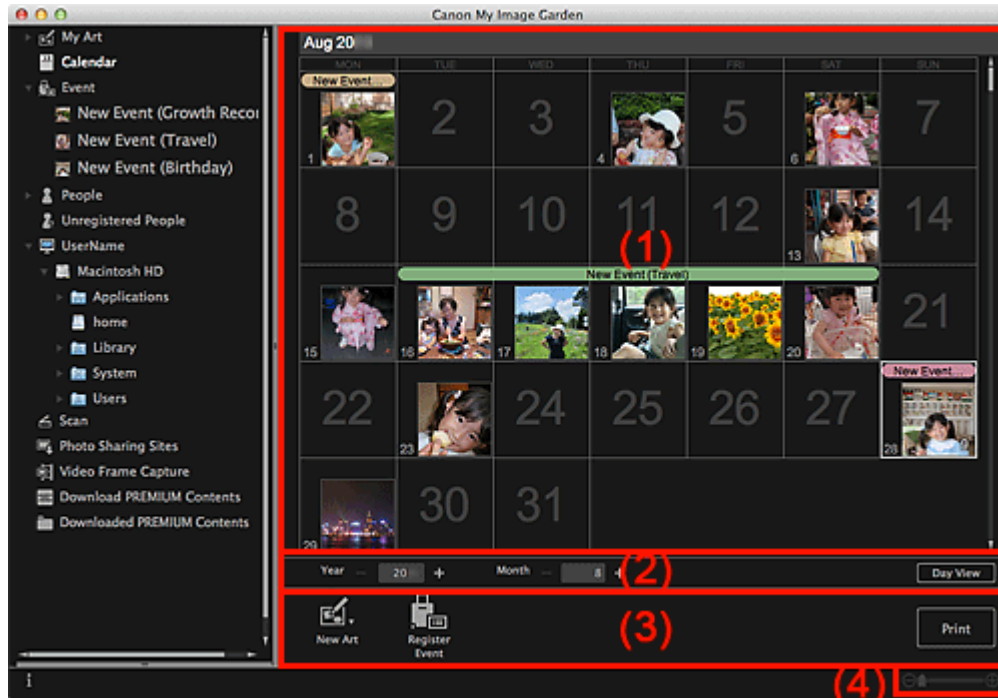
Related Topic

- [Printing Disc Labels](#)

Calendar View

You can browse or organize images, PDF files and videos by date of shooting or creation.

Click **Calendar** on the left side of the screen to switch to the **Calendar** view.



- (1) Calendar Area
- (2) Calendar View Switching Area
- (3) Operation Buttons
- (4) Display Size Setting Bar

(1) Calendar Area

Displays the calendar in Month View or Day View. You can switch between Month View and Day View with the button in the Calendar View Switching area.

In Month View

For each date of the calendar, a thumbnail of one of the images, PDF files or videos shot or created on the date appears.

When you place the cursor over a date, the total number of files (images, PDF files and videos) contained in the date appears at the bottom right of the thumbnail. Double-click the date to switch to the thumbnail view of those files.

When an event is registered, the event name appears in the calendar.



Note

- When there are multiple images, PDF files or videos shot or created on the same date, the thumbnail of a file with the oldest date and time of creation appears.

In Day View

For each date of the calendar, thumbnails of the images, PDF files and videos shot or created on the date appear.

(2) Calendar View Switching Area

(Decrease)/(Increase)

Increases or decreases the numbers for year, month and day. The calendar view switches according to the specified year, month and day with each click.

Note

- You can also enter the year, month and day directly.
-

Day View

Switches to the Day View calendar.

Note

- This can be clicked only when a date is selected in the Month View calendar.
-

Month View

Switches to the Month View calendar.

(3) Operation Buttons

The buttons displayed vary between Month View and Day View.

In Month View



New Art

You can create items such as collages and cards using the images contained in a date. Select an item to create to display the **Select Theme and Main People** dialog in which you can set the theme and main people of the item.

➡ [Select Theme and Main People Dialog](#)

The view switches to **My Art** when selection of the theme and main people is completed.

➡ [My Art View](#)



Register Event

Displays the **Register Event** dialog in which you can register event information to the selected date.

➡ [Register Event Dialog](#)

Note

- You can also select multiple dates for registration.
-

In Day View

Note

- **New Art** appears only in the thumbnail view.
 - **Specify Person** and  (Previous File/Next File) appear only in the details view.
 - **Correct/Enhance** and **Special Filters** can be clicked only when an image is selected.
 - **Create/Edit PDF File** can be clicked only when an image or PDF file is selected.
 - **Video Frame Capture** can be clicked only when a video is selected.
-



New Art

You can create items such as collages and cards using images.

Select an item to create to display the **Select Theme and Main People** dialog in which you can set the theme and main people of the item.

➡ [Select Theme and Main People Dialog](#)

The view switches to **My Art** when selection of the theme and main people is completed.

➡ [My Art View](#)



Correct/Enhance

Displays the **Correct/Enhance Images** window in which you can correct or enhance images.

➡ [Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)



Special Filters

Displays the **Special Image Filters** window in which you can enhance images with special filters.

➡ [Special Image Filters Window](#)



Video Frame Capture

Switches to the **Video Frame Capture** view in which you can crop still images from a video.

➡ [Video Frame Capture View](#)



Create/Edit PDF File

Displays the **Create/Edit PDF File** view in which you can create or edit PDF files.

➡ [Create/Edit PDF File View](#)



Important

- For PDF files, only those created in My Image Garden or IJ Scan Utility are supported. PDF files created or edited in other applications are not supported.



Specify Person

Displays a white frame in preview with which you can specify the face area of a person and register the name.

Print

Displays the print settings dialog from which you can print images and PDF files.

➡ [Print Settings Dialog](#)



(Previous File/Next File)

Switches the displayed image when there are multiple images, PDF files or videos.

(4) Display Size Setting Bar



(Thumbnail View)

In Day View, switches the view to the thumbnails of images, PDF files and videos.



(Details View)

In Day View, switches the view to preview an image, PDF file or video.



(Whole Image View)

While in the details view of Day View, fits the preview to the area size.



(Reduce/Enlarge)

Click  (Reduce) or  (Enlarge) to reduce or enlarge the display size. You can also freely change the display size by dragging the slider.



Note

- See "[Registering Events](#)" for how to register events.
- See "[Registering People from the Details View](#)" for how to register people from the details view of preview.
- See "[Create/Edit PDF File View](#)" for the details view of PDF files.
- When you display a video in the details view, the video playback panel appears and you can use 

(Stop),  (Playback) /  (Pause),  (Frame Backward),  (Frame Advance) and  (Mute) /  (Unmute).

Related Topic

-  [Registering Events](#)
-  [Event View](#)

[Page top](#) 

Register Event Dialog

You can register the event information to images.

Select the date for registration in the **Calendar** view, then click **Register Event** at the bottom of the screen to display the **Register Event** dialog.

Register Event



◀ 1 / 9 ▶

Event Name:

New Event (Birthday)

Category:

Anniversary

Birthday

☒ Associate all images captured on the selected date

(3)

OK

Cancel

Note

- Events can be registered only when the **Calendar** view is set to Month View. If set to Day View, switch to Month View.

- (1) Preview Area
- (2) Event Settings Area
- (3) Associate all images captured on the selected date

(1) Preview Area

Displays an image shot or created on the selected date.

◀ ▶ (Previous Image/Next Image)

Switches images when there are multiple images.

(2) Event Settings Area

Event Name

You can enter the name of the event.

Category

You can set the category. You can select from the following.

Kids: Growth record, Entrance ceremony, Graduation, Recital, Sports day, Birthday, Others

Anniversary: Wedding, Birthday, Others

Leisure: Travel, Others

Hobby

Others

(3) Associate all images captured on the selected date

Select this checkbox to register all images contained in the selected date as the same event. The preview to check all images contained in the selected date appears.

Related Topic

- [Registering Events](#)
- [Calendar View](#)

[Page top ▲](#)

Event View

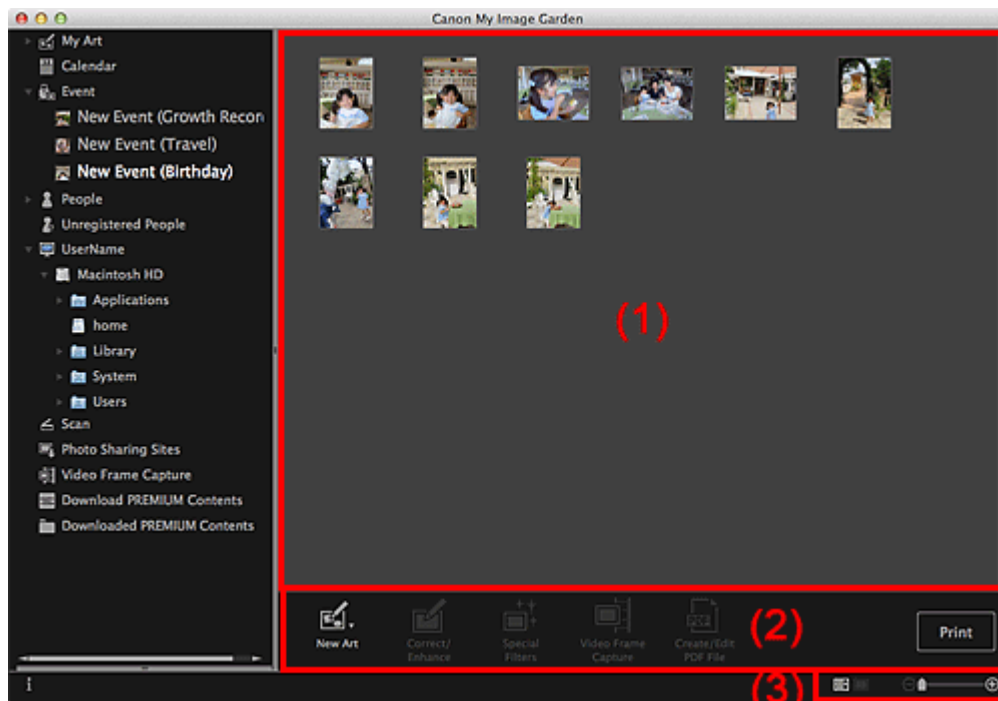
You can browse the images, PDF files and videos registered to the events set in the **Calendar** view by event.

Click an event name displayed below **Event** on the left side of the screen to switch to the **Event** view.



Note

- The **Event** view can be displayed only when an event has been registered in the **Calendar** view.



(1) Thumbnails Area

(2) Operation Buttons

(3) Display Size Setting Bar

(1) Thumbnails Area

Displays the thumbnails of images, PDF files and videos registered to an event.



Note

- When you select **Delete** from the menu displayed by control-clicking a thumbnail, it will disappear from the Thumbnails area.

(2) Operation Buttons



Note

- **New Art** appears only in the thumbnail view.
- **Specify Person** and  (Previous File/Next File) appear only in the details view.
- **Correct/Enhance** and **Special Filters** can be clicked only when an image is selected.
- **Create/Edit PDF File** can be clicked only when an image or PDF file is selected.
- **Video Frame Capture** can be clicked only when a video is selected.



New Art

You can create items such as collages and cards using images.

Select an item to create to display the **Select Theme and Main People** dialog in which you can set the theme and main people of the item.

➡ [Select Theme and Main People Dialog](#)

The view switches to **My Art** when selection of the theme and main people is completed.

➡ [My Art View](#)



Correct/Enhance

Displays the **Correct/Enhance Images** window in which you can correct or enhance images.

➡ [Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)



Special Filters

Displays the **Special Image Filters** window in which you can enhance images with special filters.

➡ [Special Image Filters Window](#)



Video Frame Capture

Switches to the **Video Frame Capture** view in which you can crop still images from a video.

➡ [Video Frame Capture View](#)



Create/Edit PDF File

Displays the **Create/Edit PDF File** view in which you can create or edit PDF files.

➡ [Create/Edit PDF File View](#)



Important

- For PDF files, only those created in My Image Garden or IJ Scan Utility are supported. PDF files created or edited in other applications are not supported.



Specify Person

Displays a white frame in preview with which you can specify the face area of a person and register the name.

Print

Displays the print settings dialog from which you can print images and PDF files.

➡ [Print Settings Dialog](#)



(Previous File/Next File)

Switches the displayed image when there are multiple images, PDF files or videos.

(3) Display Size Setting Bar



(Thumbnail View)

Switches the view to the thumbnails of images, PDF files and videos.



(Details View)

Switches the view to preview an image, PDF file or video.



(Whole Image View)

While in the details view, fits the preview to the area size.



(Reduce/Enlarge)



Click  (Reduce) or  (Enlarge) to reduce or enlarge the display size. You can also freely change the display size by dragging the slider.

Note

- See "[Registering People from the Details View](#)" for how to register people from the details view of preview.
 - See "[Create/Edit PDF File View](#)" for the details view of PDF files.
 - When you display a video in the details view, the video playback panel appears and you can use  (Stop),  (Playback) /  (Pause),  (Frame Backward),  (Frame Advance) and  (Mute) /  (Unmute).
-

Related Topic

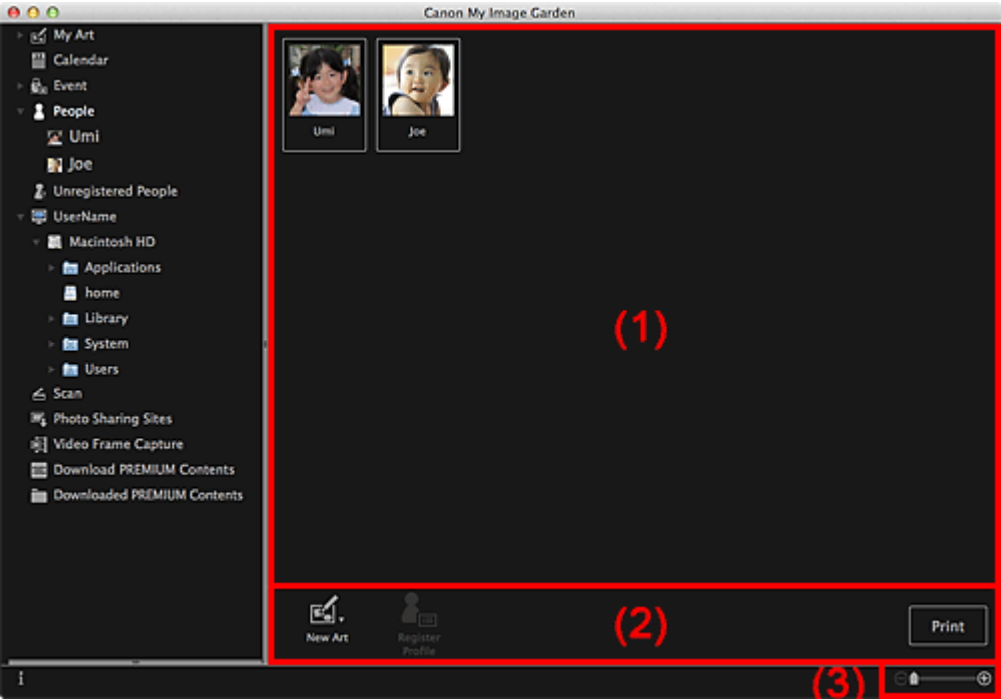
-  [Registering Events](#)
-  [Calendar View](#)

Page top 

People View

Images appear grouped by person. You can set the profiles of registered people.

Click **People** on the left side of the screen to switch to the **People** view.



- (1) Registered People Area
- (2) Operation Buttons
- (3) Display Size Setting Bar

(1) Registered People Area

Displays the thumbnails of people registered in the **Unregistered People** view or details view of images. When you place the cursor over a person, the total number of images contained in the person appears at the bottom right of the thumbnail.

Double-click the person to switch to the thumbnail view of images containing the person.

➡ Expanded Display

Note

- When you select **Delete** from the menu displayed by control-clicking a person, a deletion confirmation window appears. Click **Yes** to delete the name from the **People** view. Images whose names of people have been deleted appear as those of unregistered people in the **Unregistered People** view.

(2) Operation Buttons

Note

- Register Profile** can be clicked only when a person is selected.



New Art

You can create items such as collages and cards using the images registered to people.
Select an item to create to display the **Select Theme and Main People** dialog in which you can set the theme and main people of the item.

➡ [Select Theme and Main People Dialog](#)

The view switches to **My Art** when selection of the theme and main people is completed.

➡ [My Art View](#)



Register Profile

Displays the **Register Profile** dialog in which you can set the profiles of registered people.

➡ [Register Profile Dialog](#)

Print

Displays the print settings dialog from which you can print images contained in people.

➡ [Print Settings Dialog](#)

(3) Display Size Setting Bar



(Reduce/Enlarge)

Click  (Reduce) or  (Enlarge) to reduce or enlarge the display size. You can also freely change the display size by dragging the slider.



Note

- See "[Registering People's Profiles](#)" for how to set the profiles.

Register Profile Dialog

You can register the profiles of registered people.

Select the person you want to register in the **People** view, then click **Register Profile** at the bottom of the screen to display the **Register Profile** dialog.

Register Profile

◀ 3 / 10 ▶

Name:

Umi

Relationship:

(2) Daughter ▼

Birthdate:

Year

20

Month

10

Day

29

OK

Cancel

Note

- Profiles can only be registered in the **People** view. If set to the expanded display, switch to the **People** view.

(1) Preview

(2) Profile Registration Area

(1) Preview

Displays the thumbnail of an image registered to the person.

(Previous Image/Next Image)

Switches images when there are multiple images.

(2) Profile Registration Area

Name

You can enter the name of the person.

Relationship

You can set the person's relationship with you. You can select from the following.

Myself, Son, Daughter, Grandson, Granddaughter, Husband, Wife, Father, Mother, Brother/Sister, Grandfather, Grandmother, Relative, Friend, Child's friend, Other

Birthdate

You can register the birthday from the calendar.

Click (Calendar) to display the calendar. Select the date you want to register.

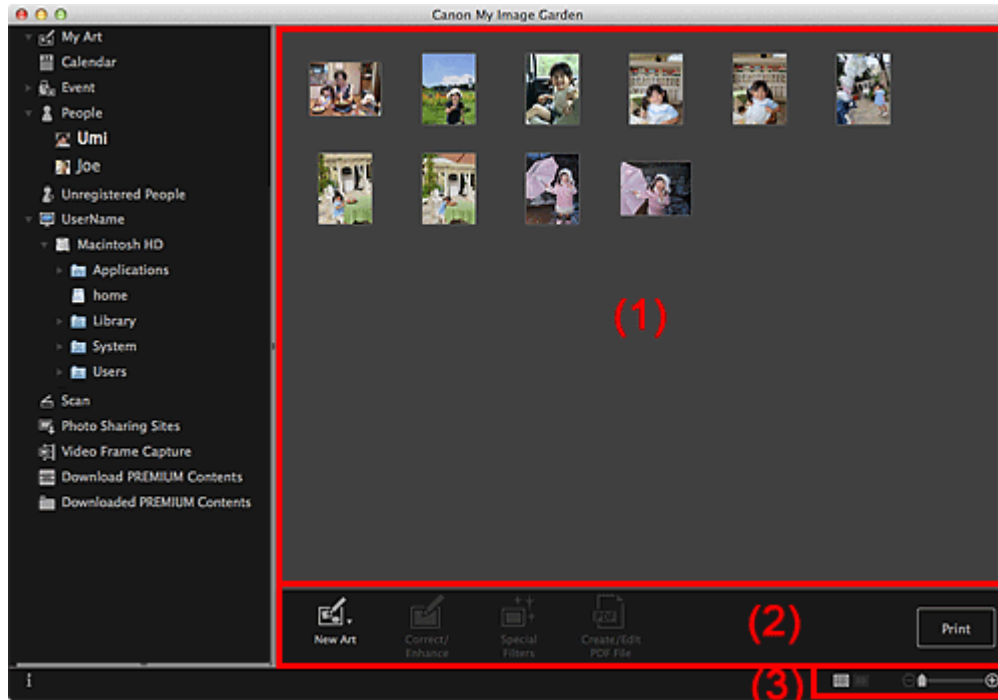
Related Topic

[Registering People's Profiles](#)

Expanded Display

All images contained in a registered person appear as thumbnails. You can browse or edit the images. Switch the **People** view to the expanded display by one of the following operations.

- Double-click a person in the **People** view
- Click the name displayed below **People** on the left side of the screen



- (1) Thumbnails Area
 (2) Operation Buttons
 (3) Display Size Setting Bar

(1) Thumbnails Area

Displays the image(s) of a registered person.

In Thumbnail View

Displays the thumbnail of an image registered to the person.

In Details View

Displays the preview of an entire image.

Note

- When you select **Delete** from the menu displayed by control-clicking an image, it will disappear from the Thumbnails area.

(2) Operation Buttons

Note

- **New Art** appears only in the thumbnail view.
- **Specify Person** and  (Previous File/Next File) appear only in the details view.

Correct/Enhance, **Special Filters** and **Create/Edit PDF File** can be clicked only when an image is selected.



New Art

You can create items such as collages and cards using images.

Select an item to create to display the **Select Theme and Main People** dialog in which you can set the theme and main people of the item.

➡ [Select Theme and Main People Dialog](#)

The view switches to **My Art** when selection of the theme and main people is completed.

➡ [My Art View](#)



Correct/Enhance

Displays the **Correct/Enhance Images** window in which you can correct or enhance images.

➡ [Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)



Special Filters

Displays the **Special Image Filters** window in which you can enhance images with special filters.

➡ [Special Image Filters Window](#)



Create/Edit PDF File

Displays the **Create/Edit PDF File** view in which you can create PDF files.

➡ [Create/Edit PDF File View](#)



Specify Person

Displays a white frame in preview with which you can specify the face area of a person and register the name.

Print

Displays the print settings dialog from which you can print images.

➡ [Print Settings Dialog](#)



(Previous File/Next File)

Switches the displayed image when there are multiple images.

(3) Display Size Setting Bar



(Thumbnail View)

Switches the view to the thumbnails of images.



(Details View)

Switches the view to preview the image.



(Whole Image View)

While in the details view, fits the preview to the area size.



(Reduce/Enlarge)

Click  (Reduce) or  (Enlarge) to reduce or enlarge the display size. You can also freely change the display size by dragging the slider.

Related Topic

➡ [Registering People from the Details View](#)

Unregistered People View

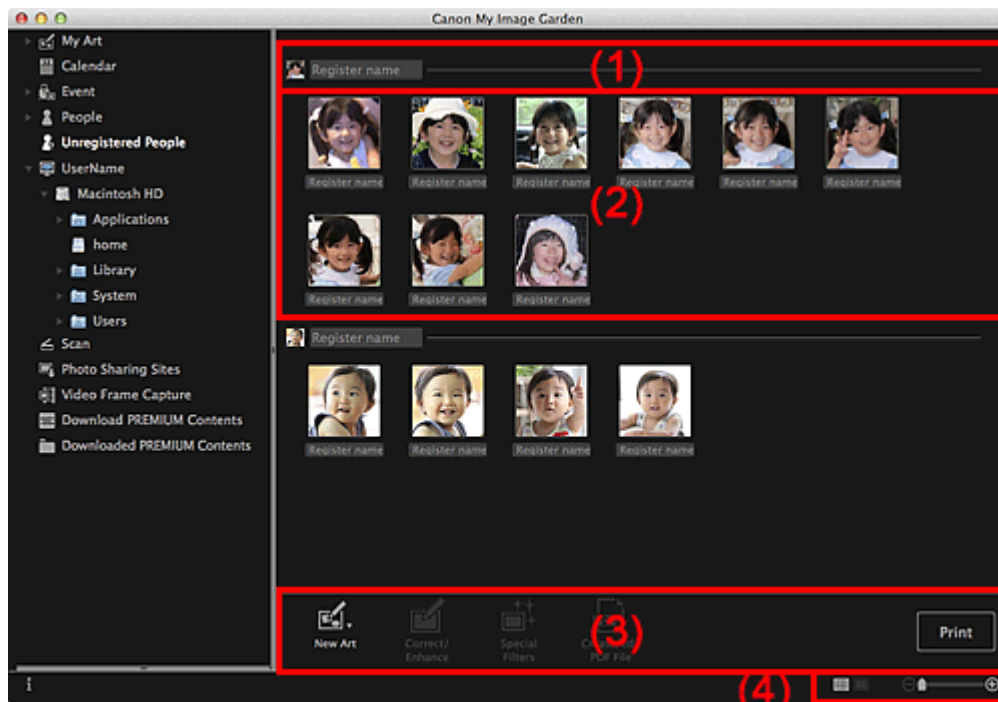
You can register names to the images whose face areas have been automatically detected.

Click **Unregistered People** on the left side of the screen to switch to the **Unregistered People** view.



Note

- **Identifying people...** appears instead of **Unregistered People** during image analysis.
- Image analysis only applies to JPEG, TIFF and PNG image files saved in the folders set for **Perform Image Analysis in the Following Folder(s)** and their subfolders. See "**Preferences Dialog**" for how to set **Perform Image Analysis in the Following Folder(s)**.



(1) Representative Thumbnail Area

(2) Thumbnails Area

(3) Operation Buttons

(4) Display Size Setting Bar

(1) Representative Thumbnail Area

Displays the thumbnail of the face area in the first identified image among the images identified as those of the same person.

Click **Register name** and enter a name to register the name to images in the Thumbnails area that are identified as those of the same person, at once.

(2) Thumbnails Area

Displays the thumbnails of face areas in images identified as those of the same person, in a group.

Click **Register name** and enter a name to register the person's name image by image.

(3) Operation Buttons



Note

- **New Art** appears only in the thumbnail view.
 - **Specify Person** and  (Previous File/Next File) appear only in the details view.
 - **Correct/Enhance**, **Special Filters** and **Create/Edit PDF File** can be clicked only when an image is selected.
-



New Art

You can create items such as collages and cards using images.

➡ [Select Theme and Main People Dialog](#)

The view switches to **My Art** when selection of the theme and main people is completed.

➡ [My Art View](#)



Correct/Enhance

Displays the **Correct/Enhance Images** window in which you can correct or enhance images.

➡ [Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)



Special Filters

Displays the **Special Image Filters** window in which you can enhance images with special filters.

➡ [Special Image Filters Window](#)



Create/Edit PDF File

Displays the **Create/Edit PDF File** view in which you can create PDF files.

➡ [Create/Edit PDF File View](#)



Specify Person

Displays a white frame in preview with which you can specify the face area of a person and register the name.

Print

Displays the print settings dialog from which you can print images.

➡ [Print Settings Dialog](#)



(Previous File/Next File)

Switches the displayed image when multiple images are detected.

(4) Display Size Setting Bar



(Thumbnail View)

Switches the view to the thumbnails of images.



(Details View)

Switches the view to preview the image.



(Whole Image View)

While in the details view, fits the preview to the area size.



(Reduce/Enlarge)

Click  (Reduce) or  (Enlarge) to reduce or enlarge the display size. You can also freely change the display size by dragging the slider.

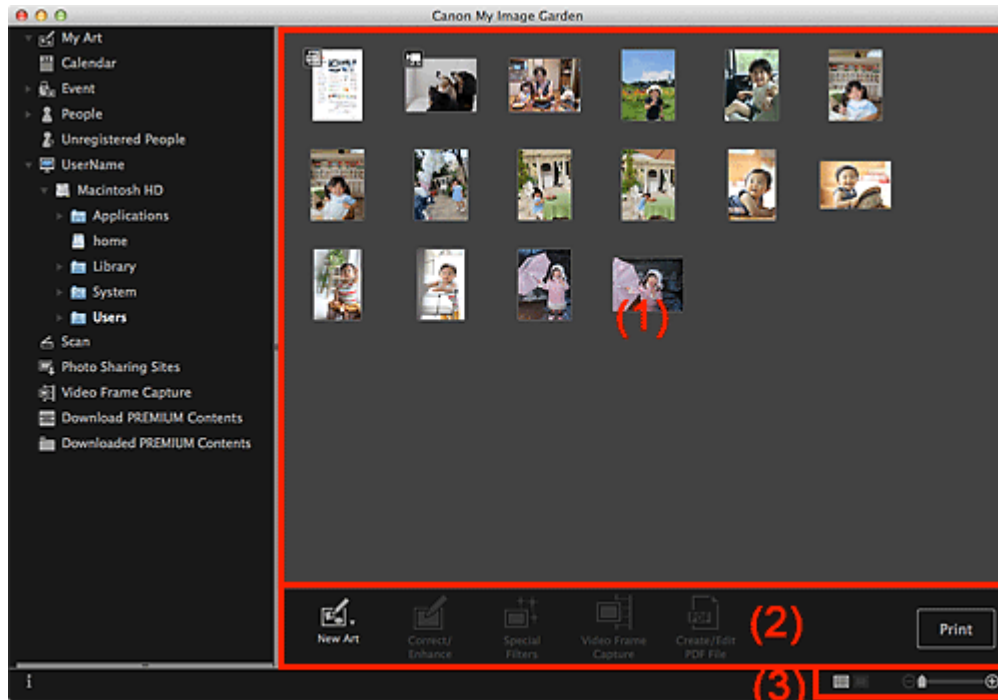
Related Topic

➡ [Registering People](#)

Folder View

Images, PDF files and videos in the specified folder appear as thumbnails.

Click the folder in the folder tree on the left side of the screen to switch to the folder view.



(1) Thumbnails Area

(2) Operation Buttons

(3) Display Size Setting Bar

(1) Thumbnails Area

Displays the thumbnails of images, PDF files and videos in the selected folder.



Note

- For videos, the  (Video) mark appears on the upper left of the thumbnails.
- For PDF files, the  (PDF) mark appears on the upper left of the thumbnails.

(2) Operation Buttons



Note

- New Art** appears only in the thumbnail view.
- Specify Person** and  (Previous File/Next File) appear only in the details view.
- Correct/Enhance** and **Special Filters** can be clicked only when an image is selected.
- Create/Edit PDF File** can be clicked only when an image or PDF file is selected.
- Video Frame Capture** can be clicked only when a video is selected.



New Art

You can create items such as collages and cards using images.

Select an item to create to display the **Select Theme and Main People** dialog in which you can set the theme and main people of the item.

➡ [Select Theme and Main People Dialog](#)

The view switches to **My Art** when selection of the theme and main people is completed.

➡ [My Art View](#)



Correct/Enhance

Displays the **Correct/Enhance Images** window in which you can correct or enhance images.

➡ [Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)



Special Filters

Displays the **Special Image Filters** window in which you can enhance images with special filters.

➡ [Special Image Filters Window](#)



Video Frame Capture

Switches to the **Video Frame Capture** view in which you can crop still images from a video.

➡ [Video Frame Capture View](#)



Create/Edit PDF File

Displays the **Create/Edit PDF File** view in which you can create or edit PDF files.

➡ [Create/Edit PDF File View](#)



Important

- For PDF files, only those created in My Image Garden or IJ Scan Utility are supported. PDF files created or edited in other applications are not supported.



Specify Person

Displays a white frame in preview with which you can specify the face area of a person and register the name.

Print

Displays the print settings dialog from which you can print images and PDF files.

➡ [Print Settings Dialog](#)



(Previous File/Next File)

Switches the displayed image when there are multiple images, PDF files or videos.

(3) Display Size Setting Bar



(Thumbnail View)

Switches the view to the thumbnails of images, PDF files and videos.



(Details View)

Switches the view to preview an image, PDF file or video.



(Whole Image View)

While in the details view, fits the preview to the area size.



(Reduce/Enlarge)

Click  (Reduce) or  (Enlarge) to reduce or enlarge the display size. You can also freely change the display size by dragging the slider.



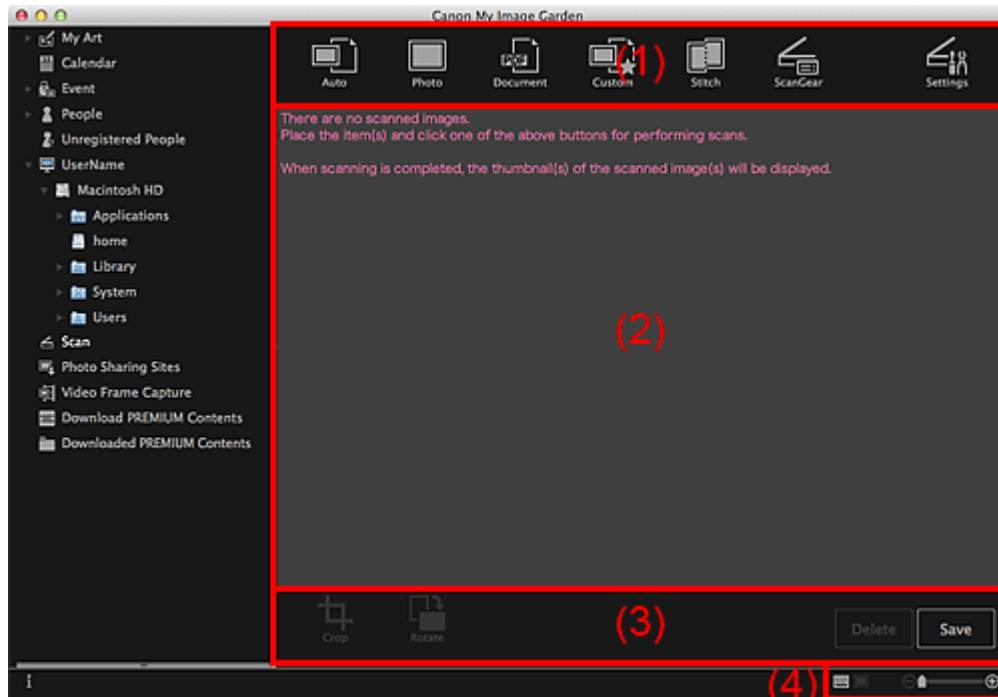
Note

- See "[Registering People from the Details View](#)" for how to register people from the details view of preview.
 - See "[Create/Edit PDF File View](#)" for the details view of PDF files.
 - When you display a video in the details view, the video playback panel appears and you can use  (Stop),  (Playback) /  (Pause),  (Frame Backward),  (Frame Advance) and  (Mute) /  (Unmute).
-

Scan View

You can perform various scans according to item and use.

Click **Scan** on the left side of the screen to switch to the **Scan** view.



(1) Scan Buttons Area

(2) Scanned Image Thumbnails Area

(3) Operation Buttons

(4) Display Size Setting Bar

(1) Scan Buttons Area



Auto

Allows you to scan easily by automatically detecting the types of placed items.



Photo

Scans placed items as photos.



Document

Scans placed items as documents.



Custom

Scans with the settings specified as favorite.



Stitch

Combines scanned images into one image.
Click to start IJ Scan Utility.

See the corresponding page of *On-screen Manual* for details.



ScanGear

Opens ScanGear (scanner driver) from which you can scan photos and documents with advanced settings.

Click to start ScanGear.

See the corresponding page of *On-screen Manual* for details.



Settings

You can make advanced scan settings.

Click to start IJ Scan Utility.

See the corresponding page of *On-screen Manual* for details.

(2) Scanned Image Thumbnails Area

Displays the thumbnails and file names of the scanned images.

(3) Operation Buttons



Note

-  (Previous File/Next File) appears only in the details view.
-



Crop

Switches to the **Crop** view in which you can crop scanned images.

➡ [Crop View \(Scan View\)](#)



Rotate

Rotates the scanned image 90 degrees clockwise with each click.

Delete

You can delete scanned images.

Save

Displays the **Save** dialog from which you can save the scanned images.

➡ [Save Dialog \(Scan View\)](#)



(Previous File/Next File)

Switches the displayed image when there are multiple scanned images.

(4) Display Size Setting Bar



(Thumbnail View)

Switches the view to the thumbnails of images.



(Details View)

Switches the view to preview the image.



(Whole Image View)

While in the details view, fits the preview to the area size.



(Reduce/Enlarge)

Click  (Reduce) or  (Enlarge) to reduce or enlarge the display size. You can also freely change the display size by dragging the slider.

Related Topic

 [Scanning Photos and Documents](#)

[Page top](#) 

Crop View (Scan View)

You can crop scanned images.

Click **Crop** in the **Scan** view to switch to the **Crop** view.



(1) Preview Area

(2) Operation Buttons

(3) Display Size Setting Bar

(1) Preview Area

Displays the preview of the image to be cropped.

The area to be cropped is indicated by a white frame.

(2) Operation Buttons



Crop

Returns to the **Scan** view.



Rotate

Rotates the image displayed in the Preview area 90 degrees clockwise with each click.

Cancel

Restores the white frame to the default position.

Apply

Applies cropping.

Close

Returns to the **Scan** view without applying cropping.



(Previous Image/Next Image)

Switches the displayed image when there are multiple scanned images.

(3) Display Size Setting Bar



(Thumbnail View)

The view switches to **Scan**.



(Whole Image View)

Fits the preview to the area size.



(Reduce/Enlarge)

Click  (Reduce) or  (Enlarge) to reduce or enlarge the display size. You can also freely change the display size by dragging the slider.

Related Topic

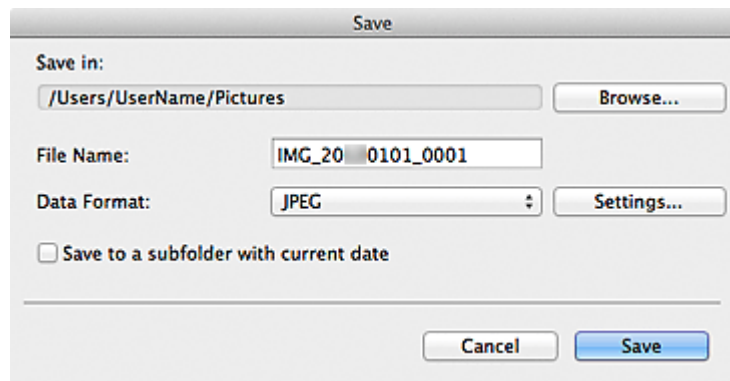
 [Cropping Scanned Images](#)

Page top 

Save Dialog (Scan View)

You can make advanced settings for saving scanned images to a computer.

Click **Save** at the bottom right of the **Scan** view to display the **Save** dialog.



Save in

Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click **Browse...**, then specify the destination folder.

The default save folder is the **Pictures** folder.

File Name

You can enter the file name of the image to be saved. You cannot enter the file name when saving multiple files at the same time. They will be saved with the file names automatically generated after scanning.

Data Format

You can specify the data format in which to save the scanned images.

You can select **JPEG**, **TIFF**, **PNG**, **PDF**, **PDF (Add Page)**, **PDF (Multiple Pages)** or **Save in the original data format**.

When **PDF (Add Page)** is selected, click **Specify Location...** in the displayed message, then specify the PDF file to which to insert the images.

Note

- **PDF (Multiple Pages)** appears only when multiple images are selected in the Scanned Image Thumbnails area of the **Scan** view.
- **Save in the original data format** appears only when multiple data formats are selected in the Scanned Image Thumbnails area of the **Scan** view.

Settings...

You can make more advanced save settings when **JPEG**, **PDF**, **PDF (Add Page)** or **PDF (Multiple Pages)** is selected in **Data Format**.

When JPEG is selected

The **File Settings** dialog appears and you can specify the image quality (compression type) of JPEG files. You can select **High (Low Compression)**, **Standard** or **Low (High Compression)**.

When PDF, PDF (Add Page) or PDF (Multiple Pages) is selected

The **PDF Settings** dialog appears and you can make advanced settings for creating PDF files.

➡ [PDF Settings Dialog](#)

Save to a subfolder with current date

Select this checkbox to create a current date folder in the folder specified in **Save in** and save scanned images in it. The folder will be created with a name such as "20XX_01_01" (Year_Month_Date).

If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in **Save in**.

Related Topic

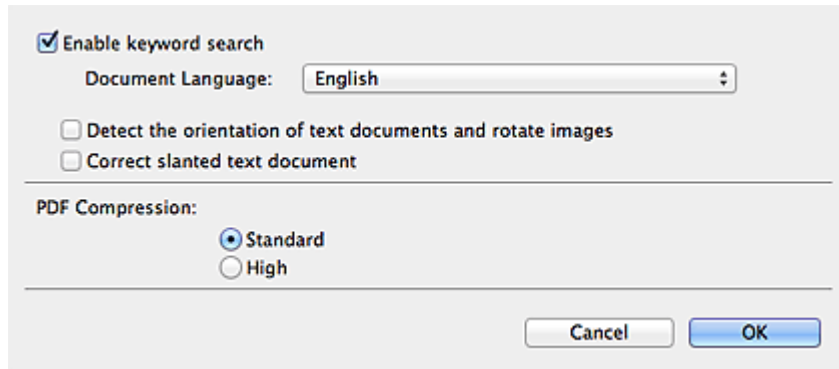
 Scan View

Page top 

PDF Settings Dialog

You can make advanced settings such as the PDF compression type to the PDF file to be saved.

Select PDF for **Data Format** in the **Save** dialog of the **Scan** view, then click **Settings...** to display the **PDF Settings** dialog.



Enable keyword search

Select this checkbox to convert text in images into text data and create PDF files that support keyword search.

Document Language

Select the language for detecting text in images.

Detect the orientation of text documents and rotate images

Select this checkbox to detect the page orientation based on the text in images and automatically rotate the images for creating PDF files.

Important

- This function is available only for images (text documents) containing languages that can be selected from **Document Language**. This function is not available depending on the language in the image.
- The page orientation may not be detected for the following types of images since the text cannot be detected correctly.
 - Images with small amount of text
 - Images containing text with font size outside the range of 8 points to 48 points
 - Images containing special fonts, effects, italics, or hand-written text
 - Images with patterned backgrounds

Correct slanted text document

Select this checkbox to detect the document orientation based on the text in images and correct the angle (within the range of -0.1 to -10 degrees or +0.1 to +10 degrees) for creating PDF files.

Important

- The following types of images may not be corrected properly since the text cannot be detected correctly.
 - Images in which the text lines are inclined more than 10 degrees or the angles vary by line
 - Images containing both vertical and horizontal text
 - Images with extremely large or small fonts
 - Images with small amount of text
 - Images containing figures/images
 - Hand-written image

PDF Compression

Select a compression type for saving.

Standard

It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

High

Compresses the file size when saving. You can reduce the load on your network/server.



Important

- PDF images may degrade if you repeatedly save them with high compression.

Related Topic

 [Save Dialog \(Scan View\)](#)

[Page top](#) 

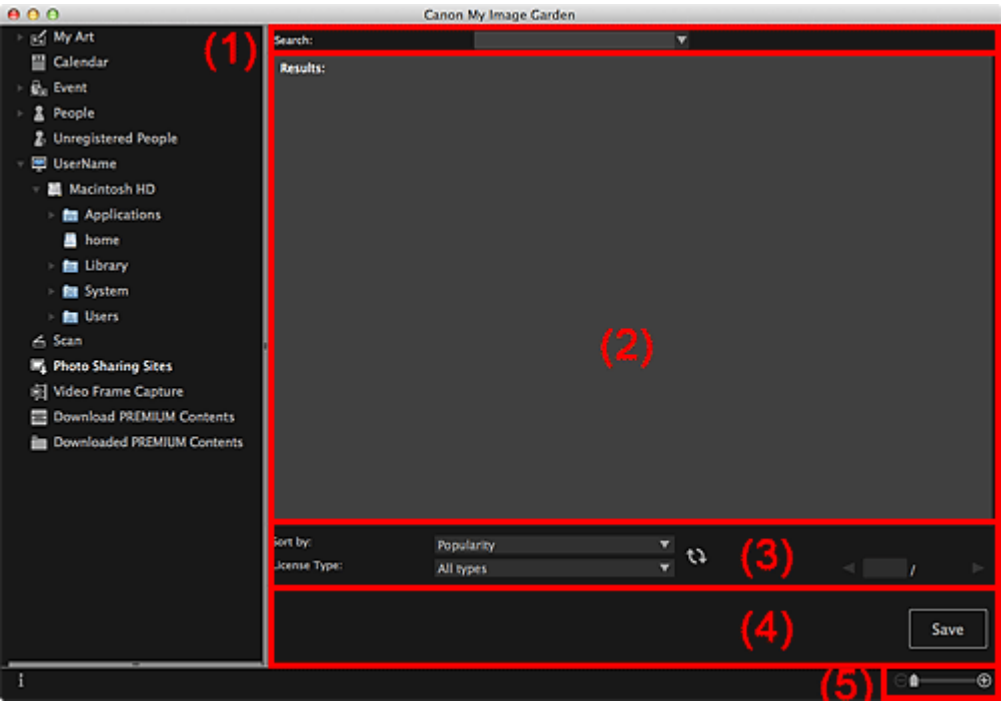
Photo Sharing Sites View

You can search for images on photo sharing sites on the Internet and download the images you want to print.

Click **Photo Sharing Sites** on the left side of the screen to switch to the **Photo Sharing Sites** view.

Important

- Internet connection is required to use this function. Internet connection fees apply.
- This product uses the Flickr API but is not endorsed or certified by Flickr.



- (1) Keyword Input Area
- (2) Search Results Area
- (3) Search Criteria/Page Designation Area
- (4) Operation Buttons
- (5) Display Size Setting Bar

(1) Keyword Input Area

Search

Enter the search text, then press the return key; search results appear in the Search Results area.

Note

- Alternatively, click  (Down Arrow) to display up to 20 search history records and select among them.
- When you want to enter multiple keywords, insert a space between the keywords.
- When search history exists, you can delete the records of previously entered keywords by selecting **Clear History** displayed at the bottom of the list.

(2) Search Results Area

Displays the thumbnails of search results. The title appears under each thumbnail.

 Important

- Due to limitations of photo sharing sites, if the search results exceed 4,000 images, the same images as those displayed in the page containing the 4,001st image will be displayed in all the subsequent pages.

 Note

- Place the cursor over an image to display its title, license type and other information.

(3) Search Criteria/Page Designation Area

Sort by

Select an option for sorting the search results in the Thumbnail window, from **Popularity** and **Date**.

If you have changed the setting after searching, click  (Refresh) to perform the search again.

License Type

Select the license type of images to search for.

You can select from **All types**, **CC license (Non-Commercial)** and **CC license (Others)**.

Select **All types** to display all images regardless of license type.

Select **CC license (Non-Commercial)** to display images that can be used for non-commercial purposes only among CC licensed images, and select **CC license (Others)** to display other images.

If you have changed the setting after searching, click  (Refresh) to perform the search again.

 Note

- License type varies by image. Place the cursor over an image to display a tooltip in which you can check the license type.

License Type	License Type	General Notes (My Image Garden)/Conditions (Comply with the following conditions when using CC licensed images except for personal use or use within the home.)
All types	All Rights Reserved	Unauthorized copying of images is illegal except for personal/home use or for use within such limited scope. Copying portraits (photographs of persons) may infringe personality rights.
	Attribution Non-Commercial (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation. - You may not use the work for commercial purposes.
	Attribution Non-Commercial No Derivatives (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation. - You may not use the work for commercial purposes. - You may not modify the work.
	Attribution Non-Commercial Share Alike (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation. - You may not use the work for commercial purposes. - Even if your creation is built upon the work of others, you must apply the same conditions to it as those set out for the original work by the licensor.
	Attribution (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation.
	Attribution No Derivatives (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation. - You may not modify the work.
	Attribution Share Alike (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation. - Even if your creation is built upon the work of others,

		you must apply the same conditions to it as those set out for the original work by the licensor.
CC license (Non-Commercial)	Attribution Non-Commercial (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation. - You may not use the work for commercial purposes.
	Attribution Non-Commercial No Derivatives (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation. - You may not use the work for commercial purposes. - You may not modify the work.
	Attribution Non-Commercial Share Alike (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation. - You may not use the work for commercial purposes. - Even if your creation is built upon the work of others, you must apply the same conditions to it as those set out for the original work by the licensor.
CC license (Others)	Attribution (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation.
	Attribution No Derivatives (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation. - You may not modify the work.
	Attribution Share Alike (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation. - Even if your creation is built upon the work of others, you must apply the same conditions to it as those set out for the original work by the licensor.



(Refresh)

Performs the search again to refresh the results in the Search Results area.



(Previous Page/Next Page)

Switches pages in the Search Results area.



(Page Number/Total Pages)

Enter a page number and press the return key to display the specified page of the Search Results area.

(4) Operation Buttons

Save

Displays the **Save** dialog from which you can save the image(s) selected in the Search Results area.

➡ [Save Dialog \(Photo Sharing Sites View\)](#)

(5) Display Size Setting Bar



(Reduce/Enlarge)

Click (Reduce) or (Enlarge) to reduce or enlarge the display size. You can also freely change the display size by dragging the slider.



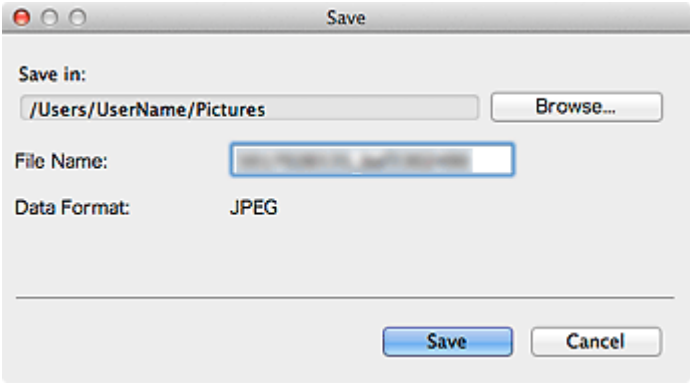
Note

- See "[Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites](#)" for how to download images from photo sharing sites.

Save Dialog (Photo Sharing Sites View)

You can make advanced settings for saving the images downloaded in the **Photo Sharing Sites** view to a computer.

Click **Save** in the **Photo Sharing Sites** view to display the **Save** dialog.



Save in

You can set the folder in which to save the still images. To change the folder, click **Browse...**, then specify the destination folder.

The default save folder is the **Pictures** folder.

File Name

You can enter the file name of the image to be saved. You cannot enter the file name when saving multiple files at the same time.

Data Format

The save format is **JPEG**.

Related Topic

[Photo Sharing Sites View](#)

Video Frame Capture View

You can capture video frames to create still images. You can also print the captured still images.

Switch to the **Video Frame Capture** view by one of the following operations.

- Select a video in **Day View** of the **Calendar** view, the **Event** view or folder view, then click **Video Frame Capture** at the bottom of the screen
- Click **Video Frame Capture** on the left side of the screen when video frame capture is in progress

Important

- If videos do not appear, check the system requirements and file formats. See "[File Formats](#)" for details.
- Video color tones changed via the settings of the graphic driver (video card) or its utility are not reflected in captured still images. Therefore, color tones may differ between videos and captured still images.



- (1) Preview Area
- (2) Captured Images Area
- (3) Operation Buttons
- (4) Display Size Setting Bar
- (5) Still Image Capture Panel

(1) Preview Area

Displays the preview of a video.



(Playback Slider)

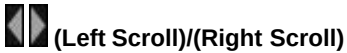
Displays the video playback progress. The current playback time appears to the right of the slider. You can drag the slider to move the video forward or backward.

You can set the start and end positions to automatically capture multiple images by moving the  (Start Time of Capture Range) or  (End Time of Capture Range) mark below the slider. Place the cursor over the mark to display the time code.

(2) Captured Images Area

Displays the thumbnails of still images captured from the video. The  (Correction) mark appears on the

thumbnails of corrected still images.



Scrolls the Captured Images area left or right to display the hidden thumbnails.

(3) Operation Buttons



Layout Print

You can print multiple still images by placing them in a layout that resembles a film or theater.

Select an image and click this to display the **Select Theme and Main People** dialog in which you can set a theme for the video layout.

➡ [Select Theme and Main People Dialog](#)

The view switches to **My Art** when selection of the theme is completed.

➡ [My Art View](#)



Correct

Displays the **Correct** view in which you can correct still images.

➡ [Correct View](#)



Merge Frames

Displays the **Merge Frames** view in which you can merge multiple still images into one image.

➡ [Merge Frames View](#)



Sort by Timeline

You can rearrange captured still images in the order of the time code.

Save

Displays the **Save** dialog from which you can save captured still images.

➡ [Save Dialog \(Video Frame Capture View\)](#)

Print

Displays the print settings dialog from which you can print captured still images.

➡ [Print Settings Dialog](#)

(4) Display Size Setting Bar



(Captured Images View)

Switches the view to the thumbnails of images.



(Details View)

Switches the view to preview the image.



(Whole Image View)

While in the details view, fits the preview to the window size.

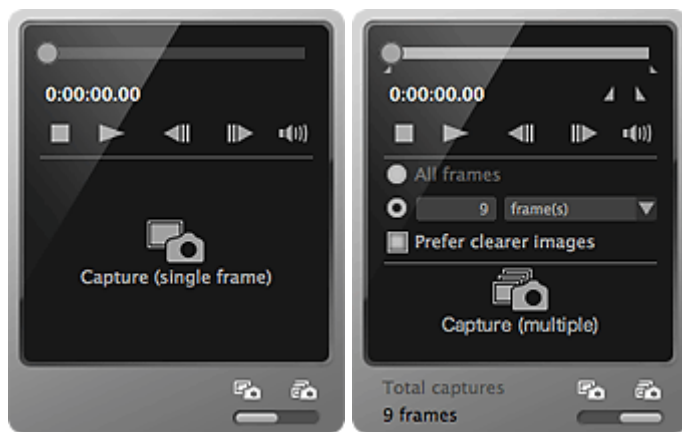


(Reduce/Enlarge)

Click  (Reduce) or  (Enlarge) to reduce or enlarge the display size. You can also freely change the display size by dragging the slider.

(5) Still Image Capture Panel

Capture (single frame) Panel **Capture (multiple) Panel**



(Playback Slider)

Displays the video playback progress. The current playback time appears below the slider. You can drag the slider to move the video forward or backward.

(Start Time of Capture Range)/(End Time of Capture Range)

You can specify the range from which to automatically capture multiple images. When you click it at the playback position you want to set as the start/end time, the mark (of the button) below the playback slider moves to the clicked position. You can also specify the start/end time by moving this mark. Place the cursor over the mark to display the start/end time.

(Frame Backward)/(Frame Advance)

Reverses/advances a video one frame at a time with each click. If clicked during playback, the video pauses. Click and hold to reverse/advance frames consecutively.

(Playback)/(Pause)

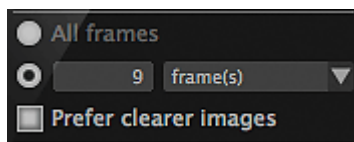
Plays or pauses the video.  (Pause) or  (Playback) appears while a video is playing or stopped, respectively.

(Stop)

Stops the video.

(Mute)/(Unmute)

Switches audio OFF/ON.



(Capture Settings)

You can set the number of still images to be captured. You can select **All frames**, **frame(s)**, **sec. int.** or **frame int.**. When **frame(s)**, **sec. int.** or **frame int.** is selected, you can also enter the number of total frames, second interval or frame interval, respectively. Select the **Prefer clearer images** checkbox to automatically capture less blurry images.



Capture (single frame)

Captures the frame displayed in preview as a still image. Captured still images appear in the Captured Images area.

You can also capture from a playing video.



Capture (multiple)

You can capture multiple still images between the start and end time specified as the capture range, according to the capture conditions. Captured still images appear in the Captured Images area. You can also capture from a playing video.



(Switch Single/Multiple Capture)

Switches the view between the **Capture (single frame)** panel and **Capture (multiple)** panel.

- See "[Capturing and Printing Still Images from Videos](#)" for how to capture still images from a video.
-

[Page top](#) ▲

A186

My Image Garden

Correct View

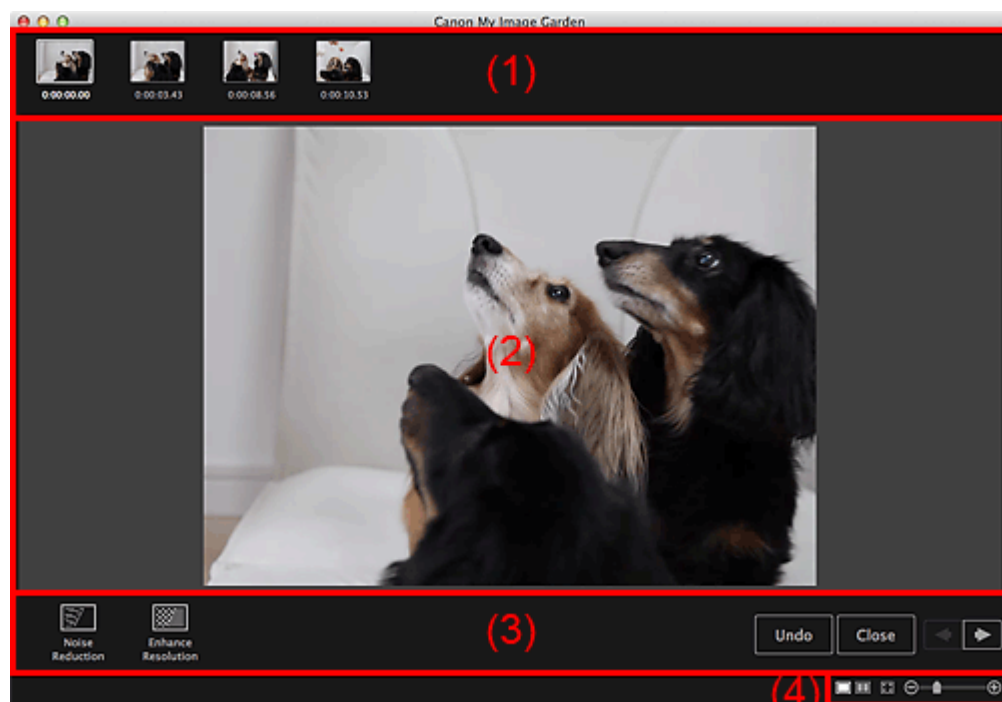
You can correct still images captured from a video.

Select the still image(s) you want to correct in the Captured Images area of the **Video Frame Capture** view, then click **Correct** at the bottom of the screen to switch to the **Correct** view.



Note

- When a frame in which the subject or camera has moved significantly is captured, the still image may not be corrected properly.



(1) Selected Images Area

(2) Preview Area

(3) Operation Buttons

(4) Display Size Setting Bar

(1) Selected Images Area

Displays the thumbnails of the still image(s) selected in the **Video Frame Capture** view.

The  (Correction) mark appears on the thumbnails of corrected still images.



(Left Scroll)/(Right Scroll)

Scrolls the Selected Images area left or right to display the hidden thumbnails.

(2) Preview Area

Displays the previews of the still images selected in the Selected Images area.

(3) Operation Buttons



Noise Reduction

Reduces noise (tonal variation that may appear in images taken in dark locations such as night scenes using a digital camera).



Enhance Resolution

Reduces jaggies (roughness in images).

Undo

Restores the original uncorrected state.

Close

Switches to the **Video Frame Capture** view.



(Previous Image/Next Image)

Switches the preview display when there are multiple images in the Selected Images area.

(4) Display Size Setting Bar



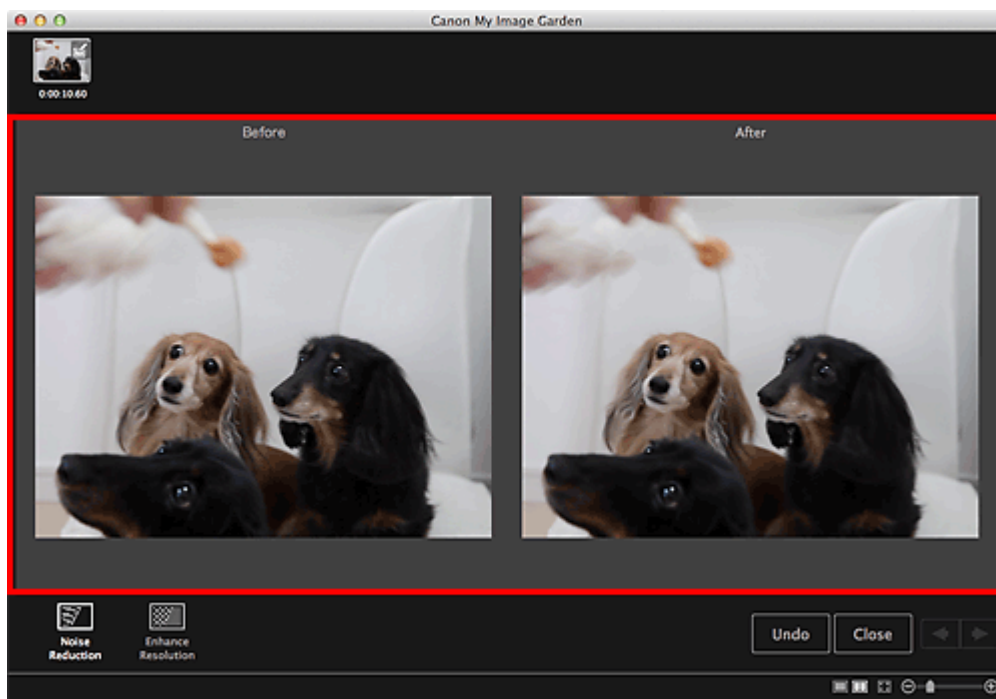
(Display Correction Screen)

Switches to the preview (correction screen).



(Display Comparison Screen)

Displays the images before and after the correction side by side in preview so that you can compare them.



Before

Displays the image before correction.

After

Displays the image after correction.



(Whole Image View)

Fits the preview to the area size.



(Reduce/Enlarge)

Click  (Reduce) or  (Enlarge) to reduce or enlarge the display size. You can also freely change the display size by dragging the slider.



Note

- See "[Correcting Still Images Captured from Videos](#)" for how to correct still images captured from a video.

Merge Frames View

You can merge still images captured from a video in the order of the time code to create an image depicting the flow of a moving subject.

Select the images you want to merge in the **Video Frame Capture** view, then click **Merge Frames** to switch to the **Merge Frames** view.



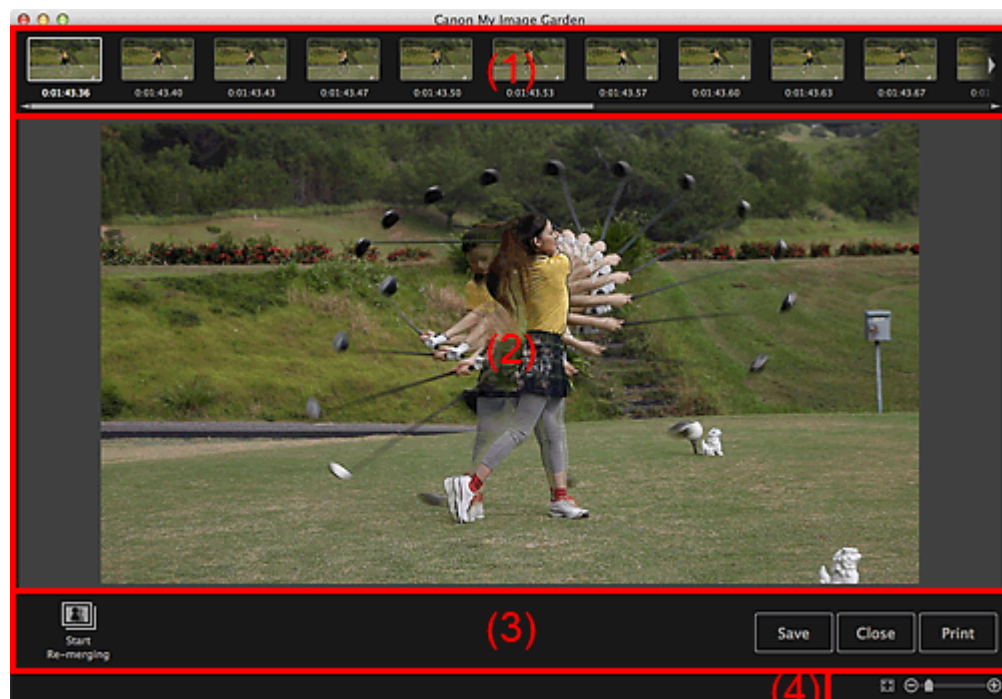
Important

- You can merge between 5 and 30 still images.
- Still images corrected in the **Correct** view cannot be used. The original uncorrected still images will be used.



Note

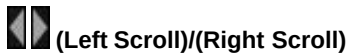
- It is recommended that you use still images captured from a video recorded with a steady camera (fixed to a tripod, etc.) without zooming or adjusting focus while recording.
- Some portions of subjects may appear transparent if frames in which moving subjects overlap are selected.
- Frames may not merge properly in the following cases.
 - When using a video recorded in a place where the background is moving
 - When frames in which moving subjects/shadows overlap are selected
 - When using a video recorded in a place where moving subjects and the background have similar colors and shapes
 - When using a video in which the brightness or lighting changed while recording
 - When using a video recorded using special functions such as miniature effect



- (1) Selected Images Area
- (2) Preview Area
- (3) Operation Buttons
- (4) Display Size Setting Bar

(1) Selected Images Area

Displays the thumbnails of the still image(s) selected in the **Video Frame Capture** view.



Scrolls the Selected Images area left or right to display the hidden thumbnails.

(2) Preview Area

Displays the preview of the merged image.

(3) Operation Buttons

Start Re-merging

Re-merges using the images re-selected in the Selected Images area.

Save

Displays the **Save** dialog from which you can save the created image of merged frames.

➡ [Save Dialog \(Video Frame Capture View\)](#)

Close

Switches to the **Video Frame Capture** view.

Print

Displays the print settings dialog from which you can print the created image of merged frames.

➡ [Print Settings Dialog](#)

(4) Display Size Setting Bar



Fits the preview to the area size.



Click  (Reduce) or  (Enlarge) to reduce or enlarge the display size. You can also freely change the display size by dragging the slider.

Note

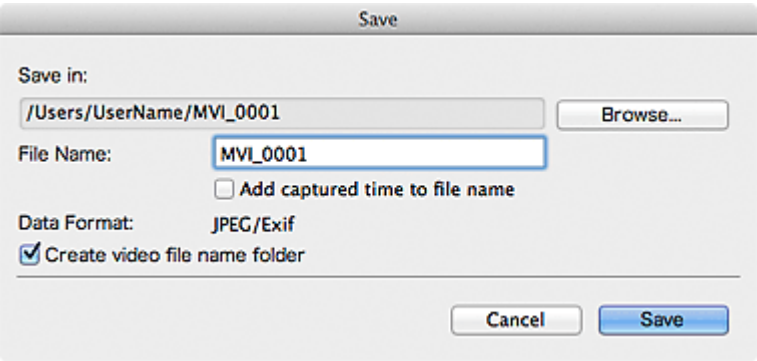
- See "[Creating Images of Merged Video Frames](#)" for how to merge still images.

Save Dialog (Video Frame Capture View)

You can make advanced settings for saving still images captured from a video or images of merged frames to a computer.

Display the **Save** dialog by one of the following operations.

- Select the still image(s) you want to save in the **Video Frame Capture** view, then click **Save**
- Click **Save** in the **Merge Frames** view



Save in

You can set the folder in which to save the images. To change the folder, click **Browse...**, then specify the destination folder.

The default save folder is the one in which the video from which the still image(s) was (were) captured is saved.

File Name

You can enter the file name of the image to be saved. When saving multiple files at the same time, 4 digits are automatically appended to each file name.

Add captured time to file name

Select this checkbox to append the captured time (8 digits) to the name of the file to be saved.

Note

- **Add captured time to file name** appears only when saving still images captured in the **Video Frame Capture** view.

Data Format

The save format is **JPEG/Exif**.

Create video file name folder

Select this checkbox to create a folder with the video file name in the folder specified in **Save in** and save still images in it.

If this checkbox is not selected, images are saved directly in the folder specified in **Save in**.

Related Topic

 [Video Frame Capture View](#)

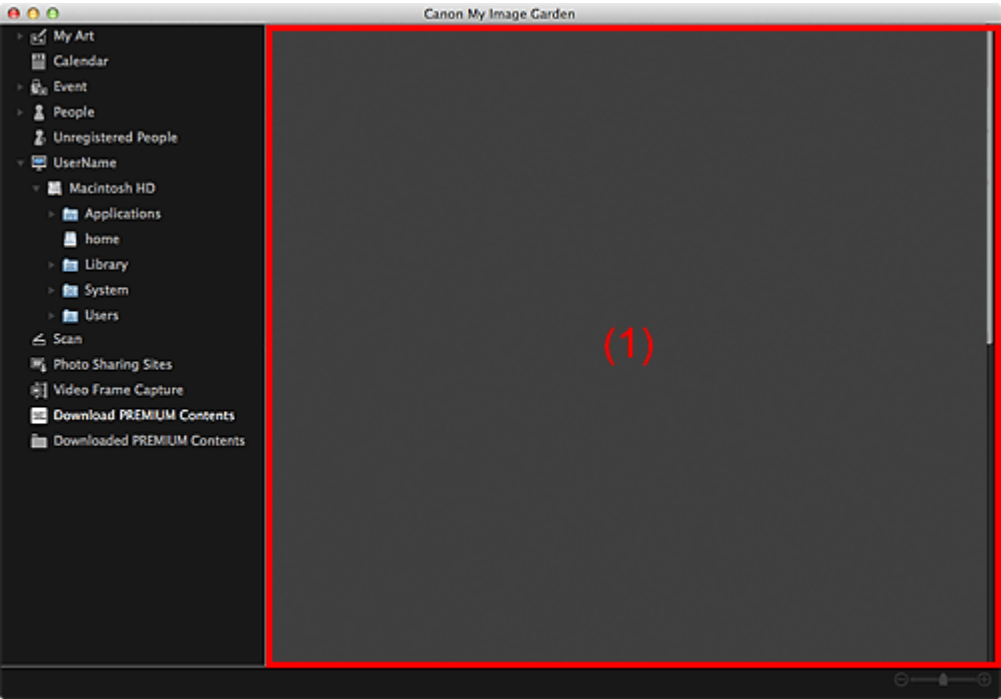
Download PREMIUM Contents View

You can download PREMIUM Contents.

Click **Download PREMIUM Contents** on the left side of the screen to switch to the **Download PREMIUM Contents** view.

Important

- You may only use downloaded or printed PREMIUM Contents for personal purposes. You may not use the content for commercial purposes.



(1) Content Area

(1) Content Area

Displays the content on CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM.

Related Topic

- [Downloading PREMIUM Contents](#)

A200

My Image Garden

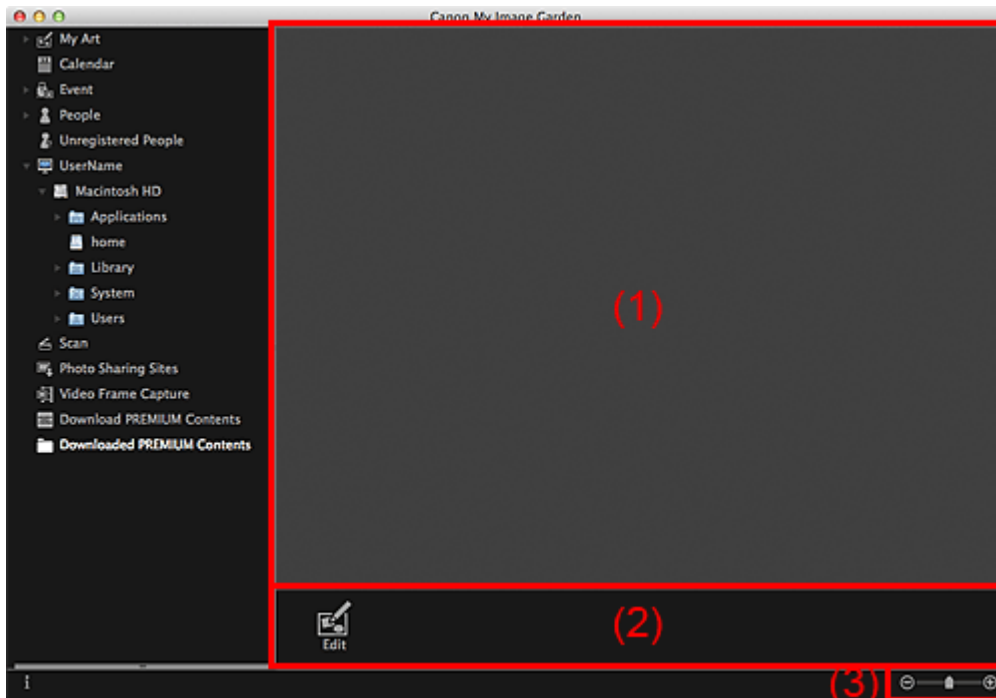
Downloaded PREMIUM Contents View

You can edit or print PREMIUM Contents (materials for printing) downloaded.

Click **Downloaded PREMIUM Contents** on the left side of the screen to switch to the **Downloaded PREMIUM Contents** view.

Important

- You may only use downloaded or printed PREMIUM Contents for personal purposes. You may not use the content for commercial purposes.



(1) Downloaded Materials Area

(2) Operation Buttons

(3) Display Size Setting Bar

(1) Downloaded Materials Area

Displays the thumbnails of downloaded PREMIUM Contents.



Note

- Place the cursor over an image to display item information such as the following.
 - Content Name
 - Artist or Brand
 - License Type
 - Printable Times
 - Usage Expiry
 - Paper Size
 - Suggested Paper

(2) Operation Buttons



Edit

Switches to the **My Art** view.

[➡ My Art View](#)



Note

- Available editing functions vary depending on the selected PREMIUM Content.
 - You cannot edit multiple PREMIUM Contents at the same time.
-

(3) Display Size Setting Bar



(Reduce/Enlarge)

Click  (Reduce) or  (Enlarge) to reduce or enlarge the display size. You can also freely change the display size by dragging the slider.



Note

- See "[Downloading and Printing PREMIUM Contents](#)" for how to print using downloaded PREMIUM Contents.
-

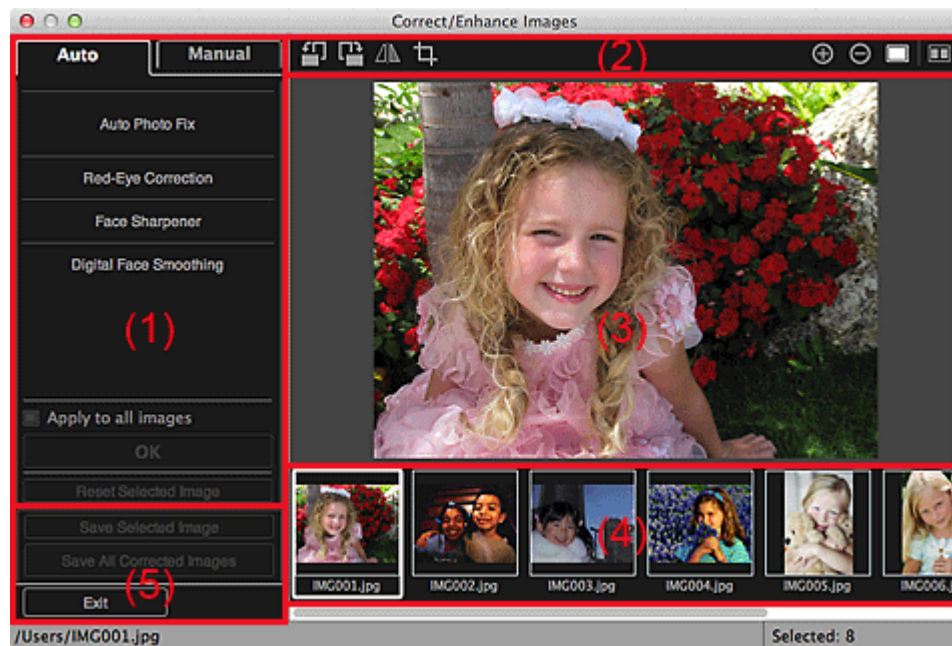
[Page top ▲](#)

Correct/Enhance Images Window

You can correct or enhance images.

Display the **Correct/Enhance Images** window by one of the following operations.

- Select the image(s) in use in the Edit area of the **My Art** view, then click **Correct/Enhance** at the bottom of the screen
- Select an image or images in **Day View** of the **Calendar** view, the **Event** view, the expanded display of the **People** view, the **Unregistered People** view or folder view, then click **Correct/Enhance** at the bottom of the screen



(1) Image Adjustment/Correction/Enhancement Area

(2) Preview Operation Buttons

(3) Preview Area

(4) Selected Images Area

(5) Operation Buttons

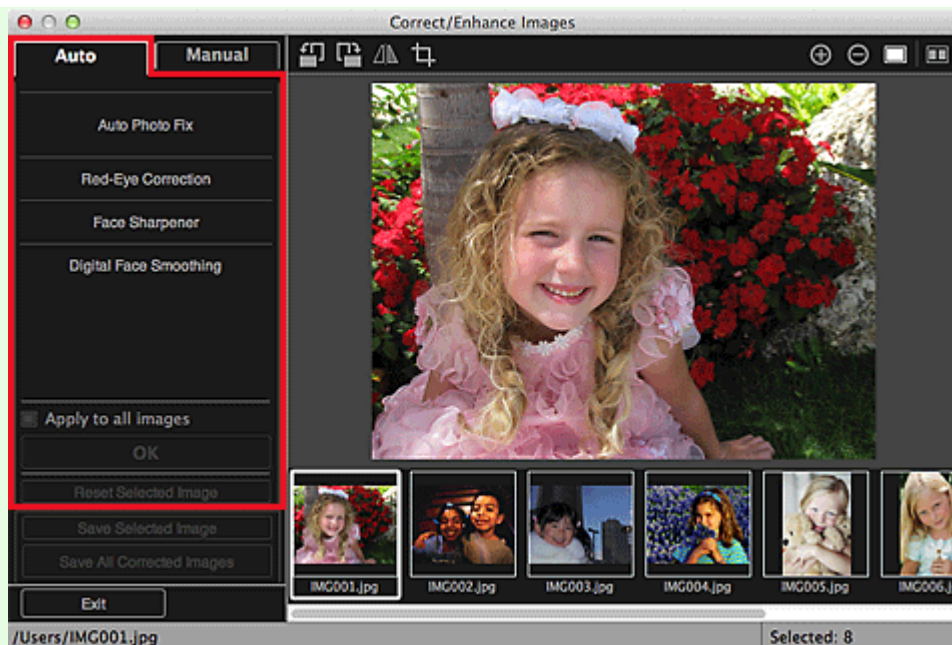
(1) Image Adjustment/Correction/Enhancement Area

Available settings and procedures vary between the **Auto** tab and **Manual** tab.

Click the **Auto** tab or **Manual** tab to switch between tabs.

Auto Tab

You can correct or enhance the entire image in the **Auto** tab.



Auto Photo Fix

Applies corrections suitable for photos automatically.

Note

- You can automatically correct photos when printing. See "[Print Settings Dialog](#)" for the setting procedure.

Prioritize Exif info

Select this checkbox to apply corrections primarily based on the settings made at the time of shooting.

Deselect this checkbox to apply corrections based on the image analysis results. It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

Note

- Exif is a standard format for embedding various shooting data in digital camera images (JPEG).
- You can automatically apply suitable corrections based on Exif information when printing. See "[Print Settings Dialog](#)" for the setting procedure.

Red-Eye Correction

Corrects red eyes.

Note

- You can automatically correct red eyes when printing. See "[Print Settings Dialog](#)" for the setting procedure.

Face Sharpener

Sharpens out-of-focus faces in a photo.

You can adjust the correction level using the slider.

Digital Face Smoothing

Enhances skin beautifully by reducing blemishes and wrinkles.

You can adjust the enhancement level using the slider.

Apply to all images

Select this checkbox to correct or enhance all images in the Selected Images area automatically.

OK

Applies the specified correction/enhancement to the image(s).

Reset Selected Image

Restores the corrected, adjusted or enhanced image to the original uncorrected, unenhanced or unadjusted state.

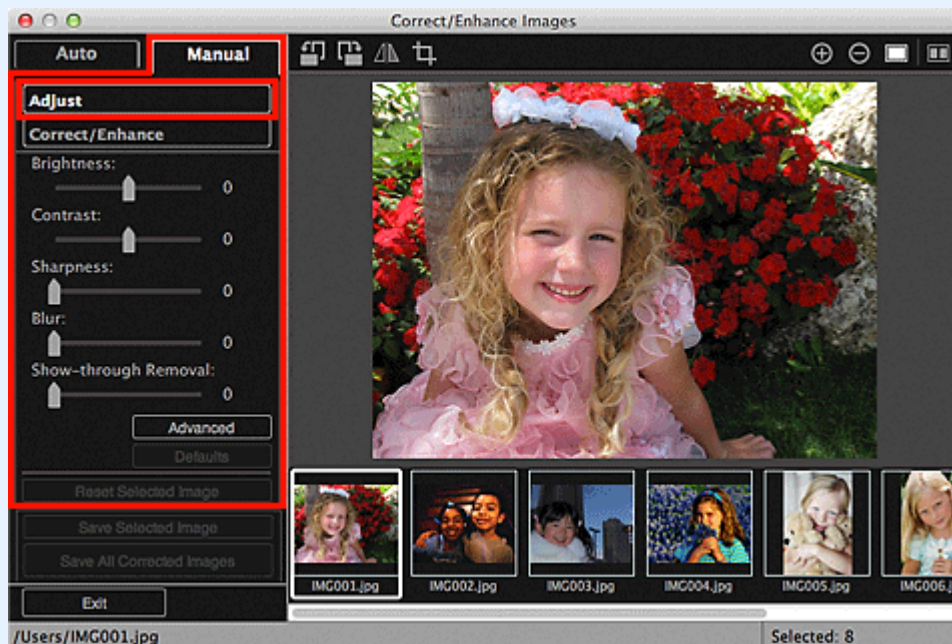
Manual Tab

There are two menus on the **Manual** tab: **Adjust** and **Correct/Enhance**.

Use **Adjust** to adjust brightness and contrast, or to sharpen the entire image.

Use **Correct/Enhance** to correct/enhance specific areas.

Adjust



Brightness

Adjusts the overall image brightness.

Move the slider to the left to darken and right to brighten the image.

Contrast

Adjusts the contrast of the image. Adjust the contrast when the image is flat due to lack of contrast.

Move the slider to the left to decrease and right to increase the contrast of the image.

Sharpness

Emphasizes the outline of the subjects to sharpen the image. Adjust the sharpness when the photo is out of focus or text is blurred.

Move the slider to the right to sharpen the image.

Blur

Blurs the outline of the subjects to soften the image.

Move the slider to the right to soften the image.

Show-through Removal

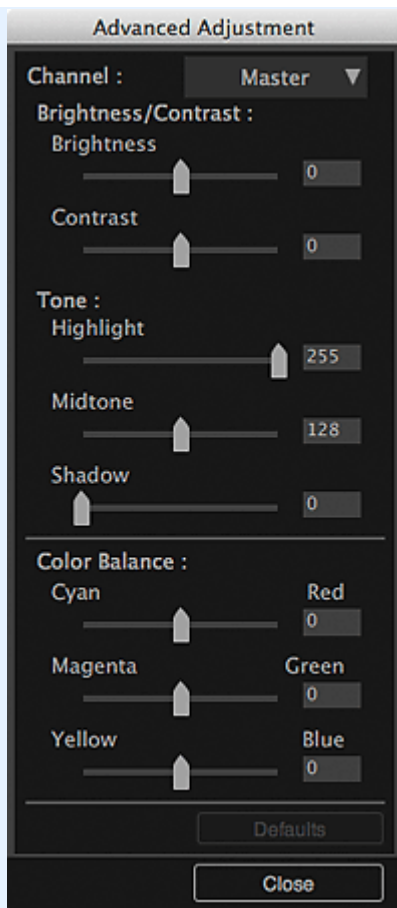
Removes show-through of text from the reverse side or removes the base color. Adjust the show-through level to prevent text on the reverse side of thin document or the base color of the document from appearing on the image.

Move the slider to the right to increase the show-through removal effect.

Advanced

Displays the **Advanced Adjustment** dialog in which you can make fine adjustments to the image brightness and color tone.

For **Brightness/Contrast** and **Tone**, select a color in **Channel** to adjust either **Red**, **Green**, or **Blue**, or select **Master** to adjust three colors together.



Brightness/Contrast

Adjusts the brightness and contrast of the image.

Move the **Brightness** slider to the left to darken and right to brighten the image.

Move the **Contrast** slider to the left to decrease and right to increase the contrast of the image.

Tone

Adjusts the brightness balance by specifying **Highlight** (the brightest level), **Shadow** (the darkest level) and **Midtone** (the color in the middle of **Highlight** and **Shadow**).

Move the **Highlight** slider to the left to brighten the image.

Move the **Midtone** slider to the left to brighten and right to darken the image.

Move the **Shadow** slider to the right to darken the image.

Color Balance

Adjusts the vividness and color tone of the image.

Move the **Color Balance** slider to the left or right to emphasize the corresponding color.

Defaults

Resets all adjustments.

Close

Closes the **Advanced Adjustment** dialog.



Note

- The **Brightness** and **Contrast** values set in **Adjust** do not change even if the brightness and color tone are adjusted in the **Advanced Adjustment** dialog.

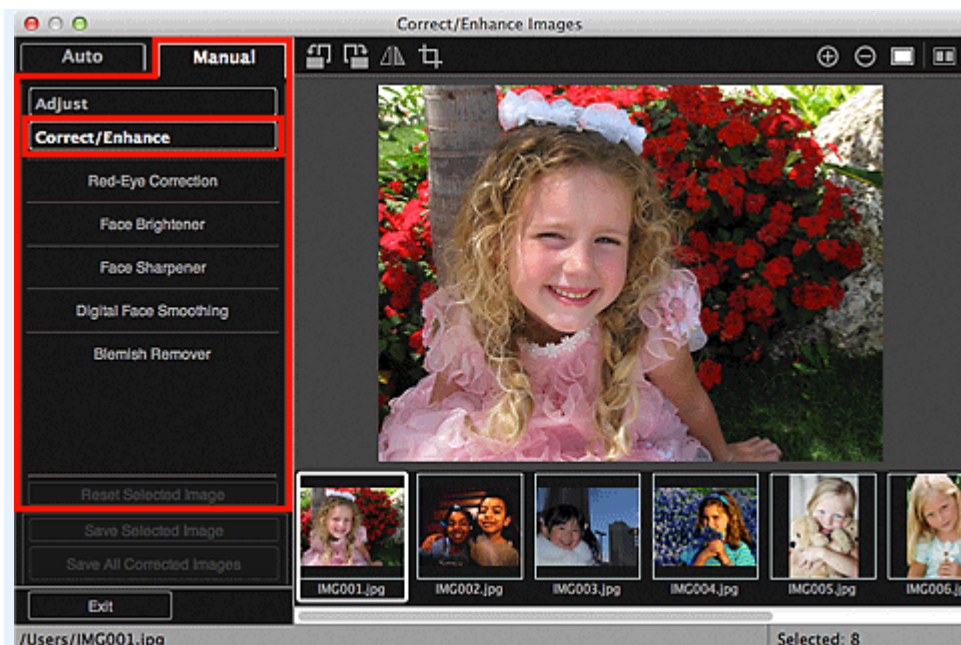
Defaults

Resets each adjustment (brightness, contrast, sharpness, blur, and show-through removal).

Reset Selected Image

Restores the corrected, adjusted or enhanced image to the original uncorrected, unenhanced or unadjusted state.

Correct/Enhance



Red-Eye Correction

Corrects red eyes in the selected area.

You can adjust the correction level using the slider.

Face Brightener

Corrects the entire image to brighten the face area in and around the selected area.

You can adjust the correction level using the slider.

Face Sharpener

Corrects the entire image to sharpen the face area in and around the selected area.

You can adjust the correction level using the slider.

Digital Face Smoothing

Enhances skin beautifully by reducing blemishes and wrinkles in the selected area.

You can adjust the enhancement level using the slider.

Blemish Remover

Reduces moles in the selected area.

OK

Applies the selected correction/enhancement to the specified area.

Undo

Cancels the last applied correction/enhancement.

Reset Selected Image

Restores the corrected, adjusted or enhanced image to the original uncorrected, unenhanced or unadjusted state.

(2) Preview Operation Buttons

Note

- When the **Correct/Enhance Images** window is displayed from the **My Art** view,  (Rotate Left 90°),  (Rotate Right 90°),  (Invert Horizontally) and  (Crop) do not appear.

(Rotate Left 90°)/(Rotate Right 90°)

Rotates the image 90 degrees counter-clockwise or clockwise with each click.

(Invert Horizontally)

Inverts the image horizontally.

(Crop)

Displays the **Crop** window in which you can crop the image.

➡ **Crop Window**

⊕ ⊖ **(Enlarge)/(Reduce)**

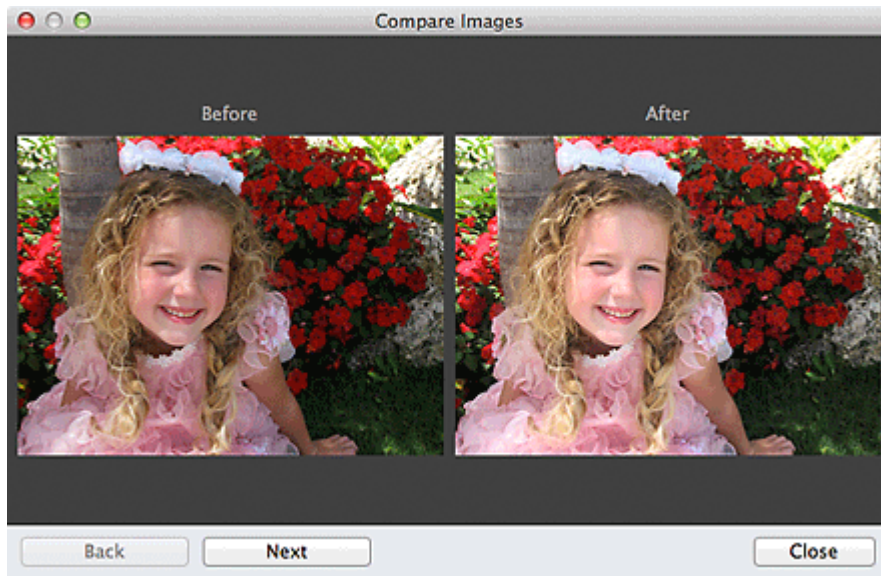
Enlarges or reduces the preview with each click.

🖼 **(Whole Image View)**

Fits the preview to the area size.

🔍 **(Display Comparison Screen)**

Displays the **Compare Images** window in which you can compare the images before and after the correction, enhancement or adjustment.



Before

The image before correction, enhancement or adjustment appears.

After

The image after correction, enhancement or adjustment appears.

Back/Next

Switches to the previous/next image.

Not available when one image is selected.

Close

Closes the **Compare Images** window.

(3) Preview Area

Displays the preview of the image being corrected or enhanced.

The  (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on corrected or enhanced images.

(4) Selected Images Area

Displays the thumbnails of the images when multiple images were selected upon displaying the **Correct/Enhance Images** window.

This area does not appear when one image was selected upon displaying the **Correct/Enhance Images** window.

The  (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on corrected or enhanced images.

Note

- This area does not appear when multiple images were selected in the **My Art** view upon displaying the **Correct/Enhance Images** window; only the preview of the last selected image appears.

(5) Operation Buttons

Save Selected Image

Displays the **Save** dialog from which you can save the corrected, enhanced or adjusted image displayed in the Preview area.

➡ [Save Dialog \(Correct/Enhance Images or Special Image Filters Window\)](#)

Save All Corrected Images

Displays the **Save** dialog from which you can save all corrected, enhanced or adjusted images in the Selected Images area.

➡ [Save Dialog \(Correct/Enhance Images or Special Image Filters Window\)](#)

Exit

Closes the **Correct/Enhance Images** window.

Related Topic

📌 [Correcting/Enhancing Photos](#)

Page top ▲

A302

My Image Garden

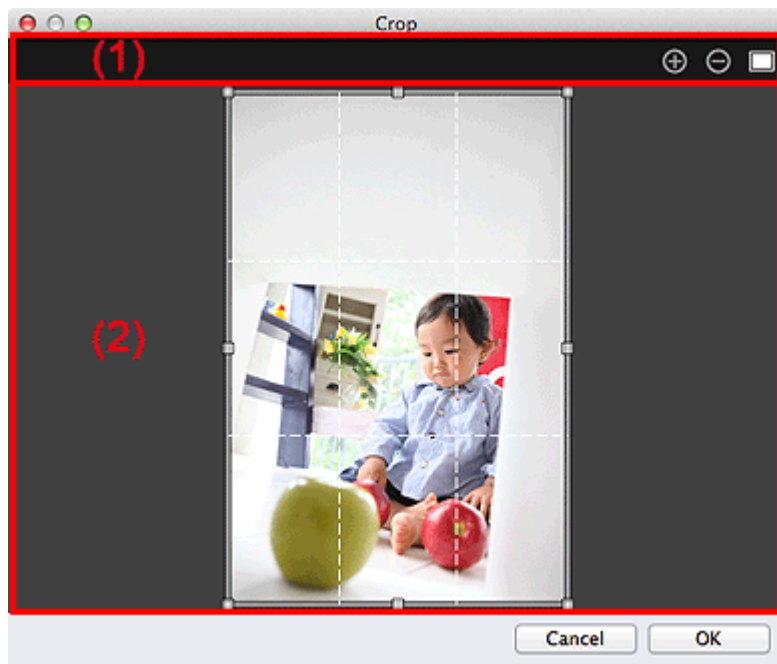
Crop Window

You can crop images.

Click  (Crop) in the **Correct/Enhance Images** window to display the **Crop** window.

Note

- When the **Correct/Enhance Images** windows is displayed from the **My Art** view,  (Crop) does not appear.



(1) Preview Operation Buttons

(2) Preview Area

(1) Preview Operation Buttons

  (Enlarge)/(Reduce)

Enlarges or reduces the preview with each click.

 (Whole Image View)

Fits the preview to the area size.

(2) Preview Area

Displays the preview of the image to be cropped.

The area to be cropped is indicated by a white frame.

Related Topic

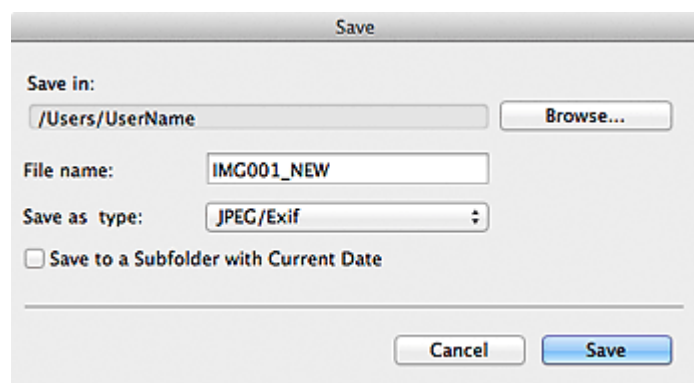
- [Cropping Photos](#)
- [Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)

Save Dialog (Correct/Enhance Images or Special Image Filters Window)

You can make advanced settings for saving corrected, enhanced or adjusted images to a computer.

Display the **Save** dialog by one of the following operations.

- Click **Save Selected Image** or **Save All Corrected Images** in the **Correct/Enhance Images** window
- Click **Save Selected Image** or **Save All Filtered Images** in the **Special Image Filters** window



Save in

You can set the folder in which to save the images. To change the folder, click **Browse...**, then specify the destination folder.

Note

- This is disabled when the **Save to original folder** checkbox is selected.

File Name

You can enter the file name of the image to be saved. You cannot enter the file name when saving multiple files at the same time. "_NEW" is automatically appended to the original file names.

Save as type

Displays the file type in which to save the corrected, enhanced or adjusted image(s). You can save in **JPEG/Exif** only.

Save to a subfolder with current date

Select this checkbox to create a current date folder in the folder specified in **Save in** and save corrected, enhanced or adjusted images in it. The current date folder will be created with a name such as "20XX_01_01" (Year_Month_Date).

Save to original folder

Select this checkbox to save the corrected, enhanced or adjusted images to the folders in which the original uncorrected, unenhanced or unadjusted images are saved.

Note

- **Save to original folder** appears only when **Save All Corrected Images** or **Save All Filtered Images** was clicked.

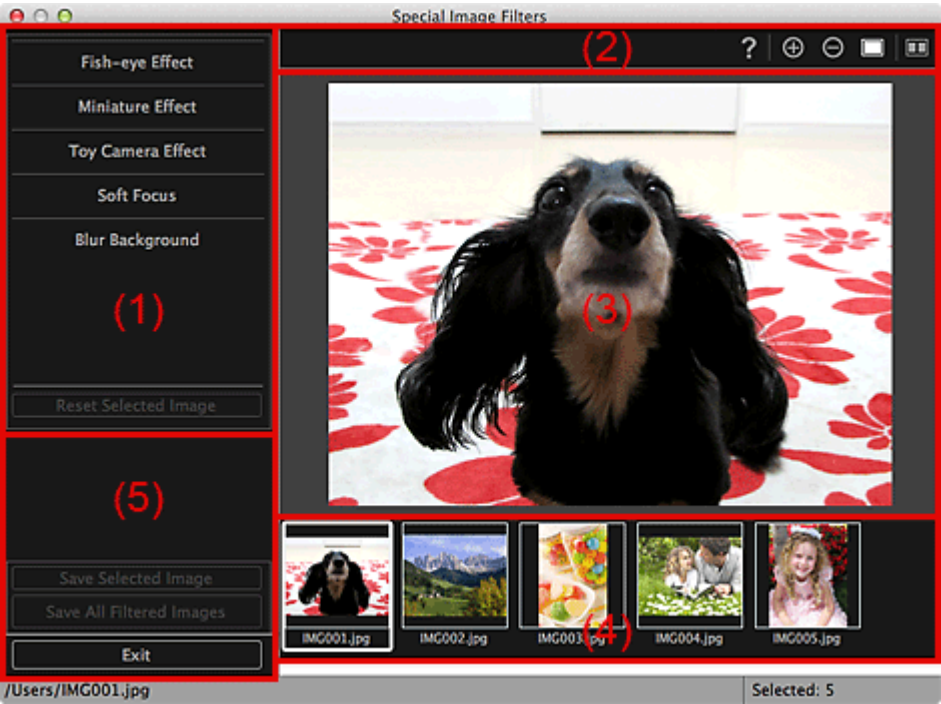
Related Topic

- [Special Image Filters Window](#)

Special Image Filters Window

You can enhance images using special filters.
Display the **Special Image Filters** window by one of the following operations.

- Select the image(s) in use in the Edit area of the **My Art** view, then click **Special Filters** at the bottom of the screen
- Select an image or images in **Day View** of the **Calendar** view, the **Event** view, the expanded display of the **People** view, the **Unregistered People** view or folder view, then click **Special Filters** at the bottom of the screen



- (1) Image Effects Area
- (2) Preview Operation Buttons
- (3) Preview Area
- (4) Selected Images Area
- (5) Operation Buttons

(1) Image Effects Area

Note

- **OK** and **Cancel** appear only when **Fish-eye Effect**, **Miniature Effect** or **Blur Background** is selected.

Fish-eye Effect

You can enhance an image to resemble a photo taken with a fish-eye lens, focusing on the selected point.
You can adjust the enhancement level using the slider.

Miniature Effect

You can enhance an image to resemble a photo of a miniature model (diorama).
You can adjust the size of the white frame (area that will not be blurred) using the slider.

Toy Camera Effect

You can enhance an image to resemble a retro photo taken with a toy camera.
The enhancement is applied as you move the slider to adjust the effect level.

Soft Focus

You can enhance an entire image to soften the focus.
The enhancement is applied as you move the slider to adjust the effect level.

Blur Background

You can blur the area outside the selection.
You can adjust the enhancement level using the slider.

OK

Applies the specified enhancement to the selected image.

Cancel

Cancels the last applied enhancement.

Reset Selected Image

Restores the enhanced image to the original unenhanced state.

(2) Preview Operation Buttons

Note

-  (Detect the Outline and Select the Area) and  (Cancel the Selected Area) appear only when **Blur Background** is selected.

(Detect the Outline and Select the Area)

You can specify the area that will not be blurred. The outline is automatically detected.

(Cancel the Selected Area)

Deletes the selected area.

(Help)

Opens this guide.

(Enlarge)/(Reduce)

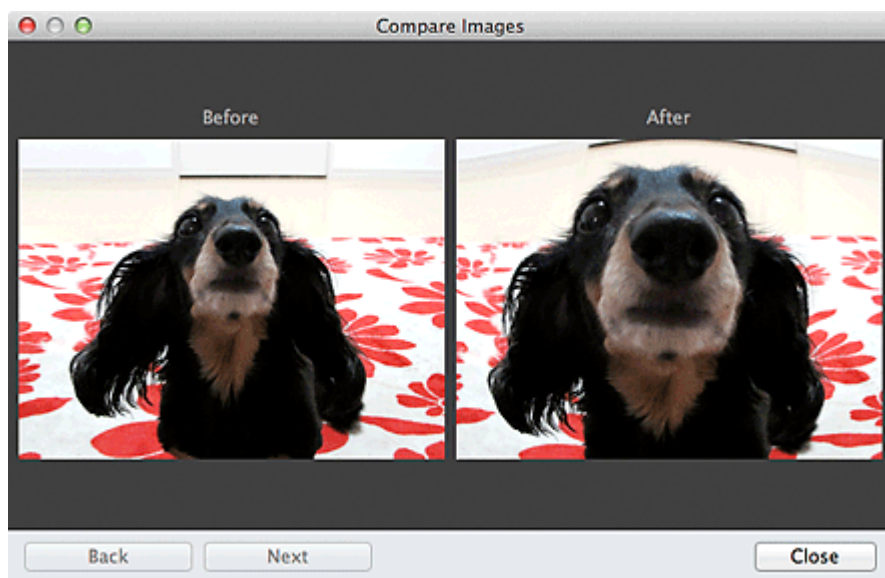
Enlarges or reduces the preview with each click.

(Whole Image View)

Fits the preview to the area size.

(Display Comparison Screen)

Displays the **Compare Images** window in which you can compare the images before and after the enhancement.



Before

The image before enhancement appears.

After

The image after enhancement appears.

Back/Next

Switches to the previous/next image.

Not available when one image is selected.

Close

Closes the **Compare Images** window.

(3) Preview Area

Displays the preview of the image being enhanced.

The  (Enhancement) mark appears on enhanced images.

(4) Selected Images Area

Displays the thumbnails of the images when multiple images were selected upon displaying the **Special Image Filters** window.

This area does not appear when one image was selected upon displaying the **Special Filters** window.

The  (Enhancement) mark appears on enhanced images.

Note

- This area does not appear when multiple images were selected in the **My Art** view upon displaying the **Special Image Filters** window; only the preview of the last selected image appears.

(5) Operation Buttons

Save Selected Image

Displays the **Save** dialog from which you can save the enhanced image displayed in the Preview area.

➡ [Save Dialog \(Correct/Enhance Images or Special Image Filters Window\)](#)

Save All Filtered Images

Displays the **Save** dialog from which you can save all enhanced images in the Selected Images area.

➡ [Save Dialog \(Correct/Enhance Images or Special Image Filters Window\)](#)

Exit

Closes the **Special Image Filters** window.

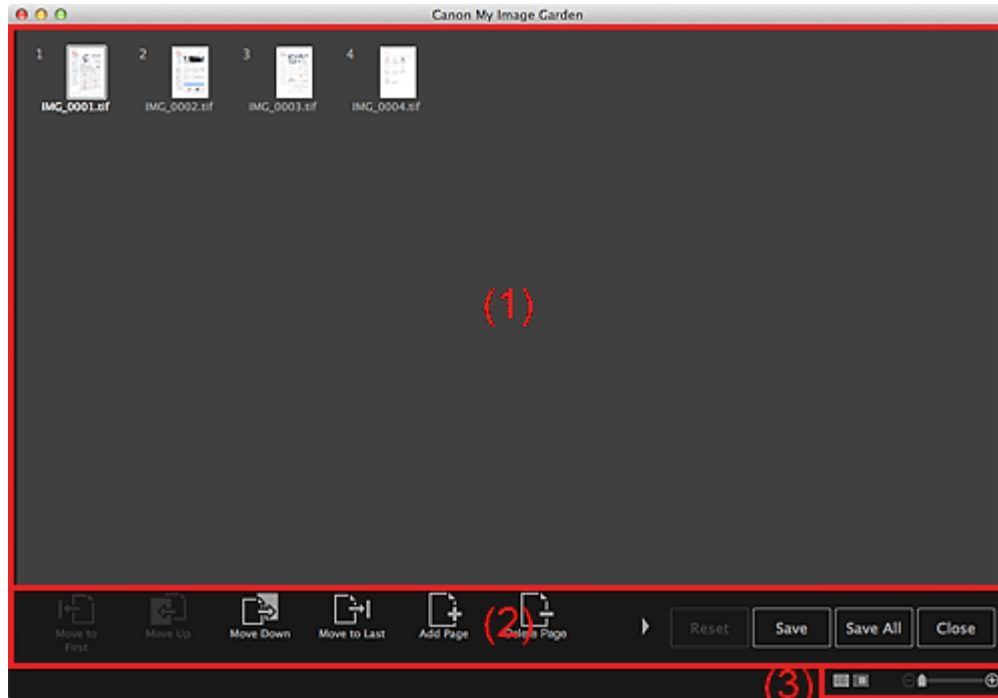
Related Topic

🌱 [Enhancing Photos Using Special Filters](#)

Create/Edit PDF File View

You can create PDF files from images saved on a computer. You can also add pages to or delete pages from the created PDF files and rearrange pages.

Select an image (or images) or a PDF file (or PDF files) in **Day View** of the **Calendar** view, the **Event** view or folder view, then click **Create/Edit PDF File** at the bottom of the screen to switch to the **Create/Edit PDF File** view.



(1) Thumbnails Area

(2) Operation Buttons

(3) Display Size Setting Bar

(1) Thumbnails Area

Displays the thumbnails of images as pages that compose a PDF file.

You can change the page order via drag-and-drop.

Double-click a page to switch the view to preview the image.



(a) Pages Area

Displays the thumbnails of images as pages that compose a PDF file.
You can change the page order via drag-and-drop.

▲▼ (Up Scroll)/(Down Scroll)

Scrolls up/down the Pages area.

(b) Preview Area

Displays the preview of an image.

(c) Page Operations Toolbar

▲▼ (Previous Page)/(Next Page)

Switches the displayed page.

▲▼ (First Page)/(Last Page)

Displays the first page or last page.

(2) Operation Buttons



Move to First

Moves the selected pages to the top.



Move Up

Moves the selected pages up one page.



Move Down

Moves the selected pages down one page.



Move to Last

Moves the selected pages to the end.



Add Page

Displays the **Open** dialog; select the image or PDF file you want to add, then click **Open** to add a page to the end.



Delete Page

Deletes the selected page(s).



Rotate

Rotates the image 90 degrees clockwise with each click.



Undo

Undoes the last operation.

Each click restores the previous state.

Reset

Undoes all operations performed in the **Create/Edit PDF File** view.

Click to restore the initial state.

Save

Displays the **Save** dialog from which you can save each of the page displayed in the Preview area as a separate PDF file.

➡ [Save Dialog \(Create/Edit PDF File View\)](#)

Save All

Displays the **Save** dialog from which you can save all the pages in one PDF file in the page order in the Thumbnails area or Pages area.

➡ [Save Dialog \(Create/Edit PDF File View\)](#)

Close

Switches to the view before the **Create/Edit PDF File** view was displayed.

(3) Display Size Setting Bar



Note

-  (Whole Image View) appears only in preview.



(Thumbnail View)

Switches the view to the thumbnails of pages.



(Preview)

Switches the view to preview pages.



(Whole Image View)

While in preview, fits the preview to the area size.



(Reduce/Enlarge)

Click  (Reduce) or  (Enlarge) to reduce or enlarge the display size. You can also freely change the display size by dragging the slider.

Related Topic

➡ [Creating/Editing PDF Files](#)

Page top ▲

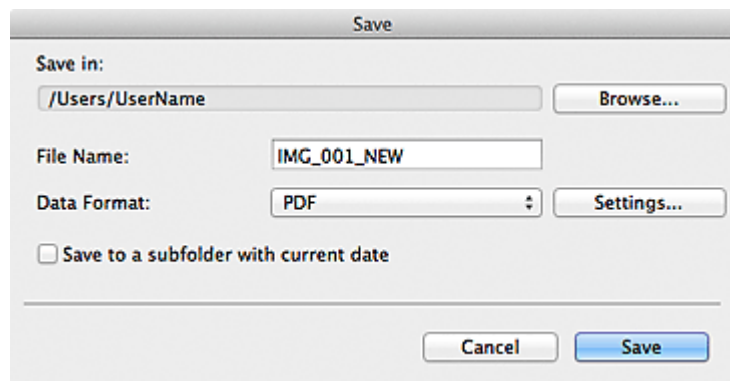
A500

My Image Garden

Save Dialog (Create/Edit PDF File View)

You can make advanced settings for saving created or edited PDF files to a computer.

Click **Save** or **Save All** at the bottom right of the **Create/Edit PDF File** view to display the **Save** dialog.



Save in

You can set the folder in which to save the PDF files. To change the folder, click **Browse...**, then specify the destination folder.

File Name

You can enter the file name of the image to be saved. When saving each of the images as a separate file, a sequential number is appended to the names of the second and subsequent files.

Data Format

You can select the data format in which to save the PDF files.

PDF

You can save each page as a separate PDF file.

A separate PDF file is also created for each page when multiple pages are selected or when **Save All** is clicked.

PDF (Multiple Pages)

You can save multiple pages in one PDF file.



Note

- **PDF (Multiple Pages)** appears when multiple images are selected.

Settings...

The **File Settings** dialog appears and you can make advanced settings for creating PDF files. See "[File Settings Dialog](#)" for the setting procedure.

Save to a subfolder with current date

Select this checkbox to create a current date folder in the folder specified in **Save in** and save scanned images in it. The folder will be created with a name such as "20XX_01_01" (Year_Month_Date).

If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in **Save in**.

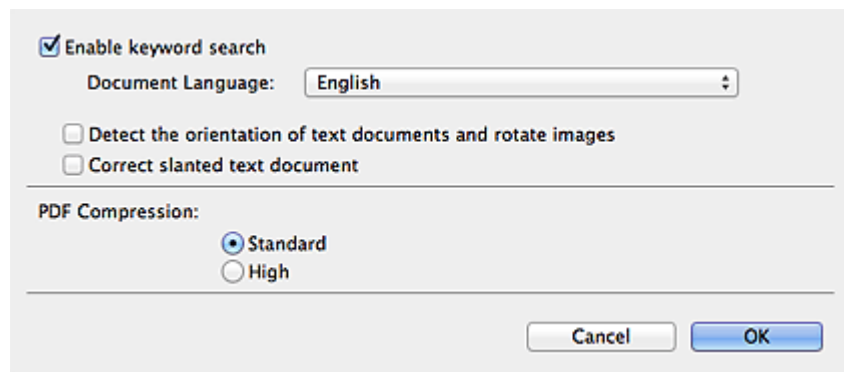
Related Topic

📄 [Create/Edit PDF File View](#)

File Settings Dialog

You can make advanced settings such as the PDF compression type to the PDF file to be saved.

Click **Settings...** in the **Create/Edit PDF File** view of the **Save** dialog to display the **File Settings** dialog.



Enable keyword search

Select this checkbox to convert text in images into text data and create PDF files that support keyword search.

Document Language

Select the language for detecting text in images.

Detect the orientation of text documents and rotate images

Select this checkbox to detect the page orientation based on the text in images and automatically rotate the images for creating PDF files.

Important

- This function is available only for images (text documents) containing languages that can be selected from **Document Language**. This function is not available depending on the language in the image.
- The page orientation may not be detected for the following types of images since the text cannot be detected correctly.
 - Images with small amount of text
 - Images containing text with font size outside the range of 8 points to 48 points
 - Images containing special fonts, effects, italics, or hand-written text
 - Images with patterned backgrounds

Correct slanted text document

Select this checkbox to detect the document orientation based on the text in images and correct the angle (within the range of -0.1 to -10 degrees or +0.1 to +10 degrees) for creating PDF files.

Important

- The following types of images may not be corrected properly since the text cannot be detected correctly.
 - Images in which the text lines are inclined more than 10 degrees or the angles vary by line
 - Images containing both vertical and horizontal text
 - Images with extremely large or small fonts
 - Images with small amount of text
 - Images containing figures/images
 - Hand-written image

PDF Compression

Select a compression type for saving.

Standard

It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

High

Compresses the file size when saving. You can reduce the load on your network/server.



Important

- PDF images may degrade if you repeatedly save them with high compression.

Related Topic

 [Save Dialog \(Create/Edit PDF File View\)](#)

Page top 

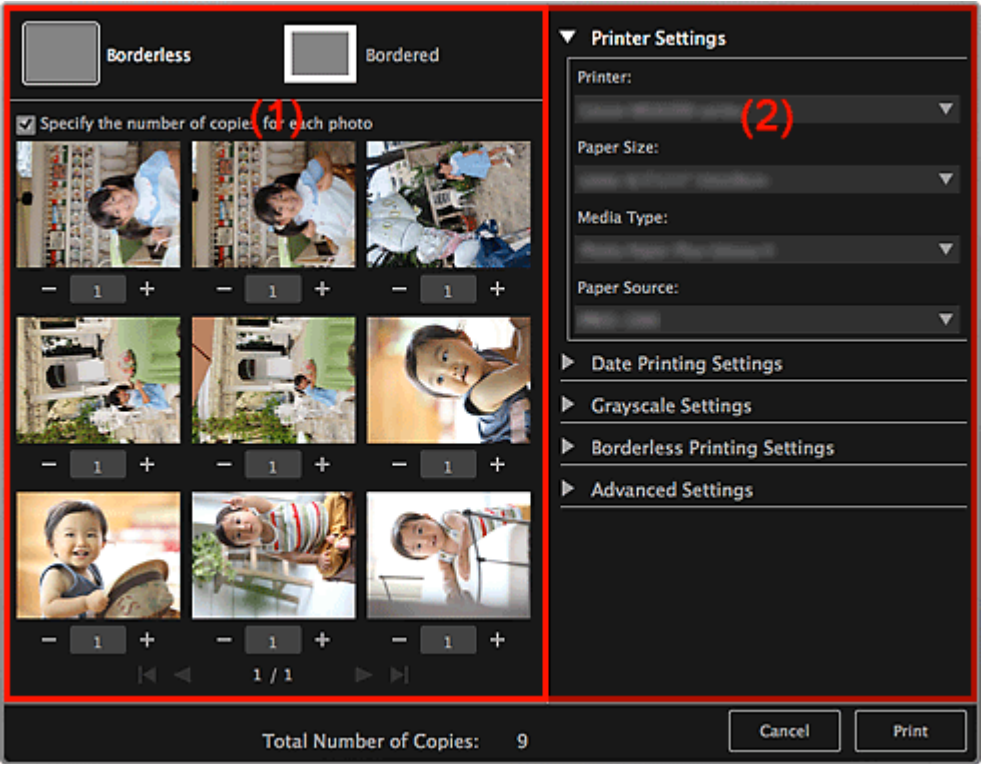
Print Settings Dialog

You can specify the print settings and start printing.

Click **Print** at the bottom right of each view to display the print settings window.

Note

- The displayed items vary by the data to be printed.



(1) Print Preview Area

(2) Advanced Print Settings Area

(1) Print Preview Area

You can check the print preview or set the number of copies to be printed.



You can print borderless photos.

Note

- You can specify the amount of extension in **Borderless Printing Settings** of the advanced print settings area.



You can print bordered photos.

Specify the number of copies for each photo

Select this checkbox to set the number of copies to be printed image by image when printing multiple images at the same time.

(First Page)/(Last Page)

Displays the first page or last page in print preview.

(Previous Page)/(Next Page)

Switches pages in print preview.

(Reduce 1 Copy)/(Increase 1 Copy)

You can set the number of copies to be printed. Set 1 to 99 as the number of copies.

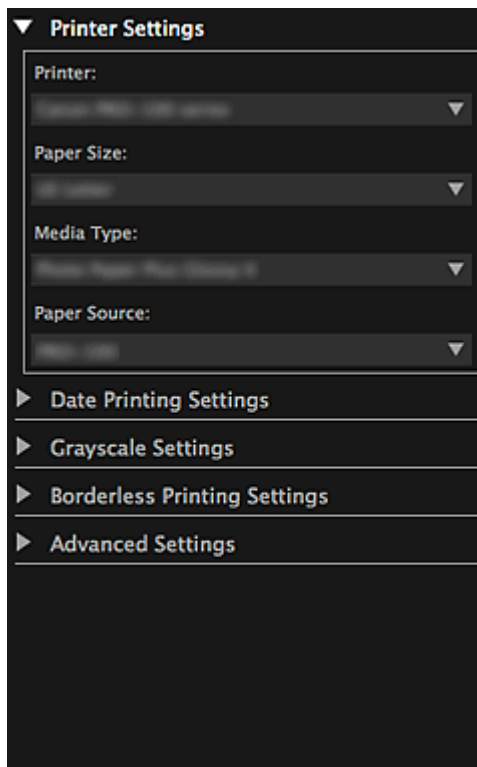
(2) Advanced Print Settings Area

You can set the printer to be used or printing method. Click  (Right Arrow) for each item to display advanced setting items.

Note

- The displayed items vary by data and item to be printed.
-

Printer Settings



The screenshot shows a dark-themed settings menu. At the top is a section titled 'Printer Settings' with a downward arrow. Below it are four dropdown menus: 'Printer:', 'Paper Size:', 'Media Type:', and 'Paper Source:'. Each dropdown has a right-pointing arrow. Below these are four more sections, each with a right-pointing arrow: 'Date Printing Settings', 'Grayscale Settings', 'Borderless Printing Settings', and 'Advanced Settings'.

Printer

You can select the printer to be used.

Note

- Only Canon printers appear.
-

Paper Size

You can select the size of the paper to be used.

Note

- When printing from the **My Art** view, the paper size suitable for your item appears automatically. The size cannot be changed.
 - See "[Paper Size List](#)" for sizes of paper.
-

Media Type

Select the type of paper to be used.

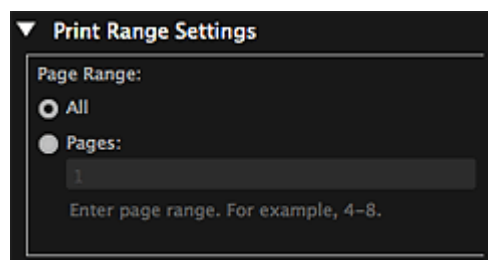
Paper Source

You can select how to feed paper.

Note

- Available paper sizes, media types, paper sources vary depending on the printer to be used.

Print Range Settings



Page Range

You can specify the page range for printing.

All

You can print all pages.

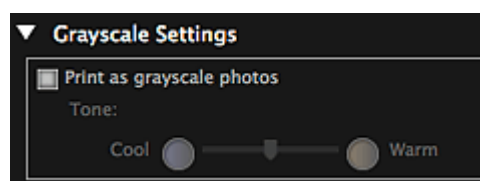
Pages

You can print only the specified page by entering the page number of the page you want to print. To specify multiple pages, enter a hyphen between the page numbers; the pages in the specified range will be printed.

Note

- **Print Range Settings** appears only when printing the items in **My Art** or PDF files.

Grayscale Settings



Print as grayscale photos

Select this checkbox to print images in grayscale.

Tone

You can adjust the color tone using the slider. Move the slider to the right for warm color tones (warm black) and left for cool color tones (cool black).

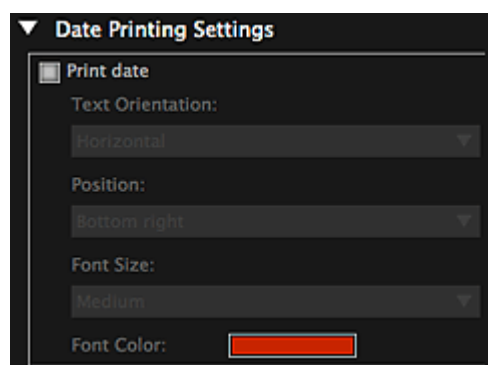
Important

- **Cool** and **Warm** may not be available depending on the selected **Media Type**.

Note

- This appears only when a printer that supports grayscale printing is selected in **Printer Settings**.

Date Printing Settings



Print date

Select this checkbox to add dates to the images before printing.

Text Orientation

You can select the orientation of the date.

Position

You can select the position to print the date.

The print position of the date does not change even if images are rotated.

Font Size

You can select the size of the date.

Font Color

You can set the color of the date.



(Color Setting)

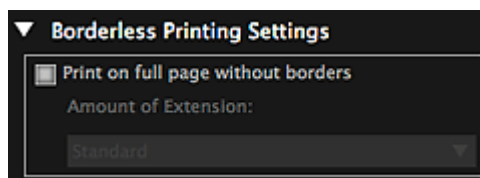
The **Colors** dialog appears. Select a color.



Note

- The date is the image shooting date recorded as Exif data. If there is no Exif data, the date and time of last update to the image file will be printed.

Borderless Printing Settings



Print on full page without borders

Select this checkbox to print the image on an entire sheet of paper without borders.

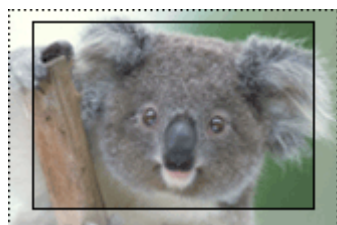


Note

- You can also set in **Borderless** of the print preview area.

Amount of Extension

Select the amount of extension from **None**, **Small**, **Medium**, **Large** and **Standard**.



Large



Medium



Small

The solid lines represent the paper size, and the translucent areas represent the amount of extension.



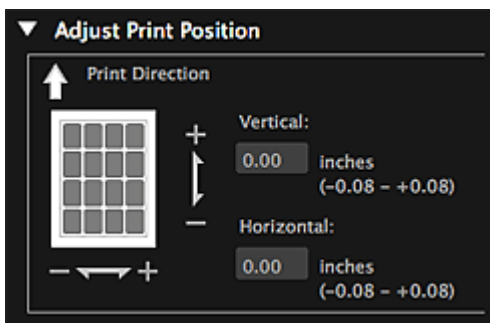
Important

- When **Amount of Extension** is set to **Large**, the back of paper may become stained.
- When **Amount of Extension** is set to **Small** or **None**, margins may appear depending on the size of the paper.

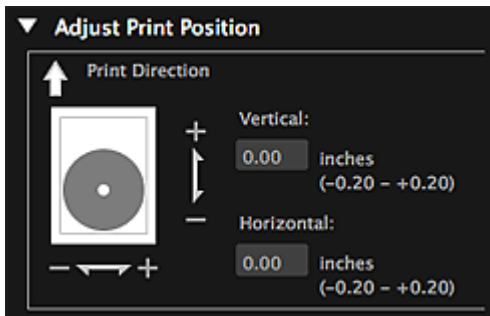
Adjust Print Position

If the image on the printed sticker or disc label is out of position, you can adjust the print position. You can adjust the print position in 0.01 inch or 0.1 mm increments within the following ranges.

Stickers: -0.08 inch (-2.0 mm) to +0.08 inch (+2.0 mm)



Disc Label: -0.2 inch (-5.0 mm) to +0.2 inch (+5.0 mm)



Vertical

You can adjust the print position in the vertical direction.

Set a positive value to move upward or set a negative value to move downward.

Horizontal

You can adjust the print position in the horizontal direction.

Set a positive value to move left or set a negative value to move right.

Advanced Settings

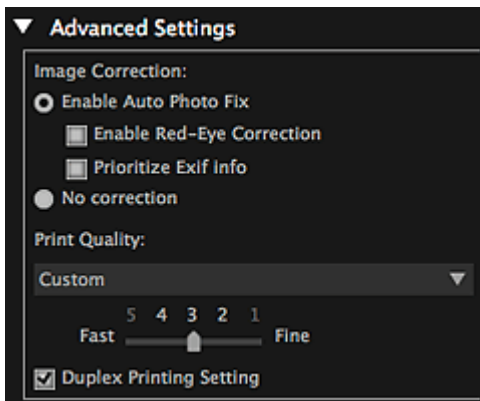


Image Correction

Select **Enable Auto Photo Fix** to apply corrections automatically; select **No correction** if you do not want to do so. Select **Enable Auto Photo Fix** to set the following.

Enable Red-Eye Correction

Select this checkbox to correct red eyes caused by a camera flash.

Prioritize Exif info

Select this checkbox to apply corrections primarily based on the settings made at the time of shooting.



Important

- The color tone may change when you print a document image with **Enable Auto Photo Fix** selected. In that case, select **No correction**.

Print Quality

You can select the print quality suitable for the data to be printed.

You can select **High**, **Standard**, **Fast** or **Custom**. Select **Custom** to display a slider with which you can set the print quality in five levels. Move the slider to the right to improve the quality and left to increase the print speed.

Duplex Printing Setting

This appears when you select a printer and media type that support duplex printing. Select this checkbox to print on both sides of the paper.

Print

Starts printing with the specified settings.

Related Topic

- 📌 [Printing Photos and Documents](#)
- 📌 [Printing Recommended Items and Images Displayed in Slide Shows](#)
- 📌 [Creating and Printing Items](#)
- 📌 [Downloading and Printing PREMIUM Contents](#)
- 📌 [Capturing and Printing Still Images from Videos](#)

Page top ▲

Paper Size List

Paper sizes available for printing with My Image Garden are as follows. Check the paper to use before printing.

Note

- Paper sizes that can be selected vary depending on your printer, your operating system and the country/region setting.
- For PDF files, you can select all the paper sizes available for printing on your printer.

Paper Size	Size
A4	8.27 x 11.69 inches (21.0 x 29.7 cm)
Letter 8.5"x11" 22x28cm	8.50 x 11.00 inches (21.59 x 27.94 cm)
Hagaki 100x148mm	3.94 x 5.83 inches (10.0 x 14.8 cm)
L 89x127mm	3.50 x 5.00 inches (8.9 x 12.7 cm)
2L 127x178mm	5.00 x 7.01 inches (12.7 x 17.8 cm)
4"x6" 10x15cm	4.00 x 6.00 inches (10.16 x 15.24 cm)
Card 2.17"x3.58" 55x91mm	2.17 x 3.58 inches (5.5 x 9.1 cm)
5"x7" 13x18cm	5.00 x 7.00 inches (12.7 x 17.78 cm)
Credit Card 2.13"x3.39" 54x86mm	2.13 x 3.39 inches (5.4 x 8.6 cm)
8"x10" 20x25cm	8.00 x 10.00 inches (20.32 x 25.4 cm)
10"x12" 25x30cm	10.00 x 12.00 inches (25.4 x 30.48 cm)
14"x17" 36x43cm	14.00 x 17.00 inches (35.56 x 43.18 cm)
A3	11.69 x 16.54 inches (29.7 x 42.0 cm)
A3+ 13"x19" 33x48cm	12.95 x 19.02 inches (32.9 x 48.3 cm)
11"x17" 279.4x431.8mm	11.00 x 17.00 inches (27.94 x 43.18 cm)
Photo Stickers (Variety)	3.94 x 5.83 inches (10.0 x 14.8 cm)
Photo Stickers	3.94 x 5.83 inches (10.0 x 14.8 cm)
Photo Stickers (Free Cut)	3.94 x 5.83 inches (10.0 x 14.8 cm)
Standard disc 4.7" 120mm	4.72 x 4.72 inches (12.0 x 12.0 cm)
Standard disc 4.7" 120mm (small inner circle)	4.72 x 4.72 inches (12.0 x 12.0 cm)
CD-R tray	5.34 x 10.07 inches (13.58 x 25.57 cm)
CD-R tray A	5.63 x 10.34 inches (14.3 x 26.27 cm)
CD-R tray B	5.16 x 9.40 inches (13.1 x 23.88 cm)
CD-R tray C	5.16 x 9.40 inches (13.1 x 23.88 cm)
CD-R tray D	5.16 x 9.40 inches (13.1 x 23.88 cm)
CD-R tray E	6.77 x 10.83 inches (17.2 x 27.5 cm)
CD-R tray F	5.16 x 9.55 inches (13.1 x 24.26 cm)
CD-R tray G	5.16 x 10.01 inches (13.1 x 25.43 cm)
Disc tray G	5.16 x 10.01 inches (13.1 x 25.43 cm)
Disc tray H	5.95 x 14.92 inches (15.12 x 37.9 cm)
Disc tray J	5.12 x 8.85 inches (13.0 x 22.48 cm)
Disc tray K	5.95 x 12.60 inches (15.12 x 32.0 cm)
Art A4 (Margin 35)	8.27 x 11.69 inches (21.0 x 29.7 cm)
Art Letter (Margin 35)	8.50 x 11.00 inches (21.59 x 27.94 cm)
Art A3 (Margin 35)	11.69 x 16.54 inches (29.7 x 42.0 cm)
Art A3+ (Margin 35)	12.95 x 19.02 inches (32.9 x 48.3 cm)
Fine Art A4	8.27 x 11.69 inches (21.0 x 29.7 cm)
Fine Art Letter	8.50 x 11.00 inches (21.59 x 27.94 cm)
Fine Art A3	11.69 x 16.54 inches (29.7 x 42.0 cm)

Fine Art A3+	12.95 x 19.02 inches (32.9 x 48.3 cm)
A4 (Art Paper Margin 35)	8.27 x 11.69 inches (21.0 x 29.7 cm)
Letter (Art Paper Margin 35)	8.50 x 11.00 inches (21.59 x 27.94 cm)
A3 (Art Paper Margin 35)	11.69 x 16.54 inches (29.7 x 42.0 cm)
A3+ (Art Paper Margin 35)	12.95 x 19.02 inches (32.9 x 48.3 cm)
A4 (Art Paper Margin 30)	8.27 x 11.69 inches (21.0 x 29.7 cm)
Letter (Art Paper Margin 30)	8.50 x 11.00 inches (21.59 x 27.94 cm)
A3 (Art Paper Margin 30)	11.69 x 16.54 inches (29.7 x 42.0 cm)
A3+ (Art Paper Margin 30)	12.95 x 19.02 inches (32.9 x 48.3 cm)

Preferences Dialog

You can specify the environment of My Image Garden, image analysis function settings, folders in which to save files, applications to use, etc.

Select **Preferences...** in the **My Image Garden** menu of My Image Garden to display the **Preferences** dialog.

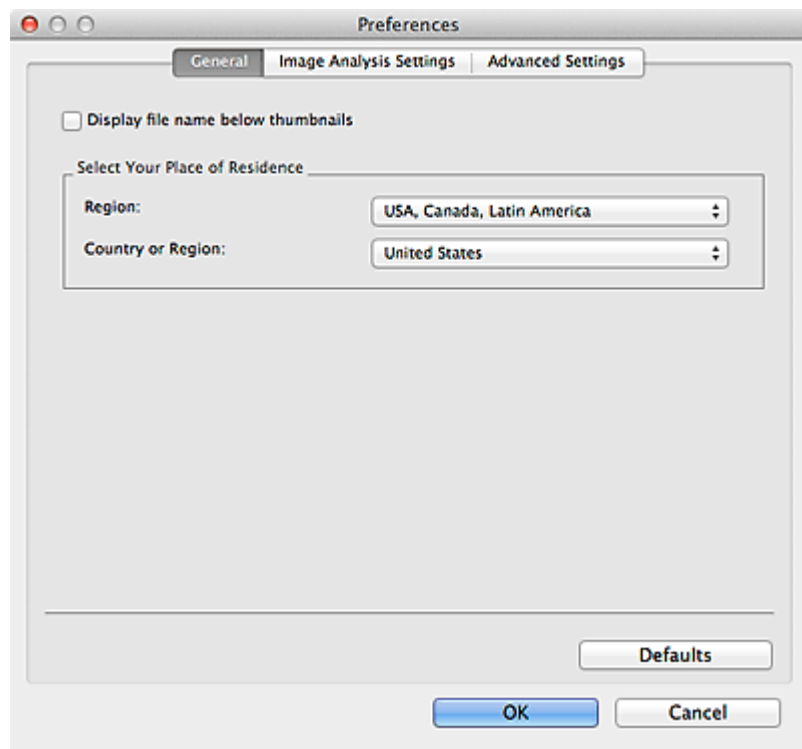
➡ **General Tab**

➡ **Image Analysis Settings Tab**

➡ **Advanced Settings Tab**

General Tab

You can specify settings regarding the view and region.



Display file name below thumbnails

Select this checkbox to display the file names below the thumbnails in the thumbnail view of **Day View** in the **Calendar** view, the **Event** view or folder view.

Select Your Place of Residence

Region

You can select your region.

Country or Region

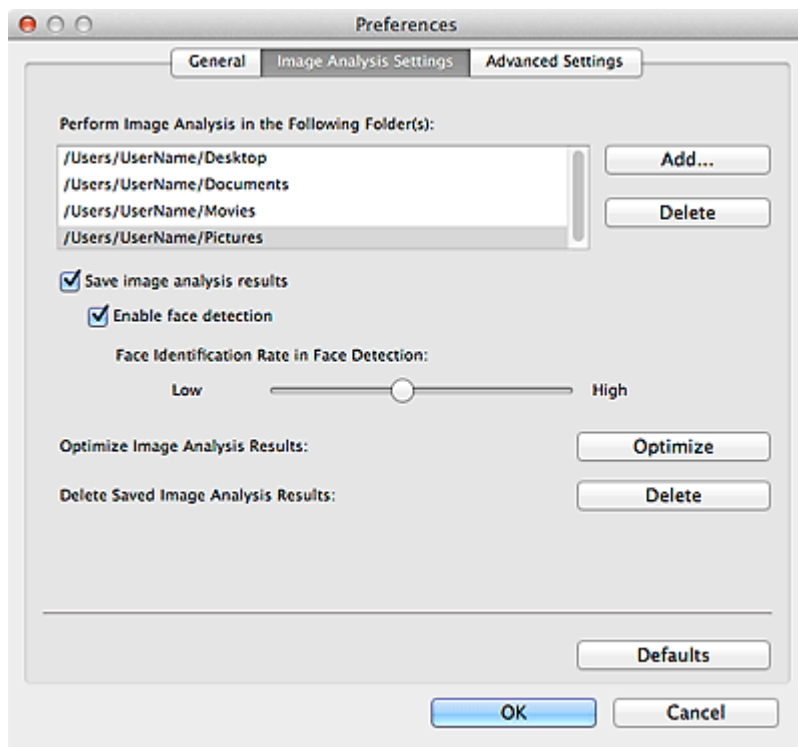
You can select your country or region. Items that can be selected vary by the **Region** setting.

Defaults

Restores all items to the default settings.

Image Analysis Settings Tab

You can set the folders to be subject to image analysis, face detection rate for image analysis, etc.



Perform Image Analysis in the Following Folder(s)

Displays the folders to be subject to image analysis. Only the images in the folders registered here appear in the **Calendar** view, **Unregistered People** view or **People** view, and are used in recommended items displayed in Image Display.

To add a folder as the target of image analysis, click **Add...** and specify the folder. To remove a folder from the targets of image analysis, select the folder and click **Delete**.

Important

- When a folder is removed from the targets of image analysis, the favorite levels set to or information of people/events registered to the images saved in the folder may be lost.

Note

- Image analysis is performed upon starting My Image Garden when the **Save image analysis results** and **Enable face detection** checkboxes are selected and there is an image with no information of person registered in the folder to be subject to image analysis.
- Images for which image analysis has been completed can be automatically placed at suitable positions in your items. See "[Arranging Photos Automatically](#)" for details on the setting procedure.

Save image analysis results

Select this checkbox to save the results of image analysis.

Enable face detection

Select this checkbox to detect face areas in images. Images that are automatically identified as those of the same person according to the **Face Identification Rate in Face Detection** setting will be grouped in the **Unregistered People** view.

Face Identification Rate in Face Detection

You can set the rate to identify as the same person by moving the slider.

When the slider is moved to the left, the range of images to be identified as the same person widens; the identification rate decreases to the contrary. When the slider is moved to the right, the range of images to be identified as the same person narrows; the identification rate increases to the contrary.

Optimize Image Analysis Results

Click **Optimize** to refresh the saved image analysis results.

Delete Saved Image Analysis Results

Click **Delete** to delete the image analysis results.

After the image analysis results are deleted, no image appears in the **Unregistered People** view until

the next image analysis is performed.

Important

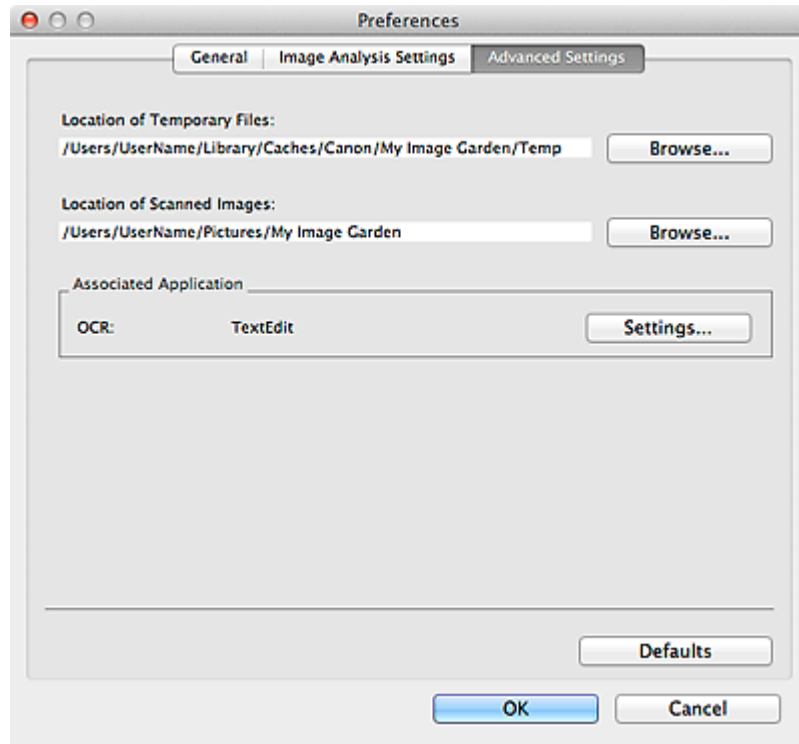
- When the image analysis results are deleted, all information of the people registered to the **People** view is also deleted.

Defaults

Restores all items to the default settings.

Advanced Settings Tab

You can specify the folders in which to save files and settings for extracting text from images.



Location of Temporary Files

You can set the folder in which to save the images temporarily. To change the folder, click **Browse...**, then specify the destination folder.

Location of Scanned Images

You can set the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click **Browse...**, then specify the destination folder.

The default save folder is the **My Image Garden** folder in the **Pictures** folder.

Associated Application

OCR

TextEdit (included with Mac OS) is displayed.

Click **Settings...** to display the **Text Conversion Settings** dialog in which you can specify the settings for extracting text from images.



Document Language

Select the language for detecting text in images.

Combine multiple text conversion results

Select this checkbox to save the results of extraction in one file collectively upon extracting text from multiple images.

Important

- Be sure to select this checkbox when extracting text from 11 or more images collectively.

Defaults

Restores all items to the default settings.

Note

- See "[Extracting Text from Images \(OCR Function\)](#)" for how to extract text from images.

Page top ▲

Troubleshooting

How Can I Change the Settings of My Image Garden?

You can change the settings of My Image Garden in the **Preferences** dialog.

➡ [Preferences Dialog](#)

Images Do Not Appear

Image analysis is performed immediately after installation. Therefore, images may not appear in the **Calendar** view or **Unregistered People** view until the image analysis is completed.



Note

- **Identifying people...** appears at **Unregistered People** in Global Menu during image analysis.

To display images in the **Calendar** view, **Unregistered People** view or **People** view, or to use the item recommendation function, the folders in which the images are saved need to be subject to image analysis. Make sure that the folders in which the images are saved are subject to image analysis on the **Image Analysis Settings** tab of the **Preferences** dialog.

➡ [Image Analysis Settings Tab](#)

Image Analysis (Face Identification) Fails

Adjust the face identification rate and other settings on the **Image Analysis Settings** tab of the **Preferences** dialog.

➡ [Image Analysis Settings Tab](#)

Cannot Scan Properly

See the corresponding page of *On-screen Manual* for problems with scanning.

Cannot Use PREMIUM Contents

See "[Cannot Use PREMIUM Contents](#)" for details.

Cannot Use PREMIUM Contents

Cannot Print PREMIUM Contents on CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM

Check 1: Is My Image Garden installed?

You cannot print PREMIUM Contents if My Image Garden is not installed. Install My Image Garden, then try printing the PREMIUM Contents.

Check 2: Did you download PREMIUM Contents?

Download PREMIUM Contents, then try printing again. PREMIUM Contents do not appear if the usage periods of the PREMIUM Contents have elapsed.

See "[Downloaded PREMIUM Contents View](#)" to check the usage periods of the downloaded PREMIUM Contents.

Check 3: Are you trying to print PREMIUM Contents made for paper sizes that are not supported by your printer?

If you try to print PREMIUM Contents made for paper sizes that are not supported by your printer, an error message appears in the computer screen. Follow the prompts in the error message, then check the paper sizes that match the PREMIUM Contents.

Check 4: Are the ink tanks/ink cartridges installed properly?

If genuine Canon ink tanks/ink cartridges are not installed for any colors of a supported printer, an error message is displayed on the computer screen. Follow the instructions on the computer screen, make sure that genuine Canon ink tanks/ink cartridges are installed properly for all colors, then print the PREMIUM Contents again.

Check 5: Is your printer processing an operation?

If your printer is processing an operation, an error message appears in the computer screen. Follow the prompts in the error message, then wait until the operation is completed. When the operation is completed, try printing the PREMIUM Contents again.

Check 6: Is the printer driver for your printer installed?

If the printer driver for your printer is not installed, you cannot print PREMIUM Contents. Install the printer driver for your printer, then try printing the PREMIUM Contents again.

Check 7: Is your printer selected in Quick Menu?

If your printer is not selected in Quick Menu upon displaying PREMIUM Contents from Quick Menu, the menu of CREATIVE PARK PREMIUM does not appear in Quick Menu. Click the  (Preferences) button in Quick Menu, select your printer in **Select Model** in the Preferences screen, then try printing the PREMIUM Contents again.

Check 8: Is your printer connected to the computer via Bluetooth?

If your printer is connected to the computer via Bluetooth, an error message appears in the computer screen. Change the connection to USB connection or network connection, then try printing the PREMIUM Contents again.

Check 9: Is your printer connected to AirMac using a USB cable and being used as a shared printer?

If your printer is connected to **AirMac** using a USB cable and being used as a shared printer, an error message is displayed on the computer screen. Change the connection to USB connection or network connection, then try printing the PREMIUM Contents again.

General Notes (My Image Garden)

My Image Garden is subject to the following restrictions. Keep these points in mind.

- See the Canon website for products supporting My Image Garden.
- Available functions and settings vary depending on your scanner or printer.
- The designs of PREMIUM Contents provided in this guide are subject to change without prior notice.

Item Recommendation Function Restriction

- To use the item recommendation function, you need to install Quick Menu. You can download Quick Menu from the Canon website.

Image Display Restriction

- To display images in the **Calendar** view, **Unregistered People** view or **People** view, or to use the item recommendation function, the folders in which the images are saved need to be subject to image analysis.

Restrictions on Printing

- Printing on disc labels, paper larger than A4, business card size paper or sticker sheets is available with supported models only.
- You cannot print your items if a printer driver that supports My Image Garden is not installed on your computer.

Restrictions on Scanning

- You cannot scan items if a driver of a scanner or printer that supports My Image Garden is not installed on your computer.
- You cannot scan items whose image size will be larger than 10208 pixels x 14032 pixels (equivalent to a platen-size item scanned at 1200 dpi resolution) when scanned.

See the corresponding page of *On-screen Manual* for restrictions on scanning using ScanGear (scanner driver).

S501

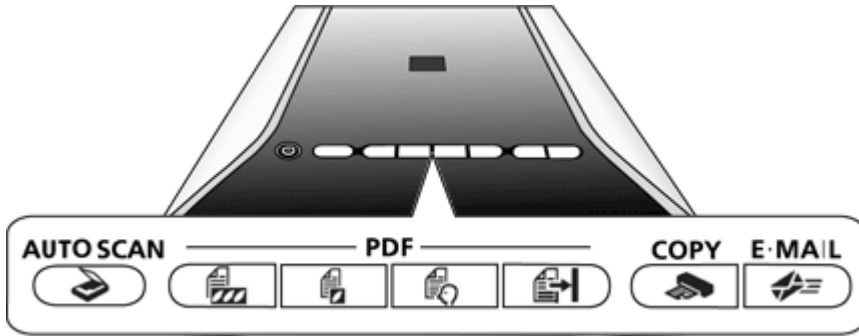
Scanning Using the Scanner Buttons

- [What Are Scanner Buttons?](#)
- [Scanning Items and Saving the Scanned Images \(AUTO SCAN Button\)](#)
- [Scanning and Saving Items as PDF Files \(PDF Buttons\)](#)
- [Scanning and Printing/Copying Items \(COPY Button\)](#)
- [Scanning and Attaching Items to E-mail \(E-MAIL Button\)](#)
- [Scanner Button Settings via IJ Scan Utility](#)

[Page top ▲](#)

What Are Scanner Buttons?

The seven buttons on the scanner are referred to as scanner buttons. You can create PDF files, print items, attach images to e-mail, etc. by simply placing the item on the platen and pressing a scanner button.



-  **AUTO SCAN Button**
Detects the type of items automatically and saves them to a computer.
- **PDF Buttons**
Create PDF files easily according to your needs.
These button names are not inscribed on the scanner.
 -  **COLOR Button**
Saves the scanned images to a computer as color PDF files.
 -  **BLACK & WHITE Button**
Saves the scanned images to a computer as grayscale or black and white PDF files.
 -  **CUSTOM Button**
Saves the scanned images to a computer as PDF files according to your custom settings.
 -  **FINISH Button**
Ends the PDF button operation and saves the images.
-  **COPY Button**
Scans items and prints them on a printer.
-  **E-MAIL Button**
Scans items and attaches the scanned images to a new message.

Note

- You can specify how IJ Scan Utility responds when the scanner buttons are pressed.
 - ➡ [Scanner Button Settings via IJ Scan Utility](#)
- The POWER lamp flashes when a scanner button is pressed.
- Scanned images are saved in the **Documents** folder by default.

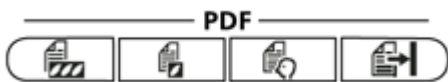
Scanning and Saving Items as PDF Files (PDF Buttons)

You can save scanned images as PDF files.

1. Place the item on the platen.

➡ Placing Items (When Scanning from a Computer)

2. Press a PDF button according to purpose.



- Scanning color items:  (COLOR Button)
- Scanning black and white items:  (BLACK & WHITE Button)
- Scanning with custom settings:  (CUSTOM Button)

Descriptions of the PDF buttons on the scanner appear.

3. Read the descriptions and click **OK**.

 Note

- Select the **Do not display this message again.** checkbox to scan items continuously using the buttons on the scanner only.

Scanning starts.

4. Select **Scan** to add a page or **Exit** to end.

A message appears after the scan.

Adding a page

Place the next item on the platen and press the button selected in Step 2 or click **Scan** in the message screen. After the additional page is scanned, the message appears again.

Ending

Press  (FINISH button) on the scanner or click **Exit** in the message screen.

The scanned images are saved in PDF format.

Scanning Items and Saving the Scanned Images (AUTO SCAN Button)

You can scan items by automatically detecting the item type and save them to a computer.

1. Place the item on the platen.

➡ Placing Items (When Scanning from a Computer)

2. Press the **AUTO SCAN** button.

Scanning starts.



Note

- Scanned images are saved in the folder set for **Save in** in the **Settings (AUTO SCAN Button)** dialog displayed by clicking **Settings...**. In the **Settings (AUTO SCAN Button)** dialog, you can also make advanced scan settings.

S505

IJ Scan Utility

Scanning and Printing/Copying Items (COPY Button)

You can scan items and print them on a printer.



Note

- Prepare the printer when printing with the **COPY** button. See the manual of your printer to prepare it.

1. Place the item on the platen.

➡ [Placing Items \(When Scanning from a Computer\)](#)

2. Press the **COPY** button.

Scanning starts. The scanned image is printed on a printer.

[Page top](#) ▲

S506

IJ Scan Utility

Scanning and Attaching Items to E-mail (E-MAIL Button)

You can send scanned images via e-mail.



Note

- If an e-mail client is not selected, manually attach scanned and saved images to e-mail.

1. Place the item on the platen.

➡ [Placing Items \(When Scanning from a Computer\)](#)

2. Press the **E-MAIL** button.

Scanning starts. The scanned image is attached to a new message.

3. Specify the recipient, enter the subject and message, then send e-mail.

For details, see the manual of your e-mail client.

Page top ▲

S508

Scanner Button Settings via IJ Scan Utility

IJ Scan Utility allows you to specify how to respond when scanning using the scanner buttons.

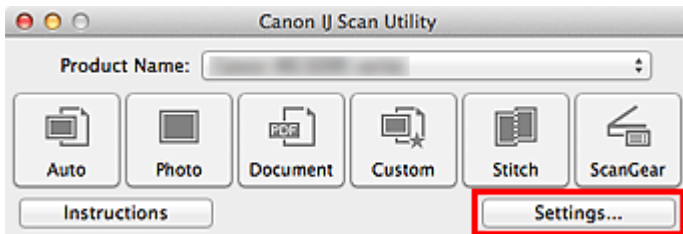
Note

- The screens for specifying the **AUTO SCAN** button responses are used as examples in the following descriptions.

1. Start IJ Scan Utility.

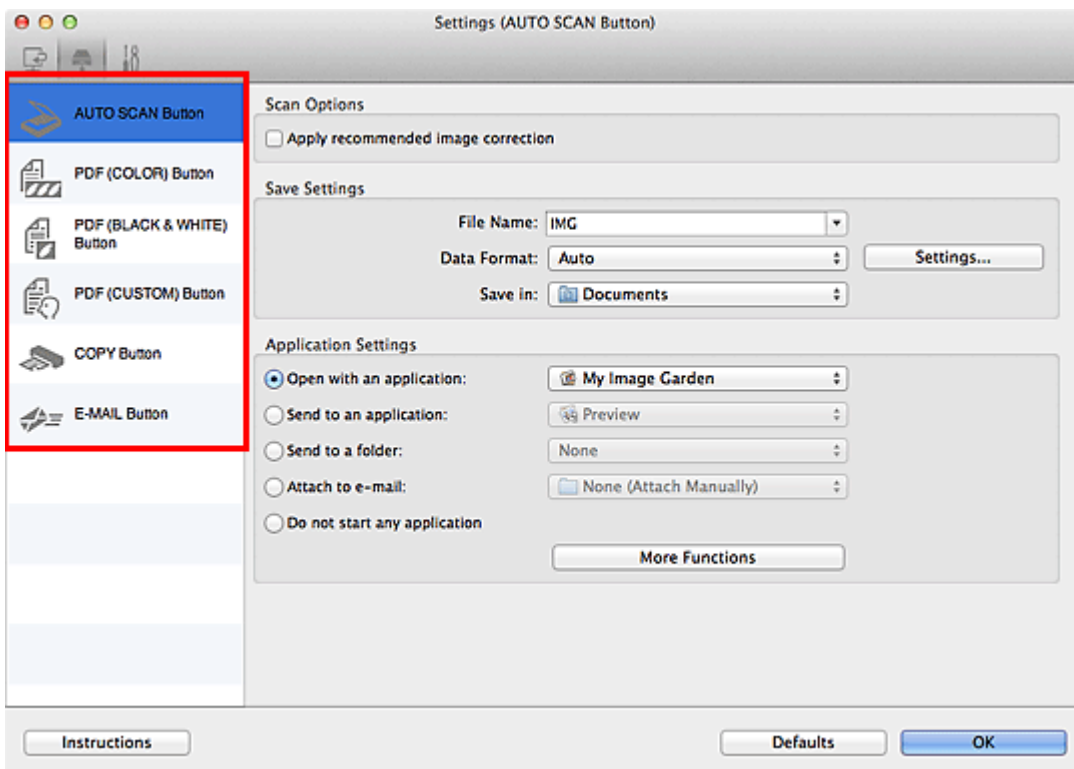
➡ Starting IJ Scan Utility

2. Click **Settings...**



The Settings dialog appears.

3. Select the (Scanning Using the Scanner Buttons) tab.

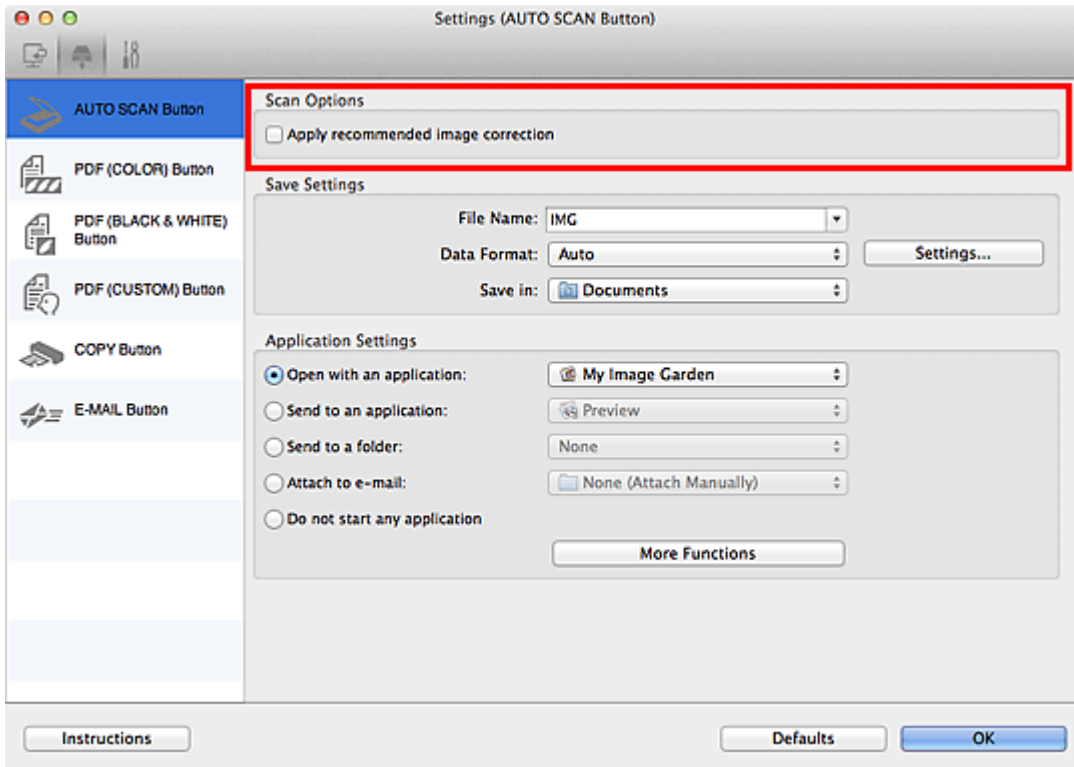


Note

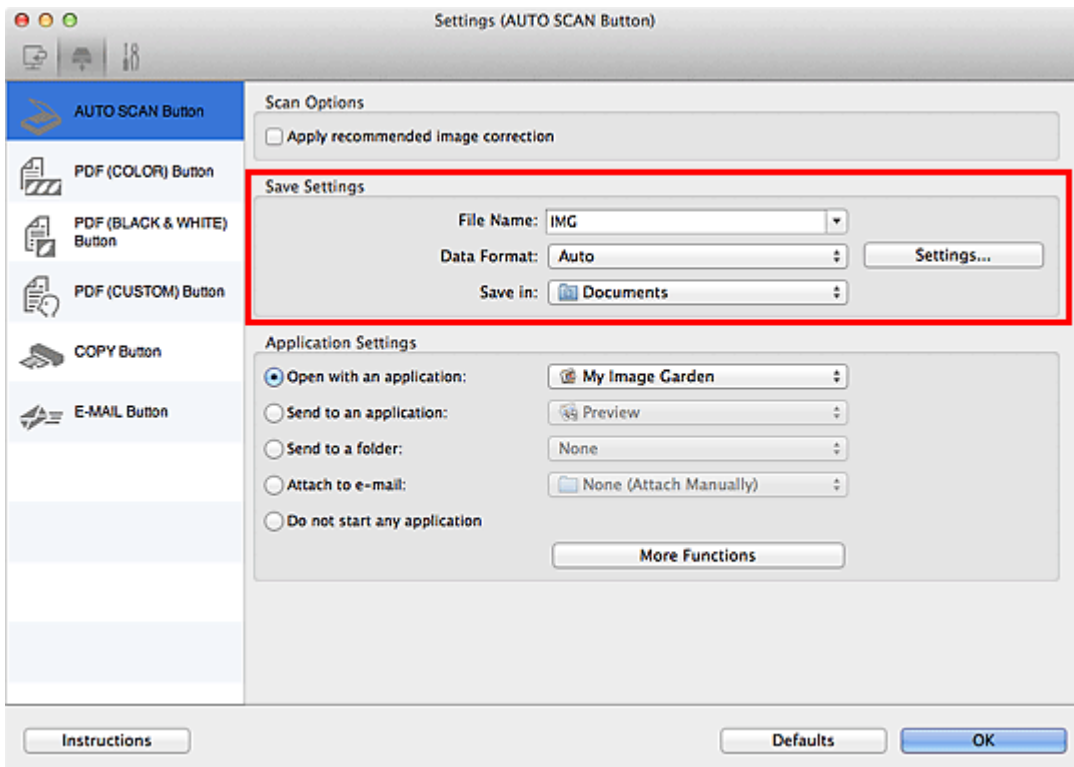
- See the section below for details.
 - ➡ Settings (AUTO SCAN Button) Dialog
 - ➡ Settings (PDF (COLOR) Button) Dialog
 - ➡

- Settings (PDF (BLACK & WHITE) Button) Dialog
 - ➡ Settings (PDF (CUSTOM) Button) Dialog
 - ➡ Settings (COPY Button) Dialog
 - ➡ Settings (E-MAIL Button) Dialog
-

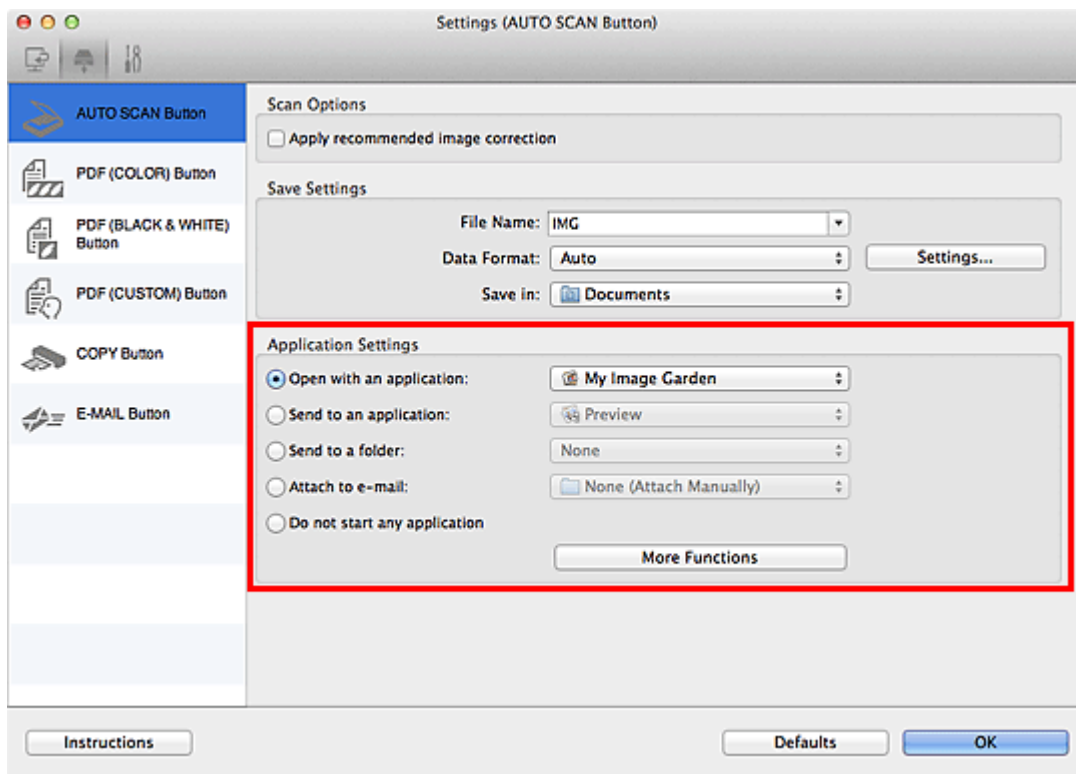
4. Specify image corrections in **Scan Options**.



5. Specify the file name and other settings in **Save Settings**.



6. Select the application you want to start after scanning in **Application Settings**.



7. Click OK.

The responses will be executed according to the specified settings when you start scanning using the scanner buttons.

[Page top ▲](#)

Troubleshooting

- [Problems with Scanning](#)
- [Scan Results Not Satisfactory](#)
- [Software Problems](#)
- [Problems with Scanning Film](#)
- [Installation Problems](#)
- [About Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program](#)

[Page top](#) ▲

Problems with Scanning

- Error Message "Release the lock switch..." Is Displayed
- Scanner Does Not Work
- ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Does Not Start
- Error Message Appears and the ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screen Does Not Appear
- Scanner Buttons Do Not Work
- When a Scanner Button Is Pressed, an Unexpected Application Starts
- Cannot Scan Multiple Items at One Time
- Cannot Scan Properly with Auto Scan
- Slow Scanning Speed
- "There is not enough memory." Message Is Displayed
- Computer Stops Operating during Scanning
- Scanned Image Does Not Open
- Position or Size of the Image Cannot be Detected Correctly When Scanning Using the Scanner Buttons

Page top ▲

S610

Error Message "Release the lock switch..." Is Displayed

Check: The scanner may be locked.

Exit the application, then unlock and restart the scanner. For how to unlock the scanner, see the printed manual: *Quick Start Guide*.

[Page top ▲](#)

S600

Scanner Does Not Work

Check 1: Make sure that your scanner is turned on.

Check 2: Connect the USB cable to a different USB port on the computer.

Check 3: If the USB cable is connected to a USB hub, remove it from the USB hub and connect it to a USB port on the computer.

Check 4: Restart the computer.

[Page top ▲](#)

S601

ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Does Not Start

Check 1: Make sure that ScanGear (scanner driver) is installed.

If not installed, install ScanGear using the Setup CD-ROM.

Check 2: Select your scanner on the application's menu.



Note

- The operation may differ depending on the application.

Check 3: Make sure that the application is TWAIN-compliant.

You cannot open ScanGear from applications not supporting TWAIN.

Check 4: Scan and save images with IJ Scan Utility and open the files in your application.

[Page top](#) ▲

S602

Error Message Appears and the ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screen Does Not Appear

Check 1: Make sure that your scanner is turned on.

Check 2: Turn off the scanner, then reconnect the USB cable and replug the power cord.

Check 3: Connect the USB cable to a different USB port on the computer.

Check 4: If the USB cable is connected to a USB hub, remove it from the USB hub and connect it to a USB port on the computer.

Check 5: Make sure that ScanGear (scanner driver) is installed.

If not installed, install ScanGear using the Setup CD-ROM.

Check 6: Your scanner may be locked.

Close the running software program. Slide the scanner lock switch to the release position (), then restart the scanner.

Check 7: Select your scanner on the application's menu.



Note

- The operation may differ depending on the application.

Check 8: Make sure that the application is TWAIN-compliant.

You cannot open ScanGear from applications not supporting TWAIN.

Check 9: Exit ScanGear if it is running on another application.

S700

Scanner Buttons Do Not Work

Check 1: Reinstall the required applications using the Setup CD-ROM.

Check 2: To use the COPY button, install the printer driver for your printer.

Check 3: To use the COPY button, check that your printer operates properly.

Check 4: To use the E-MAIL button, install an e-mail client.

Check 5: Did you restart the computer after installing applications (such as IJ Scan Utility)?

To scan using the scanner buttons, restart the computer after installing applications.

[Page top ▲](#)

S702

When a Scanner Button Is Pressed, an Unexpected Application Starts

Check: Change the IJ Scan Utility settings.

Applications that correspond with the scanner buttons are managed by IJ Scan Utility. To change the assigned applications, click **Settings...** in the IJ Scan Utility main screen and change **Application**



Settings on the (Scanning Using the Scanner Buttons) tab of the Settings dialog. Refer to the following pages for details.

- ➡ Settings (AUTO SCAN Button) Dialog
- ➡ Settings (PDF (COLOR) Button) Dialog
- ➡ Settings (PDF (BLACK & WHITE) Button) Dialog
- ➡ Settings (PDF (CUSTOM) Button) Dialog
- ➡ Settings (COPY Button) Dialog
- ➡ Settings (E-MAIL Button) Dialog

Page top ▲

S603

Cannot Scan Multiple Items at One Time

Check 1: Make sure that the items are placed correctly.

➡ [Placing Items \(When Scanning from a Computer\)](#)

Check 2: Multiple item scanning may not be supported.

Some applications do not support multiple image scanning. In that case, scan each item individually.

[Page top](#) ▲

S604

Cannot Scan Properly with Auto Scan

Check 1: Make sure that the items are placed correctly.

➡ [Placing Items \(When Scanning from a Computer\)](#)

Check 2: Multiple item scanning may not be supported.

Some applications do not support multiple image scanning. In that case, scan each item individually.

[Page top](#) ▲

S605

Slow Scanning Speed

Check 1: To view the image on a monitor, set the output resolution to around 150 dpi. To print, set it to around 300 dpi.

➡ Resolution

Check 2: Set Fading Correction, Grain Correction, etc. to None.

➡ Image Settings

Check 3: In IJ Scan Utility, deselect the Correct slanted text document / Detect the orientation of text document and rotate image checkbox and scan again.

➡ Settings (Document Scan) Dialog

➡ Settings (Custom Scan) Dialog

➡ Settings (PDF (COLOR) Button) Dialog

➡ Settings (PDF (BLACK & WHITE) Button) Dialog

➡ Settings (PDF (CUSTOM) Button) Dialog

➡ Settings (E-MAIL Button) Dialog

Page top ▲

S606

"There is not enough memory." Message Is Displayed

Check 1: Exit other applications and try again.

Check 2: Reduce the resolution or output size and scan again.

➡ Resolution

Page top ▲

S607

Computer Stops Operating during Scanning

Check 1: Restart the computer, reduce the output resolution in ScanGear (scanner driver) and scan again.

➡ [Output Settings](#)

Check 2: Delete unnecessary files to obtain sufficient free hard disk space, then scan again.

Error message may appear if there is not enough hard disk space to scan and save, when the image size is too large (such as when scanning a large item at high resolution).

Check 3: In Folder to Save Temporary Files of IJ Scan Utility, specify a folder on a drive with sufficient free space.

➡ [Settings \(General Settings\) Dialog](#)

Check 4: Multiple devices may be connected to USB ports.

Disconnect devices other than your scanner or printer.

[Page top](#) ▲

S609

Scanned Image Does Not Open

Check: If the data format is not supported by the application, scan the image again and select a popular data format such as JPEG when saving it.

For details, see the application's manual. If you have any questions, contact the manufacturer of the application.

[Page top ▲](#)

S716

Position or Size of the Image Cannot be Detected Correctly When Scanning Using the Scanner Buttons

Check 1: Make sure that the items are placed correctly.

➡ [Placing Items \(When Scanning from a Computer\)](#)

Check 2: Check that the settings match the item to be scanned.

If you cannot scan properly using the **AUTO SCAN** button, specify the item type in IJ Scan Utility and scan again.

➡ [Scanning Photos](#)

➡ [Scanning Documents](#)

➡ [Scanning with Favorite Settings](#)

[Page top](#) ▲

Scan Results Not Satisfactory

- Scan Quality (Image Displayed on the Monitor) Is Poor
- Scanned Image Is Surrounded by Extra White Areas
- Cannot Scan at the Correct Size
- Item Is Placed Correctly, but the Scanned Image Is Slanted
- Scanned Image Is Enlarged (Reduced) on the Computer Monitor

[Page top ▲](#)

S710

Scan Quality (Image Displayed on the Monitor) Is Poor

Check 1: Increase the scanning resolution if the image is jagged.

➡ Resolution

Check 2: Set the display size to 100 %.

Some applications do not display images clearly if the display size is too small.

Check 3: Update the calibration data.

Perform calibration by scanning after setting **Execute at Every Scan** in **Calibration Settings** to **ON** on the **Scanner** tab in the **Preferences** dialog of ScanGear (scanner driver). Calibration may take time depending on your computer.

➡ Scanner Tab

Check 4: If moire (stripe pattern) appears, take the following measures and scan again.

- On the **Basic Mode** tab of ScanGear, select **Magazine (Color)** in **Select Source**.
➡ Basic Mode Tab
- On the **Advanced Mode** tab of ScanGear, set **Descreen** in **Image Settings** to **ON**.
➡ Image Settings



Note

- If moire appears when you scan a digital print photo, take the above measures and scan again.

- If you are using IJ Scan Utility, select **Magazine** for **Select Source** on each tab of the Settings dialog, or expand **Image Processing Settings** and enable **Reduce moire**, then scan again.
 - ➡ Settings (Document Scan) Dialog
 - ➡ Settings (Custom Scan) Dialog
 - ➡ Settings (Scan and Stitch) Dialog
 - ➡ Settings (PDF (COLOR) Button) Dialog
 - ➡ Settings (PDF (BLACK & WHITE) Button) Dialog
 - ➡ Settings (PDF (CUSTOM) Button) Dialog
 - ➡ Settings (COPY Button) Dialog
 - ➡ Settings (E-MAIL Button) Dialog

Check 5: Clean the platen and document cover.

Clean the platen of the scanner and light source of the Film Adapter Unit, while taking care not to press the platen heavily.

Check 6: If the document is in poor condition (dirty, faded, etc.), use **Reduce Dust and Scratches**, **Fading Correction**, **Grain Correction**, etc. in **Image Settings** on the **Advanced Mode** tab of ScanGear.

➡ Image Settings

Check 7: If the color tone of images is different from the original document, take the following measures and scan again.

- On the **Advanced Mode** tab of ScanGear, set **Image Adjustment** in **Image Settings** to **None**.
➡ Image Settings
- On the **Color Settings** tab in the **Preferences** dialog of ScanGear, set **Color Matching**.
➡

Check 8: Cover your scanner with black cloth if white spots, streaks, or colored patterns appear in scan results due to interference from ambient light.

S711

Scanned Image Is Surrounded by Extra White Areas

Check: Specify the scan area.



Click  (Auto Crop) in whole image view of ScanGear (scanner driver) to automatically display the cropping frame (scan area) according to the item size.

You can also manually specify the scan area in thumbnail view or when there are white margins along the item (for example, in photos), or when you want to create custom cropping frames.

[➡ Adjusting Cropping Frames](#)

[Page top ▲](#)

S712

Cannot Scan at the Correct Size

Check: Make sure that the items are placed correctly.

➡ Placing Items (When Scanning from a Computer)

Page top ▲

S714

Item Is Placed Correctly, but the Scanned Image Is Slanted

Check: When Document or Magazine is selected for the item type, deselect the Correct slanted text document checkbox and scan the item again.

- ➡ Settings (Document Scan) Dialog
- ➡ Settings (Custom Scan) Dialog
- ➡ Settings (PDF (COLOR) Button) Dialog
- ➡ Settings (PDF (BLACK & WHITE) Button) Dialog
- ➡ Settings (PDF (CUSTOM) Button) Dialog
- ➡ Settings (E-MAIL Button) Dialog

Page top ▲

S717

Scanned Image Is Enlarged (Reduced) on the Computer Monitor

Check 1: Change the display setting in the application.

For details, see the application's manual. If you have any questions, contact the manufacturer of the application.

Check 2: Change the resolution setting in ScanGear (scanner driver) and scan again.

The higher the resolution, the larger the resulting image will be.

➡ Resolution

[Page top ▲](#)

Software Problems

- Scanned Image Is Printed Enlarged (Reduced)
- The E-mail Client You Want to Use Does Not Appear in the Screen for Selecting an E-mail Client

Page top ▲

S719

Scanned Image Is Printed Enlarged (Reduced)

Check: Set the printing size in the application.

[Page top ▲](#)

S720

The E-mail Client You Want to Use Does Not Appear in the Screen for Selecting an E-mail Client

Check: Check that the e-mail client's MAPI is enabled.

See the e-mail client's manual for how to set MAPI.

If the problem is not solved even when MAPI is enabled, select **None (Attach Manually)** in the screen for selecting an e-mail client, then manually attach the image to the outgoing e-mail.

[Page top ▲](#)

Problems with Scanning Film

- [Cannot Scan Film](#)
- [Scan Quality Is Poor or Colors Are Scanned Incorrectly](#)
- [Image Becomes Too Dark or Too Bright When a Cropping Frame Is Moved, Enlarged or Reduced](#)
- [Frames Are Not Detected Correctly](#)
- [Scanner Stops Operating during Scanning, or "There is not enough memory." Message Is Displayed](#)

[Page top ▲](#)

S704

Cannot Scan Film

Check 1: Make sure that the FAU protective sheet (Film Adapter Unit protective sheet) is removed from the inner side of the document cover.

Check 2: Make sure that the film guide is placed correctly on the platen.

Check 3: Make sure that the calibration slot is not blocked.

Do not block the calibration slot on the film guide with film or other items.

Check 4: Make sure that the document cover is closed properly.

Check 5: If you are trying to scan with IJ Scan Utility, scan the film with ScanGear (scanner driver).

In ScanGear, select **Negative Film (Color)** or **Positive Film (Color)** for **Select Source** in Basic Mode, or select **Color Negative Film**, **Color Positive Film**, **Monochrome Negative Film** or **Monochrome Positive Film** for **Select Source** in Advanced Mode.

Check 6: Set the appropriate resolution and scan again.

If the computer has stopped operating, restart it and scan again.

S705

Scan Quality Is Poor or Colors Are Scanned Incorrectly

Check 1: The platen or the light source on the inner side of the document cover may be dusty or dirty.

Remove dust and dirt from the platen and the light source on the inner side of the document cover. Clean the platen of the scanner and light source of the Film Adapter Unit, while taking care not to press the platen heavily.

Check 2: Perform calibration by scanning after setting Execute at Every Scan in Calibration Settings to ON on the Scanner tab in the Preferences dialog of ScanGear (scanner driver).

➡ [Scanner Tab](#)

Check 3: If the film is in poor condition (dirty, faded, etc.), use Remove Dust and Scratches (FARE), Fading Correction, Grain Correction, etc. in Image Settings on the Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear.

➡ [Image Settings](#)

Check 4: If circular stripe patterns (Newton's rings) appear, load the film face-up and click Preview, then click (Mirror) on the Toolbar of ScanGear to invert the image, then click Scan.

Check 5: The film may be extremely dark or bright, or the spaces between frames are extremely narrow (0.08 inch (2 mm) is standard).

Scan again using ScanGear if the scanner buttons or IJ Scan Utility yielded less than satisfactory colors.

Check 6: Adjust the brightness, contrast, tone curve, etc. on the Advanced Mode tab if the colors of the ScanGear's preview scan was unsatisfactory.

➡ [Correcting Images and Adjusting Colors with ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#)

Check 7: Adjust Saturation/Color Balance on the Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear if the scanned image appears reddish or bluish.

➡ [Adjusting Saturation and Color Balance](#)

Check 8: If a print out of an image does not appear satisfactory or the same as what you see on the monitor, you may need to change the printer's settings.

For details, see the manual of your printer.

Check 9: Light may reflect off white slide mounts into images. In that case, use black slide mounts or cover the white slide mounts with black frames.

S706

Image Becomes Too Dark or Too Bright When a Cropping Frame Is Moved, Enlarged or Reduced

Check: Follow these steps on the Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear (scanner driver).

1. Click **Preview.**

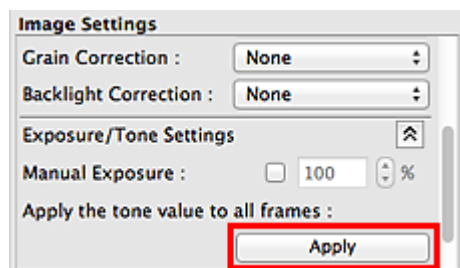
The preview images are refreshed.

When the whole film image is displayed, click  (Whole Film Image) on the Toolbar to display the thumbnails.

2. Select the frame(s) you want to correct the color tone of.

3. Click **Apply in the **Apply the tone value to all frames** section.**

If the **Apply the tone value to all frames** section is not displayed, click  (Down Arrow) of **Exposure/Tone Settings**.



4. Specify a cropping frame (scan area) and click **Scan.**

Scanning starts.

S707

Frames Are Not Detected Correctly

Check 1: Film may be out of position.

➡ Placing Film (When Scanning from a Computer)

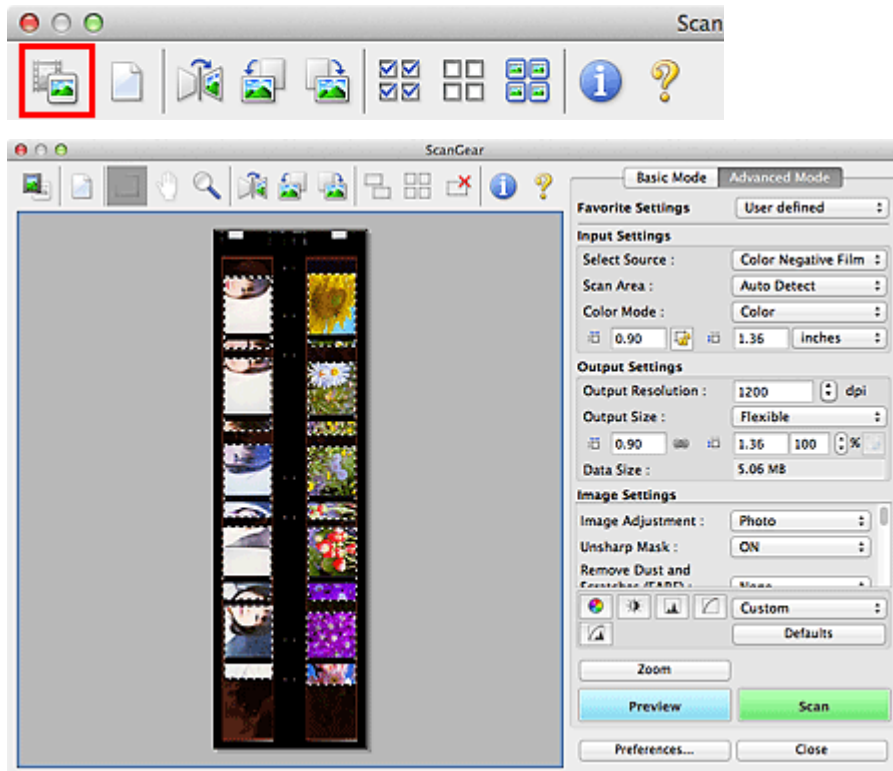
Check 2: The film may be extremely dark or bright, or the spaces between frames are extremely narrow (0.08 inch (2 mm) is standard).

Follow these steps if thumbnails are not displayed correctly when previewed in ScanGear (scanner driver).

The following is an example using the **Advanced Mode** tab.

1. Click  (Film Thumbnail) on the Toolbar.

The whole film image is displayed.



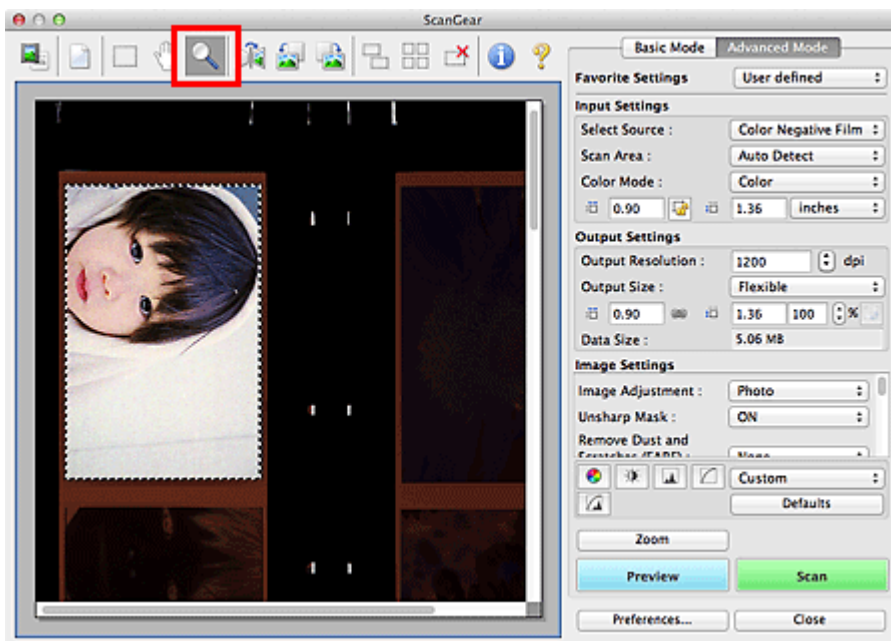
2. Select unnecessary cropping frames (scan area) and click  (Remove Cropping Frame).

The cropping frames are deleted. You can also delete the cropping frames by pressing the delete key.

3. Specify the scan area of the frame that was not displayed correctly.

4. Select  (Enlarge/Reduce) and click on the image.

The Preview area is enlarged.



5. Click  (Crop) and adjust the cropping frame to the desired size.

6. Click **Scan**.

Scanning starts.

Check 3: Check if there are frames that are not cropped even when the whole film image is displayed.

On the **Advanced Mode** tab of ScanGear, click  (Film Thumbnail) on the Toolbar to display the whole film image. Cropping frames appear on automatically detected frames. If the frame you want to

scan is not cropped correctly, select the size of the film to be scanned from **Scan Area** and click  (Film Cropping Frame). If the frame is still not cropped correctly, adjust the cropping frame. See Step 2 to 6 in Check 2 to adjust the cropping frame.

[Page top ▲](#)

S708

Scanner Stops Operating during Scanning, or "There is not enough memory." Message Is Displayed

Check 1: Reduce the resolution or output size and scan again.

➡ Resolution

Check 2: Reduce the number of frames to scan or apply Image Settings (such as Backlight Correction) only to frames that require corrections.

[Page top ▲](#)

Installation Problems

- 🔍 [The Setup CD-ROM Does Not Start](#)
- 🔍 [Installation Is Unsuccessful \(Insufficient Free Hard Disk Space\)](#)
- 🔍 [Installation Is Unsuccessful \(Insufficient Memory\)](#)

[Page top](#) ▲

S724

The Setup CD-ROM Does Not Start

Check 1: Make sure that the CD-ROM is inserted properly.

Reinsert the Setup CD-ROM.



Important

- Double-click the **Setup** icon and start the setup directly. The CD-ROM drive may not be operating correctly if the **Setup** icon does not appear. Contact the manufacturer of the computer. Or, the Setup CD-ROM may be damaged. Contact Canon Customer Support Help Desk (refer to the printed manual: *Quick Start Guide*) or the service center.

Check 2: Check that the Setup CD-ROM and CD-ROM drive are not dusty or dirty, and that there is no fingerprint on the CD-ROM.

- Gently dust or wipe off the dirt on the CD-ROM with a soft cloth.
- Gently wipe fingerprints and other smears from the CD-ROM with a soft cloth or an eyeglass cleaner, being careful not to scratch the CD-ROM.
- Remove dust and dirt from the CD/DVD drive with a blower brush for a camera lens.



Important

- Do not wipe the CD/DVD drive's sensor directly with a cloth or other materials. It could cause the drive to malfunction and cease to read CD-ROMs.

S725

Installation Is Unsuccessful (Insufficient Free Hard Disk Space)

Check: Delete unnecessary files to obtain sufficient free hard disk space, then try again.

Delete unnecessary files, then click the **Finder** menu and select **Empty Trash....**

[Page top ▲](#)

S726

Installation Is Unsuccessful (Insufficient Memory)

Check: Exit other applications or restart the computer and try again.

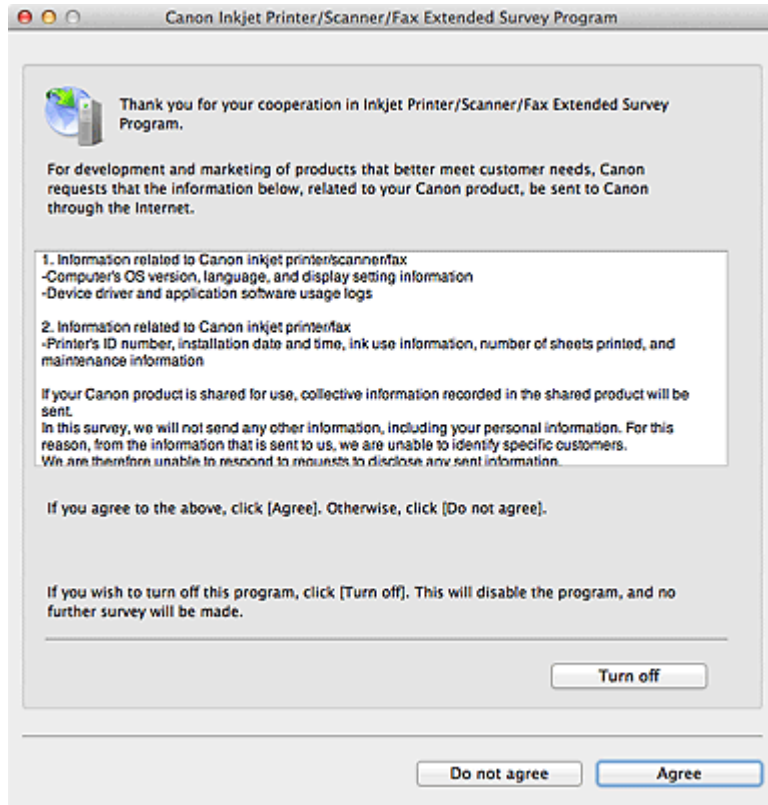
[Page top ▲](#)

S730

About Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program

If you installed the Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program, usage status of the scanner and applications is sent every month for approximately 10 years. Before sending the usage status, the Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program icon appears in the Dock.

Click the icon and read the descriptions in the displayed screen, then perform one of the following.



- **If you agree**

Click **Agree** and follow the on-screen instructions. Information will be sent via the Internet. Once the operation is completed, from the next time, information will be sent automatically without displaying the confirmation screen.



Note

- Deselect the **Send automatically from the next time** checkbox to display the Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program icon in the Dock before sending the usage status from the next time too.

- **If you do not agree**

Click **Do not agree**. The confirmation screen closes. The usage status will not be sent this time. After one month, the confirmation screen for sending the usage status opens again.

- **To stop the survey program**

Click **Turn off**. The Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program stops; the usage status will not be sent. Refer to "[Changing the setting](#)" to restart the survey program.

- **To uninstall the Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program**

1. Stop the Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program.

➡ [Changing the setting](#)

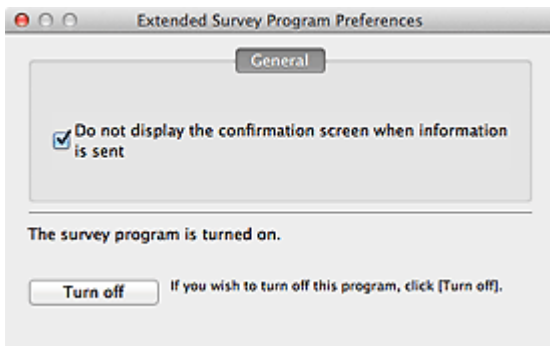
2. From the **Go** menu of Finder, select **Applications**, then double-click the **Canon Utilities** folder, **Inkjet Extended Survey Program** folder.
3. Drag and drop **Canon Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program** into the trash can.
4. Restart the computer.

Empty the trash can and restart the computer.

- **Changing the setting**

If you want to change the setting so that a confirmation screen appears before sending the usage status, or to restart the survey program, follow these steps below.

1. From the **Go** menu of Finder, select **Applications**, then double-click the **Canon Utilities** folder, **Inkjet Extended Survey Program** folder.
2. Double-click the **Canon Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program** icon.



- **Do not display the confirmation screen when information is sent:**

Select this checkbox to send the usage status automatically.
Deselect this checkbox to display the Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program icon in the Dock before sending the usage status. Send the usage status via a confirmation screen.
- **Turn off/Turn on:**

Click **Turn off** to stop the Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program.
Click **Turn on** to restart the Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program.

Specifications

General Specifications

Scanner type	Flatbed
Sensor type	CCD (12-line color)
Light source	White LED
Optical resolution *	Transparencies: 9600 X 9600 dpi Reflectives: 4800 X 4800 dpi * Optical resolution represents the maximum sampling rate based on ISO 14473.
Selectable resolution	25-19200 dpi (ScanGear)
Scanning bit depth	Color: 48 bit (16 bit input for each color (RGB))/48 bit or 24 bit output (16 bit or 8 bit output for each color (RGB)) Grayscale: 48 bit (16 bit input for each color (RGB))/16 bit* or 8 bit output * For film scanning only.
Interface	Hi-Speed USB * * The fastest speed in Hi-Speed USB mode on Windows PC. Transfer time is not included. Scanning speed varies according to the item types, scan settings, or specifications of the computer.
Maximum document size	A4/Letter: 216 x 297 mm
Film type/Number of frames	35 mm strip (12 frames max)/35 mm slide (4 frames max) 120 format film: max. 6 x 22 cm (filmstrip only)
Scanner buttons	7 buttons (AUTO SCAN, PDF x 4, COPY, E-MAIL)
Operating environment	Temperature: 10 °C to 35 °C Humidity: 10 % to 90 % RH, 20 % to 80 % RH for film scanning without condensation formation
Power supply	AC 100-240 V, 50/60 Hz
Power consumption	In operation: 12 W maximum Stand-by: 0.9 W *1 *2 Off: 0.5 W *1 *3 *1 USB connection to PC. *2 The wait time for standby cannot be changed. *3 A small amount of power is consumed even when the power is turned off. To stop power consumption, unplug the power cord from the power supply.
External dimensions	Approximately 270 (W) x 480 (D) x 111 (H) mm (10.7 x 18.9 x 4.4 inches)
Weight	Approximately 4.6 kg (10.1 lbs.)

Minimum System Requirements

Conform to the operating system's requirements when higher than those given here.

Windows

Operating system	Windows 8 Windows 7, Windows 7 SP1 Windows Vista SP1, Vista SP2 Windows XP SP3 32-bit only Refer to the Canon web site for details on operation with Windows RT.

Browser	Internet Explorer 8 or later
Hard disk space	3 GB Note: For bundled software installation. The necessary amount of hard disk space may be changed without notice.
CD-ROM drive	Required
Display	XGA 1024 X 768

Mac OS

Operating system	Mac OS X v10.6.8 or later
Browser	Safari 5 or later
Hard disk space	1.5 GB Note: For bundled software installation. The necessary amount of hard disk space may be changed without notice.
CD-ROM drive	Required
Display	XGA 1024 X 768

- Windows: .NET Framework 4 or 4.5 must be installed to use the Windows software.
- Windows: XPS Essentials Pack is required with Windows XP.
- Windows: Operation can only be guaranteed on a computer with Windows 8, Windows 7, Windows Vista or Windows XP pre-installed.
- Windows: Some functions may not be available with Windows Media Center.
- Mac OS: Hard Disk must be formatted as Mac OS Extended (Journaled) or Mac OS Extended.
- Mac OS: For Mac OS, an internet connection is required during software installation.
- Windows: The TWAIN driver (ScanGear) is based on the TWAIN 1.9 Specification and requires the Data Source Manager bundled with the operating system.

Specifications are subject to change without notice.



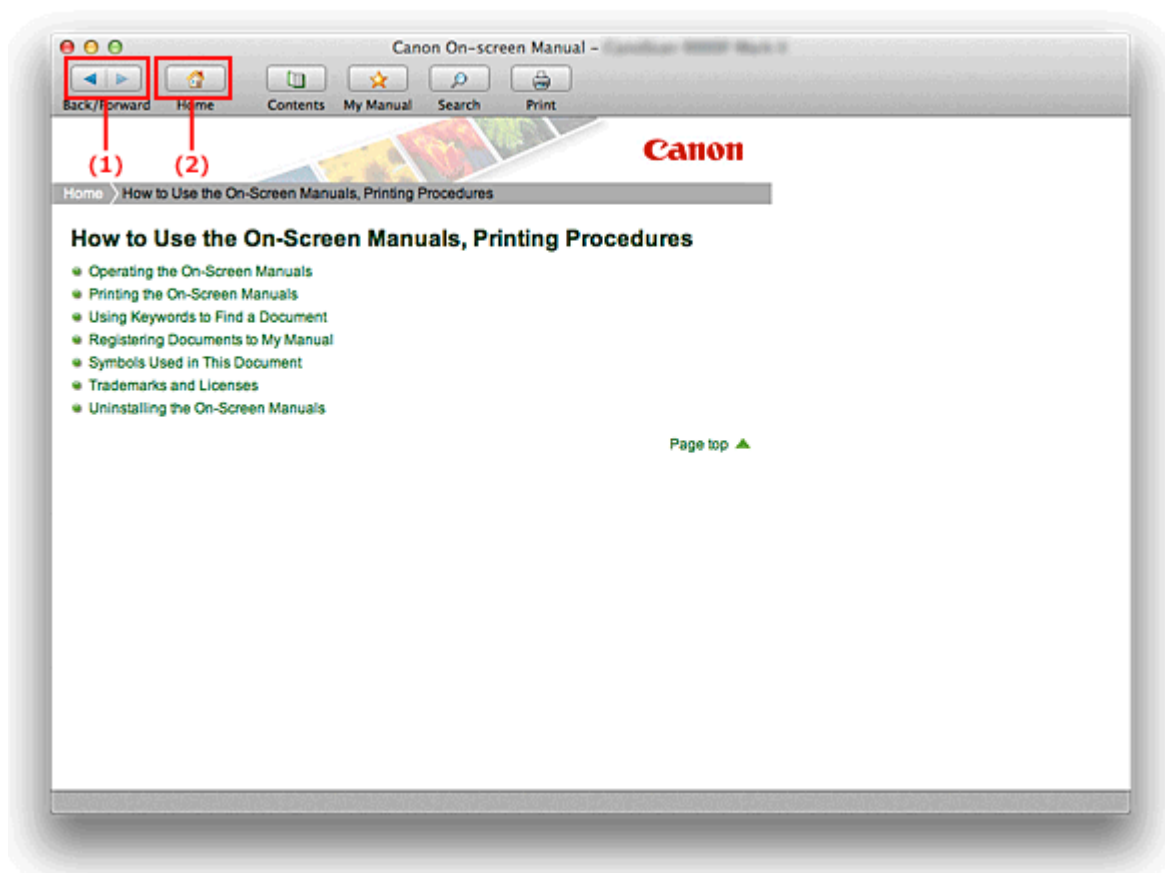
How to Use the On-Screen Manuals, Printing Procedures

- [Operating the On-Screen Manuals](#)
- [Printing the On-Screen Manuals](#)
- [Using Keywords to Find a Document](#)
- [Registering Documents to My Manual](#)
- [Symbols Used in This Document](#)
- [Trademarks and Licenses](#)
- [Uninstalling the On-Screen Manuals](#)

[Page top ▲](#)

Operating the On-Screen Manuals

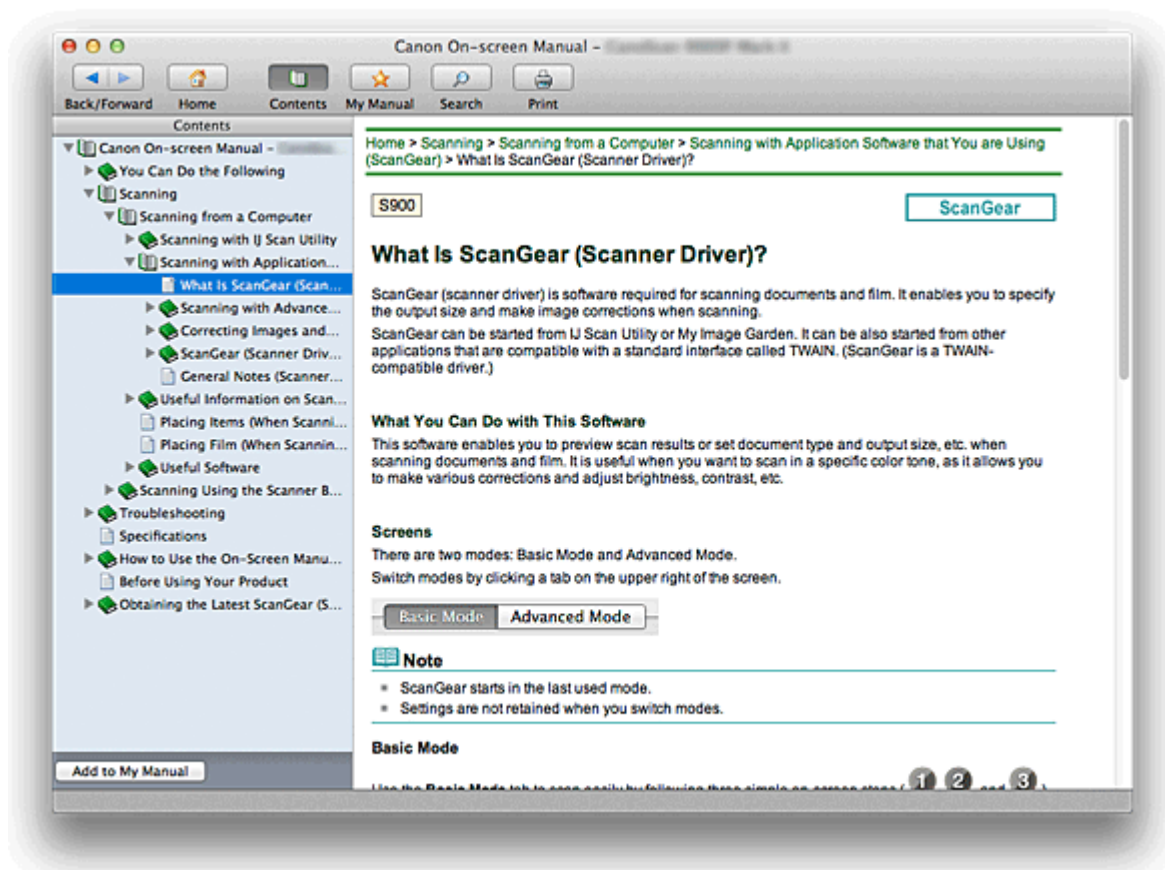
On-screen manuals operation



(1) Click  **Back/Forward** to return to the previously displayed explanation window or to advance the explanation window that was redisplayed.

(2) Click  **Home** to display the top page of the on-screen manual in the explanation window.

Content window operation



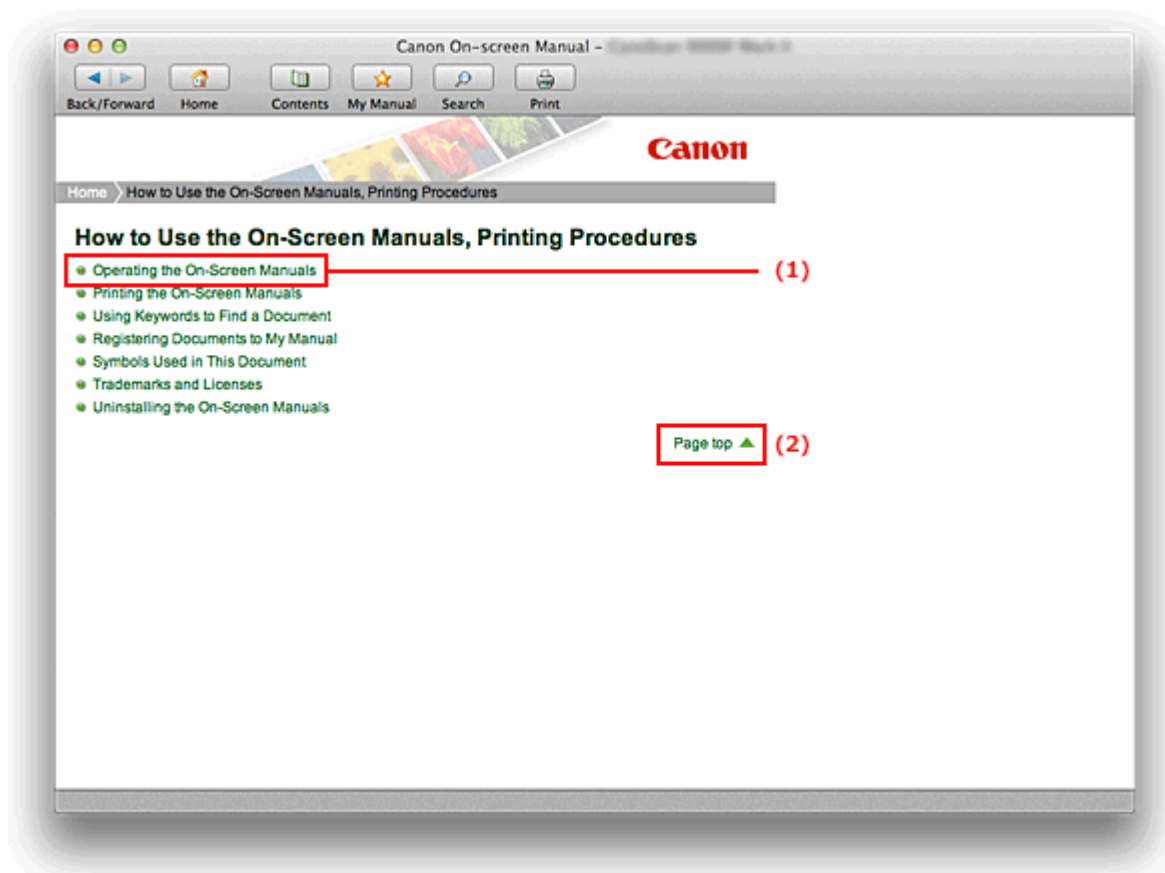
When you click a document title displayed in the contents pane found to the left of the on-screen manual, the documents of that title are displayed in the explanation window on the right side.

When you click ► found to the left of , the document titles found in the lower hierarchies are displayed.

Note

- Click  **Contents** to close or display the contents pane.

Explanation Window



(1) Click the green characters to jump to the corresponding document.

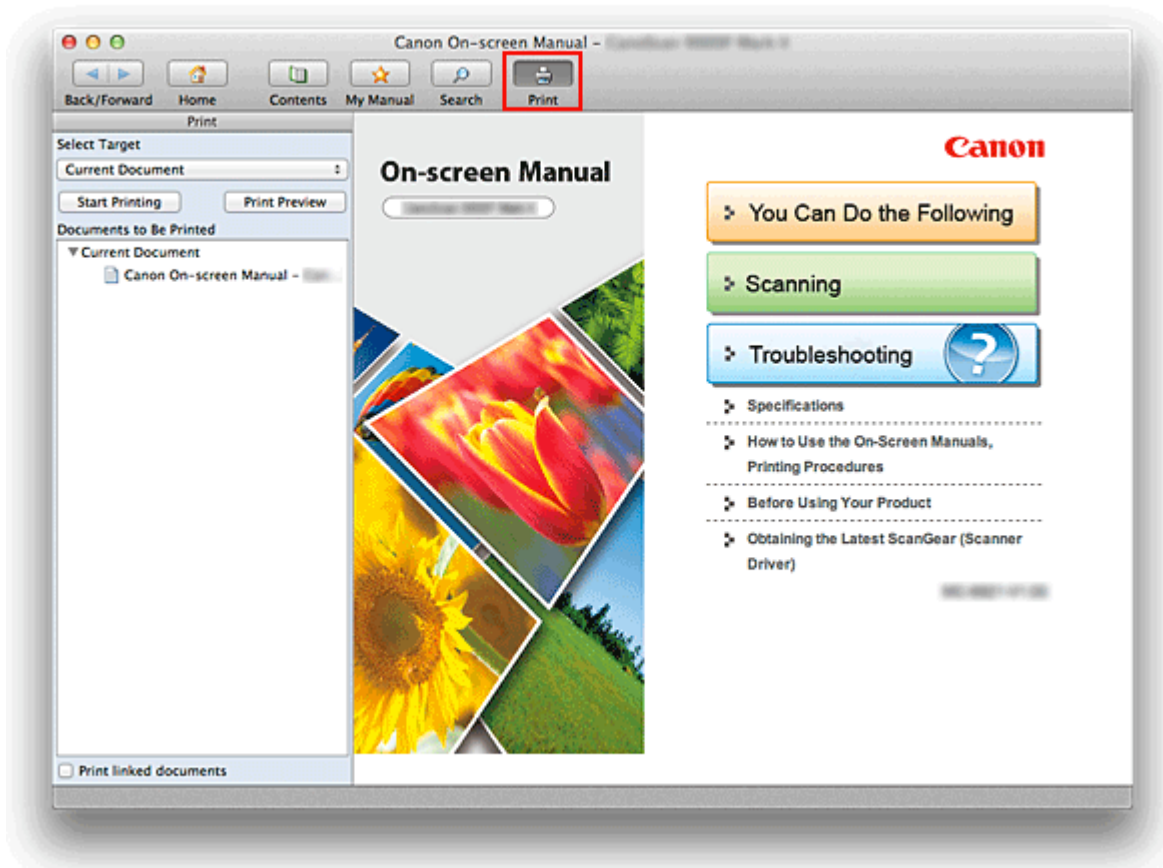
(2) The cursor jumps to the top of this document.

Window Used in Operation Explanation

This on-screen manual describes with a window displayed when the Mac OS X v10.7 is used.

Page top ▲

Printing the On-Screen Manuals



Click  **Print** to display the print pane to the left of the on-screen manual.

Note

- Click  **Print** to close or display the print pane.

The following four methods of printing are available:

- Print Current Document
- Print Selected Documents
- Print My Manual
- Print All Documents

Print Current Document

You can print the currently displayed document.

1. From **Select Target**, select **Current Document**

The title of the currently displayed document is displayed in the **Documents to Be Printed** list.

Note

- By selecting **Print linked documents**, you can also print documents that are linked to the current document. The linked documents are added to the **Documents to Be Printed** list.
- Click **Print Preview** to display and check what the print results will look like before you actually print the document.

2. Click **Start Printing**

A message confirming the number of print pages is displayed.

After you confirm the number of pages to be printed, and click **Yes**, a print dialog is displayed.

3. Execute print

Specify the necessary items, and click **Print**.

The documents that are currently displayed are printed.

Print Selected Documents

You can select and print the documents that you want to print.

1. From **Select Target**, select **Selected Documents**

The titles of all documents are displayed in the **Documents to Be Printed** list.

2. Select the documents to be printed

From the **Documents to Be Printed** list, select and check the title check boxes of the documents to be printed.



Note

- When you select the **Automatically select documents in lower hierarchies** check box, the check boxes of all document titles found in the lower hierarchies are selected.
- Click **Select All** to select the check boxes of all document titles.
Click **Clear All** to clear the check boxes of all document titles.
- Click **Print Preview** to display and check what the print results will look like before you actually print the document.

3. Click **Start Printing**

A message confirming the number of print pages is displayed.

After you confirm the number of pages to be printed, and click **Yes**, a print dialog is displayed.

4. Execute print

Specify the necessary items, and click **Print**.

All documents with selected check boxes are printed.

Print My Manual

You can select and print documents registered in My Manual.

For details about My Manual, see "[Registering Documents to My Manual](#)."

1. From **Select Target**, select **My Manual**

The titles of the documents that have been registered to My Manual are displayed in the **Documents to Be Printed** list.

2. Select the documents to be printed

From the **Documents to Be Printed** list, select and check the title check boxes of the documents to be printed.



Note

- Click **Select All** to select the check boxes of all document titles.
Click **Clear All** to clear the check boxes of all document titles.
- Click **Print Preview** to display and check what the print results will look like before you actually print the document.

3. Click **Start Printing**

A message confirming the number of print pages is displayed.

After you confirm the number of pages to be printed, and click **Yes**, a print dialog is displayed.

4. Execute print

Specify the necessary items, and click **Print**.

All documents with selected check boxes are printed.

Print All Documents

You can print all documents of the on-screen manual.

1. From **Select Target**, select **All Documents**

The titles of all documents are displayed in the **Documents to Be Printed** list, and the check boxes are automatically selected.



Note

- When you uncheck the check box of a document title, that document is not printed.
- Click **Select All** to select the check boxes of all document titles.
Click **Clear All** to clear the check boxes of all document titles.
- Click **Print Preview** to display and check what the print results will look like before you actually print the document.

2. Click **Start Printing**

A message confirming the number of print pages is displayed.

After you confirm the number of pages to be printed, and click **Yes**, a print dialog is displayed.

3. Execute print

Specify the necessary items, and click **Print**.

All documents are printed.



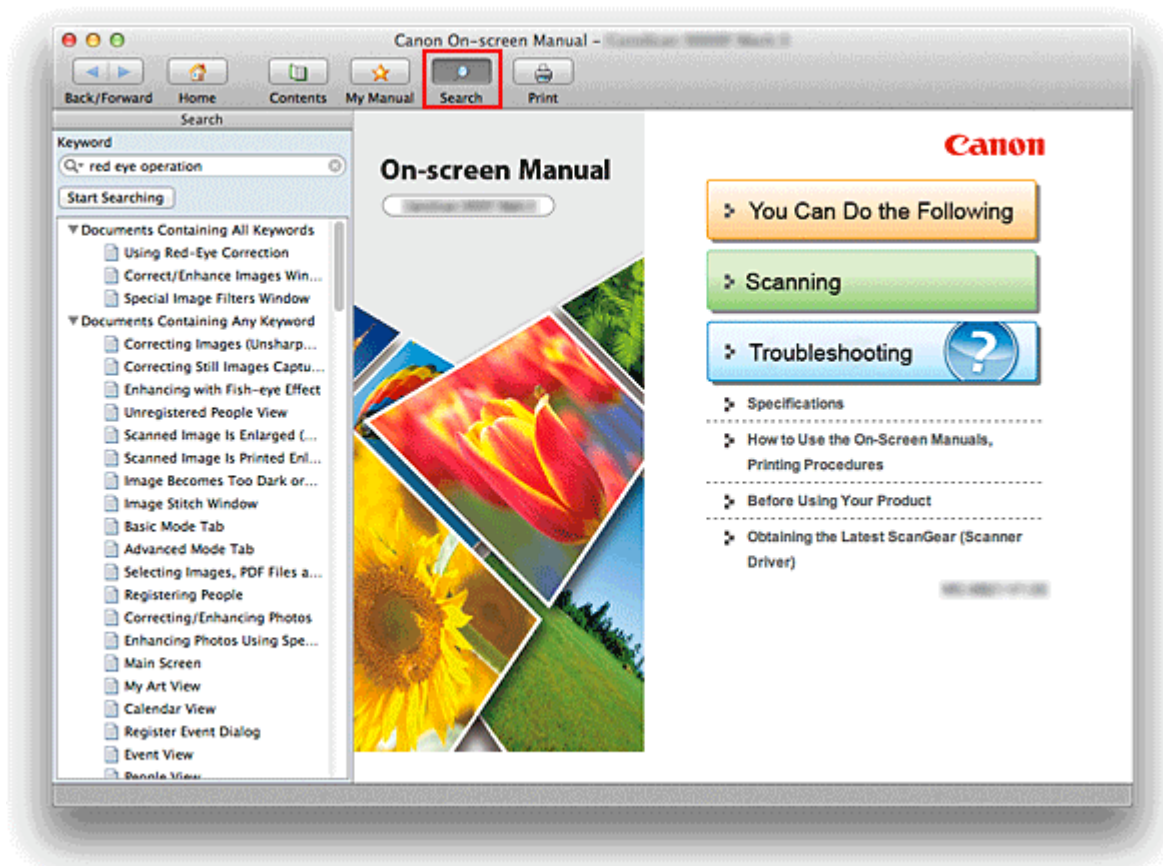
Important

- A large amount of paper is necessary to print all documents. Before printing, be sure to check the number of print pages displayed in the message.

Using Keywords to Find a Document

You can enter a keyword to search for a target document.

All documents in the currently displayed on-screen manual are searched.



1. Click **Search**

The search pane is displayed to the left of the on-screen manual.

Note

- Click  **Search** to close or display the search pane.

2. Enter a keyword

In **Keyword**, enter a keyword for the item to be checked.

When you want to enter multiple keywords, insert a space between the keywords.

Note

- You can enter up to 10 search keywords or up to 255 characters.
- Uppercase and lowercase are not distinguished.
- The program can also search for keywords that contain spaces.
- A convenient way of quickly finding a document to be read is to enter keywords as described below.
 - To learn how to operate a function you are using:
Enter names such as the menu name displayed on the computer (for example, Image Stitch).
 - To find an explanation of the operation for a specific purpose:
Enter function + item to be printed (for example, scan film).

3. Click **Start Searching**

The search is started, and the titles of documents containing the keyword are displayed in the search results list.

When you execute a search by entering multiple keywords, the search results are displayed as shown below.

Documents Containing Perfect Match

Documents containing the entire search character string (including spaces) exactly as entered (perfect match)

Documents Containing All Keywords

Documents containing all keywords that were entered

Documents Containing Any Keyword

Documents containing at least one of the keywords that were entered

4. Display the document that you want to read

From the search results list, double-click the title of the document you want to read or select the title and press the Return key or Enter key.

When the documents of that title are displayed, the keywords found on those documents are highlighted.

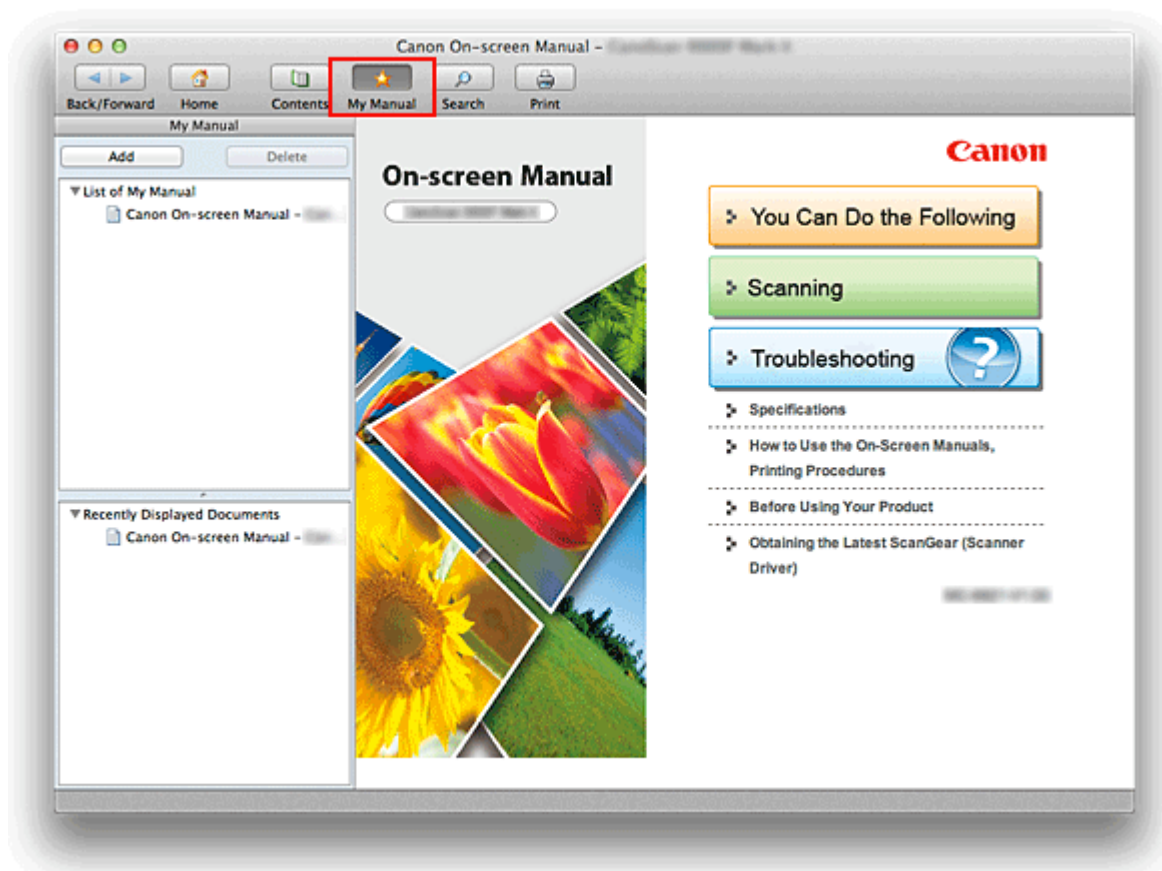


Note

- The search history remains when you modify the keyword entry and perform search multiple times. To delete the search history, click  located at the left of **Keyword**, and select **Clear History**, which is displayed.

Registering Documents to My Manual

Register frequently read documents as My Manual documents so that you can refer to those documents easily at any time.



1. Display the document

Display the document to be added to My Manual.

2. Click **My Manual**

The My Manual pane is displayed to the left of the on-screen manual.

Note

- Click  **My Manual** to close or display the My Manual pane.

3. Register the document to My Manual

Click **Add**.

The title of the currently displayed document is added to **List of My Manual**.

Note

- You can also add documents to My Manual by the following methods. If you add a document to My Manual, a  mark is displayed in the document icons in the contents pane.
 - From the **Recently Displayed Documents** list, double-click the document title that you want to add to My Manual or select the document title and press the Return key or Enter key to display the title, and then click **Add**.
 - Click  **Contents**, and while holding down the Control key, click a document title displayed in the contents pane or click the explanation window. Then click **Add to My Manual** displayed in the shortcut menu.
 - In the contents pane, select the document title that you want to add to My Manual, and then click **Add to My Manual** at the bottom left of the contents pane.

4. Display My Manual

When you double-click a document title displayed in **List of My Manual** or select a document title and press the Return key or Enter key, that document is displayed in the explanation window.

Note

- To delete a document from **List of My Manual**, select that document title from the list, and then click **Delete** (or press Delete key).
-

[Page top ▲](#)

Symbols Used in This Document



Important

Instructions including important information. To avoid damage and injury or improper use of the product, be sure to read these indications.



Note

Instructions include notes for operation and additional explanations.



Basic

This manual describes the basic operations of this machine.

[Page top](#) ▲

Trademarks and Licenses

- Microsoft is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation.
- Windows is a trademark or registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries.
- Windows Vista is a trademark or registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries.
- Internet Explorer is a trademark or registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries.
- Mac, Mac OS, AirPort, Safari, Bonjour, iPad, iPhone and iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. AirPrint and the AirPrint logo are trademarks of Apple Inc.
- Adobe, Photoshop, Adobe RGB and Adobe RGB (1998) are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
- All other company names and products mentioned herein may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.



Note

- The formal name of Windows Vista is Microsoft Windows Vista operating system.
-

Exif Print

This machine supports Exif Print.

Exif Print is a standard for enhancing the communication between digital cameras and printers.

By connecting to an Exif Print-compliant digital camera, print results suitable for the shooting conditions, shooting scenes, etc. can be obtained based on the camera information at the time of shooting.

About the On-screen Manual

Reproduction, diversion or copying of any text, photo or image published in this manual, in whole or in part, is prohibited.

Uninstalling the On-Screen Manuals

Follow the procedure below to uninstall all of the installed on-screen manuals from your computer.

Before uninstalling the on-screen manuals, exit all on-screen manuals that are opening.

1. From the **Go** menu of Finder, choose **Applications**
2. Double-click the **Canon Utilities** folder and then the **IJ Manual** folder
3. Delete the on-screen manual

Drag the folder with the name of your model to the Trash.



Note

- If the desktop contains an icon of the on-screen manual, drag it to the Trash.

Before Using Your Product

Be sure to read the following before using your product.

SA-0130-V1.00_1

Regulatory and Safety Information

Safety Precautions

About Locations

- Do not place the scanner on shaky stands, unstable surfaces or surfaces subject to frequent vibrations.
- Do not place the scanner in areas with high humidity, areas subject to direct sunlight, areas with high temperatures and areas near flame sources.
- Do not push the scanner into a narrow cabinet or put a tablecloth on it or place on a thick rug. If the scanner generates heat by doing so, it may cause damage.
- Do not set up in areas where there are excessive fluctuations in temperature. Also do not move the scanner from low-temperature areas to high-temperature areas. Condensation may lower image quality. In such case, leave the scanner enough time as is to gradually let condensation go away adapting to the new conditions before use.
- Do not place the scanner in areas subject to direct sunlight or strong room light. It may cause damage to the scanner or decrease image quality. If you have to place it in direct sunlight, make sure to use a thick curtain to block the light.
- Leave enough space (approximately 20 cm (8 in.)) around the scanner when setting up. Refrain from attaching the scanner to wall behind for instance.
- The socket-outlet shall be installed near the equipment and shall be easily accessible.
- Refer to Specifications in this on-screen manual for operating requirement.

About the Power Supply

- Do not place objects around the power cord in case it needs to be unplugged during emergencies.
- When unplugging the power cord, always pull on the plug itself. Pulling the cord may damage the wires.
- Refrain from using excessive force to cords during plugging and unplugging it.
- Use of ground connection to computer is suggested to avoid possible electric shock.
- Unplug the power cord during moving.

General Handling Precautions

- Do not place heavy objects on the scanner. Also do not place metallic items such as paper clips or staples or container which holds flammable or explosive solvents such as alcohol or thinners.
- Do not release the document cover until it completely opens/closes.
- Do not place items that weigh 2.0 kg (4.4 lbs.) or more on the platen glass. Also, do not press heavily (i.e., more than 2.0 kg (4.4 lbs.)) on the document cover, the platen glass or the light source glass. The glass may break.
- Do not drop heavy books or objects on the scanner. Also do not give a shock to the platen glass and the light source glass. The glass may break.
- When not in use for extended periods, unplug the power cord for safety.

Regulatory Information

Users in the U.S.A.

FCC Notice (U.S.A. Only)

For 120V, 60Hz model

Model Number: K10346

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Use of a shielded cable is required to comply with Class B limits in Subpart B of Part 15 of the FCC Rules.

Do not make any changes or modifications to the equipment unless otherwise specified in the manual. If such changes or modifications should be made, you could be required to stop operation of the equipment.

Canon U.S.A., Inc.
One Canon Plaza
Lake Success, NY 11042
1-516-328-5600

International ENERGY STAR® Program

As an ENERGY STAR Partner, Canon Inc. has determined that this product meets the ENERGY STAR guidelines for efficiency.



European Union (and EEA) only.



This symbol indicates that this product is not to be disposed of with your household waste, according to the WEEE Directive (2002/96/EC) and your national law. This product should be handed over to a designated collection point, e.g., on an authorized one-for-one basis when you buy a new similar product or to an authorized collection site for recycling waste electrical and electronic equipment (EEE). Improper handling of this type of waste could have a possible negative impact on the environment and human health due to potentially hazardous substances that are generally associated with EEE. At the same time, your cooperation in the correct disposal of this product will contribute to the effective usage of natural resources. For more information about where you can drop off your waste equipment for recycling, please contact your local city office, waste authority, approved WEEE scheme or your household waste disposal service. For more information regarding return and recycling of WEEE products, please visit www.canon-europe.com/environment.
(EEA: Norway, Iceland and Liechtenstein)

India only.



This product is not to be disposed of with your household waste, according to the e-waste (Management and Handling) Rules, 2011. This product should be handed over to a designated collection point, e.g., to an authorized collection site for recycling waste electrical and electronic equipment (EEE). Improper handling of this type of waste could have a possible negative impact on the environment and human health due to potentially hazardous substances that are generally associated with EEE. At the same time, your cooperation in the correct disposal of this product will contribute to the effective usage of natural resources. For more information regarding return and recycling of WEEE products, please visit <http://www.canon.co.in/environment/>.

Also, this product complies with the "India E-waste Rule 2011" and prohibits use of lead, mercury, hexavalent chromium, polybrominated biphenyls or polybrominated diphenyl ethers in concentrations exceeding 0.1 % by weight and 0.01 % by weight for Cadmium, except for the exemptions set in Schedule II of the Rule.

S960

Obtaining the Latest ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

Upgrading your current ScanGear (scanner driver) to the latest ScanGear may solve some problems you have experienced.

Checking the Version of ScanGear



Start ScanGear and click (Information) to display the version of ScanGear.

Obtaining ScanGear

To obtain ScanGear, access our website and download the ScanGear for your model.



Important

- ScanGear can be downloaded for free; however, Internet connection fees apply.
- Install the latest ScanGear after deleting the old one. See "[Deleting the Unnecessary ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#)" for details.

Related Topic

- [Before Installing the ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#)
- [Installing the ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#)

S962

Before Installing the ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

Check the following points before installing ScanGear (scanner driver). Check these also when you cannot install ScanGear.

Machine Status

- If the machine and computer are connected with a USB cable, disconnect the USB cable from the computer.
- Turn off the machine.

Computer Settings

- Close all running applications.
- Log in as the administrator of the computer. You will be required to enter the name and password of the user with administrator privileges. If you have multiple user accounts on Mac OS X, log in with the first administrator account created.



Important

- If you install an older version of ScanGear after installing a newer one, ScanGear may not operate properly. In that case, reinstall the newer ScanGear.



Note

- When installing multiple versions of ScanGear, install older ScanGear first.

Related Topic

- [Obtaining the Latest ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#)
- [Installing the ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#)

S963

Installing the ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

Access our website via the Internet to download the latest ScanGear (scanner driver).

Follow these steps to install the downloaded ScanGear.

1. Mount the disk.

Double-click the downloaded disk image file.

The file is decompressed and the disk is mounted.

2. Start the installer.

Double-click the ".mpkg" file in the decompressed disk.

Installation starts.

3. Install the driver.

Follow the prompts to install.

When the license agreement screen is displayed, read the terms and click **Continue**. If you do not accept the license agreement, you cannot install this software.

If an authentication screen is displayed, enter the administrator's name and password, then click **Install Software** (**OK** when using Mac OS X 10.6).

4. Complete the installation.

The ScanGear is installed.



Important

- Installation may fail if you click **Go Back** during the process. In that case, select **Quit Installer** from the **Installer** menu to exit the installer, then start over the installation.
- ScanGear can be downloaded for free; however, Internet connection fees apply.

Related Topic

- [Obtaining the Latest ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#)
- [Deleting the Unnecessary ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#)
- [Before Installing the ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#)

S961

Deleting the Unnecessary ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

You can delete the ScanGear (scanner driver) you no longer use.

When deleting ScanGear, close all running applications and remove the USB cable connecting the machine and computer.

1. Delete ScanGear.

From the **Go** menu of Finder, select **Computer**.

On the hard disk on which the ScanGear is installed, browse to the **Library** folder, **Image Capture** folder, **TWAIN Data Sources** folder, then drag and drop the following file(s) into the trash can.

- "CanoScan XXX.ds" (where "XXX" is the model name)

2. Restart the computer.

Empty the trash can and restart the computer.

Important

- ScanGear cannot be deleted if you are not logged in as a user with administrator privileges. For more about administrator privileges, refer to the Mac OS User's Guide.